

project manual
for

Calvary Church Facility Addition

2612 East Central Avenue
Bentonville, Arkansas 72712

August 12, 2025
Project No. 21010



Set Number

AR Registration No. 10045
3117 2nd Avenue South
Birmingham, Alabama 35233



Project Manual for

Calvary Church
Facility Addition
2612 East Central Avenue
Bentonville, AR 72712

INDEX OF SPECIFICATIONS

INDEX

DIVISION 00 - PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

000001	Specification Cover
000002	Table of Contents
000700	General Conditions (A201-2017)
000750	Supplemental Conditions

CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS

(Divisions not listed are not included in the Contract.)

DIVISION 01 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

011000	Summary
012100	Allowances
012500	Substitution Procedures
012600	Contract Modification Procedures
012900	Payment Procedures
013100	Project Management and Coordination
013200	Construction Progress Documentation
013233	Photographic Documentation
013300	Submittal Procedures
014000	Quality Requirements
014100	Structural Tests and Special Inspections
014200	References
015000	Temporary Facilities and Controls
016000	Product Requirements
017300	Execution
017700	Closeout Procedures
017823	Operation and Maintenance Data
017839	Project Record Documents
017900	Demonstration and Training

DIVISION 02 - EXISTING CONDITIONS

024119	Selective Demolition

DIVISION 03 – CONCRETE

033000	Cast-In-place Concrete
033010	Vapor Barriers
033543	Concrete Polishing

DIVISION 04 – MASONRY

- 042000 Unit Masonry Assemblies
- 042200 Concrete Unit Masonry Assemblies

DIVISION 05 - METALS

- 051200 Structural Steel Framing
- 052100 Steel Joists
- 053100 Steel Decking
- 054000 Cold-Formed Metal Framing
- 055000 Metal Fabrications
- 055113 Metal Pan Stairs
- 055213 Pipe and Tube Railings
- 058110 Architectural Joint Systems

DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES

- 061000 Rough Carpentry
- 061600 Sheathing
- 064116 Plastic-Laminate-Faced Architectural Cabinets
- 064600 Wood Trim

DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

- 071326 Self-Adhering Sheet Waterproofing
- 072100 Building Insulation
- 072110 Continuous Insulated Wall Sheathing
- 072726 Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barriers
- 073113 Asphalt Shingles
- 074213 Metal Composite Material Wall Panels
- 074293 Extruded Aluminum Wall Panels
- 075423 Thermoplastic Polyolefin (TPO) Roofing
- 076200 Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim
- 077100 Roof Specialties
- 077200 Roof Accessories
- 079100 Preformed Joint Seals
- 079200 Joint Sealants
- 079219 Acoustical Joint Sealants

DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS

- 081113 Hollow Metal Doors and Frames
- 081416 Flush Wood Doors
- 083113 Access Doors and Frames
- 083850 Sound Control Door Assemblies
- 084113 Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts
- 084413 Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls
- 087100 Door Hardware
- 088000 Glazing

DIVISION 09 - FINISHES

- 092216 Non-Load-Bearing Steel Framing
- 092423 Portland Cement Stucco
- 092900 Gypsum Board
- 093013 Ceramic Tile
- 095113 Acoustical Panel Ceilings
- 096513 Resilient Wall Base and Accessories
- 096519 Resilient Tile Flooring
- 096813 Carpet Tile
- 097200 Wall Coverings
- 097712 Decorative Fiberglass Reinforced Wall Panels
- 098400 Sound-Absorbing Wall and Ceiling Units

- 099113 Exterior Painting
- 099123 Interior Painting
- 099323 Interior Transparent Finishes

DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES

- 101419 Dimensional Letter Signage
- 101423 Panel Signage
- 102113 Plastic-Laminate-Clad Toilet Compartment
- 102800 Toilet and Bath Accessories
- 104413 Fire Protection Cabinets
- 104416 Fire Extinguishers
- 105300 Protective Covers
- 108050 Key Safes
- 108200 Louvered Roof Top Equipment Screens

DIVISION 11 - EQUIPMENT

- 113100 Residential Appliances

DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS

- 123623 Plastic-Laminate-Clad Countertops
- 123661 Solid Surfacing Countertops
- 123662 Quartz Agglomerate Countertops

DIVISION 14 - CONVEYING EQUIPMENT

- 142100 Electric Traction Elevators

DIVISION 21 - FIRE SUPPRESSION

- 210100 General Fire Protection Requirements
- 210517 Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping
- 210518 Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping
- 210523 General-Duty Valves for Water-Based Fire-Suppression Piping
- 210529 Hangers and Supports for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment
- 210553 Identification for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment
- 211313 Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems

DIVISION 22 - PLUMBING

- 220100 General Plumbing Requirements
- 220517 Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping
- 220518 Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping
- 220519 Meters and Gauges for Plumbing Piping
- 220523.12 Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping
- 220523.14 Check Valves for Plumbing Piping
- 220529 Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
- 220553 Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
- 220719 Plumbing Piping Insulation
- 221114 Natural-Gas Piping
- 221116 Domestic Water Piping
- 221119 Domestic Water Piping Specialties
- 221123.21 Inline, Domestic-Water Pumps
- 221316 Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping
- 221319 Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties
- 221319.13 Sanitary Drains
- 221323 Sanitary Waste Interceptors
- 221414 Storm Drainage Piping
- 221423 Storm Drainage Piping Specialties
- 221429 Sump Pumps

- 223400 Fuel-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters
- 224200 Commercial Plumbing Fixtures

DIVISION 23 - HEATING VENTILATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

- 230100 General HVAC Requirements
- 230553 Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment
- 230593 Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC
- 230713 Duct Insulation
- 230719 HVAC Piping Insulation
- 232300 Refrigerant Piping
- 233100 Metal HVAC Ducts
- 233300 Duct Accessories
- 233423 HVAC Power Ventilators
- 233700 Air Outlets and Inlets
- 237413 Rooftop Air Conditioners
- 238101 Terminal Heat Transfer Units
- 238127 Ductless Split-System Air-Conditioners

DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL

- 260500 Basic Electrical Materials and Methods
- 260519 Power Conductors and Cables 51V-600V
- 260526 Grounding
- 260533 Raceways
- 260534 Outlet Boxes, Junction Boxes, Wireways
- 260553 Electrical Identification
- 260573 Power Distribution System Electrical Studies
- 260943 Lighting Control System
- 260944 Distributed Digital Lighting Management System
- 262200 Dry Type Transformers
- 262413 Switchboards
- 262416 Power Panelboards Circuit Breaker Type
- 262417 Lighting Panelboards
- 262726 Wiring Devices
- 262813 Fuses
- 262816 Safety Switches and Fuses
- 264300 Surge Protective Devices
- 265000 Lighting Materials and Methods

DIVISION 27 – COMMUNICATIONS

- 270500 Auxiliary System Cables, 0-50V
- 271000 Structured Cabling System

DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

- 283100 Fire Alarm and Mass Notification System
- 287800 Emergency Responder Radio Coverage System

DIVISION 31 – EARTHWORK

- 313116 Termite Control

END OF INDEX



AIA® Document A201® – 2007

General Conditions of the Contract for Construction

for the following PROJECT:

(Name and location or address)

Calvary Church Facility Addition
2612 East Central Avenue
Bentonville, AR 72712

THE OWNER:

(Name, legal status and address)

Calvary Church
2612 East Central Avenue
Bentonville, AR 72712

THE ARCHITECT:

(Name, legal status and address)

LIVE Design Group, PC
3117 2nd Avenue South
Birmingham, AL 35233

TABLE OF ARTICLES

- 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS
- 2 OWNER
- 3 CONTRACTOR
- 4 ARCHITECT
- 5 SUBCONTRACTORS
- 6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS
- 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK
- 8 TIME
- 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION
- 10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY
- 11 INSURANCE AND BONDS
- 12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK
- 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:

The author of this document may have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES



INDEX

(Topics and numbers in bold are section headings.)

Acceptance of Nonconforming Work

9.6.6, 9.9.3, **12.3**

Acceptance of Work

9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, **12.3**

Access to Work

3.16, 6.2.1, **12.1**

Accident Prevention

10

Acts and Omissions

3.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.8, 3.18, 4.2.3, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 10.2.5,
10.2.8, 13.4.2, 13.7, 14.1, 15.2

Addenda

1.1.1, 3.11

Additional Costs, Claims for

3.7.4, 3.7.5, 6.1.1, 7.3.7.5, 10.3, 15.1.4

Additional Inspections and Testing

9.4.2, 9.8.3, 12.2.1, **13.5**

Additional Insured

11.1.4

Additional Time, Claims for

3.2.4, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 8.3.2, **15.1.5**

Administration of the Contract

3.1.3, **4.2**, 9.4, 9.5

Advertisement or Invitation to Bid

1.1.1

Aesthetic Effect

4.2.13

Allowances

3.8, 7.3.8

All-risk Insurance

11.3.1, 11.3.1.1

Applications for Payment

4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, **9.3**, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.10,
11.1.3

Approvals

2.1.1, 2.2.2, 2.4, 3.1.3, 3.10.2, 3.12.8, 3.12.9, 3.12.10,
4.2.7, 9.3.2, 13.5.1

Arbitration

8.3.1, 11.3.10, 13.1, 15.3.2, **15.4**

ARCHITECT

4

Architect, Definition of

4.1.1

Architect, Extent of Authority

2.4, 3.12.7, 4.1, 4.2, 5.2, 6.3, 7.1.2, 7.3.7, 7.4, 9.2,
9.3.1, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.8, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 12.1, 12.2.1,
13.5.1, 13.5.2, 14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.3, 15.2.1

Architect, Limitations of Authority and
Responsibility

2.1.1, 3.12.4, 3.12.8, 3.12.10, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 4.2.2,
4.2.3, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.10, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 5.2.1, 7.4,
9.4.2, 9.5.3, 9.6.4, 15.1.3, 15.2

Architect's Additional Services and Expenses

2.4, 11.3.1.1, 12.2.1, 13.5.2, 13.5.3, 14.2.4

Architect's Administration of the Contract

3.1.3, 4.2, 3.7.4, 15.2, 9.4.1, 9.5

Architect's Approvals

2.4, 3.1.3, 3.5, 3.10.2, 4.2.7

Architect's Authority to Reject Work

3.5, 4.2.6, 12.1.2, 12.2.1

Architect's Copyright

1.1.7, 1.5

Architect's Decisions

3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 4.2.14, 6.3,
7.3.7, 7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.8.4, 9.9.1,
13.5.2, 15.2, 15.3

Architect's Inspections

3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.5

Architect's Instructions

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 13.5.2

Architect's Interpretations

4.2.11, 4.2.12

Architect's Project Representative

4.2.10

Architect's Relationship with Contractor

1.1.2, 1.5, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2, 3.5,
3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.9.2, 3.9.3, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16, 3.18,
4.1.2, 4.1.3, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2.2, 7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5,
9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6, 10.3, 11.3.7, 12, 13.4.2, 13.5,
15.2

Architect's Relationship with Subcontractors

1.1.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 11.3.7

Architect's Representations

9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.10.1

Architect's Site Visits

3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.5

Asbestos

10.3.1

Attorneys' Fees

3.18.1, 9.10.2, 10.3.3

Award of Separate Contracts

6.1.1, 6.1.2

Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work

5.2

Basic Definitions

1.1

Bidding Requirements

1.1.1, 5.2.1, 11.4.1

Binding Dispute Resolution

9.7, 11.3.9, 11.3.10, 13.1, 15.2.5, 15.2.6.1, 15.3.1,
15.3.2, 15.4.1

Boiler and Machinery Insurance

11.3.2

Bonds, Lien

7.3.7.4, 9.10.2, 9.10.3

Bonds, Performance, and Payment

7.3.7.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, 11.3.9, **11.4**

Building Permit

3.7.1

Capitalization

1.3

Certificate of Substantial Completion

9.8.3, 9.8.4, 9.8.5

Certificates for Payment

4.2.1, 4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, **9.4**, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.3
Certificates of Inspection, Testing or Approval
13.5.4
Certificates of Insurance
9.10.2, 11.1.3
Change Orders
1.1.1, 2.4, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.8.2.3, 3.11, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 5.2.3, 7.1.2, 7.1.3, **7.2**, 7.3.2, 7.3.6, 7.3.9, 7.3.10, 8.3.1, 9.3.1.1, 9.10.3, 10.3.2, 11.3.1.2, 11.3.4, 11.3.9, 12.1.2, 15.1.3
Change Orders, Definition of
7.2.1
CHANGES IN THE WORK
2.2.1, 3.11, 4.2.8, **7**, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, 8.3.1, 9.3.1.1, 11.3.9
Claims, Definition of
15.1.1
CLAIMS AND DISPUTES
3.2.4, 6.1.1, 6.3, 7.3.9, 9.3.3, 9.10.4, 10.3.3, **15**, 15.4
Claims and Timely Assertion of Claims
15.4.1
Claims for Additional Cost
3.2.4, 3.7.4, 6.1.1, 7.3.9, 10.3.2, **15.1.4**
Claims for Additional Time
3.2.4, 3.7.4, 6.1.1, 8.3.2, 10.3.2, **15.1.5**
Concealed or Unknown Conditions, Claims for
3.7.4
Claims for Damages
3.2.4, 3.18, 6.1.1, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.3.3, 11.1.1, 11.3.5, 11.3.7, 14.1.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.6
Claims Subject to Arbitration
15.3.1, 15.4.1
Cleaning Up
3.15, 6.3
Commencement of the Work, Conditions Relating to
2.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.4.1, 3.7.1, 3.10.1, 3.12.6, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 6.2.2, 8.1.2, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 11.1, 11.3.1, 11.3.6, 11.4.1, 15.1.4
Commencement of the Work, Definition of
8.1.2
Communications Facilitating Contract Administration
3.9.1, **4.2.4**
Completion, Conditions Relating to
3.4.1, 3.11, 3.15, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 8.2, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10, 12.2, 13.7, 14.1.2
COMPLETION, PAYMENTS AND
9
Completion, Substantial
4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10.3, 12.2, 13.7
Compliance with Laws
1.6, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 4.1.1, 9.6.4, 10.2.2, 11.1, 11.3, 13.1, 13.4, 13.5.1, 13.5.2, 13.6, 14.1.1, 14.2.1.3, 15.2.8, 15.4.2, 15.4.3
Concealed or Unknown Conditions
3.7.4, 4.2.8, 8.3.1, 10.3
Conditions of the Contract
1.1.1, 6.1.1, 6.1.4

Consent, Written
3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.12.8, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.3.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 11.3.1, 13.2, 13.4.2, 15.4.4.2
Consolidation or Joinder
15.4.4
CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS
1.1.4, **6**
Construction Change Directive, Definition of
7.3.1
Construction Change Directives
1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1.1, 7.1.2, 7.1.3, **7.3**, 9.3.1.1
Construction Schedules, Contractor's
3.10, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.5.2
Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts
5.4, 14.2.2.2
Continuing Contract Performance
15.1.3
Contract, Definition of
1.1.2
CONTRACT, TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE
5.4.1.1, 11.3.9, **14**
Contract Administration
3.1.3, 4, 9.4, 9.5
Contract Award and Execution, Conditions Relating to
3.7.1, 3.10, 5.2, 6.1, 11.1.3, 11.3.6, 11.4.1
Contract Documents, Copies Furnished and Use of
1.5.2, 2.2.5, 5.3
Contract Documents, Definition of
1.1.1
Contract Sum
3.7.4, 3.8, 5.2.3, 7.2, 7.3, 7.4, **9.1**, 9.4.2, 9.5.1.4, 9.6.7, 9.7, 10.3.2, 11.3.1, 14.2.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.4, 15.2.5
Contract Sum, Definition of
9.1
Contract Time
3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 5.2.3, 7.2.1.3, 7.3.1, 7.3.5, 7.4, 8.1.1, 8.2.1, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 12.1.1, 14.3.2, 15.1.5.1, 15.2.5
Contract Time, Definition of
8.1.1
CONTRACTOR
3
Contractor, Definition of
3.1, **6.1.2**
Contractor's Construction Schedules
3.10, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.5.2
Contractor's Employees
3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3.18.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 10.2, 10.3, 11.1.1, 11.3.7, 14.1, 14.2.1.1
Contractor's Liability Insurance
11.1
Contractor's Relationship with Separate Contractors and Owner's Forces
3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 6, 11.3.7, 12.1.2, 12.2.4
Contractor's Relationship with Subcontractors

1.2.2, 3.3.2, 3.18.1, 3.18.2, 5, 9.6.2, 9.6.7, 9.10.2, 11.3.1.2, 11.3.7, 11.3.8
Contractor's Relationship with the Architect
1.1.2, 1.5, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2, 3.5, 3.7.4, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16, 3.18, 4.1.3, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2.2, 7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6, 10.3, 11.3.7, 12, 13.5, 15.1.2, 15.2.1
Contractor's Representations
3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.6, 6.2.2, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.8.2
Contractor's Responsibility for Those Performing the Work
3.3.2, 3.18, 5.3, 6.1.3, 6.2, 9.5.1, 10.2.8
Contractor's Review of Contract Documents
3.2
Contractor's Right to Stop the Work
9.7
Contractor's Right to Terminate the Contract
14.1, 15.1.6
Contractor's Submittals
3.10, 3.11, 3.12.4, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 9.2, 9.3, 9.8.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 11.1.3, 11.4.2
Contractor's Superintendent
3.9, 10.2.6
Contractor's Supervision and Construction Procedures
1.2.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4, 7.1.3, 7.3.5, 7.3.7, 8.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.3
Contractual Liability Insurance
11.1.1.8, 11.2
Coordination and Correlation
1.2, 3.2.1, 3.3.1, 3.10, 3.12.6, 6.1.3, 6.2.1
Copies Furnished of Drawings and Specifications
1.5, 2.2.5, 3.11
Copyrights
1.5, **3.17**
Correction of Work
2.3, 2.4, 3.7.3, 9.4.2, 9.8.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.1, 12.1.2, **12.2**
Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents
1.2
Cost, Definition of
7.3.7
Costs
2.4, 3.2.4, 3.7.3, 3.8.2, 3.15.2, 5.4.2, 6.1.1, 6.2.3, 7.3.3.3, 7.3.7, 7.3.8, 7.3.9, 9.10.2, 10.3.2, 10.3.6, 11.3, 12.1.2, 12.2.1, 12.2.4, 13.5, 14
Cutting and Patching
3.14, 6.2.5
Damage to Construction of Owner or Separate Contractors
3.14.2, 6.2.4, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4, 11.1.1, 11.3, 12.2.4
Damage to the Work
3.14.2, 9.9.1, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4, 11.3.1, 12.2.4
Damages, Claims for
3.2.4, 3.18, 6.1.1, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.3.3, 11.1.1, 11.3.5, 11.3.7, 14.1.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.6
Damages for Delay
6.1.1, 8.3.3, 9.5.1.6, 9.7, 10.3.2
Date of Commencement of the Work, Definition of
8.1.2

Date of Substantial Completion, Definition of
8.1.3
Day, Definition of
8.1.4
Decisions of the Architect
3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 15.2, 6.3, 7.3.7, 7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 13.5.2, 14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1, 15.2
Decisions to Withhold Certification
9.4.1, **9.5**, 9.7, 14.1.1.3
Defective or Nonconforming Work, Acceptance, Rejection and Correction of
2.3, 2.4, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.5, 9.5.1, 9.5.2, 9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.4, 12.2.1
Definitions
1.1, 2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.5, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 3.12.3, 4.1.1, 15.1.1, 5.1, 6.1.2, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 8.1, 9.1, 9.8.1
Delays and Extensions of Time
3.2, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, **8.3**, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 10.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.5, 15.2.5
Disputes
6.3, 7.3.9, 15.1, 15.2
Documents and Samples at the Site
3.11
Drawings, Definition of
1.1.5
Drawings and Specifications, Use and Ownership of
3.11
Effective Date of Insurance
8.2.2, 11.1.2
Emergencies
10.4, 14.1.1.2, 15.1.4
Employees, Contractor's
3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3.18.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 10.2, 10.3.3, 11.1.1, 11.3.7, 14.1, 14.2.1.1
Equipment, Labor, Materials or
1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.7, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2, 10.2.1, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2
Execution and Progress of the Work
1.1.3, 1.2.1, 1.2.2, 2.2.3, 2.2.5, 3.1, 3.3.1, 3.4.1, 3.5, 3.7.1, 3.10.1, 3.12, 3.14, 4.2, 6.2.2, 7.1.3, 7.3.5, 8.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.1, 10.2, 10.3, 12.2, 14.2, 14.3.1, 15.1.3
Extensions of Time
3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3, 7.4, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 10.4, 14.3, 15.1.5, 15.2.5
Failure of Payment
9.5.1.3, **9.7**, 9.10.2, 13.6, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2
Faulty Work
(See Defective or Nonconforming Work)
Final Completion and Final Payment
4.2.1, 4.2.9, 9.8.2, **9.10**, 11.1.2, 11.1.3, 11.3.1, 11.3.5, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3
Financial Arrangements, Owner's
2.2.1, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4
Fire and Extended Coverage Insurance
11.3.1.1
GENERAL PROVISIONS
1
Governing Law

13.1

Guarantees (See Warranty)

Hazardous Materials

10.2.4, 10.3

Identification of Subcontractors and Suppliers

5.2.1

Indemnification

3.1.7, **3.18**, 9.10.2, 10.3.3, 10.3.5, 10.3.6, 11.3.1.2, 11.3.7

Information and Services Required of the Owner

2.1.2, **2.2**, 3.2.2, 3.12.4, 3.12.10, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 11.4, 13.5.1, 13.5.2, 14.1.1.4, 14.1.4, 15.1.3

Initial Decision

15.2

Initial Decision Maker, Definition of

1.1.8

Initial Decision Maker, Decisions

14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5

Initial Decision Maker, Extent of Authority

14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.3, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5

Injury or Damage to Person or Property

10.2.8, 10.4

Inspections

3.1.3, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 12.2.1, 13.5

Instructions to Bidders

1.1.1

Instructions to the Contractor

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.8.1, 5.2.1, 7, 8.2.2, 12, 13.5.2

Instruments of Service, Definition of

1.1.7

Insurance

3.18.1, 6.1.1, 7.3.7, 9.3.2, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, **11**

Insurance, Boiler and Machinery

11.3.2

Insurance, Contractor's Liability

11.1

Insurance, Effective Date of
8.2.2, 11.1.2

Insurance, Loss of Use

11.3.3

Insurance, Owner's Liability

11.2

Insurance, Property

10.2.5, **11.3**

Insurance, Stored Materials

9.3.2

INSURANCE AND BONDS

11

Insurance Companies, Consent to Partial Occupancy
9.9.1

Intent of the Contract Documents

1.2.1, 4.2.7, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 7.4

Interest

13.6

Interpretation

1.2.3, **1.4**, 4.1.1, 5.1, 6.1.2, 15.1.1

Interpretations, Written

4.2.11, 4.2.12, 15.1.4

Judgment on Final Award

15.4.2

Labor and Materials, Equipment

1.1.3, 1.1.6, **3.4**, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.7, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2, 10.2.1, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2

Labor Disputes

8.3.1

Laws and Regulations

1.5, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 4.1.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.1, 10.2.2, 11.1.1, 11.3, 13.1, 13.4, 13.5.1, 13.5.2, 13.6, 14, 15.2.8, 15.4

Liens

2.1.2, 9.3.3, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 15.2.8

Limitations, Statutes of

12.2.5, 13.7, 15.4.1.1

Limitations of Liability

2.3, 3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.10, 3.17, 3.18.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.12, 6.2.2, 9.4.2, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 10.2.5, 10.3.3, 11.1.2, 11.2, 11.3.7, 12.2.5, 13.4.2

Limitations of Time

2.1.2, 2.2, 2.4, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2.7, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4.1, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 11.1.3, 11.3.1.5, 11.3.6, 11.3.10, 12.2, 13.5, 13.7, 14, 15

Loss of Use Insurance

11.3.3

Material Suppliers

1.5, 3.12.1, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 5.2.1, 9.3, 9.4.2, 9.6, 9.10.5

Materials, Hazardous

10.2.4, 10.3

Materials, Labor, Equipment and

1.1.3, 1.1.6, 1.5.1, 3.4.1, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.7, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2
Means, Methods, Techniques, Sequences and

Procedures of Construction

3.3.1, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 9.4.2

Mechanic's Lien

2.1.2, 15.2.8

Mediation

8.3.1, 10.3.5, 10.3.6, 15.2.1, 15.2.5, 15.2.6, **15.3**, 15.4.1

Minor Changes in the Work

1.1.1, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1, **7.4**

MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

13

Modifications, Definition of

1.1.1

Modifications to the Contract

1.1.1, 1.1.2, 3.11, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 5.2.3, 7, 8.3.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 11.3.1

Mutual Responsibility

6.2

Nonconforming Work, Acceptance of

9.6.6, 9.9.3, **12.3**

Nonconforming Work, Rejection and Correction of

2.3, 2.4, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.4, 12.2.1

Notice

2.2.1, 2.3, 2.4, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.2, 3.12.9, 5.2.1, 9.7, 9.10, 10.2.2, 11.1.3, 12.2.2.1, 13.3, 13.5.1, 13.5.2, 14.1, 14.2, 15.2.8, 15.4.1

Notice, Written

2.3, 2.4, 3.3.1, 3.9.2, 3.12.9, 3.12.10, 5.2.1, 9.7, 9.10, 10.2.2, 10.3, 11.1.3, 11.3.6, 12.2.2.1, **13.3**, 14, 15.2.8, 15.4.1

Notice of Claims

3.7.4, 10.2.8, **15.1.2**, 15.4

Notice of Testing and Inspections

13.5.1, 13.5.2

Observations, Contractor's

3.2, 3.7.4

Occupancy

2.2.2, 9.6.6, 9.8, 11.3.1.5

Orders, Written

1.1.1, 2.3, 3.9.2, 7, 8.2.2, 11.3.9, 12.1, 12.2.2.1, 13.5.2, 14.3.1

OWNER

2

Owner, Definition of

2.1.1

Owner, Information and Services Required of the

2.1.2, **2.2**, 3.2.2, 3.12.10, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5, 9.3.2, 9.6.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 11.3, 13.5.1, 13.5.2, 14.1.1.4, 14.1.4, 15.1.3

Owner's Authority

1.5, 2.1.1, 2.3, 2.4, 3.4.2, 3.8.1, 3.12.10, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 4.1.3, 4.2.4, 4.2.9, 5.2.1, 5.2.4, 5.4.1, 6.1, 6.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 9.3.1, 9.3.2, 9.5.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 10.3.2, 11.1.3, 11.3.3, 11.3.10, 12.2.2, 12.3, 13.2.2, 14.3, 14.4, 15.2.7

Owner's Financial Capability

2.2.1, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4

Owner's Liability Insurance

11.2

Owner's Relationship with Subcontractors

1.1.2, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 9.6.4, 9.10.2, 14.2.2

Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work

2.4, 14.2.2

Owner's Right to Clean Up

6.3

Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to Award Separate Contracts

6.1

Owner's Right to Stop the Work

2.3

Owner's Right to Suspend the Work

14.3

Owner's Right to Terminate the Contract

14.2

Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications and Other Instruments of Service

1.1.1, 1.1.6, 1.1.7, **1.5**, 2.2.5, 3.2.2, 3.11, 3.17, 4.2.12, 5.3

Partial Occupancy or Use

9.6.6, **9.9**, 11.3.1.5

Patching, Cutting and

3.14, 6.2.5

Patents

3.17

Payment, Applications for

4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, **9.3**, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.8.5, 9.10.1, 14.2.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

Payment, Certificates for

4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, **9.4**, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 13.7, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4

Payment, Failure of

9.5.1.3, **9.7**, 9.10.2, 13.6, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2

Payment, Final

4.2.1, 4.2.9, 9.8.2, 9.10, 11.1.2, 11.1.3, 11.4.1, 12.3, 13.7, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

Payment Bond, Performance Bond and

7.3.7.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.4**

Payments, Progress

9.3, **9.6**, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 13.6, 14.2.3, 15.1.3

PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

9

Payments to Subcontractors

5.4.2, 9.5.1.3, 9.6.2, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 14.2.1.2

PCB

10.3.1

Performance Bond and Payment Bond

7.3.7.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.4**

Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws

2.2.2, **3.7**, 3.13, 7.3.7.4, 10.2.2

PERSONS AND PROPERTY, PROTECTION OF

10

Polychlorinated Biphenyl

10.3.1

Product Data, Definition of

3.12.2

Product Data and Samples, Shop Drawings

3.11, **3.12**, 4.2.7

Progress and Completion

4.2.2, **8.2**, 9.8, 9.9.1, 14.1.4, 15.1.3

Progress Payments

9.3, **9.6**, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 13.6, 14.2.3, 15.1.3

Project, Definition of

1.1.4

Project Representatives

4.2.10

Property Insurance

10.2.5, **11.3**

PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY

10

Regulations and Laws

1.5, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 4.1.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.1, 10.2.2, 11.1, 11.4, 13.1, 13.4, 13.5.1, 13.5.2, 13.6, 14, 15.2.8, 15.4

Rejection of Work

3.5, 4.2.6, 12.2.1

Releases and Waivers of Liens

9.10.2

Representations

3.2.1, 3.5, 3.12.6, 6.2.2, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.8.2, 9.10.1

Representatives

2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.9, 4.1.1, 4.2.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.10, 5.1.1, 5.1.2, 13.2.1
Responsibility for Those Performing the Work
3.3.2, 3.18, 4.2.3, 5.3, 6.1.3, 6.2, 6.3, 9.5.1, 10
Retainage
9.3.1, 9.6.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3
Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions by Contractor
3.2, 3.12.7, 6.1.3
Review of Contractor's Submittals by Owner and Architect
3.10.1, 3.10.2, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2, 5.2, 6.1.3, 9.2, 9.8.2
Review of Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples by Contractor
3.12
Rights and Remedies
1.1.2, 2.3, 2.4, 3.5, 3.7.4, 3.15.2, 4.2.6, 5.3, 5.4, 6.1, 6.3, 7.3.1, 8.3, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.2.5, 10.3, 12.2.2, 12.2.4, 13.4, 14, 15.4
Royalties, Patents and Copyrights
3.17
Rules and Notices for Arbitration
15.4.1
Safety of Persons and Property
10.2, 10.4
Safety Precautions and Programs
3.3.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 5.3, 10.1, 10.2, 10.4
Samples, Definition of
3.12.3
Samples, Shop Drawings, Product Data and
3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7
Samples at the Site, Documents and
3.11
Schedule of Values
9.2, 9.3.1
Schedules, Construction
3.10, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.5.2
Separate Contracts and Contractors
1.1.4, 3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 4.2.7, 6, 8.3.1, 12.1.2
Shop Drawings, Definition of
3.12.1
Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples
3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7
Site, Use of
3.13, 6.1.1, 6.2.1
Site Inspections
3.2.2, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 3.7.4, 4.2, 9.4.2, 9.10.1, 13.5
Site Visits, Architect's
3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.5
Special Inspections and Testing
4.2.6, 12.2.1, 13.5
Specifications, Definition of
1.1.6
Specifications
1.1.1, 1.1.6, 1.2.2, 1.5, 3.11, 3.12.10, 3.17, 4.2.14
Statute of Limitations
13.7, 15.4.1.1
Stopping the Work
2.3, 9.7, 10.3, 14.1
Stored Materials

6.2.1, 9.3.2, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.4
Subcontractor, Definition of
5.1.1
SUBCONTRACTORS
5
Subcontractors, Work by
1.2.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.1, 4.2.3, 5.2.3, 5.3, 5.4, 9.3.1.2, 9.6.7
Subcontractual Relations
5.3, 5.4, 9.3.1.2, 9.6, 9.10, 10.2.1, 14.1, 14.2.1
Submittals
3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 7.3.7, 9.2, 9.3, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 11.1.3
Submittal Schedule
3.10.2, 3.12.5, 4.2.7
Subrogation, Waivers of
6.1.1, 11.3.7
Substantial Completion
4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10.3, 12.2, 13.7
Substantial Completion, Definition of
9.8.1
Substitution of Subcontractors
5.2.3, 5.2.4
Substitution of Architect
4.1.3
Substitutions of Materials
3.4.2, 3.5, 7.3.8
Sub-subcontractor, Definition of
5.1.2
Subsurface Conditions
3.7.4
Successors and Assigns
13.2
Superintendent
3.9, 10.2.6
Supervision and Construction Procedures
1.2.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4, 7.1.3, 7.3.7, 8.2, 8.3.1, 9.4.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.3
Surety
5.4.1.2, 9.8.5, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 14.2.2, 15.2.7
Surety, Consent of
9.10.2, 9.10.3
Surveys
2.2.3
Suspension by the Owner for Convenience
14.3
Suspension of the Work
5.4.2, 14.3
Suspension or Termination of the Contract
5.4.1.1, 14
Taxes
3.6, 3.8.2.1, 7.3.7.4
Termination by the Contractor
14.1, 15.1.6
Termination by the Owner for Cause
5.4.1.1, 14.2, 15.1.6
Termination by the Owner for Convenience
14.4
Termination of the Architect

4.1.3
Termination of the Contractor
14.2.2
TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT
14
Tests and Inspections
3.1.3, 3.3.3, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 10.3.2, 11.4.1, 12.2.1, **13.5**
TIME
8
Time, Delays and Extensions of
3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, **8.3**, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 10.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.5, 15.2.5
Time Limits
2.1.2, 2.2, 2.4, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 11.1.3, 12.2, 13.5, 13.7, 14, 15.1.2, 15.4
Time Limits on Claims
3.7.4, 10.2.8, **13.7**, 15.1.2
Title to Work
9.3.2, 9.3.3
Transmission of Data in Digital Form
1.6
UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK
12
Uncovering of Work
12.1
Unforeseen Conditions, Concealed or Unknown
3.7.4, 8.3.1, 10.3
Unit Prices
7.3.3.2, 7.3.4
Use of Documents

1.1.1, 1.5, 2.2.5, 3.12.6, 5.3
Use of Site
3.13, 6.1.1, 6.2.1
Values, Schedule of
9.2, 9.3.1
Waiver of Claims by the Architect
13.4.2
Waiver of Claims by the Contractor
9.10.5, 13.4.2, 15.1.6
Waiver of Claims by the Owner
9.9.3, 9.10.3, 9.10.4, 12.2.2.1, 13.4.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.6
Waiver of Consequential Damages
14.2.4, 15.1.6
Waiver of Liens
9.10.2, 9.10.4
Waivers of Subrogation
6.1.1, **11.3.7**
Warranty
3.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.4, 12.2.2, 13.7
Weather Delays
15.1.5.2
Work, Definition of
1.1.3
Written Consent
1.5.2, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.12.8, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.3.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 11.4.1, 13.2, 13.4.2, 15.4.4.2
Written Interpretations
4.2.11, 4.2.12
Written Notice
2.3, 2.4, 3.3.1, 3.9, 3.12.9, 3.12.10, 5.2.1, 8.2.2, 9.7, 9.10, 10.2.2, 10.3, 11.1.3, 12.2.2, 12.2.4, **13.3**, 14, 15.4.1
Written Orders
1.1.1, 2.3, 3.9, 7, 8.2.2, 12.1, 12.2, 13.5.2, 14.3.1, 15.1.2

ARTICLE 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

§ 1.1 BASIC DEFINITIONS

§ 1.1.1 THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

The Contract Documents are enumerated in the Agreement between the Owner and Contractor (hereinafter the Agreement) and consist of the Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, Addenda issued prior to execution of the Contract, other documents listed in the Agreement and Modifications issued after execution of the Contract. A Modification is (1) a written amendment to the Contract signed by both parties, (2) a Change Order, (3) a Construction Change Directive or (4) a written order for a minor change in the Work issued by the Architect. Unless specifically enumerated in the Agreement, the Contract Documents do not include the advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, sample forms, other information furnished by the Owner in anticipation of receiving bids or proposals, the Contractor's bid or proposal, or portions of Addenda relating to bidding requirements.

§ 1.1.2 THE CONTRACT

The Contract Documents form the Contract for Construction. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations or agreements, either written or oral. The Contract may be amended or modified only by a Modification. The Contract Documents shall not be construed to create a contractual relationship of any kind (1) between the Contractor and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, (2) between the Owner and a Subcontractor or a Sub-subcontractor, (3) between the Owner and the Architect or the Architect's consultants or (4) between any persons or entities other than the Owner and the Contractor. The Architect shall, however, be entitled to performance and enforcement of obligations under the Contract intended to facilitate performance of the Architect's duties.

§ 1.1.3 THE WORK

The term "Work" means the construction and services required by the Contract Documents, whether completed or partially completed, and includes all other labor, materials, equipment and services provided or to be provided by the Contractor to fulfill the Contractor's obligations. The Work may constitute the whole or a part of the Project.

§ 1.1.4 THE PROJECT

The Project is the total construction of which the Work performed under the Contract Documents may be the whole or a part and which may include construction by the Owner and by separate contractors.

§ 1.1.5 THE DRAWINGS

The Drawings are the graphic and pictorial portions of the Contract Documents showing the design, location and dimensions of the Work, generally including plans, elevations, sections, details, schedules and diagrams.

§ 1.1.6 THE SPECIFICATIONS

The Specifications are that portion of the Contract Documents consisting of the written requirements for materials, equipment, systems, standards and workmanship for the Work, and performance of related services.

§ 1.1.7 INSTRUMENTS OF SERVICE

Instruments of Service are representations, in any medium of expression now known or later developed, of the tangible and intangible creative work performed by the Architect and the Architect's consultants under their respective professional services agreements. Instruments of Service may include, without limitation, studies, surveys, models, sketches, drawings, specifications, and other similar materials.

§ 1.1.8 INITIAL DECISION MAKER

The Initial Decision Maker is the person identified in the Agreement to render initial decisions on Claims in accordance with Section 15.2 and certify termination of the Agreement under Section 14.2.2.

§ 1.2 CORRELATION AND INTENT OF THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

§ 1.2.1 The intent of the Contract Documents is to include all items necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work by the Contractor. The Contract Documents are complementary, and what is required by one shall be as binding as if required by all; performance by the Contractor shall be required only to the extent consistent with the Contract Documents and reasonably inferable from them as being necessary to produce the indicated results.

§ 1.2.2 Organization of the Specifications into divisions, sections and articles, and arrangement of Drawings shall not control the Contractor in dividing the Work among Subcontractors or in establishing the extent of Work to be performed by any trade.

§ 1.2.3 Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, words that have well-known technical or construction industry meanings are used in the Contract Documents in accordance with such recognized meanings.

§ 1.3 CAPITALIZATION

Terms capitalized in these General Conditions include those that are (1) specifically defined, (2) the titles of numbered articles or (3) the titles of other documents published by the American Institute of Architects.

§ 1.4 INTERPRETATION

In the interest of brevity the Contract Documents frequently omit modifying words such as “all” and “any” and articles such as “the” and “an,” but the fact that a modifier or an article is absent from one statement and appears in another is not intended to affect the interpretation of either statement.

§ 1.5 OWNERSHIP AND USE OF DRAWINGS, SPECIFICATIONS AND OTHER INSTRUMENTS OF SERVICE

§ 1.5.1 The Architect and the Architect’s consultants shall be deemed the authors and owners of their respective Instruments of Service, including the Drawings and Specifications, and will retain all common law, statutory and other reserved rights, including copyrights. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and material or equipment suppliers shall not own or claim a copyright in the Instruments of Service. Submittal or distribution to meet official regulatory requirements or for other purposes in connection with this Project is not to be construed as publication in derogation of the Architect’s or Architect’s consultants’ reserved rights.

§ 1.5.2 The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors and material or equipment suppliers are authorized to use and reproduce the Instruments of Service provided to them solely and exclusively for execution of the Work. All copies made under this authorization shall bear the copyright notice, if any, shown on the Instruments of Service. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and material or equipment suppliers may not use the Instruments of Service on other projects or for additions to this Project outside the scope of the Work without the specific written consent of the Owner, Architect and the Architect’s consultants.

§ 1.6 TRANSMISSION OF DATA IN DIGITAL FORM

If the parties intend to transmit Instruments of Service or any other information or documentation in digital form, they shall endeavor to establish necessary protocols governing such transmissions, unless otherwise already provided in the Agreement or the Contract Documents.

ARTICLE 2 OWNER

§ 2.1 GENERAL

§ 2.1.1 The Owner is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Owner shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Owner with respect to all matters requiring the Owner’s approval or authorization. Except as otherwise provided in Section 4.2.1, the Architect does not have such authority. The term “Owner” means the Owner or the Owner’s authorized representative.

§ 2.1.2 The Owner shall furnish to the Contractor within fifteen days after receipt of a written request, information necessary and relevant for the Contractor to evaluate, give notice of or enforce mechanic’s lien rights. Such information shall include a correct statement of the record legal title to the property on which the Project is located, usually referred to as the site, and the Owner’s interest therein.

§ 2.2 INFORMATION AND SERVICES REQUIRED OF THE OWNER

§ 2.2.1 Prior to commencement of the Work, the Contractor may request in writing that the Owner provide reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner’s obligations under the Contract. Thereafter, the Contractor may only request such evidence if (1) the Owner fails to make payments to the Contractor as the Contract Documents require; (2) a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum; or (3) the Contractor identifies in writing a reasonable concern regarding the Owner’s ability to make payment when due. The Owner shall furnish such evidence as a condition precedent to commencement or continuation of the Work or the portion of the Work affected by a material change. After the Owner furnishes the evidence, the Owner shall not materially vary such financial arrangements without prior notice to the Contractor.

§ 2.2.2 Except for permits and fees that are the responsibility of the Contractor under the Contract Documents, including those required under Section 3.7.1, the Owner shall secure and pay for necessary approvals, easements, assessments and charges required for construction, use or occupancy of permanent structures or for permanent changes in existing facilities.

§ 2.2.3 The Owner shall furnish surveys describing physical characteristics, legal limitations and utility locations for the site of the Project, and a legal description of the site. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely on the accuracy of information furnished by the Owner but shall exercise proper precautions relating to the safe performance of the Work.

§ 2.2.4 The Owner shall furnish information or services required of the Owner by the Contract Documents with reasonable promptness. The Owner shall also furnish any other information or services under the Owner's control and relevant to the Contractor's performance of the Work with reasonable promptness after receiving the Contractor's written request for such information or services.

§ 2.2.5 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor one copy of the Contract Documents for purposes of making reproductions pursuant to Section 1.5.2.

§ 2.3 OWNER'S RIGHT TO STOP THE WORK

If the Contractor fails to correct Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents as required by Section 12.2 or repeatedly fails to carry out Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Owner may issue a written order to the Contractor to stop the Work, or any portion thereof, until the cause for such order has been eliminated; however, the right of the Owner to stop the Work shall not give rise to a duty on the part of the Owner to exercise this right for the benefit of the Contractor or any other person or entity, except to the extent required by Section 6.1.3.

§ 2.4 OWNER'S RIGHT TO CARRY OUT THE WORK

If the Contractor defaults or neglects to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents and fails within a ten-day period after receipt of written notice from the Owner to commence and continue correction of such default or neglect with diligence and promptness, the Owner may, without prejudice to other remedies the Owner may have, correct such deficiencies. In such case an appropriate Change Order shall be issued deducting from payments then or thereafter due the Contractor the reasonable cost of correcting such deficiencies, including Owner's expenses and compensation for the Architect's additional services made necessary by such default, neglect or failure. Such action by the Owner and amounts charged to the Contractor are both subject to prior approval of the Architect. If payments then or thereafter due the Contractor are not sufficient to cover such amounts, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner.

ARTICLE 3 CONTRACTOR

§ 3.1 GENERAL

§ 3.1.1 The Contractor is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Contractor shall be lawfully licensed, if required in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Contractor shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Contractor with respect to all matters under this Contract. The term "Contractor" means the Contractor or the Contractor's authorized representative.

§ 3.1.2 The Contractor shall perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 3.1.3 The Contractor shall not be relieved of obligations to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents either by activities or duties of the Architect in the Architect's administration of the Contract, or by tests, inspections or approvals required or performed by persons or entities other than the Contractor.

§ 3.2 REVIEW OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS AND FIELD CONDITIONS BY CONTRACTOR

§ 3.2.1 Execution of the Contract by the Contractor is a representation that the Contractor has visited the site, become generally familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed and correlated personal observations with requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 3.2.2 Because the Contract Documents are complementary, the Contractor shall, before starting each portion of the Work, carefully study and compare the various Contract Documents relative to that portion of the Work, as well as the information furnished by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.2.3, shall take field measurements of any existing conditions related to that portion of the Work, and shall observe any conditions at the site affecting it. These obligations are for the purpose of facilitating coordination and construction by the Contractor and are not for the purpose of discovering errors, omissions, or inconsistencies in the Contract Documents; however, the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any errors, inconsistencies or omissions discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require. It is recognized that the Contractor's review is made in the Contractor's capacity as a contractor and not as a licensed design professional, unless otherwise specifically provided in the Contract Documents.

§ 3.2.3 The Contractor is not required to ascertain that the Contract Documents are in accordance with applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, but the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any nonconformity discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require.

§ 3.2.4 If the Contractor believes that additional cost or time is involved because of clarifications or instructions the Architect issues in response to the Contractor's notices or requests for information pursuant to Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall make Claims as provided in Article 15. If the Contractor fails to perform the obligations of Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall pay such costs and damages to the Owner as would have been avoided if the Contractor had performed such obligations. If the Contractor performs those obligations, the Contractor shall not be liable to the Owner or Architect for damages resulting from errors, inconsistencies or omissions in the Contract Documents, for differences between field measurements or conditions and the Contract Documents, or for nonconformities of the Contract Documents to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities.

§ 3.3 SUPERVISION AND CONSTRUCTION PROCEDURES

§ 3.3.1 The Contractor shall supervise and direct the Work, using the Contractor's best skill and attention. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for, and have control over, construction means, methods, techniques, sequences and procedures and for coordinating all portions of the Work under the Contract, unless the Contract Documents give other specific instructions concerning these matters. If the Contract Documents give specific instructions concerning construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures, the Contractor shall evaluate the jobsite safety thereof and, except as stated below, shall be fully and solely responsible for the jobsite safety of such means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures. If the Contractor determines that such means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures may not be safe, the Contractor shall give timely written notice to the Owner and Architect and shall not proceed with that portion of the Work without further written instructions from the Architect. If the Contractor is then instructed to proceed with the required means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures without acceptance of changes proposed by the Contractor, the Owner shall be solely responsible for any loss or damage arising solely from those Owner-required means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures.

§ 3.3.2 The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner for acts and omissions of the Contractor's employees, Subcontractors and their agents and employees, and other persons or entities performing portions of the Work for, or on behalf of, the Contractor or any of its Subcontractors.

§ 3.3.3 The Contractor shall be responsible for inspection of portions of Work already performed to determine that such portions are in proper condition to receive subsequent Work.

§ 3.4 LABOR AND MATERIALS

§ 3.4.1 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide and pay for labor, materials, equipment, tools, construction equipment and machinery, water, heat, utilities, transportation, and other facilities and services necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work, whether temporary or permanent and whether or not incorporated or to be incorporated in the Work.

§ 3.4.2 Except in the case of minor changes in the Work authorized by the Architect in accordance with Sections 3.12.8 or 7.4, the Contractor may make substitutions only with the consent of the Owner, after evaluation by the Architect and in accordance with a Change Order or Construction Change Directive.

§ 3.4.3 The Contractor shall enforce strict discipline and good order among the Contractor's employees and other persons carrying out the Work. The Contractor shall not permit employment of unfit persons or persons not properly skilled in tasks assigned to them.

§ 3.5 WARRANTY

The Contractor warrants to the Owner and Architect that materials and equipment furnished under the Contract will be of good quality and new unless the Contract Documents require or permit otherwise. The Contractor further warrants that the Work will conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents and will be free from defects, except for those inherent in the quality of the Work the Contract Documents require or permit. Work, materials, or equipment not conforming to these requirements may be considered defective. The Contractor's warranty excludes remedy for damage or defect caused by abuse, alterations to the Work not executed by the Contractor, improper or insufficient maintenance, improper operation, or normal wear and tear and normal usage. If required by the Architect, the Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence as to the kind and quality of materials and equipment.

§ 3.6 TAXES

The Contractor shall pay sales, consumer, use and similar taxes for the Work provided by the Contractor that are legally enacted when bids are received or negotiations concluded, whether or not yet effective or merely scheduled to go into effect.

§ 3.7 PERMITS, FEES, NOTICES AND COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS

§ 3.7.1 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall secure and pay for the building permit as well as for other permits, fees, licenses, and inspections by government agencies necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work that are customarily secured after execution of the Contract and legally required at the time bids are received or negotiations concluded.

§ 3.7.2 The Contractor shall comply with and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities applicable to performance of the Work.

§ 3.7.3 If the Contractor performs Work knowing it to be contrary to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, the Contractor shall assume appropriate responsibility for such Work and shall bear the costs attributable to correction.

§ 3.7.4 Concealed or Unknown Conditions. If the Contractor encounters conditions at the site that are (1) subsurface or otherwise concealed physical conditions that differ materially from those indicated in the Contract Documents or (2) unknown physical conditions of an unusual nature, that differ materially from those ordinarily found to exist and generally recognized as inherent in construction activities of the character provided for in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall promptly provide notice to the Owner and the Architect before conditions are disturbed and in no event later than 21 days after first observance of the conditions. The Architect will promptly investigate such conditions and, if the Architect determines that they differ materially and cause an increase or decrease in the Contractor's cost of, or time required for, performance of any part of the Work, will recommend an equitable adjustment in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. If the Architect determines that the conditions at the site are not materially different from those indicated in the Contract Documents and that no change in the terms of the Contract is justified, the Architect shall promptly notify the Owner and Contractor in writing, stating the reasons. If either party disputes the Architect's determination or recommendation, that party may proceed as provided in Article 15.

§ 3.7.5 If, in the course of the Work, the Contractor encounters human remains or recognizes the existence of burial markers, archaeological sites or wetlands not indicated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall immediately suspend any operations that would affect them and shall notify the Owner and Architect. Upon receipt of such notice, the Owner shall promptly take any action necessary to obtain governmental authorization required to resume the operations. The Contractor shall continue to suspend such operations until otherwise instructed by the Owner but shall continue with all other operations that do not affect those remains or features. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time arising from the existence of such remains or features may be made as provided in Article 15.

§ 3.8 ALLOWANCES

§ 3.8.1 The Contractor shall include in the Contract Sum all allowances stated in the Contract Documents. Items covered by allowances shall be supplied for such amounts and by such persons or entities as the Owner may direct,

but the Contractor shall not be required to employ persons or entities to whom the Contractor has reasonable objection.

§ 3.8.2 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents,

- .1 Allowances shall cover the cost to the Contractor of materials and equipment delivered at the site and all required taxes, less applicable trade discounts;
- .2 Contractor's costs for unloading and handling at the site, labor, installation costs, overhead, profit and other expenses contemplated for stated allowance amounts shall be included in the Contract Sum but not in the allowances; and
- .3 Whenever costs are more than or less than allowances, the Contract Sum shall be adjusted accordingly by Change Order. The amount of the Change Order shall reflect (1) the difference between actual costs and the allowances under Section 3.8.2.1 and (2) changes in Contractor's costs under Section 3.8.2.2.

§ 3.8.3 Materials and equipment under an allowance shall be selected by the Owner with reasonable promptness.

§ 3.9 SUPERINTENDENT

§ 3.9.1 The Contractor shall employ a competent superintendent and necessary assistants who shall be in attendance at the Project site during performance of the Work. The superintendent shall represent the Contractor, and communications given to the superintendent shall be as binding as if given to the Contractor.

§ 3.9.2 The Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall furnish in writing to the Owner through the Architect the name and qualifications of a proposed superintendent. The Architect may reply within 14 days to the Contractor in writing stating (1) whether the Owner or the Architect has reasonable objection to the proposed superintendent or (2) that the Architect requires additional time to review. Failure of the Architect to reply within the 14 day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

§ 3.9.3 The Contractor shall not employ a proposed superintendent to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not change the superintendent without the Owner's consent, which shall not unreasonably be withheld or delayed.

§ 3.10 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULES

§ 3.10.1 The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract, shall prepare and submit for the Owner's and Architect's information a Contractor's construction schedule for the Work. The schedule shall not exceed time limits current under the Contract Documents, shall be revised at appropriate intervals as required by the conditions of the Work and Project, shall be related to the entire Project to the extent required by the Contract Documents, and shall provide for expeditious and practicable execution of the Work.

§ 3.10.2 The Contractor shall prepare a submittal schedule, promptly after being awarded the Contract and thereafter as necessary to maintain a current submittal schedule, and shall submit the schedule(s) for the Architect's approval. The Architect's approval shall not unreasonably be delayed or withheld. The submittal schedule shall (1) be coordinated with the Contractor's construction schedule, and (2) allow the Architect reasonable time to review submittals. If the Contractor fails to submit a submittal schedule, the Contractor shall not be entitled to any increase in Contract Sum or extension of Contract Time based on the time required for review of submittals.

§ 3.10.3 The Contractor shall perform the Work in general accordance with the most recent schedules submitted to the Owner and Architect.

§ 3.11 DOCUMENTS AND SAMPLES AT THE SITE

The Contractor shall maintain at the site for the Owner one copy of the Drawings, Specifications, Addenda, Change Orders and other Modifications, in good order and marked currently to indicate field changes and selections made during construction, and one copy of approved Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples and similar required submittals. These shall be available to the Architect and shall be delivered to the Architect for submittal to the Owner upon completion of the Work as a record of the Work as constructed.

§ 3.12 SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA AND SAMPLES

§ 3.12.1 Shop Drawings are drawings, diagrams, schedules and other data specially prepared for the Work by the Contractor or a Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor, manufacturer, supplier or distributor to illustrate some portion of the Work.

§ 3.12.2 Product Data are illustrations, standard schedules, performance charts, instructions, brochures, diagrams and other information furnished by the Contractor to illustrate materials or equipment for some portion of the Work.

§ 3.12.3 Samples are physical examples that illustrate materials, equipment or workmanship and establish standards by which the Work will be judged.

§ 3.12.4 Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples and similar submittals are not Contract Documents. Their purpose is to demonstrate the way by which the Contractor proposes to conform to the information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents for those portions of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittals. Review by the Architect is subject to the limitations of Section 4.2.7. Informational submittals upon which the Architect is not expected to take responsive action may be so identified in the Contract Documents. Submittals that are not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.

§ 3.12.5 The Contractor shall review for compliance with the Contract Documents, approve and submit to the Architect Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples and similar submittals required by the Contract Documents in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the Work or in the activities of the Owner or of separate contractors.

§ 3.12.6 By submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples and similar submittals, the Contractor represents to the Owner and Architect that the Contractor has (1) reviewed and approved them, (2) determined and verified materials, field measurements and field construction criteria related thereto, or will do so and (3) checked and coordinated the information contained within such submittals with the requirements of the Work and of the Contract Documents.

§ 3.12.7 The Contractor shall perform no portion of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittal and review of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples or similar submittals until the respective submittal has been approved by the Architect.

§ 3.12.8 The Work shall be in accordance with approved submittals except that the Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from requirements of the Contract Documents by the Architect's approval of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples or similar submittals unless the Contractor has specifically informed the Architect in writing of such deviation at the time of submittal and (1) the Architect has given written approval to the specific deviation as a minor change in the Work, or (2) a Change Order or Construction Change Directive has been issued authorizing the deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples or similar submittals by the Architect's approval thereof.

§ 3.12.9 The Contractor shall direct specific attention, in writing or on resubmitted Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples or similar submittals, to revisions other than those requested by the Architect on previous submittals. In the absence of such written notice, the Architect's approval of a resubmission shall not apply to such revisions.

§ 3.12.10 The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services that constitute the practice of architecture or engineering unless such services are specifically required by the Contract Documents for a portion of the Work or unless the Contractor needs to provide such services in order to carry out the Contractor's responsibilities for construction means, methods, techniques, sequences and procedures. The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services in violation of applicable law. If professional design services or certifications by a design professional related to systems, materials or equipment are specifically required of the Contractor by the Contract Documents, the Owner and the Architect will specify all performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. The Contractor shall cause such services or certifications to be provided by a properly licensed design professional, whose signature and seal shall appear on all drawings, calculations, specifications, certifications, Shop Drawings and other submittals prepared by such professional. Shop Drawings and other submittals related to the Work designed or certified by such professional, if prepared by others, shall bear such professional's written approval when submitted to the Architect. The Owner and the Architect shall be entitled

to rely upon the adequacy, accuracy and completeness of the services, certifications and approvals performed or provided by such design professionals, provided the Owner and Architect have specified to the Contractor all performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. Pursuant to this Section 3.12.10, the Architect will review, approve or take other appropriate action on submittals only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall not be responsible for the adequacy of the performance and design criteria specified in the Contract Documents.

§ 3.13 USE OF SITE

The Contractor shall confine operations at the site to areas permitted by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities and the Contract Documents and shall not unreasonably encumber the site with materials or equipment.

§ 3.14 CUTTING AND PATCHING

§ 3.14.1 The Contractor shall be responsible for cutting, fitting or patching required to complete the Work or to make its parts fit together properly. All areas requiring cutting, fitting and patching shall be restored to the condition existing prior to the cutting, fitting and patching, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents.

§ 3.14.2 The Contractor shall not damage or endanger a portion of the Work or fully or partially completed construction of the Owner or separate contractors by cutting, patching or otherwise altering such construction, or by excavation. The Contractor shall not cut or otherwise alter such construction by the Owner or a separate contractor except with written consent of the Owner and of such separate contractor; such consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. The Contractor shall not unreasonably withhold from the Owner or a separate contractor the Contractor's consent to cutting or otherwise altering the Work.

§ 3.15 CLEANING UP

§ 3.15.1 The Contractor shall keep the premises and surrounding area free from accumulation of waste materials or rubbish caused by operations under the Contract. At completion of the Work, the Contractor shall remove waste materials, rubbish, the Contractor's tools, construction equipment, machinery and surplus materials from and about the Project.

§ 3.15.2 If the Contractor fails to clean up as provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so and Owner shall be entitled to reimbursement from the Contractor.

§ 3.16 ACCESS TO WORK

The Contractor shall provide the Owner and Architect access to the Work in preparation and progress wherever located.

§ 3.17 ROYALTIES, PATENTS AND COPYRIGHTS

The Contractor shall pay all royalties and license fees. The Contractor shall defend suits or claims for infringement of copyrights and patent rights and shall hold the Owner and Architect harmless from loss on account thereof, but shall not be responsible for such defense or loss when a particular design, process or product of a particular manufacturer or manufacturers is required by the Contract Documents, or where the copyright violations are contained in Drawings, Specifications or other documents prepared by the Owner or Architect. However, if the Contractor has reason to believe that the required design, process or product is an infringement of a copyright or a patent, the Contractor shall be responsible for such loss unless such information is promptly furnished to the Architect.

§ 3.18 INDEMNIFICATION

§ 3.18.1 To the fullest extent permitted by law the Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, Architect, Architect's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work, provided that such claim, damage, loss or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), but only to the extent caused by the negligent acts or omissions of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, regardless of whether or not such claim, damage, loss or expense is caused in part by a party indemnified hereunder. Such obligation shall not be construed to negate, abridge, or reduce other rights or obligations of indemnity that would otherwise exist as to a party or person described in this Section

3.18.

§ 3.18.2 In claims against any person or entity indemnified under this Section 3.18 by an employee of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, the indemnification obligation under Section 3.18.1 shall not be limited by a limitation on amount or type of damages, compensation or benefits payable by or for the Contractor or a Subcontractor under workers' compensation acts, disability benefit acts or other employee benefit acts.

ARTICLE 4 ARCHITECT

§ 4.1 GENERAL

§ 4.1.1 The Owner shall retain an architect lawfully licensed to practice architecture or an entity lawfully practicing architecture in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. That person or entity is identified as the Architect in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number.

§ 4.1.2 Duties, responsibilities and limitations of authority of the Architect as set forth in the Contract Documents shall not be restricted, modified or extended without written consent of the Owner, Contractor and Architect. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld.

§ 4.1.3 If the employment of the Architect is terminated, the Owner shall employ a successor architect as to whom the Contractor has no reasonable objection and whose status under the Contract Documents shall be that of the Architect.

§ 4.2 ADMINISTRATION OF THE CONTRACT

§ 4.2.1 The Architect will provide administration of the Contract as described in the Contract Documents and will be an Owner's representative during construction until the date the Architect issues the final Certificate for Payment. The Architect will have authority to act on behalf of the Owner only to the extent provided in the Contract Documents.

§ 4.2.2 The Architect will visit the site at intervals appropriate to the stage of construction, or as otherwise agreed with the Owner, to become generally familiar with the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and to determine in general if the Work observed is being performed in a manner indicating that the Work, when fully completed, will be in accordance with the Contract Documents. However, the Architect will not be required to make exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work. The Architect will not have control over, charge of, or responsibility for, the construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures, or for the safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work, since these are solely the Contractor's rights and responsibilities under the Contract Documents, except as provided in Section 3.3.1.

§ 4.2.3 On the basis of the site visits, the Architect will keep the Owner reasonably informed about the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and report to the Owner (1) known deviations from the Contract Documents and from the most recent construction schedule submitted by the Contractor, and (2) defects and deficiencies observed in the Work. The Architect will not be responsible for the Contractor's failure to perform the Work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents. The Architect will not have control over or charge of and will not be responsible for acts or omissions of the Contractor, Subcontractors, or their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

§ 4.2.4 COMMUNICATIONS FACILITATING CONTRACT ADMINISTRATION

Except as otherwise provided in the Contract Documents or when direct communications have been specially authorized, the Owner and Contractor shall endeavor to communicate with each other through the Architect about matters arising out of or relating to the Contract. Communications by and with the Architect's consultants shall be through the Architect. Communications by and with Subcontractors and material suppliers shall be through the Contractor. Communications by and with separate contractors shall be through the Owner.

§ 4.2.5 Based on the Architect's evaluations of the Contractor's Applications for Payment, the Architect will review and certify the amounts due the Contractor and will issue Certificates for Payment in such amounts.

§ 4.2.6 The Architect has authority to reject Work that does not conform to the Contract Documents. Whenever the Architect considers it necessary or advisable, the Architect will have authority to require inspection or testing of the Work in accordance with Sections 13.5.2 and 13.5.3, whether or not such Work is fabricated, installed or completed.

However, neither this authority of the Architect nor a decision made in good faith either to exercise or not to exercise such authority shall give rise to a duty or responsibility of the Architect to the Contractor, Subcontractors, material and equipment suppliers, their agents or employees, or other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

§ 4.2.7 The Architect will review and approve, or take other appropriate action upon, the Contractor's submittals such as Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples, but only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents. The Architect's action will be taken in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness while allowing sufficient time in the Architect's professional judgment to permit adequate review. Review of such submittals is not conducted for the purpose of determining the accuracy and completeness of other details such as dimensions and quantities, or for substantiating instructions for installation or performance of equipment or systems, all of which remain the responsibility of the Contractor as required by the Contract Documents. The Architect's review of the Contractor's submittals shall not relieve the Contractor of the obligations under Sections 3.3, 3.5 and 3.12. The Architect's review shall not constitute approval of safety precautions or, unless otherwise specifically stated by the Architect, of any construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures. The Architect's approval of a specific item shall not indicate approval of an assembly of which the item is a component.

§ 4.2.8 The Architect will prepare Change Orders and Construction Change Directives, and may authorize minor changes in the Work as provided in Section 7.4. The Architect will investigate and make determinations and recommendations regarding concealed and unknown conditions as provided in Section 3.7.4.

§ 4.2.9 The Architect will conduct inspections to determine the date or dates of Substantial Completion and the date of final completion; issue Certificates of Substantial Completion pursuant to Section 9.8; receive and forward to the Owner, for the Owner's review and records, written warranties and related documents required by the Contract and assembled by the Contractor pursuant to Section 9.10; and issue a final Certificate for Payment pursuant to Section 9.10.

§ 4.2.10 If the Owner and Architect agree, the Architect will provide one or more project representatives to assist in carrying out the Architect's responsibilities at the site. The duties, responsibilities and limitations of authority of such project representatives shall be as set forth in an exhibit to be incorporated in the Contract Documents.

§ 4.2.11 The Architect will interpret and decide matters concerning performance under, and requirements of, the Contract Documents on written request of either the Owner or Contractor. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness.

§ 4.2.12 Interpretations and decisions of the Architect will be consistent with the intent of, and reasonably inferable from, the Contract Documents and will be in writing or in the form of drawings. When making such interpretations and decisions, the Architect will endeavor to secure faithful performance by both Owner and Contractor, will not show partiality to either and will not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

§ 4.2.13 The Architect's decisions on matters relating to aesthetic effect will be final if consistent with the intent expressed in the Contract Documents.

§ 4.2.14 The Architect will review and respond to requests for information about the Contract Documents. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness. If appropriate, the Architect will prepare and issue supplemental Drawings and Specifications in response to the requests for information.

ARTICLE 5 SUBCONTRACTORS

§ 5.1 DEFINITIONS

§ 5.1.1 A Subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct contract with the Contractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Subcontractor. The term "Subcontractor" does not include a separate contractor or subcontractors of a separate contractor.

§ 5.1.2 A Sub-subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct or indirect contract with a Subcontractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term “Sub-subcontractor” is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Sub-subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Sub-subcontractor.

§ 5.2 AWARD OF SUBCONTRACTS AND OTHER CONTRACTS FOR PORTIONS OF THE WORK

§ 5.2.1 Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents or the bidding requirements, the Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall furnish in writing to the Owner through the Architect the names of persons or entities (including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design) proposed for each principal portion of the Work. The Architect may reply within 14 days to the Contractor in writing stating (1) whether the Owner or the Architect has reasonable objection to any such proposed person or entity or (2) that the Architect requires additional time for review. Failure of the Owner or Architect to reply within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

§ 5.2.2 The Contractor shall not contract with a proposed person or entity to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not be required to contract with anyone to whom the Contractor has made reasonable objection.

§ 5.2.3 If the Owner or Architect has reasonable objection to a person or entity proposed by the Contractor, the Contractor shall propose another to whom the Owner or Architect has no reasonable objection. If the proposed but rejected Subcontractor was reasonably capable of performing the Work, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be increased or decreased by the difference, if any, occasioned by such change, and an appropriate Change Order shall be issued before commencement of the substitute Subcontractor’s Work. However, no increase in the Contract Sum or Contract Time shall be allowed for such change unless the Contractor has acted promptly and responsively in submitting names as required.

§ 5.2.4 The Contractor shall not substitute a Subcontractor, person or entity previously selected if the Owner or Architect makes reasonable objection to such substitution.

§ 5.3 SUBCONTRACTUAL RELATIONS

By appropriate agreement, written where legally required for validity, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor, to the extent of the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor, to be bound to the Contractor by terms of the Contract Documents, and to assume toward the Contractor all the obligations and responsibilities, including the responsibility for safety of the Subcontractor’s Work, which the Contractor, by these Documents, assumes toward the Owner and Architect. Each subcontract agreement shall preserve and protect the rights of the Owner and Architect under the Contract Documents with respect to the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor so that subcontracting thereof will not prejudice such rights, and shall allow to the Subcontractor, unless specifically provided otherwise in the subcontract agreement, the benefit of all rights, remedies and redress against the Contractor that the Contractor, by the Contract Documents, has against the Owner. Where appropriate, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor to enter into similar agreements with Sub-subcontractors. The Contractor shall make available to each proposed Subcontractor, prior to the execution of the subcontract agreement, copies of the Contract Documents to which the Subcontractor will be bound, and, upon written request of the Subcontractor, identify to the Subcontractor terms and conditions of the proposed subcontract agreement that may be at variance with the Contract Documents. Subcontractors will similarly make copies of applicable portions of such documents available to their respective proposed Sub-subcontractors.

§ 5.4 CONTINGENT ASSIGNMENT OF SUBCONTRACTS

§ 5.4.1 Each subcontract agreement for a portion of the Work is assigned by the Contractor to the Owner, provided that

- .1 assignment is effective only after termination of the Contract by the Owner for cause pursuant to Section 14.2 and only for those subcontract agreements that the Owner accepts by notifying the Subcontractor and Contractor in writing; and
- .2 assignment is subject to the prior rights of the surety, if any, obligated under bond relating to the Contract.

When the Owner accepts the assignment of a subcontract agreement, the Owner assumes the Contractor’s rights and obligations under the subcontract.

§ 5.4.2 Upon such assignment, if the Work has been suspended for more than 30 days, the Subcontractor's compensation shall be equitably adjusted for increases in cost resulting from the suspension.

§ 5.4.3 Upon such assignment to the Owner under this Section 5.4, the Owner may further assign the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity. If the Owner assigns the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity, the Owner shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all of the successor contractor's obligations under the subcontract.

ARTICLE 6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS

§ 6.1 OWNER'S RIGHT TO PERFORM CONSTRUCTION AND TO AWARD SEPARATE CONTRACTS

§ 6.1.1 The Owner reserves the right to perform construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces, and to award separate contracts in connection with other portions of the Project or other construction or operations on the site under Conditions of the Contract identical or substantially similar to these including those portions related to insurance and waiver of subrogation. If the Contractor claims that delay or additional cost is involved because of such action by the Owner, the Contractor shall make such Claim as provided in Article 15.

§ 6.1.2 When separate contracts are awarded for different portions of the Project or other construction or operations on the site, the term "Contractor" in the Contract Documents in each case shall mean the Contractor who executes each separate Owner-Contractor Agreement.

§ 6.1.3 The Owner shall provide for coordination of the activities of the Owner's own forces and of each separate contractor with the Work of the Contractor, who shall cooperate with them. The Contractor shall participate with other separate contractors and the Owner in reviewing their construction schedules. The Contractor shall make any revisions to the construction schedule deemed necessary after a joint review and mutual agreement. The construction schedules shall then constitute the schedules to be used by the Contractor, separate contractors and the Owner until subsequently revised.

§ 6.1.4 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, when the Owner performs construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces, the Owner shall be deemed to be subject to the same obligations and to have the same rights that apply to the Contractor under the Conditions of the Contract, including, without excluding others, those stated in Article 3, this Article 6 and Articles 10, 11 and 12.

§ 6.2 MUTUAL RESPONSIBILITY

§ 6.2.1 The Contractor shall afford the Owner and separate contractors reasonable opportunity for introduction and storage of their materials and equipment and performance of their activities, and shall connect and coordinate the Contractor's construction and operations with theirs as required by the Contract Documents.

§ 6.2.2 If part of the Contractor's Work depends for proper execution or results upon construction or operations by the Owner or a separate contractor, the Contractor shall, prior to proceeding with that portion of the Work, promptly report to the Architect apparent discrepancies or defects in such other construction that would render it unsuitable for such proper execution and results. Failure of the Contractor so to report shall constitute an acknowledgment that the Owner's or separate contractor's completed or partially completed construction is fit and proper to receive the Contractor's Work, except as to defects not then reasonably discoverable.

§ 6.2.3 The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for costs the Owner incurs that are payable to a separate contractor because of the Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities or defective construction. The Owner shall be responsible to the Contractor for costs the Contractor incurs because of a separate contractor's delays, improperly timed activities, damage to the Work or defective construction.

§ 6.2.4 The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage the Contractor wrongfully causes to completed or partially completed construction or to property of the Owner or separate contractors as provided in Section 10.2.5.

§ 6.2.5 The Owner and each separate contractor shall have the same responsibilities for cutting and patching as are described for the Contractor in Section 3.14.

§ 6.3 OWNER'S RIGHT TO CLEAN UP

If a dispute arises among the Contractor, separate contractors and the Owner as to the responsibility under their respective contracts for maintaining the premises and surrounding area free from waste materials and rubbish, the

Owner may clean up and the Architect will allocate the cost among those responsible.

ARTICLE 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK

§ 7.1 GENERAL

§ 7.1.1 Changes in the Work may be accomplished after execution of the Contract, and without invalidating the Contract, by Change Order, Construction Change Directive or order for a minor change in the Work, subject to the limitations stated in this Article 7 and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

§ 7.1.2 A Change Order shall be based upon agreement among the Owner, Contractor and Architect; a Construction Change Directive requires agreement by the Owner and Architect and may or may not be agreed to by the Contractor; an order for a minor change in the Work may be issued by the Architect alone.

§ 7.1.3 Changes in the Work shall be performed under applicable provisions of the Contract Documents, and the Contractor shall proceed promptly, unless otherwise provided in the Change Order, Construction Change Directive or order for a minor change in the Work.

§ 7.2 CHANGE ORDERS

§ 7.2.1 A Change Order is a written instrument prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner, Contractor and Architect stating their agreement upon all of the following:

- .1 The change in the Work;
- .2 The amount of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum; and
- .3 The extent of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Time.

§ 7.3 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVES

§ 7.3.1 A Construction Change Directive is a written order prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner and Architect, directing a change in the Work prior to agreement on adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. The Owner may by Construction Change Directive, without invalidating the Contract, order changes in the Work within the general scope of the Contract consisting of additions, deletions or other revisions, the Contract Sum and Contract Time being adjusted accordingly.

§ 7.3.2 A Construction Change Directive shall be used in the absence of total agreement on the terms of a Change Order.

§ 7.3.3 If the Construction Change Directive provides for an adjustment to the Contract Sum, the adjustment shall be based on one of the following methods:

- .1 Mutual acceptance of a lump sum properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation;
- .2 Unit prices stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon;
- .3 Cost to be determined in a manner agreed upon by the parties and a mutually acceptable fixed or percentage fee; or
- .4 As provided in Section 7.3.7.

§ 7.3.4 If unit prices are stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon, and if quantities originally contemplated are materially changed in a proposed Change Order or Construction Change Directive so that application of such unit prices to quantities of Work proposed will cause substantial inequity to the Owner or Contractor, the applicable unit prices shall be equitably adjusted.

§ 7.3.5 Upon receipt of a Construction Change Directive, the Contractor shall promptly proceed with the change in the Work involved and advise the Architect of the Contractor's agreement or disagreement with the method, if any, provided in the Construction Change Directive for determining the proposed adjustment in the Contract Sum or Contract Time.

§ 7.3.6 A Construction Change Directive signed by the Contractor indicates the Contractor's agreement therewith, including adjustment in Contract Sum and Contract Time or the method for determining them. Such agreement shall be effective immediately and shall be recorded as a Change Order.

§ 7.3.7 If the Contractor does not respond promptly or disagrees with the method for adjustment in the Contract Sum, the Architect shall determine the method and the adjustment on the basis of reasonable expenditures and savings of those performing the Work attributable to the change, including, in case of an increase in the Contract Sum, an amount for overhead and profit as set forth in the Agreement, or if no such amount is set forth in the Agreement, a reasonable amount. In such case, and also under Section 7.3.3.3, the Contractor shall keep and present, in such form as the Architect may prescribe, an itemized accounting together with appropriate supporting data. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, costs for the purposes of this Section 7.3.7 shall be limited to the following:

- .1 Costs of labor, including social security, old age and unemployment insurance, fringe benefits required by agreement or custom, and workers' compensation insurance;
- .2 Costs of materials, supplies and equipment, including cost of transportation, whether incorporated or consumed;
- .3 Rental costs of machinery and equipment, exclusive of hand tools, whether rented from the Contractor or others;
- .4 Costs of premiums for all bonds and insurance, permit fees, and sales, use or similar taxes related to the Work; and
- .5 Additional costs of supervision and field office personnel directly attributable to the change.

§ 7.3.8 The amount of credit to be allowed by the Contractor to the Owner for a deletion or change that results in a net decrease in the Contract Sum shall be actual net cost as confirmed by the Architect. When both additions and credits covering related Work or substitutions are involved in a change, the allowance for overhead and profit shall be figured on the basis of net increase, if any, with respect to that change.

§ 7.3.9 Pending final determination of the total cost of a Construction Change Directive to the Owner, the Contractor may request payment for Work completed under the Construction Change Directive in Applications for Payment. The Architect will make an interim determination for purposes of monthly certification for payment for those costs and certify for payment the amount that the Architect determines, in the Architect's professional judgment, to be reasonably justified. The Architect's interim determination of cost shall adjust the Contract Sum on the same basis as a Change Order, subject to the right of either party to disagree and assert a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

§ 7.3.10 When the Owner and Contractor agree with a determination made by the Architect concerning the adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time, or otherwise reach agreement upon the adjustments, such agreement shall be effective immediately and the Architect will prepare a Change Order. Change Orders may be issued for all or any part of a Construction Change Directive.

§ 7.4 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

The Architect has authority to order minor changes in the Work not involving adjustment in the Contract Sum or extension of the Contract Time and not inconsistent with the intent of the Contract Documents. Such changes will be effected by written order signed by the Architect and shall be binding on the Owner and Contractor.

ARTICLE 8 TIME

§ 8.1 DEFINITIONS

§ 8.1.1 Unless otherwise provided, Contract Time is the period of time, including authorized adjustments, allotted in the Contract Documents for Substantial Completion of the Work.

§ 8.1.2 The date of commencement of the Work is the date established in the Agreement.

§ 8.1.3 The date of Substantial Completion is the date certified by the Architect in accordance with Section 9.8.

§ 8.1.4 The term "day" as used in the Contract Documents shall mean calendar day unless otherwise specifically defined.

§ 8.2 PROGRESS AND COMPLETION

§ 8.2.1 Time limits stated in the Contract Documents are of the essence of the Contract. By executing the Agreement the Contractor confirms that the Contract Time is a reasonable period for performing the Work.

§ 8.2.2 The Contractor shall not knowingly, except by agreement or instruction of the Owner in writing, prematurely commence operations on the site or elsewhere prior to the effective date of insurance required by Article 11 to be

furnished by the Contractor and Owner. The date of commencement of the Work shall not be changed by the effective date of such insurance.

§ 8.2.3 The Contractor shall proceed expeditiously with adequate forces and shall achieve Substantial Completion within the Contract Time.

§ 8.3 DELAYS AND EXTENSIONS OF TIME

§ 8.3.1 If the Contractor is delayed at any time in the commencement or progress of the Work by an act or neglect of the Owner or Architect, or of an employee of either, or of a separate contractor employed by the Owner; or by changes ordered in the Work; or by labor disputes, fire, unusual delay in deliveries, unavoidable casualties or other causes beyond the Contractor's control; or by delay authorized by the Owner pending mediation and arbitration; or by other causes that the Architect determines may justify delay, then the Contract Time shall be extended by Change Order for such reasonable time as the Architect may determine.

§ 8.3.2 Claims relating to time shall be made in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.

§ 8.3.3 This Section 8.3 does not preclude recovery of damages for delay by either party under other provisions of the Contract Documents.

ARTICLE 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

§ 9.1 CONTRACT SUM

The Contract Sum is stated in the Agreement and, including authorized adjustments, is the total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor for performance of the Work under the Contract Documents.

§ 9.2 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

Where the Contract is based on a stipulated sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, the Contractor shall submit to the Architect, before the first Application for Payment, a schedule of values allocating the entire Contract Sum to the various portions of the Work and prepared in such form and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy as the Architect may require. This schedule, unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's Applications for Payment.

§ 9.3 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

§ 9.3.1 At least ten days before the date established for each progress payment, the Contractor shall submit to the Architect an itemized Application for Payment prepared in accordance with the schedule of values, if required under Section 9.2, for completed portions of the Work. Such application shall be notarized, if required, and supported by such data substantiating the Contractor's right to payment as the Owner or Architect may require, such as copies of requisitions from Subcontractors and material suppliers, and shall reflect retainage if provided for in the Contract Documents.

§ 9.3.1.1 As provided in Section 7.3.9, such applications may include requests for payment on account of changes in the Work that have been properly authorized by Construction Change Directives, or by interim determinations of the Architect, but not yet included in Change Orders.

§ 9.3.1.2 Applications for Payment shall not include requests for payment for portions of the Work for which the Contractor does not intend to pay a Subcontractor or material supplier, unless such Work has been performed by others whom the Contractor intends to pay.

§ 9.3.2 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, payments shall be made on account of materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the Work. If approved in advance by the Owner, payment may similarly be made for materials and equipment suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing. Payment for materials and equipment stored on or off the site shall be conditioned upon compliance by the Contractor with procedures satisfactory to the Owner to establish the Owner's title to such materials and equipment or otherwise protect the Owner's interest, and shall include the costs of applicable insurance, storage and transportation to the site for such materials and equipment stored off the site.

§ 9.3.3 The Contractor warrants that title to all Work covered by an Application for Payment will pass to the Owner no later than the time of payment. The Contractor further warrants that upon submittal of an Application for Payment all Work for which Certificates for Payment have been previously issued and payments received from the

Owner shall, to the best of the Contractor's knowledge, information and belief, be free and clear of liens, claims, security interests or encumbrances in favor of the Contractor, Subcontractors, material suppliers, or other persons or entities making a claim by reason of having provided labor, materials and equipment relating to the Work.

§ 9.4 CERTIFICATES FOR PAYMENT

§ 9.4.1 The Architect will, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, either issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment, with a copy to the Contractor, for such amount as the Architect determines is properly due, or notify the Contractor and Owner in writing of the Architect's reasons for withholding certification in whole or in part as provided in Section 9.5.1.

§ 9.4.2 The issuance of a Certificate for Payment will constitute a representation by the Architect to the Owner, based on the Architect's evaluation of the Work and the data comprising the Application for Payment, that, to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information and belief, the Work has progressed to the point indicated and that the quality of the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents. The foregoing representations are subject to an evaluation of the Work for conformance with the Contract Documents upon Substantial Completion, to results of subsequent tests and inspections, to correction of minor deviations from the Contract Documents prior to completion and to specific qualifications expressed by the Architect. The issuance of a Certificate for Payment will further constitute a representation that the Contractor is entitled to payment in the amount certified. However, the issuance of a Certificate for Payment will not be a representation that the Architect has (1) made exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work, (2) reviewed construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures, (3) reviewed copies of requisitions received from Subcontractors and material suppliers and other data requested by the Owner to substantiate the Contractor's right to payment, or (4) made examination to ascertain how or for what purpose the Contractor has used money previously paid on account of the Contract Sum.

§ 9.5 DECISIONS TO WITHHOLD CERTIFICATION

§ 9.5.1 The Architect may withhold a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to protect the Owner, if in the Architect's opinion the representations to the Owner required by Section 9.4.2 cannot be made. If the Architect is unable to certify payment in the amount of the Application, the Architect will notify the Contractor and Owner as provided in Section 9.4.1. If the Contractor and Architect cannot agree on a revised amount, the Architect will promptly issue a Certificate for Payment for the amount for which the Architect is able to make such representations to the Owner. The Architect may also withhold a Certificate for Payment or, because of subsequently discovered evidence, may nullify the whole or a part of a Certificate for Payment previously issued, to such extent as may be necessary in the Architect's opinion to protect the Owner from loss for which the Contractor is responsible, including loss resulting from acts and omissions described in Section 3.3.2, because of

- .1 defective Work not remedied;
- .2 third party claims filed or reasonable evidence indicating probable filing of such claims unless security acceptable to the Owner is provided by the Contractor;
- .3 failure of the Contractor to make payments properly to Subcontractors or for labor, materials or equipment;
- .4 reasonable evidence that the Work cannot be completed for the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum;
- .5 damage to the Owner or a separate contractor;
- .6 reasonable evidence that the Work will not be completed within the Contract Time, and that the unpaid balance would not be adequate to cover actual or liquidated damages for the anticipated delay; or
- .7 repeated failure to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 9.5.2 When the above reasons for withholding certification are removed, certification will be made for amounts previously withheld.

§ 9.5.3 If the Architect withholds certification for payment under Section 9.5.1.3, the Owner may, at its sole option, issue joint checks to the Contractor and to any Subcontractor or material or equipment suppliers to whom the Contractor failed to make payment for Work properly performed or material or equipment suitably delivered. If the Owner makes payments by joint check, the Owner shall notify the Architect and the Architect will reflect such payment on the next Certificate for Payment.

§ 9.6 PROGRESS PAYMENTS

§ 9.6.1 After the Architect has issued a Certificate for Payment, the Owner shall make payment in the manner and within the time provided in the Contract Documents, and shall so notify the Architect.

§ 9.6.2 The Contractor shall pay each Subcontractor no later than seven days after receipt of payment from the Owner the amount to which the Subcontractor is entitled, reflecting percentages actually retained from payments to the Contractor on account of the Subcontractor's portion of the Work. The Contractor shall, by appropriate agreement with each Subcontractor, require each Subcontractor to make payments to Sub-subcontractors in a similar manner.

§ 9.6.3 The Architect will, on request, furnish to a Subcontractor, if practicable, information regarding percentages of completion or amounts applied for by the Contractor and action taken thereon by the Architect and Owner on account of portions of the Work done by such Subcontractor.

§ 9.6.4 The Owner has the right to request written evidence from the Contractor that the Contractor has properly paid Subcontractors and material and equipment suppliers amounts paid by the Owner to the Contractor for subcontracted Work. If the Contractor fails to furnish such evidence within seven days, the Owner shall have the right to contact Subcontractors to ascertain whether they have been properly paid. Neither the Owner nor Architect shall have an obligation to pay or to see to the payment of money to a Subcontractor, except as may otherwise be required by law.

§ 9.6.5 Contractor payments to material and equipment suppliers shall be treated in a manner similar to that provided in Sections 9.6.2, 9.6.3 and 9.6.4.

§ 9.6.6 A Certificate for Payment, a progress payment, or partial or entire use or occupancy of the Project by the Owner shall not constitute acceptance of Work not in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 9.6.7 Unless the Contractor provides the Owner with a payment bond in the full penal sum of the Contract Sum, payments received by the Contractor for Work properly performed by Subcontractors and suppliers shall be held by the Contractor for those Subcontractors or suppliers who performed Work or furnished materials, or both, under contract with the Contractor for which payment was made by the Owner. Nothing contained herein shall require money to be placed in a separate account and not commingled with money of the Contractor, shall create any fiduciary liability or tort liability on the part of the Contractor for breach of trust or shall entitle any person or entity to an award of punitive damages against the Contractor for breach of the requirements of this provision.

§ 9.7 FAILURE OF PAYMENT

If the Architect does not issue a Certificate for Payment, through no fault of the Contractor, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, or if the Owner does not pay the Contractor within seven days after the date established in the Contract Documents the amount certified by the Architect or awarded by binding dispute resolution, then the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' written notice to the Owner and Architect, stop the Work until payment of the amount owing has been received. The Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shut-down, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided for in the Contract Documents.

§ 9.8 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

§ 9.8.1 Substantial Completion is the stage in the progress of the Work when the Work or designated portion thereof is sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use.

§ 9.8.2 When the Contractor considers that the Work, or a portion thereof which the Owner agrees to accept separately, is substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit to the Architect a comprehensive list of items to be completed or corrected prior to final payment. Failure to include an item on such list does not alter the responsibility of the Contractor to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 9.8.3 Upon receipt of the Contractor's list, the Architect will make an inspection to determine whether the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete. If the Architect's inspection discloses any item, whether or not included on the Contractor's list, which is not sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work or designated portion thereof for its intended use, the Contractor shall, before issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion, complete or correct such item upon notification

by the Architect. In such case, the Contractor shall then submit a request for another inspection by the Architect to determine Substantial Completion.

§ 9.8.4 When the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete, the Architect will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion that shall establish the date of Substantial Completion, shall establish responsibilities of the Owner and Contractor for security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance, and shall fix the time within which the Contractor shall finish all items on the list accompanying the Certificate. Warranties required by the Contract Documents shall commence on the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof unless otherwise provided in the Certificate of Substantial Completion.

§ 9.8.5 The Certificate of Substantial Completion shall be submitted to the Owner and Contractor for their written acceptance of responsibilities assigned to them in such Certificate. Upon such acceptance and consent of surety, if any, the Owner shall make payment of retainage applying to such Work or designated portion thereof. Such payment shall be adjusted for Work that is incomplete or not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 9.9 PARTIAL OCCUPANCY OR USE

§ 9.9.1 The Owner may occupy or use any completed or partially completed portion of the Work at any stage when such portion is designated by separate agreement with the Contractor, provided such occupancy or use is consented to by the insurer as required under Section 11.3.1.5 and authorized by public authorities having jurisdiction over the Project. Such partial occupancy or use may commence whether or not the portion is substantially complete, provided the Owner and Contractor have accepted in writing the responsibilities assigned to each of them for payments, retainage, if any, security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance, and have agreed in writing concerning the period for correction of the Work and commencement of warranties required by the Contract Documents. When the Contractor considers a portion substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit a list to the Architect as provided under Section 9.8.2. Consent of the Contractor to partial occupancy or use shall not be unreasonably withheld. The stage of the progress of the Work shall be determined by written agreement between the Owner and Contractor or, if no agreement is reached, by decision of the Architect.

§ 9.9.2 Immediately prior to such partial occupancy or use, the Owner, Contractor and Architect shall jointly inspect the area to be occupied or portion of the Work to be used in order to determine and record the condition of the Work.

§ 9.9.3 Unless otherwise agreed upon, partial occupancy or use of a portion or portions of the Work shall not constitute acceptance of Work not complying with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 9.10 FINAL COMPLETION AND FINAL PAYMENT

§ 9.10.1 Upon receipt of the Contractor's written notice that the Work is ready for final inspection and acceptance and upon receipt of a final Application for Payment, the Architect will promptly make such inspection and, when the Architect finds the Work acceptable under the Contract Documents and the Contract fully performed, the Architect will promptly issue a final Certificate for Payment stating that to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information and belief, and on the basis of the Architect's on-site visits and inspections, the Work has been completed in accordance with terms and conditions of the Contract Documents and that the entire balance found to be due the Contractor and noted in the final Certificate is due and payable. The Architect's final Certificate for Payment will constitute a further representation that conditions listed in Section 9.10.2 as precedent to the Contractor's being entitled to final payment have been fulfilled.

§ 9.10.2 Neither final payment nor any remaining retained percentage shall become due until the Contractor submits to the Architect (1) an affidavit that payrolls, bills for materials and equipment, and other indebtedness connected with the Work for which the Owner or the Owner's property might be responsible or encumbered (less amounts withheld by Owner) have been paid or otherwise satisfied, (2) a certificate evidencing that insurance required by the Contract Documents to remain in force after final payment is currently in effect and will not be canceled or allowed to expire until at least 30 days' prior written notice has been given to the Owner, (3) a written statement that the Contractor knows of no substantial reason that the insurance will not be renewable to cover the period required by the Contract Documents, (4) consent of surety, if any, to final payment and (5), if required by the Owner, other data establishing payment or satisfaction of obligations, such as receipts, releases and waivers of liens, claims, security interests or encumbrances arising out of the Contract, to the extent and in such form as may be designated by the Owner. If a Subcontractor refuses to furnish a release or waiver required by the Owner, the Contractor may furnish a bond satisfactory to the Owner to indemnify the Owner against such lien. If such lien remains unsatisfied after payments are made, the Contractor shall refund to the Owner all money that the Owner may be compelled to pay in

discharging such lien, including all costs and reasonable attorneys' fees.

§ 9.10.3 If, after Substantial Completion of the Work, final completion thereof is materially delayed through no fault of the Contractor or by issuance of Change Orders affecting final completion, and the Architect so confirms, the Owner shall, upon application by the Contractor and certification by the Architect, and without terminating the Contract, make payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed and accepted. If the remaining balance for Work not fully completed or corrected is less than retainage stipulated in the Contract Documents, and if bonds have been furnished, the written consent of surety to payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed and accepted shall be submitted by the Contractor to the Architect prior to certification of such payment. Such payment shall be made under terms and conditions governing final payment, except that it shall not constitute a waiver of claims.

§ 9.10.4 The making of final payment shall constitute a waiver of Claims by the Owner except those arising from

- .1 liens, Claims, security interests or encumbrances arising out of the Contract and unsettled;
- .2 failure of the Work to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents; or
- .3 terms of special warranties required by the Contract Documents.

§ 9.10.5 Acceptance of final payment by the Contractor, a Subcontractor or material supplier shall constitute a waiver of claims by that payee except those previously made in writing and identified by that payee as unsettled at the time of final Application for Payment.

ARTICLE 10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY

§ 10.1 SAFETY PRECAUTIONS AND PROGRAMS

The Contractor shall be responsible for initiating, maintaining and supervising all safety precautions and programs in connection with the performance of the Contract.

§ 10.2 SAFETY OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY

§ 10.2.1 The Contractor shall take reasonable precautions for safety of, and shall provide reasonable protection to prevent damage, injury or loss to

- .1 employees on the Work and other persons who may be affected thereby;
- .2 the Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated therein, whether in storage on or off the site, under care, custody or control of the Contractor or the Contractor's Subcontractors or Sub-subcontractors; and
- .3 other property at the site or adjacent thereto, such as trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, pavements, roadways, structures and utilities not designated for removal, relocation or replacement in the course of construction.

§ 10.2.2 The Contractor shall comply with and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities bearing on safety of persons or property or their protection from damage, injury or loss.

§ 10.2.3 The Contractor shall erect and maintain, as required by existing conditions and performance of the Contract, reasonable safeguards for safety and protection, including posting danger signs and other warnings against hazards, promulgating safety regulations and notifying owners and users of adjacent sites and utilities.

§ 10.2.4 When use or storage of explosives or other hazardous materials or equipment or unusual methods are necessary for execution of the Work, the Contractor shall exercise utmost care and carry on such activities under supervision of properly qualified personnel.

§ 10.2.5 The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage and loss (other than damage or loss insured under property insurance required by the Contract Documents) to property referred to in Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3 caused in whole or in part by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts they may be liable and for which the Contractor is responsible under Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3, except damage or loss attributable to acts or omissions of the Owner or Architect or anyone directly or indirectly employed by either of them, or by anyone for whose acts either of them may be liable, and not attributable to the fault or negligence of the Contractor. The foregoing obligations of the Contractor are in addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.18.

§ 10.2.6 The Contractor shall designate a responsible member of the Contractor's organization at the site whose duty shall be the prevention of accidents. This person shall be the Contractor's superintendent unless otherwise designated by the Contractor in writing to the Owner and Architect.

§ 10.2.7 The Contractor shall not permit any part of the construction or site to be loaded so as to cause damage or create an unsafe condition.

§ 10.2.8 INJURY OR DAMAGE TO PERSON OR PROPERTY

If either party suffers injury or damage to person or property because of an act or omission of the other party, or of others for whose acts such party is legally responsible, written notice of such injury or damage, whether or not insured, shall be given to the other party within a reasonable time not exceeding 21 days after discovery. The notice shall provide sufficient detail to enable the other party to investigate the matter.

§ 10.3 HAZARDOUS MATERIALS

§ 10.3.1 The Contractor is responsible for compliance with any requirements included in the Contract Documents regarding hazardous materials. If the Contractor encounters a hazardous material or substance not addressed in the Contract Documents and if reasonable precautions will be inadequate to prevent foreseeable bodily injury or death to persons resulting from a material or substance, including but not limited to asbestos or polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB), encountered on the site by the Contractor, the Contractor shall, upon recognizing the condition, immediately stop Work in the affected area and report the condition to the Owner and Architect in writing.

§ 10.3.2 Upon receipt of the Contractor's written notice, the Owner shall obtain the services of a licensed laboratory to verify the presence or absence of the material or substance reported by the Contractor and, in the event such material or substance is found to be present, to cause it to be rendered harmless. Unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish in writing to the Contractor and Architect the names and qualifications of persons or entities who are to perform tests verifying the presence or absence of such material or substance or who are to perform the task of removal or safe containment of such material or substance. The Contractor and the Architect will promptly reply to the Owner in writing stating whether or not either has reasonable objection to the persons or entities proposed by the Owner. If either the Contractor or Architect has an objection to a person or entity proposed by the Owner, the Owner shall propose another to whom the Contractor and the Architect have no reasonable objection. When the material or substance has been rendered harmless, Work in the affected area shall resume upon written agreement of the Owner and Contractor. By Change Order, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased in the amount of the Contractor's reasonable additional costs of shut-down, delay and start-up.

§ 10.3.3 To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Owner shall indemnify and hold harmless the Contractor, Subcontractors, Architect, Architect's consultants and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work in the affected area if in fact the material or substance presents the risk of bodily injury or death as described in Section 10.3.1 and has not been rendered harmless, provided that such claim, damage, loss or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), except to the extent that such damage, loss or expense is due to the fault or negligence of the party seeking indemnity.

§ 10.3.4 The Owner shall not be responsible under this Section 10.3 for materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site unless such materials or substances are required by the Contract Documents. The Owner shall be responsible for materials or substances required by the Contract Documents, except to the extent of the Contractor's fault or negligence in the use and handling of such materials or substances.

§ 10.3.5 The Contractor shall indemnify the Owner for the cost and expense the Owner incurs (1) for remediation of a material or substance the Contractor brings to the site and negligently handles, or (2) where the Contractor fails to perform its obligations under Section 10.3.1, except to the extent that the cost and expense are due to the Owner's fault or negligence.

§ 10.3.6 If, without negligence on the part of the Contractor, the Contractor is held liable by a government agency for the cost of remediation of a hazardous material or substance solely by reason of performing Work as required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall indemnify the Contractor for all cost and expense thereby incurred.

§ 10.4 EMERGENCIES

In an emergency affecting safety of persons or property, the Contractor shall act, at the Contractor's discretion, to prevent threatened damage, injury or loss. Additional compensation or extension of time claimed by the Contractor on account of an emergency shall be determined as provided in Article 15 and Article 7.

ARTICLE 11 INSURANCE AND BONDS

§ 11.1 CONTRACTOR'S LIABILITY INSURANCE

§ 11.1.1 The Contractor shall purchase from and maintain in a company or companies lawfully authorized to do business in the jurisdiction in which the Project is located such insurance as will protect the Contractor from claims set forth below which may arise out of or result from the Contractor's operations and completed operations under the Contract and for which the Contractor may be legally liable, whether such operations be by the Contractor or by a Subcontractor or by anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable:

- .1 Claims under workers' compensation, disability benefit and other similar employee benefit acts that are applicable to the Work to be performed;
- .2 Claims for damages because of bodily injury, occupational sickness or disease, or death of the Contractor's employees;
- .3 Claims for damages because of bodily injury, sickness or disease, or death of any person other than the Contractor's employees;
- .4 Claims for damages insured by usual personal injury liability coverage;
- .5 Claims for damages, other than to the Work itself, because of injury to or destruction of tangible property, including loss of use resulting therefrom;
- .6 Claims for damages because of bodily injury, death of a person or property damage arising out of ownership, maintenance or use of a motor vehicle;
- .7 Claims for bodily injury or property damage arising out of completed operations; and
- .8 Claims involving contractual liability insurance applicable to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.18.

§ 11.1.2 The insurance required by Section 11.1.1 shall be written for not less than limits of liability specified in the Contract Documents or required by law, whichever coverage is greater. Coverages, whether written on an occurrence or claims-made basis, shall be maintained without interruption from the date of commencement of the Work until the date of final payment and termination of any coverage required to be maintained after final payment, and, with respect to the Contractor's completed operations coverage, until the expiration of the period for correction of Work or for such other period for maintenance of completed operations coverage as specified in the Contract Documents.

§ 11.1.3 Certificates of insurance acceptable to the Owner shall be filed with the Owner prior to commencement of the Work and thereafter upon renewal or replacement of each required policy of insurance. These certificates and the insurance policies required by this Section 11.1 shall contain a provision that coverages afforded under the policies will not be canceled or allowed to expire until at least 30 days' prior written notice has been given to the Owner. An additional certificate evidencing continuation of liability coverage, including coverage for completed operations, shall be submitted with the final Application for Payment as required by Section 9.10.2 and thereafter upon renewal or replacement of such coverage until the expiration of the time required by Section 11.1.2. Information concerning reduction of coverage on account of revised limits or claims paid under the General Aggregate, or both, shall be furnished by the Contractor with reasonable promptness.

§ 11.1.4 The Contractor shall cause the commercial liability coverage required by the Contract Documents to include (1) the Owner, the Architect and the Architect's consultants as additional insureds for claims caused in whole or in part by the Contractor's negligent acts or omissions during the Contractor's operations; and (2) the Owner as an additional insured for claims caused in whole or in part by the Contractor's negligent acts or omissions during the Contractor's completed operations.

§ 11.2 OWNER'S LIABILITY INSURANCE

The Owner shall be responsible for purchasing and maintaining the Owner's usual liability insurance.

§ 11.3 PROPERTY INSURANCE

§ 11.3.1 Unless otherwise provided, the Owner shall purchase and maintain, in a company or companies lawfully authorized to do business in the jurisdiction in which the Project is located, property insurance written on a builder's risk "all-risk" or equivalent policy form in the amount of the initial Contract Sum, plus value of subsequent Contract Modifications and cost of materials supplied or installed by others, comprising total value for the entire Project at the site on a replacement cost basis without optional deductibles. Such property insurance shall be maintained, unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents or otherwise agreed in writing by all persons and entities who are beneficiaries of such insurance, until final payment has been made as provided in Section 9.10 or until no person or entity other than the Owner has an insurable interest in the property required by this Section 11.3 to be covered, whichever is later. This insurance shall include interests of the Owner, the Contractor, Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors in the Project.

§ 11.3.1.1 Property insurance shall be on an "all-risk" or equivalent policy form and shall include, without limitation, insurance against the perils of fire (with extended coverage) and physical loss or damage including, without duplication of coverage, theft, vandalism, malicious mischief, collapse, earthquake, flood, windstorm, falsework, testing and startup, temporary buildings and debris removal including demolition occasioned by enforcement of any applicable legal requirements, and shall cover reasonable compensation for Architect's and Contractor's services and expenses required as a result of such insured loss.

§ 11.3.1.2 If the Owner does not intend to purchase such property insurance required by the Contract and with all of the coverages in the amount described above, the Owner shall so inform the Contractor in writing prior to commencement of the Work. The Contractor may then effect insurance that will protect the interests of the Contractor, Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors in the Work, and by appropriate Change Order the cost thereof shall be charged to the Owner. If the Contractor is damaged by the failure or neglect of the Owner to purchase or maintain insurance as described above, without so notifying the Contractor in writing, then the Owner shall bear all reasonable costs properly attributable thereto.

§ 11.3.1.3 If the property insurance requires deductibles, the Owner shall pay costs not covered because of such deductibles.

§ 11.3.1.4 This property insurance shall cover portions of the Work stored off the site, and also portions of the Work in transit.

§ 11.3.1.5 Partial occupancy or use in accordance with Section 9.9 shall not commence until the insurance company or companies providing property insurance have consented to such partial occupancy or use by endorsement or otherwise. The Owner and the Contractor shall take reasonable steps to obtain consent of the insurance company or companies and shall, without mutual written consent, take no action with respect to partial occupancy or use that would cause cancellation, lapse or reduction of insurance.

§ 11.3.2 BOILER AND MACHINERY INSURANCE

The Owner shall purchase and maintain boiler and machinery insurance required by the Contract Documents or by law, which shall specifically cover such insured objects during installation and until final acceptance by the Owner; this insurance shall include interests of the Owner, Contractor, Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors in the Work, and the Owner and Contractor shall be named insureds.

§ 11.3.3 LOSS OF USE INSURANCE

The Owner, at the Owner's option, may purchase and maintain such insurance as will insure the Owner against loss of use of the Owner's property due to fire or other hazards, however caused. The Owner waives all rights of action against the Contractor for loss of use of the Owner's property, including consequential losses due to fire or other hazards however caused.

§ 11.3.4 If the Contractor requests in writing that insurance for risks other than those described herein or other special causes of loss be included in the property insurance policy, the Owner shall, if possible, include such insurance, and the cost thereof shall be charged to the Contractor by appropriate Change Order.

§ 11.3.5 If during the Project construction period the Owner insures properties, real or personal or both, at or adjacent to the site by property insurance under policies separate from those insuring the Project, or if after final payment property insurance is to be provided on the completed Project through a policy or policies other than those insuring

the Project during the construction period, the Owner shall waive all rights in accordance with the terms of Section 11.3.7 for damages caused by fire or other causes of loss covered by this separate property insurance. All separate policies shall provide this waiver of subrogation by endorsement or otherwise.

§ 11.3.6 Before an exposure to loss may occur, the Owner shall file with the Contractor a copy of each policy that includes insurance coverages required by this Section 11.3. Each policy shall contain all generally applicable conditions, definitions, exclusions and endorsements related to this Project. Each policy shall contain a provision that the policy will not be canceled or allowed to expire, and that its limits will not be reduced, until at least 30 days' prior written notice has been given to the Contractor.

§ 11.3.7 WAIVERS OF SUBROGATION

The Owner and Contractor waive all rights against (1) each other and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents and employees, each of the other, and (2) the Architect, Architect's consultants, separate contractors described in Article 6, if any, and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents and employees, for damages caused by fire or other causes of loss to the extent covered by property insurance obtained pursuant to this Section 11.3 or other property insurance applicable to the Work, except such rights as they have to proceeds of such insurance held by the Owner as fiduciary. The Owner or Contractor, as appropriate, shall require of the Architect, Architect's consultants, separate contractors described in Article 6, if any, and the subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents and employees of any of them, by appropriate agreements, written where legally required for validity, similar waivers each in favor of other parties enumerated herein. The policies shall provide such waivers of subrogation by endorsement or otherwise. A waiver of subrogation shall be effective as to a person or entity even though that person or entity would otherwise have a duty of indemnification, contractual or otherwise, did not pay the insurance premium directly or indirectly, and whether or not the person or entity had an insurable interest in the property damaged.

§ 11.3.8 A loss insured under the Owner's property insurance shall be adjusted by the Owner as fiduciary and made payable to the Owner as fiduciary for the insureds, as their interests may appear, subject to requirements of any applicable mortgagee clause and of Section 11.3.10. The Contractor shall pay Subcontractors their just shares of insurance proceeds received by the Contractor, and by appropriate agreements, written where legally required for validity, shall require Subcontractors to make payments to their Sub-subcontractors in similar manner.

§ 11.3.9 If required in writing by a party in interest, the Owner as fiduciary shall, upon occurrence of an insured loss, give bond for proper performance of the Owner's duties. The cost of required bonds shall be charged against proceeds received as fiduciary. The Owner shall deposit in a separate account proceeds so received, which the Owner shall distribute in accordance with such agreement as the parties in interest may reach, or as determined in accordance with the method of binding dispute resolution selected in the Agreement between the Owner and Contractor. If after such loss no other special agreement is made and unless the Owner terminates the Contract for convenience, replacement of damaged property shall be performed by the Contractor after notification of a Change in the Work in accordance with Article 7.

§ 11.3.10 The Owner as fiduciary shall have power to adjust and settle a loss with insurers unless one of the parties in interest shall object in writing within five days after occurrence of loss to the Owner's exercise of this power; if such objection is made, the dispute shall be resolved in the manner selected by the Owner and Contractor as the method of binding dispute resolution in the Agreement. If the Owner and Contractor have selected arbitration as the method of binding dispute resolution, the Owner as fiduciary shall make settlement with insurers or, in the case of a dispute over distribution of insurance proceeds, in accordance with the directions of the arbitrators.

§ 11.4 PERFORMANCE BOND AND PAYMENT BOND

§ 11.4.1 The Owner shall have the right to require the Contractor to furnish bonds covering faithful performance of the Contract and payment of obligations arising thereunder as stipulated in bidding requirements or specifically required in the Contract Documents on the date of execution of the Contract.

§ 11.4.2 Upon the request of any person or entity appearing to be a potential beneficiary of bonds covering payment of obligations arising under the Contract, the Contractor shall promptly furnish a copy of the bonds or shall authorize a copy to be furnished.

ARTICLE 12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK

§ 12.1 UNCOVERING OF WORK

§ 12.1.1 If a portion of the Work is covered contrary to the Architect's request or to requirements specifically expressed in the Contract Documents, it must, if requested in writing by the Architect, be uncovered for the Architect's examination and be replaced at the Contractor's expense without change in the Contract Time.

§ 12.1.2 If a portion of the Work has been covered that the Architect has not specifically requested to examine prior to its being covered, the Architect may request to see such Work and it shall be uncovered by the Contractor. If such Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, costs of uncovering and replacement shall, by appropriate Change Order, be at the Owner's expense. If such Work is not in accordance with the Contract Documents, such costs and the cost of correction shall be at the Contractor's expense unless the condition was caused by the Owner or a separate contractor in which event the Owner shall be responsible for payment of such costs.

§ 12.2 CORRECTION OF WORK

§ 12.2.1 BEFORE OR AFTER SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

The Contractor shall promptly correct Work rejected by the Architect or failing to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, whether discovered before or after Substantial Completion and whether or not fabricated, installed or completed. Costs of correcting such rejected Work, including additional testing and inspections, the cost of uncovering and replacement, and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

§ 12.2.2 AFTER SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

§ 12.2.2.1 In addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.5, if, within one year after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof or after the date for commencement of warranties established under Section 9.9.1, or by terms of an applicable special warranty required by the Contract Documents, any of the Work is found to be not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall correct it promptly after receipt of written notice from the Owner to do so unless the Owner has previously given the Contractor a written acceptance of such condition. The Owner shall give such notice promptly after discovery of the condition. During the one-year period for correction of Work, if the Owner fails to notify the Contractor and give the Contractor an opportunity to make the correction, the Owner waives the rights to require correction by the Contractor and to make a claim for breach of warranty. If the Contractor fails to correct nonconforming Work within a reasonable time during that period after receipt of notice from the Owner or Architect, the Owner may correct it in accordance with Section 2.4.

§ 12.2.2.2 The one-year period for correction of Work shall be extended with respect to portions of Work first performed after Substantial Completion by the period of time between Substantial Completion and the actual completion of that portion of the Work.

§ 12.2.2.3 The one-year period for correction of Work shall not be extended by corrective Work performed by the Contractor pursuant to this Section 12.2.

§ 12.2.3 The Contractor shall remove from the site portions of the Work that are not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents and are neither corrected by the Contractor nor accepted by the Owner.

§ 12.2.4 The Contractor shall bear the cost of correcting destroyed or damaged construction, whether completed or partially completed, of the Owner or separate contractors caused by the Contractor's correction or removal of Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 12.2.5 Nothing contained in this Section 12.2 shall be construed to establish a period of limitation with respect to other obligations the Contractor has under the Contract Documents. Establishment of the one-year period for correction of Work as described in Section 12.2.2 relates only to the specific obligation of the Contractor to correct the Work, and has no relationship to the time within which the obligation to comply with the Contract Documents may be sought to be enforced, nor to the time within which proceedings may be commenced to establish the Contractor's liability with respect to the Contractor's obligations other than specifically to correct the Work.

§ 12.3 ACCEPTANCE OF NONCONFORMING WORK

If the Owner prefers to accept Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so instead of requiring its removal and correction, in which case the Contract Sum will be reduced as

appropriate and equitable. Such adjustment shall be effected whether or not final payment has been made.

ARTICLE 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

§ 13.1 GOVERNING LAW

The Contract shall be governed by the law of the place where the Project is located except that, if the parties have selected arbitration as the method of binding dispute resolution, the Federal Arbitration Act shall govern Section 15.4.

§ 13.2 SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS

§ 13.2.1 The Owner and Contractor respectively bind themselves, their partners, successors, assigns and legal representatives to covenants, agreements and obligations contained in the Contract Documents. Except as provided in Section 13.2.2, neither party to the Contract shall assign the Contract as a whole without written consent of the other. If either party attempts to make such an assignment without such consent, that party shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all obligations under the Contract.

§ 13.2.2 The Owner may, without consent of the Contractor, assign the Contract to a lender providing construction financing for the Project, if the lender assumes the Owner's rights and obligations under the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall execute all consents reasonably required to facilitate such assignment.

§ 13.3 WRITTEN NOTICE

Written notice shall be deemed to have been duly served if delivered in person to the individual, to a member of the firm or entity, or to an officer of the corporation for which it was intended; or if delivered at, or sent by registered or certified mail or by courier service providing proof of delivery to, the last business address known to the party giving notice.

§ 13.4 RIGHTS AND REMEDIES

§ 13.4.1 Duties and obligations imposed by the Contract Documents and rights and remedies available thereunder shall be in addition to and not a limitation of duties, obligations, rights and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law.

§ 13.4.2 No action or failure to act by the Owner, Architect or Contractor shall constitute a waiver of a right or duty afforded them under the Contract, nor shall such action or failure to act constitute approval of or acquiescence in a breach there under, except as may be specifically agreed in writing.

§ 13.5 TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

§ 13.5.1 Tests, inspections and approvals of portions of the Work shall be made as required by the Contract Documents and by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations or lawful orders of public authorities. Unless otherwise provided, the Contractor shall make arrangements for such tests, inspections and approvals with an independent testing laboratory or entity acceptable to the Owner, or with the appropriate public authority, and shall bear all related costs of tests, inspections and approvals. The Contractor shall give the Architect timely notice of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. The Owner shall bear costs of (1) tests, inspections or approvals that do not become requirements until after bids are received or negotiations concluded, and (2) tests, inspections or approvals where building codes or applicable laws or regulations prohibit the Owner from delegating their cost to the Contractor.

§ 13.5.2 If the Architect, Owner or public authorities having jurisdiction determine that portions of the Work require additional testing, inspection or approval not included under Section 13.5.1, the Architect will, upon written authorization from the Owner, instruct the Contractor to make arrangements for such additional testing, inspection or approval by an entity acceptable to the Owner, and the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Architect of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. Such costs, except as provided in Section 13.5.3, shall be at the Owner's expense.

§ 13.5.3 If such procedures for testing, inspection or approval under Sections 13.5.1 and 13.5.2 reveal failure of the portions of the Work to comply with requirements established by the Contract Documents, all costs made necessary by such failure including those of repeated procedures and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses shall be at the Contractor's expense.

§ 13.5.4 Required certificates of testing, inspection or approval shall, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, be secured by the Contractor and promptly delivered to the Architect.

§ 13.5.5 If the Architect is to observe tests, inspections or approvals required by the Contract Documents, the Architect will do so promptly and, where practicable, at the normal place of testing.

§ 13.5.6 Tests or inspections conducted pursuant to the Contract Documents shall be made promptly to avoid unreasonable delay in the Work.

§ 13.6 INTEREST

Payments due and unpaid under the Contract Documents shall bear interest from the date payment is due at such rate as the parties may agree upon in writing or, in the absence thereof, at the legal rate prevailing from time to time at the place where the Project is located.

§ 13.7 TIME LIMITS ON CLAIMS

The Owner and Contractor shall commence all claims and causes of action, whether in contract, tort, breach of warranty or otherwise, against the other arising out of or related to the Contract in accordance with the requirements of the final dispute resolution method selected in the Agreement within the time period specified by applicable law, but in any case not more than 10 years after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work. The Owner and Contractor waive all claims and causes of action not commenced in accordance with this Section 13.7.

ARTICLE 14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

§ 14.1 TERMINATION BY THE CONTRACTOR

§ 14.1.1 The Contractor may terminate the Contract if the Work is stopped for a period of 30 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor or a Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor or their agents or employees or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work under direct or indirect contract with the Contractor, for any of the following reasons:

- .1 Issuance of an order of a court or other public authority having jurisdiction that requires all Work to be stopped;
- .2 An act of government, such as a declaration of national emergency that requires all Work to be stopped;
- .3 Because the Architect has not issued a Certificate for Payment and has not notified the Contractor of the reason for withholding certification as provided in Section 9.4.1, or because the Owner has not made payment on a Certificate for Payment within the time stated in the Contract Documents; or
- .4 The Owner has failed to furnish to the Contractor promptly, upon the Contractor's request, reasonable evidence as required by Section 2.2.1.

§ 14.1.2 The Contractor may terminate the Contract if, through no act or fault of the Contractor or a Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor or their agents or employees or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work under direct or indirect contract with the Contractor, repeated suspensions, delays or interruptions of the entire Work by the Owner as described in Section 14.3 constitute in the aggregate more than 100 percent of the total number of days scheduled for completion, or 120 days in any 365-day period, whichever is less.

§ 14.1.3 If one of the reasons described in Section 14.1.1 or 14.1.2 exists, the Contractor may, upon seven days' written notice to the Owner and Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner payment for Work executed, including reasonable overhead and profit, costs incurred by reason of such termination, and damages.

§ 14.1.4 If the Work is stopped for a period of 60 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor or a Subcontractor or their agents or employees or any other persons performing portions of the Work under contract with the Contractor because the Owner has repeatedly failed to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract Documents with respect to matters important to the progress of the Work, the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' written notice to the Owner and the Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner as provided in Section 14.1.3.

§ 14.2 TERMINATION BY THE OWNER FOR CAUSE

§ 14.2.1 The Owner may terminate the Contract if the Contractor

- .1 repeatedly refuses or fails to supply enough properly skilled workers or proper materials;

- .2 fails to make payment to Subcontractors for materials or labor in accordance with the respective agreements between the Contractor and the Subcontractors;
- .3 repeatedly disregards applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of a public authority; or
- .4 otherwise is guilty of substantial breach of a provision of the Contract Documents.

§ 14.2.2 When any of the above reasons exist, the Owner, upon certification by the Initial Decision Maker that sufficient cause exists to justify such action, may without prejudice to any other rights or remedies of the Owner and after giving the Contractor and the Contractor's surety, if any, seven days' written notice, terminate employment of the Contractor and may, subject to any prior rights of the surety:

- .1 Exclude the Contractor from the site and take possession of all materials, equipment, tools, and construction equipment and machinery thereon owned by the Contractor;
- .2 Accept assignment of subcontracts pursuant to Section 5.4; and
- .3 Finish the Work by whatever reasonable method the Owner may deem expedient. Upon written request of the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor a detailed accounting of the costs incurred by the Owner in finishing the Work.

§ 14.2.3 When the Owner terminates the Contract for one of the reasons stated in Section 14.2.1, the Contractor shall not be entitled to receive further payment until the Work is finished.

§ 14.2.4 If the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum exceeds costs of finishing the Work, including compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, and other damages incurred by the Owner and not expressly waived, such excess shall be paid to the Contractor. If such costs and damages exceed the unpaid balance, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. The amount to be paid to the Contractor or Owner, as the case may be, shall be certified by the Initial Decision Maker, upon application, and this obligation for payment shall survive termination of the Contract.

§ 14.3 SUSPENSION BY THE OWNER FOR CONVENIENCE

§ 14.3.1 The Owner may, without cause, order the Contractor in writing to suspend, delay or interrupt the Work in whole or in part for such period of time as the Owner may determine.

§ 14.3.2 The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted for increases in the cost and time caused by suspension, delay or interruption as described in Section 14.3.1. Adjustment of the Contract Sum shall include profit. No adjustment shall be made to the extent

- .1 that performance is, was or would have been so suspended, delayed or interrupted by another cause for which the Contractor is responsible; or
- .2 that an equitable adjustment is made or denied under another provision of the Contract.

§ 14.4 TERMINATION BY THE OWNER FOR CONVENIENCE

§ 14.4.1 The Owner may, at any time, terminate the Contract for the Owner's convenience and without cause.

§ 14.4.2 Upon receipt of written notice from the Owner of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Contractor shall

- .1 cease operations as directed by the Owner in the notice;
- .2 take actions necessary, or that the Owner may direct, for the protection and preservation of the Work; and
- .3 except for Work directed to be performed prior to the effective date of termination stated in the notice, terminate all existing subcontracts and purchase orders and enter into no further subcontracts and purchase orders.

§ 14.4.3 In case of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Contractor shall be entitled to receive payment for Work executed, and costs incurred by reason of such termination, along with reasonable overhead and profit on the Work not executed.

ARTICLE 15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES

§ 15.1 CLAIMS

§ 15.1.1 DEFINITION

A Claim is a demand or assertion by one of the parties seeking, as a matter of right, payment of money, or other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract. The term “Claim” also includes other disputes and matters in question between the Owner and Contractor arising out of or relating to the Contract. The responsibility to substantiate Claims shall rest with the party making the Claim.

§ 15.1.2 NOTICE OF CLAIMS

Claims by either the Owner or Contractor must be initiated by written notice to the other party and to the Initial Decision Maker with a copy sent to the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker. Claims by either party must be initiated within 21 days after occurrence of the event giving rise to such Claim or within 21 days after the claimant first recognizes the condition giving rise to the Claim, whichever is later.

§ 15.1.3 CONTINUING CONTRACT PERFORMANCE

Pending final resolution of a Claim, except as otherwise agreed in writing or as provided in Section 9.7 and Article 14, the Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of the Contract and the Owner shall continue to make payments in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Architect will prepare Change Orders and issue Certificates for Payment in accordance with the decisions of the Initial Decision Maker.

§ 15.1.4 CLAIMS FOR ADDITIONAL COST

If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Sum, written notice as provided herein shall be given before proceeding to execute the Work. Prior notice is not required for Claims relating to an emergency endangering life or property arising under Section 10.4.

§ 15.1.5 CLAIMS FOR ADDITIONAL TIME

§ 15.1.5.1 If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Time, written notice as provided herein shall be given. The Contractor’s Claim shall include an estimate of cost and of probable effect of delay on progress of the Work. In the case of a continuing delay, only one Claim is necessary.

§ 15.1.5.2 If adverse weather conditions are the basis for a Claim for additional time, such Claim shall be documented by data substantiating that weather conditions were abnormal for the period of time, could not have been reasonably anticipated and had an adverse effect on the scheduled construction.

§ 15.1.6 CLAIMS FOR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES

The Contractor and Owner waive Claims against each other for consequential damages arising out of or relating to this Contract. This mutual waiver includes

- .1 damages incurred by the Owner for rental expenses, for losses of use, income, profit, financing, business and reputation, and for loss of management or employee productivity or of the services of such persons; and
- .2 damages incurred by the Contractor for principal office expenses including the compensation of personnel stationed there, for losses of financing, business and reputation, and for loss of profit except anticipated profit arising directly from the Work.

This mutual waiver is applicable, without limitation, to all consequential damages due to either party’s termination in accordance with Article 14. Nothing contained in this Section 15.1.6 shall be deemed to preclude an award of liquidated damages, when applicable, in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 15.2 INITIAL DECISION

§ 15.2.1 Claims, excluding those arising under Sections 10.3, 10.4, 11.3.9, and 11.3.10, shall be referred to the Initial Decision Maker for initial decision. The Architect will serve as the Initial Decision Maker, unless otherwise indicated in the Agreement. Except for those Claims excluded by this Section 15.2.1, an initial decision shall be required as a condition precedent to mediation of any Claim arising prior to the date final payment is due, unless 30 days have passed after the Claim has been referred to the Initial Decision Maker with no decision having been rendered. Unless the Initial Decision Maker and all affected parties agree, the Initial Decision Maker will not decide disputes between the Contractor and persons or entities other than the Owner.

§ 15.2.2 The Initial Decision Maker will review Claims and within ten days of the receipt of a Claim take one or more of the following actions: (1) request additional supporting data from the claimant or a response with supporting data from the other party, (2) reject the Claim in whole or in part, (3) approve the Claim, (4) suggest a compromise, or (5) advise the parties that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim if the Initial Decision Maker lacks sufficient information to evaluate the merits of the Claim or if the Initial Decision Maker concludes that, in the Initial Decision Maker's sole discretion, it would be inappropriate for the Initial Decision Maker to resolve the Claim.

§ 15.2.3 In evaluating Claims, the Initial Decision Maker may, but shall not be obligated to, consult with or seek information from either party or from persons with special knowledge or expertise who may assist the Initial Decision Maker in rendering a decision. The Initial Decision Maker may request the Owner to authorize retention of such persons at the Owner's expense.

§ 15.2.4 If the Initial Decision Maker requests a party to provide a response to a Claim or to furnish additional supporting data, such party shall respond, within ten days after receipt of such request, and shall either (1) provide a response on the requested supporting data, (2) advise the Initial Decision Maker when the response or supporting data will be furnished or (3) advise the Initial Decision Maker that no supporting data will be furnished. Upon receipt of the response or supporting data, if any, the Initial Decision Maker will either reject or approve the Claim in whole or in part.

§ 15.2.5 The Initial Decision Maker will render an initial decision approving or rejecting the Claim, or indicating that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim. This initial decision shall (1) be in writing; (2) state the reasons therefor; and (3) notify the parties and the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker, of any change in the Contract Sum or Contract Time or both. The initial decision shall be final and binding on the parties but subject to mediation and, if the parties fail to resolve their dispute through mediation, to binding dispute resolution.

§ 15.2.6 Either party may file for mediation of an initial decision at any time, subject to the terms of Section 15.2.6.1.

§ 15.2.6.1 Either party may, within 30 days from the date of an initial decision, demand in writing that the other party file for mediation within 60 days of the initial decision. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for mediation within the time required, then both parties waive their rights to mediate or pursue binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision.

§ 15.2.7 In the event of a Claim against the Contractor, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety, if any, of the nature and amount of the Claim. If the Claim relates to a possibility of a Contractor's default, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety and request the surety's assistance in resolving the controversy.

§ 15.2.8 If a Claim relates to or is the subject of a mechanic's lien, the party asserting such Claim may proceed in accordance with applicable law to comply with the lien notice or filing deadlines.

§ 15.3 MEDIATION

§ 15.3.1 Claims, disputes, or other matters in controversy arising out of or related to the Contract except those waived as provided for in Sections 9.10.4, 9.10.5, and 15.1.6 shall be subject to mediation as a condition precedent to binding dispute resolution.

§ 15.3.2 The parties shall endeavor to resolve their Claims by mediation which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Mediation Procedures in effect on the date of the Agreement. A request for mediation shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the mediation. The request may be made concurrently with the filing of binding dispute resolution proceedings but, in such event, mediation shall proceed in advance of binding dispute resolution proceedings, which shall be stayed pending mediation for a period of 60 days from the date of filing, unless stayed for a longer period by agreement of the parties or court order. If an arbitration is stayed pursuant to this Section 15.3.2, the parties may nonetheless proceed to the selection of the arbitrator(s) and agree upon a schedule for later proceedings.

§ 15.3.3 The parties shall share the mediator's fee and any filing fees equally. The mediation shall be held in the place where the Project is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon. Agreements reached in

mediation shall be enforceable as settlement agreements in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

§ 15.4 ARBITRATION

§ 15.4.1 If the parties have selected arbitration as the method for binding dispute resolution in the Agreement, any Claim subject to, but not resolved by, mediation shall be subject to arbitration which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Arbitration Rules in effect on the date of the Agreement. A demand for arbitration shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the arbitration. The party filing a notice of demand for arbitration must assert in the demand all Claims then known to that party on which arbitration is permitted to be demanded.

§ 15.4.1.1 A demand for arbitration shall be made no earlier than concurrently with the filing of a request for mediation, but in no event shall it be made after the date when the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim would be barred by the applicable statute of limitations. For statute of limitations purposes, receipt of a written demand for arbitration by the person or entity administering the arbitration shall constitute the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim.

§ 15.4.2 The award rendered by the arbitrator or arbitrators shall be final, and judgment may be entered upon it in accordance with applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

§ 15.4.3 The foregoing agreement to arbitrate and other agreements to arbitrate with an additional person or entity duly consented to by parties to the Agreement shall be specifically enforceable under applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

§ 15.4.4 CONSOLIDATION OR JOINDER

§ 15.4.4.1 Either party, at its sole discretion, may consolidate an arbitration conducted under this Agreement with any other arbitration to which it is a party provided that (1) the arbitration agreement governing the other arbitration permits consolidation, (2) the arbitrations to be consolidated substantially involve common questions of law or fact, and (3) the arbitrations employ materially similar procedural rules and methods for selecting arbitrator(s).

§ 15.4.4.2 Either party, at its sole discretion, may include by joinder persons or entities substantially involved in a common question of law or fact whose presence is required if complete relief is to be accorded in arbitration, provided that the party sought to be joined consents in writing to such joinder. Consent to arbitration involving an additional person or entity shall not constitute consent to arbitration of any claim, dispute or other matter in question not described in the written consent.

§ 15.4.4.3 The Owner and Contractor grant to any person or entity made a party to an arbitration conducted under this Section 15.4, whether by joinder or consolidation, the same rights of joinder and consolidation as the Owner and Contractor under this Agreement.

SECTION 000750 - SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 GENERAL:**

- A. General Conditions, and Supplementary Conditions as set forth herein are applicable to the work under every section of this Project Manual.

1.2 CONTRACT DOCUMENTS (GENERAL CONDITIONS ARTICLE 1)

- A. In addition to those listed in the General Conditions, the Contract Documents shall include also, these Supplementary Conditions, all Sections of Division 1 - "GENERAL REQUIREMENTS" through Division 31 - "EARTHWORK", all addenda issued, and all drawings as enumerated for this project, in the Project Manual.
- B. The following supplementary conditions modify the "General Conditions of the Contract for Construction," AIA Document A201, 2017. Where a portion of the General Conditions is modified, or deleted by these Supplementary Conditions, the unaltered portions of the General Conditions shall remain in effect.

1.3 ARTICLE 1 - GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. § 1.1 BASIC DEFINITIONS: Add the following:

§ 1.1.9 "Provide" shall mean "The Contractor shall furnish all labor, material, equipment and accessory appurtenances or materials necessary to install..."

Words "Contractor shall" are implied and shall be so understood wherever a direction is stated in imperative mood and whenever direction "provide" is used.

§ 1.1.10 "Owner": The term "Owner" means Calvary Church, Bentonville, AR.

§ 1.1.11 "Architect": The term "Architect" means the firm of LIVE DESIGN GROUP, PC, or its authorized representative.

§ 1.1.13 "This Contractor" or "Subcontractor": Where the words "This Contractor" or "Contractor" appear, they shall be taken to refer to the General Contractor for work called for in the contract Documents. This shall not preclude subcontracting of items of the Work as the General Contractor finds to be in its best interest. However, subcontracting any item of the Work shall not relieve the General Contractor of any obligation under the contract documents to provide and be fully responsible for all the Work, including that performed by General Contractor's subcontractors. Jurisdictional disputes among trades shall be settled by the General Contractor regardless of appearance of any item of work required in any particular section of the specifications or shown on any specific drawing(s). Coordination of all materials and trades involved in any operation, installation, or other work shall be accomplished by the General Contractor to provide the Owner with a finished product complete, finished, clean, new and ready for use.

- B. § 1.2 - CORRELATION AND INTENT OF THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS: In the event of conflicts or discrepancies among the Contract Documents, interpretations will be based on the following priorities:
 - 1. The Agreement
 - 2. Addenda, with those of later date having precedence over those of earlier date.
 - 3. Supplementary Conditions.
 - 4. The General Conditions of the Contract for Construction.
 - 5. Drawings and Specifications.
 - 6. In the case of an inconsistency between Drawings and Specifications or within either Document not clarified by addendum, the better quality, or greater quantity of Work shall be provided in accordance with the Architect's Interpretation.

C. Add the Following:

1. § 1.7 - CONFIDENTIALITY: The contractor warrants and represents that the Contractor shall not knowingly or negligently communicate or disclose at any time to any person or entity any information in connection with the Work or the Project, except: (1) with prior written consent of the Owner, (2) information that was in the public domain prior to the date of this Agreement, (3) information which becomes part of the public domain by publication or otherwise not due to any unauthorized act or omission of the Contractor, or (4) as may be required to perform the Work or by any applicable law.

1.7.1 The contractor, at any time upon the request of the Owner, shall immediately return and surrender to the Owner all copies of any materials, records, notices, memoranda, recordings, drawings, specifications and mock-ups and any other documents furnished by the Owner or the architect to the Contractor.

1.4 ARTICLE 2 OWNER

A. § 2.3 - INFORMATION AND SERVICES REQUIRED OF THE OWNER:

1. § 2.3.6: Delete paragraph 2.3.6 in its entirety and substitute the following: Construction Documents are available for internet download on the Architect's cloud-based sharing and storage service ("ShareFile™"). Limited access permissions will be set up for the contractor and his subcontractors for their use in downloading electronic versions of the drawings and project manual. The Contractor shall print at his expense, hard copies of the contract documents for his and his subcontractor's use in whatever number he deems necessary for the proper execution of the work.

1.5 ARTICLE 3 CONTRACTOR

A. § 3.2 - REVIEW OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS AND FIELD CONDITIONS BY CONTRACTOR

1. Add the following paragraphs:

§ 3.2.5 To the extent that the Contractor actually prepares, amends or supplements the contract Documents, and except for any reported errors, inconsistencies, omissions, concealed or unknown conditions defined in Paragraph 4.3.6, by executing the Agreement the Contractor represents the following:

1. The Contract Documents are sufficiently complete and detailed for the Contractor to (1) perform the Work required to produce the results intended by the Contract Documents and (2) comply with all the requirements of the Contract Documents.
2. The Work required by the Contract Documents, including, without limitation, all construction details, construction means, methods, procedures and techniques necessary to perform the Work, use of materials, selection of equipment and requirements of product manufacturers are consistent with: (1) good and sound practices within the construction industry; (2) generally prevailing and accepted industry standards applicable to Work; (3) requirements of any warranties applicable to the Work; and (4) all laws, ordinances, regulations, rules and orders which bear upon the Contractor's performance of the Work.

B. § 3.4 - LABOR AND MATERIALS

1. Add the following paragraphs:

§ 3.4.4 The Contractor shall only employ labor on the Project or in connection with the Work capable of working harmoniously with all trades, crafts and any other individuals associated with the Project. Contractor shall also use its best efforts to minimize the likelihood of any strike, work stoppage or other labor disturbance.

§ 3.4.5 The Contractor shall not employ labor in violation of any applicable law or regulation forbidding employment on the basis of immigration or residency status.

C. § 3.5 - WARRANTY

1. Add the following paragraph:

§ 3.5.3 The Contractor hereby assigns to the Owner at the time of initial completion of the Work any and all manufacturers' warranties relating to materials and labor used in the Work and further agrees to perform the Work in such manner so as to preserve any and all such manufacturers' warranties.

D. § 3.7 - PERMITS, FEES AND NOTICES

1. Fees shall be paid as follows:

a. CONTRACTOR (or his subcontractors) shall pay for all permits, meter, sewer impact and tap fees. Where required by local, state or federal agencies, the applications and associated fees for environmental impact, and/or environmental protection shall be included in the general contractor's bid.

E. § 3.13 - USE OF SITE

1. Add the following paragraphs:

§ 3.13.2 Only materials and equipment which are to be used directly in the Work shall be brought to and stored on the Project site by the Contractor. After equipment is no longer required for the Work, it shall be promptly removed from the Project site. Protection of construction materials and equipment stored at the Project site from weather, theft, damage and all other adversity is solely the responsibility of the Contractor.

§ 3.13.3 The Contractor and any entity for whom the Contractor is responsible shall not erect any sign on the Project site without prior written consent of the Owner, which may be withheld in the sole discretion of the Owner.

§ 3.13.4 Contractor shall ensure that the Work, at all times, is performed in a manner that affords reasonable access, both vehicular and pedestrian, to the site of the Work and all adjacent areas. The Work shall be performed, to the fullest extent reasonable possible, in such a manner that public areas adjacent to the site of the Work shall be free from all debris, building materials and equipment likely to cause hazardous conditions. Without limitation of any other provision of the Contract Documents, contractor shall use its best efforts to minimize any interference with the occupancy or beneficial use of (1) any areas and buildings adjacent to the site of the Work and (2) the Project in the event of partial occupancy, as more specifically described in Paragraph 9.9.

1.6 ARTICLE FIVE - SUBCONTRACTORS

A. § 5.3 SUBCONTRACTUAL RELATIONS

1. Add the following to the end of Paragraph 5.3:

"All subcontracts shall be in writing."

1.7 ARTICLE 8 TIME

A. § 8.3 - DELAYS AND EXTENSIONS OF TIME

1. § 8.3.3 - Delete Paragraph 8.3.3 in its entirety and substitute the following:

Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in the Contract Documents, an extension in the contract Time, to the extent permitted under Paragraph 8.3.1, shall be the sole remedy of the contractor for any (1) delay in the commencement, prosecution or completion of the Work, (2) hindrance or obstruction in the performance of the Work, (3) loss of productivity, or (4) other similar claims (collectively referred to in this Paragraph 8.3.3 as Delays) whether or not such Delays are foreseeable, unless a Delay is caused by acts of the Owner constituting active interference with the contractor's performance of the Work, and only to the extent such acts continue after the Contractor furnishes the Owner with

notice of such interference; provided, however, that the limitation on claims stated in this Paragraph 8.3.3 shall not apply to Delays exceeding six weeks in the aggregate.

2. Add the following paragraph:

§ 8.3.4 If the Contractor submits a progress report indicating, or otherwise expressed an intention to achieve, completion of the Work prior to any completion date required by the Contract Documents or expiration of the Contract Time, no liability of the Owner to the Contractor for any failure of the Contractor to so complete the Work shall be created or implied.

1.8 ARTICLE 9 - PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

A. § 9.3 - APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

1. § 9.3.1 - Add the following to the end of paragraph:

The form of Application for Payment shall be notarized AIA Document G702, Application and Certification for Payment, supported by AIA Document G703, Continuation Sheet.

2. Add the following paragraph:

§ 9.3.4 The Owner may charge the Contractor for any extra services encountered on the part of the Architect or any of the Consulting Engineers, who upon proper notice from the Contractor, travels to the job site for an inspection but finds the work is not ready for the noticed inspection, or is not complete, thereby requiring a follow-up inspection. Similarly, the Owner may charge the Contractor for any extra services billed to the Owner by the Architect for correction of errors, omissions, or unacceptable work by the Contractor. Any such charges will be fully documented by the Owner.

B. § 9.6 - PROGRESS PAYMENTS

1. § 9.6.2 - Add the following language to the end of Paragraph 9.6.2:

Notwithstanding anything in this Paragraph 9.6.2 to the contrary, the Owner may elect, upon reasonable cause as determined by Owner, to make any payment requested by the Contractor on behalf of a subcontractor of any tier jointly payable to the Contractor and such subcontractor. The Contractor and such subcontractor shall be responsible for the allocation and disbursement of funds included a part of any such joint payment. In no event shall any joint payment be construed to create any (1) contract between the Owner and a subcontractor of any tier, (2) obligations from the Owner to such subcontractor, or (3) rights in such subcontractor against the Owner.

2. Add the following paragraphs:

§ 9.6.9 Ten (10) percent retainage shall be deducted from the contractor's monthly request for payment until the project is 50% complete, at which time no further increase in the retainage amount will be required upon approval of the Architect and Owner.

§ 9.6.10 If in the opinion of the Architect, work is not progressing satisfactorily, the 10% retainage will be accessed on the contractor's monthly request for payment beyond the 50% completion point.

C. § 9.8 - SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

1. § 9.8.1 - Delete paragraph 9.8.1 and substitute the following Paragraph 9.8.1:

§ 9.8.1 Substantial Completion shall be defined as follows:

§ 9.8.1.1 The Premises have been fully completed by Contractor in accordance with the Plans and Specifications, fixtures and equipment have been properly installed, and operational and in new, undamaged and operational conditions, except for minor exterior and interior punchlist items (not exceeding \$25,000 in the aggregate for

such interior items) which do not interfere with Owner's exclusive possession of the Premises, or its ability to train its employees, and all of Contractor's tools, scaffolding, surplus building materials, waste, debris, and rubbish of every sort in the premises have been removed; provided, however that delays in the installation of Owner's fixtures and equipment shall not delay the date on which the Premises would otherwise be deemed completed for occupancy unless and except such delays are caused by Contractor or its agents.

§ 9.8.1.2 Owner has been afforded the time periods after the various stages of Contractor's construction Schedule so as to enable Owner to complete installation of its fixtures and equipment, or delays by Owner's actions in installing its fixtures and equipment, or delays caused by untimely change orders submitted by Owner shall not delay to the Contractor's detriment the date on which the Premises would, but for such delays, be otherwise deemed completed for occupancy.

§ 9.8.1.3 Contractor has delivered to Owner all necessary certificates of occupancy or similar approvals required in the community for Owner to occupy and operate the building (conditional or temporary certificates will suffice; provided however, that Contractor shall be in default hereunder if such temporary or conditional certificates expire or are revoked and are not simultaneously replaced with a permanent unconditional certificate of occupancy); provided, however, that delays in the issuance of such certificate of occupancy caused by Owner's failure to perform its obligations hereunder within the time allowed therefor shall not delay the date on which the Premises would otherwise be deemed completed for occupancy except to the extent that Owner's failure is caused by Contractor or its agent or "acts of God" or other force majeure causes.

1.9 ARTICLE 11 INSURANCE AND BONDS

A. § 11.1 CONTRACTOR'S LIABILITY INSURANCE. Add the following:

§ 11.1.4 Liability insurance shall include all major divisions of coverage, and be on a comprehensive basis including:

- .1 Premises Operations (including X, C, and U coverages as applicable).
- .2 Independent Contractor's Protective
- .3 Products and Completed Operations
- .4 Personal Injury Liability with Employment Exclusion deleted.
- .5 Contractual, including specified provision for Contractor's obligation under Paragraph 3.18.
- .6 Owned, non-owned, and hired motor vehicles.
- .7 Broad Form Property Damage including Completed Operations.

§ 11.1.5 If the General Liability coverages are provided by a Commercial Liability Policy on a claims-made basis, the policy date or Retroactive Date shall predate the Contract; the termination date of the policy, or applicable extended reporting period shall be no earlier than the termination date of coverages required to be maintained after final payment, certified. The insurance required shall be written for not less than the following limits, or greater if required by law.

General Liability	\$1,000,000 Per Occurrence
	\$1,000,000 Aggregate Bodily Injury and Property Damage
Automobile Liability	\$1,000,000 Combined Single Limit Bodily Injury and Property Damage
Umbrella.....	\$3,000,000 Combined Single Limit Bodily Injury and Property Damage
Worker's Compensation....	Statutory amounts
Employer's Liability	

Contractor named as insured under the general liability, automobile shall also cause the Owner and Architect and their officers, agents and employees to be named as additional insureds under

such policies. Contractor shall obtain its insurer's (s') agreement that for liabilities and responsibilities assumed by Contractor under the contract, Contractor's general liability policy, automobile policy and excess liability policy shall be primary insurance for the Contractor and any other additional insured(s) required by the Contract Documents, and the insurance maintained by the additional insureds shall be excess and noncontributory. Compliance with this requirement shall be accomplished by endorsement to the policies.

30-Day Cancellation Notice Required.

NOTE: If the "ACORD" form is used as the Certificate of Insurance then add the Owner as co-insured.

Add the following sentences:

The form of policy for this coverage shall be Completed Value.

If the Owner is damaged by the failure of the Contractor to maintain such insurance, then the Contractor shall bear all reasonable costs properly attributable thereto.

B. § 11.2 OWNER'S LIABILITY INSURANCE.

1. Add the following:

§ 11.2.2 Owner may, at its option, maintain such insurance as will protect it from its contingent liability to others for damages because of bodily injury, including death, which may arise from operations under this contract, and any other liability for damages which Contractor is required to insure under any provisions of this Contract.

Owner may at its option, maintain such insurances as will protect it against loss of use, should an existing building, or any part thereof, be damaged by or as a result of this operation. Owner also may maintain such coverage as it deems necessary to protect it against any other perils or risks but neither this provision of this contract nor any other insurance coverage hereunder shall insure to the benefit of Contractor nor relieve him of any responsibility under this Contract.

1.10 ARTICLE 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

A. § 13.4 TESTING AND INSPECTIONS

1. Add the following:

§ 13.4.1.1 The Owner shall arrange and pay for the Special Inspections required by code and per the specifications and drawing requirements for "Special Inspections". Material testing services for concrete and structural steel shall be performed by the company engaged to perform special inspections and the cost paid by the Owner. The General Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating the schedule for each test, inspection or approval.

§ 13.4.1.2 Except where required under "Special Inspections", other specified testing, including but not limited to, sealant adhesion testing, and mechanical test and balancing shall be arranged and paid by the General Contractor.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 000750

SECTION 011000 - SUMMARY**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY**A. Section Includes:**

- 1. Project information.
- 2. Work covered by Contract Documents.
- 3. Work by Owner.
- 4. Work under separate contracts.
- 5. Future work.
- 6. Access to site.
- 7. Coordination with occupants.
- 8. Work restrictions.
- 9. Specification and drawing conventions.
- 10. Special Requirements
- 11. Miscellaneous provisions.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for limitations and procedures governing temporary use of Owner's facilities.

1.3 PROJECT INFORMATION**A. Project Identification: Calvary Church Facility Addition**

- 1. Project Location: 2612 East Central Avenue; Bentonville, AR 72712.

B. Owner: Calvary Church; 2612 East Central Avenue; Bentonville, AR 72712.

- 1. Contact: Chantry Dean; (479) 273-1510; chantry.dean@calvarychurchnwa.com

C. General Contractor: Rip Gresham Construction; 2909 Chapman Drive, Springdale, AR 72762; (479) 379-1617.

- 1. Contact: Barry Puckett; barry@ripgresham.com

D. Architect: Live Design Group; 3117 2nd Avenue South, Birmingham, AL 35242; (205) 870-3090.

- 1. Contact: Grant Wright; (205) 314-8418; grant@livedesigngroup.com

E. Architect's Consultants: The Architect has retained the following design professionals who have prepared designated portions of the Contract Documents:

- 1. Structural Engineer: **Barnett Jones Wilson, LLC**; 125 18th Street North; Pell City, AL 35125; (205) 884-5334.
 - a. Contact: Dennis Vandegrift, dennis@struct-engr.com
- 2. Electrical Engineer: **Jackson Renfro & Associates**; 31 Inverness Center Parkway, Suite 300; Birmingham, AL 35223; (205) 536-7117.

- a. Contact: David Arendall; david@jrace.com
3. Mechanical, Plumbing & Fire Protection Engineer: **BBG&S Engineering**; 2870 Old Rocky Ridge Road; Suite 115; Birmingham, Alabama 35243; (205) 969-4550
 - a. Contacts: John Bagby (mechanical); johnbagby@bbgs.pro
Sharon Thompson (plumbing); sthompson@bbgs.pro
- F. Owner's Consultants: The Owner has retained the following design professionals who have prepared designated portions of the Contract Documents. Their work shall be included in the contract amount but excluded from the responsibilities of the architect and his design consultants.
 1. Civil Engineer: **Halff Engineering**; 2407 SE Cottonwood St.; Suite 1; Bentonville, AR 72712; (479) 273-2209
 - a. Contact: Patrick Foy; (479) 212-4028; pfoy@halff.com
 2. Audio/Video/Theatrical Lighting and Acoustic design: **Summit Integrated Systems**; 697 South Pierce Ave, Louisville, CO 80027; (303) 469-5252.
 - a. Contact: Anthony Ray; aray@summitintegrated.com

1.4 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. The Work of Project is defined by the Contract Documents and consists of the following:
 1. Approximately 46,290 square foot, type IIB addition to the existing 14,360 square foot, type VB constructed campus of Calvary Church.
 2. The new structural steel, fully sprinklered addition consist of a slab-on-grade sanctuary with elevated seating, with second floor business offices and educational space, separated from the existing building with a two-hour fire wall to separate the different construction types.
 3. Work includes selective demolition of portions of the existing building required to construct the fire wall and to extend fire sprinkler protection to existing areas. Other work in the existing building includes roof modifications at the new fire wall, interior repairs at the connection to the new fire wall and modifications to exterior doors and the existing second floor exterior stair as indicated.
 4. Work in the new building includes but is not limited to slab on grade, structural steel columns, beams and floor and roof joist, metal deck and concrete elevated slab, exterior cold formed metal framing with insulated nail-base wall sheathing, with stucco, brick and metal panel veneers. The roof will be TPO membrane with rigid insulation, sheet metal fabrications, roof accessories and mechanical screens supported from the roof mounted mechanical equipment. Fenestration primarily of aluminum framed entrances and storefront with insulated glass, hollow metal doors and frames. Interior construction of light gage metal studs, gypsum board, wood doors and hollow metal frames, builders hardware, floor, base, wall and ceiling finishes as scheduled, metal pan stairs, metal railing, machine-room less traction elevators, thermal and acoustic insulation, acoustic wall and ceiling treatment, interior and exterior painting, plumbing, fire protection, mechanical and electrical.
 - a. Work also includes cold-formed metal stud platform framing, concrete deck and related finished flooring. Platform support framing shall be a delegated design responsibility of the General Contractor.
- B. Type of Contract:
 1. Project will be constructed under a single prime contract.

1.5 WORK BY OWNER

- A. General: Cooperate fully with Owner so work may be carried out smoothly, without interfering with or delaying work under this Contract or work by Owner. Coordinate the Work of this Contract with work performed by Owner.

- B. The owner shall contract for the design and installation of the following portions of work. Coordinate construction schedules and site access with the owner and vendor to ensure timely delivery of material, necessary access and on-site storage and staging for the installation of the following:

- 1. Fixed seating in the new sanctuary.

1.6 CONTRACTOR'S USE OF SITE AND PREMISES

- A. Limits on Use of Site: Limit use of Project site to areas within the Contract limits indicated. Do not disturb portions of Project site beyond areas in which the Work is indicated.
 - 1. Driveways, Walkways and Entrances: Keep driveways, loading areas, and entrances serving premises clear and available to Owner, Owner's employees, and emergency vehicles at all times. Do not use these areas for parking or for storage of materials.
 - a. Schedule deliveries to minimize use of driveways and entrances by construction operations.
 - b. Schedule deliveries to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on-site.
- B. Condition of Existing Building: Maintain portions of existing building affected by construction operations in a weathertight condition throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations.
- C. Condition of Existing Grounds: Maintain portions of existing grounds, landscaping, and hardscaping affected by construction operations throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations.

1.7 COORDINATION WITH OCCUPANTS

- A. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the premises during entire construction period, with the exception of areas under construction. Cooperate with Owner during construction operations to minimize conflicts and facilitate Owner usage. Perform the Work so as not to interfere with Owner's operations. Maintain existing exits unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Maintain access to existing walkways, corridors, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities. Do not close or obstruct walkways, corridors, or other occupied or used facilities without written permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Provide not less than 72 hours' notice to Owner of activities that will affect Owner's operations.

1.8 WORK RESTRICTIONS

- A. Comply with restrictions on construction operations.
 - 1. Comply with limitations on use of public streets, work on public streets, rights of way, and other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. On-Site Work Hours: Coordinate work hours to meet Project requirements as approved by Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Weekend Hours: Limit workdays to Monday through Saturday.
 - 2. Early Morning Hours: Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction for restrictions on noisy work in populated areas.
 - 3. Coordinate with Owner holiday services and other major Church related events that would require restrictions on Work.

- C. Smoking and Controlled Substance Restrictions: Use of tobacco products, alcoholic beverages, and other controlled substances on Project site is not permitted.
- D. Employee Screening: Comply with Owner's requirements for drug and background screening of Contractor personnel working on Project site.
 - 1. Maintain list of approved screened personnel with Owner's representative.

1.9 SPECIFICATION AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS

- A. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:
 - 1. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.
 - 2. Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor unless specifically stated otherwise.
- B. Division 01 General Requirements: Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.
- C. Drawing Coordination: Requirements for materials and products identified on Drawings are described in detail in the Specifications. One or more of the following are used on Drawings to identify materials and products:
 - 1. Terminology: Materials and products are identified by the typical generic terms used in the individual Specifications Sections.
 - 2. Abbreviations: Materials and products are identified by abbreviations published as part of the U.S. National CAD Standard and scheduled on Drawings.

1.10 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

- A. Audio, Video and (Theatrical) Lighting: Coordinate with AVL design documents and the electrical portion of this contract to ensure line voltage power and low voltage rough-in are in place prior to start of work.
 - 1. Coordinate with all related trades the requirements for audio, video and theatrical lighting with the AVL contractor. At the earliest possible date, notify architect where infrastructure required by AVL is not shown in construction drawings. Conduct job site meetings between subcontractors to review work covered in concurrent contracts and the responsibilities of each.
 - 2. Matrix of Responsibilities: The following is a general description of the division of design, supply and installation requirements for the AVL portion of the work. See the AVL design drawings and specifications for detailed description of items to be designed, supplied and installed.

TASK	SPECIFIED BY	DESIGNED BY	SUPPLIED BY	INSTALLED BY
Power transformers, circuit breakers, panel boards	EC	EE	EC	EC
Lyntec sequencing panels	AV	Manufacturer	EC	EC
A/V/TL system high voltage terminations	AV	Manufacturer	EC	EC
A/V/TL backboxes and j-boxes	SEE JUNCTION BOX SCHEDULE ON SHEET AV601			
A/V/TL conduit, pull strings	AV	EC	EC	EC
A/V/TL cable trays and ladders	AV	AV	AV	EC
Auditorium theatrical lighting high voltage distribution	AV	EE	EC	EC

Dimmer racks & ELTS	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Egress lighting systems	EE	EE	EC	EC
House lighting fixtures	AV	Manufacturer	AV	GC
Over stage work lights	EE	EE	EC	EC
Blocking for LCD TV displays and equipment racks	AV	Architect	GC	GC
1 1/2" I.D. black steel schedule 40 lighting pipes, grids & associated rigging	AV	AV	GC	GC
Structural steel at called out rigging locations according to specified loads	GC	Architect Structural	GC	GC
Covers/grills for subwoofer and front fill cavities	AV	Architect	GC	GC
Millwork, counter tops, walls, and finishes for FOH control booths	GC	Architect	GC	GC
Acoustical treatment materials	AV	Architect	GC	GC
Upstage wall acoustical treatment materials	AV	Architect	GC	GC

LEGEND:

AV-Audio Video Consultant; EE-Electrical Engineer; EC-Electrical Subcontractor; GC-General Contractor

SPECIFY: party responsible will specify the requirements associated with the relevant item.

DESIGN: party responsible to produce constructible documents and determine how the relevant item and its requirements will fit into the overall design.

SUPPLY: party responsible will supply the relevant item.

INSTALL: party responsible will install the relevant item.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 011000

SECTION 012100 - ALLOWANCES**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements governing allowances.
 - 1. Certain items are specified in the Contract Documents by allowances. Allowances have been established in lieu of additional requirements and to defer selection of actual materials and equipment to a later date when direction will be provided to Contractor. If necessary, additional requirements will be issued by Change Order.
- B. Types of allowances include the following:
 - 1. Lump-sum allowances.
 - 2. Unit-cost Allowances.
 - 3. Contingency allowances.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for procedures governing the use of allowances for testing and inspecting.

1.3 SELECTION AND PURCHASE

- A. At the earliest practical date after award of the Contract, advise Architect of the date when final selection and purchase of each product or system described by an allowance must be completed to avoid delaying the Work.
- B. At Architect's request, obtain proposals for each allowance for use in making final selections. Include recommendations that are relevant to performing the Work.
- C. Purchase products and systems selected by Architect from the designated supplier.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit proposals for purchase of products or systems included in allowances, in the form specified for Change Orders.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit invoices or delivery slips to show actual quantities of materials delivered to the site for use in fulfillment of each allowance.
- B. Submit time sheets and other documentation to show labor time and cost for installation of allowance items that include installation as part of the allowance.
- C. Coordinate and process submittals for allowance items in same manner as for other portions of the Work.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate allowance items with other portions of the Work. Furnish templates as required to coordinate installation.

1.7 LUMP-SUM ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance and shall include taxes, freight, and delivery to Project site.

- B. Unless otherwise indicated in the allowance description, Contractor's costs for labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials selected by Architect under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.
- C. Unused Materials: Return unused materials purchased under an allowance to manufacturer or supplier for credit to Owner, after installation has been completed and accepted.
 - 1. If requested by Architect, retain and prepare unused material for storage by Owner. Deliver unused material to Owner's storage space as directed.

1.8 UNIT-COST ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance and shall include taxes, freight, and delivery to Project site.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.
- C. Unused Materials: Return unused materials purchased under an allowance to manufacturer or supplier for credit to Owner, after installation has been completed and accepted.
 - 1. If requested by Architect, retain and prepare unused material for storage by Owner. Deliver unused material to Owner's storage space as directed.

1.9 QUANTITY ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance and shall include taxes, freight, and delivery to Project site.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.
- C. Unused Materials: Return unused materials purchased under an allowance to manufacturer or supplier for credit to Owner, after installation has been completed and accepted.
 - 1. If requested by Architect, retain and prepare unused material for storage by Owner. Deliver unused material to Owner's storage space as directed.

1.10 ADJUSTMENT OF ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance Adjustment: To adjust allowance amounts, prepare a Change Order proposal based on the difference between purchase amount and the allowance, multiplied by final measurement of work-in-place where applicable. If applicable, include reasonable allowances for cutting losses, tolerances, mixing wastes, normal product imperfections, and similar margins.
 - 1. Include installation costs in purchase amount only where indicated as part of the allowance.
 - 2. If requested, prepare explanation and documentation to substantiate distribution of overhead costs and other margins claimed.
 - 3. Submit substantiation of a change in scope of work, if any, claimed in Change Orders related to unit-cost allowances.
 - 4. Owner reserves the right to establish the quantity of work-in-place by independent quantity survey, measure, or count.
- B. Submit claims for increased costs because of a change in scope or nature of the allowance described in the Contract Documents, whether for the purchase order amount or Contractor's handling, labor, installation, overhead, and profit.

1. Do not include Contractor's or subcontractor's indirect expense in the Change Order cost amount unless it is clearly shown that the nature or extent of work has changed from what could have been foreseen from information in the Contract Documents.
2. No change to Contractor's indirect expense is permitted for selection of higher- or lower-priced materials or systems of the same scope and nature as originally indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine products covered by an allowance promptly on delivery for damage or defects. Return damaged or defective products to manufacturer for replacement.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate materials and their installation for each allowance with related materials and installations to ensure that each allowance item is completely integrated and interfaced with related work.

3.3 SCHEDULE OF ALLOWANCES

A. Lump Sum Allowances:

1. Allowance No. 1 - Interior Panel Signage: For interior room identification signage as specified in Section 101423 "Panel Signage", allow a lump sum cost of \$ 5,000.00. Price includes materials and installation costs.
2. Allowance No. 2 – Interior Dimensional Letter Signage: For non-illuminated acrylic dimensional letters and graphics (as specified in Section 101419 "Dimensional Letter Signage") allow a lump sum cost of \$ 2,000. Price includes materials and installation costs.
3. Allowance No. 3 – Exterior Dimensional Letter Signage: For exterior backlighting and internally illuminated dimensional letters and graphics (as specified in Section 101419 "Dimensional Letter Signage") allow a lump sum cost of \$ 40,000. Price includes materials and installation costs.
 - a. Allowance includes the back lighted dimensional letters at the two site constructed monument signs. Allowance cost only includes the sign materials and installation on monument sign surfaces indicated. Cost of the monument signs, including electrical service is not part of the allowance and should be included in the base contract amount.
 - b. Electrical service and final connection to illuminated signage is not included in the allowance amount and shall be included in the base contract amount.
4. Allowance No. 4 - Emergency Responder Radio Coverage System: Allow a Lump sum allowance of \$ 75,000.00 for complete Emergency Responder Radio Coverage (ERRC) system.
 - a. Per the electrical drawings and specifications, allowance shall include material and installation of ERRC system, including but not limited to all hardware, bi-directional amplifiers, band-pass filters, surge suppressors, lightning protection, UPS, transmission lines, power cabling, antennas, and other components necessary for a complete operational system as specified and as acceptable to the local authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. The cost of the radio signal survey shall be included in the base contract amount and not in the allowance amount.
 - 1) Survey shall be taken immediately after building structure is complete, and prior to ceiling installation to determine signal coverage and strength of the municipality's emergency responder radio (public safety) system inside the project facility.

B. UNIT-COST ALLOWANCES.

1. Allowance No. 5 - Face brick (Section 042000 "Unit Masonry Assemblies"): Allow a unit cost of \$250 per thousand. Price includes material cost only.

C. QUANTITY ALLOWANCES: See Sheet S0.01 - Structural General Notes

1. Allowance No. 6 – Reinforcing Steel and Concrete: For concrete work, contractor shall include an allowance of **1.0 ton** of reinforcing steel, in place, in addition to the reinforcing steel shown on the contract documents in the base bid. This steel is to be placed at no additional cost to the Owner in sizes and at locations as directed by the Architect or Engineer. Unused steel will be credited to the Owner.
2. Allowance No. 7 – Structural Steel:
 - a. Contractor shall include an allowance of **1,000 lineal feet** of 3"x 3"x1/4" angle in place in addition to the steel shown on the contract documents in the base bid.
 - b. Contractor shall include an allowance of **5.0 tons** of structural steel in place in addition to the structural steel shown on the contract documents in the base bid. This steel is to be placed at no additional cost to the Owner in sizes and at locations as directed by the Architect or Engineer. Unused steel will be credited to the Owner.
3. Allowance No. 8 – Concrete Masonry Units (CMU): For masonry work, contractor shall include an allowance of **0.5 tons** of reinforcing steel in place in addition to the reinforcing steel shown on the contract documents in the base bid. This steel is to be placed at no additional cost to the Owner in sizes and at locations as directed by the Architect or Engineer. Unused steel will be credited to the Owner.

END OF SECTION 012100

SECTION 012500 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. All product substitutions shall be proposed by the Contractor in writing, including all pertinent information about the product to clearly illustrate compliance with performance criteria specified for the particular product. Contractor shall not furnish or install substitute materials without prior written approval from the Architect.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
 - 2. Section 016000 "Product Requirements" for requirements for submitting comparable product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.
 - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
 - 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit three copies of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
 - 1. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
 - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation cannot be provided, if applicable.
 - b. Coordination information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors, that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
 - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitution with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
 - d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
 - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
 - f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.

- g. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners.
 - h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
 - i. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
 - j. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials, and is appropriate for applications indicated.
 - k. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
- 2. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
 - a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
 - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

1.6 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 15 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.
 - 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
 - a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 - b. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 - c. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
 - d. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - e. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 - f. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 - g. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 - h. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- B. Substitutions for Convenience (Where Initiated by the Contractor): Not allowed.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012500

SECTION 012600 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENT**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling requests for substitutions made after the Contract award.

1.3 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

- A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on AIA Document G710, "Architect's Supplemental Instructions."

1.4 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
 - 1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Architect are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
 - 2. Within 15 days, when not otherwise specified, after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
 - a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
 - b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
 - c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
 - d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
 - e. Quotation Form: Use forms acceptable to Architect.
- B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Architect.
 - 1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
 - 2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
 - 3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
 - 4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.

5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
6. Comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.
7. Proposal Request Form: Use form acceptable to Architect.

1.5 ADMINISTRATIVE CHANGE ORDERS

- A. Allowance Adjustment: See Section 012100 "Allowances" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect actual costs of allowances.
- B. Unit-Price Adjustment: See Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect measured scope of unit-price work.

1.6 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

- A. On Owner's approval of a Work Changes Proposal Request, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on form included in Project Manual.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012600

SECTION 012900 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for procedural requirements governing the handling and processing of allowances.
 - 2. Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling changes to the Contract.
 - 3. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for administrative requirements governing the preparation and submittal of Contractor's construction schedule.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

1.4 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with other required administrative forms and schedules, including the following:
 - a. Application for Payment forms with continuation sheets.
 - b. Submittal schedule.
 - c. Items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Submit the schedule of values to Architect at earliest possible date, but no later than ten days after receiving the Notice to Proceed.
- B. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.
 - 1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:
 - a. Project name and location.
 - b. Name of Architect.
 - c. Architect's project number.
 - d. Contractor's name and address.
 - e. Date of submittal.
 - 2. Arrange schedule of values consistent with format of AIA Document G703.
 - 3. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Coordinate with Project Manual table of contents.

- Provide multiple line items for principal subcontract amounts in excess of five percent of the Contract Sum.
4. Round amounts to nearest whole dollar; total shall equal the Contract Sum.
 5. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
 - a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site. If required, include evidence of insurance.
 6. Provide separate line items in the schedule of values for initial cost of materials, for each subsequent stage of completion, and for total installed value of that part of the Work.
 7. Allowances: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each allowance. Show line-item value of unit-cost allowances, as a product of the unit cost, multiplied by measured quantity. Use information indicated in the Contract Documents to determine quantities.
 8. Each item in the schedule of values and Applications for Payment shall be complete. Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each item.
 - a. Temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place may be shown either as separate line items in the schedule of values or distributed as general overhead expense, at Contractor's option.
 9. Schedule Updating: Update and resubmit the schedule of values before the next Applications for Payment when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum.

1.5 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
 1. Initial Application for Payment, Application for Payment at time of Substantial Completion, and final Application for Payment involve additional requirements.
- B. Payment Application Times: Submit Application for Payment to Architect by the tenth (10th) day of the month. The period covered by each Application for Payment is one month, ending on the last day of the month.
 1. Submit draft copy of Application for Payment seven days prior to due date for review by Architect.
- C. Application for Payment Forms: Use forms provided by Owner for Applications for Payment. Sample copies are included in Project Manual.
- D. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Architect will return incomplete applications without action.
 1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
 2. Include amounts for work completed following previous Application for Payment, whether or not payment has been received. Include only amounts for work completed at time of Application for Payment.
 3. Include amounts of Change Orders issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
 4. Indicate separate amounts for work being carried out under Owner-requested project acceleration.
- E. Stored Materials: Include in Application for Payment amounts applied for materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.

1. Provide certificate of insurance, evidence of transfer of title to Owner, and consent of surety to payment, for stored materials.
 2. Provide supporting documentation that verifies amount requested, such as paid invoices. Match amount requested with amounts indicated on documentation; do not include overhead and profit on stored materials.
 3. Provide summary documentation for stored materials indicating the following:
 - a. Value of materials previously stored and remaining stored as of date of previous Applications for Payment.
 - b. Value of previously stored materials put in place after date of previous Application for Payment and on or before date of current Application for Payment.
 - c. Value of materials stored since date of previous Application for Payment and remaining stored as of date of current Application for Payment.
- F. Transmittal: Submit signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to Architect by a method ensuring receipt within 48 hours, in a number agreed upon by Owner, Architect and General Contractor.
1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.
- G. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
1. List of subcontractors.
 2. Schedule of values.
 3. Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final).
 4. Products list (preliminary if not final).
 5. Schedule of unit prices.
 6. Submittal schedule (preliminary if not final).
 7. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
 8. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
 9. Copies of building permits.
 10. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.
 11. Initial progress report.
 12. Report of preconstruction conference.
 13. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
 14. Performance and payment bonds.
 15. Data needed to acquire Owner's insurance.
- H. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After Architect issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
 2. This application shall reflect Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
- I. Final Payment Application: After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted as directed in the General Conditions of the Contract.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012900

SECTION 013100 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. General coordination procedures.
 - 2. Coordination drawings.
 - 3. RFIs.
 - 4. Digital project management procedures.
 - 5. Project meetings.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for preparing and submitting Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Section 017300 "Execution" for procedures for coordinating general installation and field-engineering services, including establishment of benchmarks and control points.
 - 3. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for coordinating closeout of the Contract.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. RFI: Request for Information. Request from Owner, Architect, or Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:
 - 1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
 - 2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
 - 3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.
- B. Key Personnel Names: Within 15 days of starting construction operations, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses and cellular telephone numbers and e-mail addresses. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as alternates in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.
 - 1. Post copies of list in project meeting room, in temporary field office. Keep list current at all times.

1.5 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
 2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
 2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
 3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
 4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
 5. Progress meetings.
 6. Preinstallation conferences.
 7. Project closeout activities.
 8. Startup and adjustment of systems.

1.6 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
1. Architect will return without response those RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor.
 2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.
- B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:
1. Project name.
 2. Project number.
 3. Date.
 4. Name of Contractor.
 5. Name of Architect.
 6. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
 7. RFI subject.
 8. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
 9. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 10. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
 11. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
 12. Contractor's signature.
 13. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
 - a. Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.
- C. RFI Forms: AIA Document G716 or software-generated form with substantially the same content as indicated above, acceptable to Architect.
1. Attachments shall be electronic files in PDF format.
- D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven working days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.

1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
 - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
 - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
 - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
 - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
 - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
 - f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
 - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt by Architect of additional information.
3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures."
 - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within 10 days of receipt of the RFI response.

E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log weekly. Include the following:

1. Project name.
2. Name and address of Contractor.
3. Name and address of Architect.
4. RFI number including RFIs that were returned without action or withdrawn.
5. RFI description.
6. Date the RFI was submitted.
7. Date Architect's response was received.
8. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.

F. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.

1.7 DIGITAL PROJECT MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES

A. Use of Architect's Digital Data Files: Digital data files of Architect's BIM model will be provided by Architect for Contractor's use during construction.

1. Digital data files may be used by Contractor in preparing coordination drawings, Shop Drawings, and Project record Drawings.
2. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data files as they relate to Contract Drawings.
3. Digital Drawing Software Program: Contract Drawings are available in Revit.
4. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement form acceptable to Owner and Architect.
 - a. Subcontractors, and other parties granted access by Contractor to Architect's digital data files shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement acceptable to Owner and Architect.
5. The following digital data files will be furnished for each appropriate discipline:
 - a. Floor plans.
 - b. Reflected ceiling plans.

B. PDF Document Preparation: Where PDFs are required to be submitted to Architect, prepare as follows:

1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.

1.8 PROJECT MEETINGS

- A. General: General Contractor to schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site unless otherwise indicated.
1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times a minimum of 10 working days prior to meeting.
 2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.
 3. Minutes: General Contractor shall record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner and Architect, within three days of the meeting.
- B. Preconstruction Conference: Schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement.
1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
 - a. Responsibilities and personnel assignments.
 - b. Tentative construction schedule.
 - c. Phasing.
 - d. Critical work sequencing and long lead items.
 - e. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
 - f. Lines of communications.
 - g. Use of web-based Project software.
 - h. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
 - i. Procedures for RFIs.
 - j. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
 - k. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
 - l. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
 - m. Submittal procedures.
 - n. Preparation of Record Documents.
 - o. Use of the premises and existing building.
 - p. Work restrictions.
 - q. Working hours.
 - r. Owner's occupancy requirements.
 - s. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
 - t. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
 - u. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
 - v. Construction waste management and recycling.
 - w. Parking availability.
 - x. Office, work, and storage areas.
 - y. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
 - z. First aid.
 - aa. Security.
 - bb. Progress cleaning.
 3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.

- C. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity when required by other sections and when required for coordination with other construction.
1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect of scheduled meeting dates.
 2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:
 - a. Contract Documents.
 - b. Options.
 - c. Related RFIs.
 - d. Related Change Orders.
 - e. Purchases.
 - f. Deliveries.
 - g. Submittals.
 - h. Review of mockups.
 - i. Possible conflicts.
 - j. Compatibility requirements.
 - k. Time schedules.
 - l. Weather limitations.
 - m. Manufacturer's written instructions.
 - n. Warranty requirements.
 - o. Compatibility of materials.
 - p. Acceptability of substrates.
 - q. Temporary facilities and controls.
 - r. Space and access limitations.
 - s. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - t. Testing and inspecting requirements.
 - u. Installation procedures.
 - v. Coordination with other work.
 - w. Required performance results.
 - x. Protection of adjacent work.
 - y. Protection of construction and personnel.
 3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
 4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
 5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.
- D. Project Closeout Conference: Schedule and conduct a project closeout conference, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 60 days prior to the scheduled date of Substantial Completion.
1. Conduct the conference to review requirements and responsibilities related to Project closeout.
 2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the meeting. Participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect or delay Project closeout, including the following:
 - a. Preparation of Record Documents.
 - b. Procedures required prior to inspection for Substantial Completion and for final inspection for acceptance.

- c. Procedures for completing and archiving web-based Project software site data files.
 - d. Submittal of written warranties.
 - e. Requirements for preparing operations and maintenance data.
 - f. Requirements for delivery of material samples, attic stock, and spare parts.
 - g. Requirements for demonstration and training.
 - h. Preparation of Contractor's punch list.
 - i. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment at Substantial Completion and for final payment.
 - j. Submittal procedures.
 - k. Coordination of separate contracts.
 - l. Owner's partial occupancy requirements.
 - m. Installation of Owner's furniture, fixtures, and equipment.
 - n. Responsibility for removing temporary facilities and controls.
4. Minutes: Entity conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- A. Progress Meetings: Conduct progress meetings at regular intervals as required for the construction activity in progress, but in no case less than bi-weekly intervals.
- 1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
 - 2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 - 3. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
 - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
 - 1) Review schedule for next period.
 - b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
 - 1) Interface requirements.
 - 2) Sequence of operations.
 - 3) Status of submittals.
 - 4) Deliveries.
 - 5) Off-site fabrication.
 - 6) Access.
 - 7) Site use.
 - 8) Temporary facilities and controls.
 - 9) Progress cleaning.
 - 10) Quality and work standards.
 - 11) Status of correction of deficient items.
 - 12) Field observations.
 - 13) Status of RFIs.
 - 14) Status of Proposal Requests.
 - 15) Pending changes.
 - 16) Status of Change Orders.
 - 17) Pending claims and disputes.
 - 18) Documentation of information for payment requests.

4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.
 - a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013100

SECTION 013200 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
 - 1. Startup construction schedule.
 - 2. Contractor's Construction Schedule.
 - 3. Construction schedule updating reports.
 - 4. Daily construction reports.
 - 5. Material location reports.
 - 6. Site condition reports.
 - 7. Unusual event reports.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for schedule of tests and inspections.
 - 2. Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for schedule of values and requirements for use of cost-loaded schedule for Applications for Payment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction Project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
 - 1. Critical Activity: An activity on the critical path that must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
 - 2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
 - 3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.
- B. Cost Loading: The allocation of the schedule of values for completing an activity as scheduled. The sum of costs for all activities must equal the total Contract Sum.
- C. CPM: Critical path method, which is a method of planning and scheduling a construction project where activities are arranged based on activity relationships. Network calculations determine the critical path of Project and when activities can be performed.
- D. Critical Path: The longest connected chain of interdependent activities through the network schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.
- E. Event: The starting or ending point of an activity.
- F. Float: The measure of leeway in starting and completing an activity.
 - 1. Float time is not for the exclusive use or benefit of either Owner or Contractor, but is a jointly owned, expiring Project resource available to both parties as needed to meet schedule milestones and Contract completion date.
 - 2. Free float is the amount of time an activity can be delayed without adversely affecting the early start of the successor activity.
 - 3. Total float is the measure of leeway in starting or completing an activity without adversely affecting the planned Project completion date.

- G. Resource Loading: The allocation of manpower and equipment necessary for completing an activity as scheduled.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:
 - 1. Working electronic copy of schedule file.
 - 2. PDF file.
- B. Startup construction schedule.
- C. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Initial schedule, of size required to display entire schedule for entire construction period.
- D. CPM Reports: Concurrent with CPM schedule, submit each of the following reports. Format for each activity in reports shall contain activity number, activity description, cost and resource loading, original duration, remaining duration, early start date, early finish date, late start date, late finish date, and total float in calendar days.
 - 1. Activity Report: List of activities sorted by activity number and then early start date, or actual start date if known.
 - 2. Logic Report: List of preceding and succeeding activities for each activity, sorted in ascending order by activity number and then by early start date, or actual start date if known.
 - 3. Total Float Report: List of activities sorted in ascending order of total float.
 - 4. Earnings Report: Compilation of Contractor's total earnings from the Notice to Proceed until most recent Application for Payment.
- E. Construction Schedule Updating Reports: Submit with Applications for Payment.
- F. Daily Construction Reports: Submit at weekly intervals.
- G. Material Location Reports: Submit at weekly intervals.
- H. Site Condition Reports: Submit at time of discovery of differing conditions.
- I. Unusual Event Reports: Submit at time of unusual event.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Contractor's Construction Schedule with the schedule of values, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
 - 1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.
 - 2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities, and schedule them in proper sequence.

1.6 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Computer Scheduling Software: Prepare schedules using current version of a program that has been developed specifically to manage construction schedules.
- B. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for the Notice to Proceed to date of Final Completion.
 - 1. Contract completion date shall not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.
- C. Activities: Treat each floor or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each main element of the Work. Comply with the following:
 - 1. Activity Duration: Define activities so no activity is longer than 20 days, unless specifically allowed by Architect.
 - 2. Temporary Facilities: Indicate start and completion dates for the following as applicable:

- a. Securing of approvals and permits required for performance of the Work.
 - b. Temporary facilities.
 - c. Construction of mock-ups, prototypes and samples.
 - d. Owner interfaces and furnishing of items.
 - e. Interfaces with Separate Contracts.
 - f. Regulatory agency approvals.
 - g. Punch list.
 3. Procurement Activities: Include procurement process activities for the following long lead-time items and major items, requiring a cycle of more than 60 days, as separate activities in schedule. Procurement cycle activities include, but are not limited to, submittals, approvals, purchasing, fabrication, and delivery.
 4. Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's Construction Schedule with submittal schedule.
 5. Startup and Testing Time: Include no fewer than 15 days for startup and testing.
 6. Commissioning Time: Include no fewer than 15 days for commissioning.
 7. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion, and allow time for Architect's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.
 8. Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than 30 days for completion of punch list items and Final Completion.
- D. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule, and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.
1. Products Ordered in Advance: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Section 011000 "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
 2. Owner-Furnished Products: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Section 011000 "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
 3. Work Restrictions: Show the effect of the following items on the schedule:
 - a. Coordination with existing construction.
 - b. Limitations of continued occupancies.
 - c. Uninterruptible services.
 - d. Partial occupancy before Substantial Completion.
 - e. Use-of-premises restrictions.
 - f. Provisions for future construction.
 - g. Seasonal variations.
 - h. Environmental control.
 4. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Subcontract awards.
 - b. Submittals.
 - c. Purchases.
 - d. Fabrication.
 - e. Sample testing.
 - f. Deliveries.
 - g. Installation.
 - h. Tests and inspections.
 - i. Adjusting.
 - j. Curing.
 - k. Startup and placement into final use and operation.
 - l. Commissioning.

5. Construction Areas: Identify each major area of construction for each major portion of the Work. Indicate where each construction activity within a major area must be sequenced or integrated with other construction activities to provide for the following:
 - a. Completion of mechanical installation.
 - b. Completion of electrical installation.
 - c. Substantial Completion.
- E. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion, and Final Completion.
- F. Cost Correlation: Superimpose a cost correlation timeline, indicating planned and actual costs. On the line, show planned and actual dollar volume of the Work performed as of planned and actual dates used for preparation of payment requests.
 1. See Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for cost reporting and payment procedures.
- G. Upcoming Work Summary: Prepare summary report indicating activities scheduled to occur or commence prior to submittal of next schedule update. Summarize the following issues:
 1. Unresolved issues.
 2. Unanswered Requests for Information.
 3. Rejected or unreturned submittals.
 4. Notations on returned submittals.
 5. Pending modifications affecting the Work and the Contract Time.
- H. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.
 1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.
 2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
 3. As the Work progresses, indicate Final Completion percentage for each activity.
- I. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, equipment required to achieve compliance, and date by which recovery will be accomplished.
- J. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect, Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.
 1. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.
 2. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

1.7 GANTT-CHART SCHEDULE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Gantt-Chart Schedule: Submit a comprehensive, fully developed, horizontal, Gantt-chart-type, Contractor's Construction Schedule within 30 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed.
 1. Base schedule on the startup construction schedule and additional information received since the start of Project.
- B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line.

1. For construction activities that require three months or longer to complete, indicate an estimated completion percentage in 10 percent increments within time bar.

1.8 REPORTS

- A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:
 1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
 2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
 3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
 4. Equipment at Project site.
 5. Material deliveries.
 6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.
 7. Testing and inspection.
 8. Accidents.
 9. Meetings and significant decisions.
 10. Unusual events.
 11. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
 12. Meter readings and similar recordings.
 13. Emergency procedures.
 14. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
 15. Change Orders received and implemented.
 16. Construction Change Directives received and implemented.
 17. Services connected and disconnected.
 18. Equipment or system tests and startups.
 19. Partial completions and occupancies.
 20. Substantial Completions authorized.
- B. Material Location Reports: At monthly intervals, prepare and submit a comprehensive list of materials delivered to and stored at Project site. List shall be cumulative, showing materials previously reported plus items recently delivered. Include with list a statement of progress on and delivery dates for materials or items of equipment fabricated or stored away from Project site. Indicate the following categories for stored materials:
 1. Material stored prior to previous report and remaining in storage.
 2. Material stored prior to previous report and since removed from storage and installed.
 3. Material stored following previous report and remaining in storage.
- C. Unusual Event Reports: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether or not related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, responses by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.
 1. Submit unusual event reports directly to Owner within one day of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013200

SECTION 013233 - PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
 - 1. Preconstruction photographs.
 - 2. Concealed Work photographs.
 - 3. Periodic construction photographs.
 - 4. Final Completion construction photographs.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting photographic documentation as Project Record Documents at Project closeout.
 - 2. Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training" for submitting video recordings of demonstration of equipment and training of Owner's personnel.
 - 3. Section 024119 "Selective Demolition" for photographic documentation before selective demolition operations commence.

1.3 FORMATS AND MEDIA

- A. Digital Photographs: Provide color images in JPG format, produced by a digital camera with minimum sensor size of 12 megapixels, and at an image resolution of not less than 3200 by 2400 pixels. Use flash in low light levels or backlit conditions.
- B. Digital Images: Submit digital media as originally recorded in the digital camera, without alteration, manipulation, editing, or modifications using image-editing software.
- C. File Names: Name media files with date, Project area, and sequential numbering suffix.

1.4 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS

- A. General: Take photographs with maximum depth of field and in focus.
 - 1. Maintain key plan with each set of construction photographs that identifies each photographic location.
- B. Preconstruction Photographs: Before commencement of the Work, take photographs of Project site and surrounding properties, including existing items to remain during construction, from different vantage points, as directed by Architect.
 - 1. Take 20 photographs to show existing conditions adjacent to property before starting the Work.
 - 2. Take 20 photographs of existing buildings either on or adjoining property, to accurately record physical conditions at start of construction.
 - 3. Take additional photographs as required to record settlement or cracking of adjacent structures, pavements, and improvements.
- C. Concealed Work Photographs: Before proceeding with installing work that will conceal other work, take photographs sufficient in number, with annotated descriptions, to record nature and location of concealed Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Underground utilities.
 - 2. Underslab services.

3. Piping.
 4. Electrical conduit.
 5. Waterproofing and weather-resistant barriers.
- D. Periodic Construction Photographs: Take 20 photographs weekly. Select vantage points to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.
- E. Final Completion Construction Photographs: Take 20 photographs after date of Substantial Completion for submission as Project Record Documents.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013233

SECTION 013300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for the submittal schedule and administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and other submittals.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."
- C. Portable Document Format (PDF): An open standard file format licensed by Adobe Systems used for representing documents in a device-independent and display resolution-independent fixed-layout document format.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit a schedule of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.
 - 1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Initial Submittal: Submit concurrently with startup construction schedule. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.
 - 3. Final Submittal: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule.
 - a. Submit revised submittal schedule to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.
 - 4. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
 - a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
 - b. Specification Section number and title.
 - c. Submittal category: Action; informational.
 - d. Name of subcontractor.
 - e. Description of the Work covered.
 - f. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.
 - g. Scheduled date of fabrication.

1.5 SUBMITTAL ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Architect's Digital Data Files: Electronic digital data files of the Contract Drawings will not be provided by Architect for Contractor's use in preparing submittals.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
 - 1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
 - 2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
 - 3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
 - 4. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
 - a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
 - 1. Initial Review: Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
 - 2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
 - 3. Resubmittal Review: Allow 15 days for review of each resubmittal.
 - 4. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow 21 days for initial review of each submittal.
- D. Paper Submittals: Where submittals are generated and submitted to the general contractor as paper copies, scan each page of the reviewed submittal in its original sheet size and in color where color markups or highlighted graphics or text occur. Transmit digitally to the architect as PDF's.
- E. Submittal Identification: On all submittals provide the following :
 - 1. Indicate name of firm or entity that prepared each submittal on label or title block.
 - 2. Provide a space to record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
 - 3. Include the following information for processing and recording action taken:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Name of Architect.
 - d. Name of Construction Manager (if applicable).
 - e. Name of Contractor.
 - f. Name of subcontractor.
 - g. Name of supplier.
 - h. Name of manufacturer.
 - i. Submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
 - 1) Submittal number shall use Specification Section number followed by a decimal point and then a sequential number (e.g., 061000.01). Resubmittals shall include an alphabetic suffix after another decimal point (e.g., 061000.01.A).
 - j. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.

- k. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 - l. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
 - m. Other necessary identification.
- F. Electronic Submittals: Identify and incorporate information in each electronic submittal file as follows:
 - 1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
 - 2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
 - 3. Provide means for insertion to permanently record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
 - 4. Transmittal Form for Electronic Submittals: Use scanned copy of transmittal form for Paper Submittals or equivalent,
- G. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.
- H. Deviations and Additional Information: On an attached separate sheet, prepared on Contractor's letterhead, record relevant information, requests for data, revisions other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals, and deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations. Include same identification information as related submittal.
- I. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
 - 1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
 - 2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
 - 3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.
- J. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- K. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. General Submittal Procedure Requirements: Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
 - 1. Submit electronic submittals via email as PDF electronic files. Files that exceed the capacity of the Architect's email service provider, shall be posted to the architect's FTP site.
 - a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as an electronic Project record document file.
- B. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS sheets): Submit information directly to Owner if required; do not submit to Architect. MSDS will be removed from the submittals, unchecked and discarded. It will be assumed that whatever action is taken by the Architect or his consultants on the remaining submittal in no way implies review of the discarded MSDS sheets.
- C. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
 - 1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
 - 2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
 - 3. Include the following information, as applicable:

- a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
 - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
 - c. Standard color charts.
 - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
 - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
 - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
 - g. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - h. Availability and delivery time information.
4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
 - a. Wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring.
 - b. Printed performance curves.
 - c. Operational range diagrams.
 - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
5. Submit Product Data before or concurrent with Samples.
6. Submit Product Data in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file.
- D. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data.
 1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Identification of products.
 - b. Schedules.
 - c. Compliance with specified standards.
 - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
 - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
 - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
 2. Submit Shop Drawings in PDF electronic file or the following paper format (contractor's option):
- E. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other elements and for a comparison of these characteristics between submittal and actual component as delivered and installed.
 1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
 2. Identification: Attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
 - a. Generic description of Sample.
 - b. Product name and name of manufacturer.
 - c. Sample source.
 - d. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
 - e. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.
 3. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
 - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.

- b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
- 4. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
 - a. Number of Samples: Submit one full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.
- 5. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
 - a. Number of Samples: Submit three sets of Samples. Architect will retain two Sample sets; remainder will be returned.
 - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
 - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.
- F. Application for Payment and Schedule of Values: Comply with requirements specified in Section 012900 "Payment Procedures."
- G. Test and Inspection Reports and Schedule of Tests and Inspections Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements."
- H. Closeout Submittals and Maintenance Material Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."
- I. Maintenance Data: Comply with requirements specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- J. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- K. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure Specification and Procedure Qualification Record on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.
- L. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
- M. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
- N. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- O. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.

- P. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- Q. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- R. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
- S. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
- T. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- U. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information, including, but not limited to, performance and design criteria, list of applicable codes and regulations, and calculations. Include list of assumptions and other performance and design criteria and a summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Include page numbers.

2.2 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
 - 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally signed PDF electronic file and three paper copies of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
 - 1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with signed approval stamp before submitting to Architect. Submittals received without the signed approval stamp of the General Contractor shall be returned unchecked.
- B. Project Closeout and Maintenance Material Submittals: See requirements in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."
- C. Approval Stamp: Stamp each submittal with a uniform, approval stamp. Include Project name and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.

1. Contractor's stamp MUST bear the word "Approved". Language the states the "Review" of the submittal without specifically stating its approval or conformance with the contract documents will not be accepted.

3.2 ARCHITECT'S ACTION

- A. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, make marks to indicate corrections or revisions required, and return it. Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action.
- B. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- C. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.
- D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.
- E. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.

END OF SECTION 013300

SECTION 014000 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspecting services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 1. Specific quality-assurance and -control requirements for individual construction activities are specified in the Sections that specify those activities. Requirements in those Sections may also cover production of standard products.
 - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and -control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and -control services required by Architect, Owner, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
 - 4. Specific test and inspection requirements are not specified in this Section.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Divisions 2 through 32 Sections for specific test and inspection requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- B. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Services do not include contract enforcement activities performed by Architect.
- C. Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies that are constructed on-site. Mockups are constructed to verify selections made under Sample submittals; to demonstrate aesthetic effects and, where indicated, qualities of materials and execution; to review coordination, testing, or operation; to show interface between dissimilar materials; and to demonstrate compliance with specified installation tolerances. Mockups are not Samples. Unless otherwise indicated, approved mockups establish the standard by which the Work will be judged.
 - 1. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Mockups of the exterior envelope erected separately from the building but on Project site, consisting of multiple products, assemblies, and subassemblies.
- D. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria.
- E. Product Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed by an NRTL, an NVLAP, or a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- F. Source Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source, e.g., plant, mill, factory, or shop.

- G. Field Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. Testing laboratory shall mean the same as testing agency.
- I. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, and similar operations.
 - 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a trade or entity does not require that certain construction activities be performed by accredited or unionized individuals, or that requirements specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).
- J. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.4 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Referenced Standards: If compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for a decision before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General: Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- F. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- G. Preconstruction Testing: Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following:
 - 1. Contractor responsibilities include the following:
 - a. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.

- b. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
 - c. Provide sizes and configurations of test assemblies, mockups, and laboratory mockups to adequately demonstrate capability of products to comply with performance requirements.
 - d. Build site-assembled test assemblies and mockups using installers who will perform same tasks for Project.
 - e. Build laboratory mockups at testing facility using personnel, products, and methods of construction indicated for the completed Work.
 - f. When testing is complete, remove test specimens, assemblies, and mockups; do not reuse products on Project.
 2. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
- H. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
1. Build mockups in location and of size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
 2. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
 3. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers that will be employed during the construction at Project.
 4. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
 5. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting work, fabrication, or construction.
 - a. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
 6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
 7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.

1.6 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspecting they are engaged to perform.
 2. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor, and the Contract Sum will be adjusted by Change Order.
- B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities required to verify that the Work complies with requirements, whether specified or not.
1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
 2. Where services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, engage a qualified testing agency to perform these quality-control services.
 - a. Contractor shall not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.

3. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspecting will be performed.
 4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
 5. Testing and inspecting requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
 6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
- C. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- D. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
1. Notify Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
 2. Determine the location from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
 3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from requirements.
 4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
 5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
 6. Do not perform any duties of Contractor.
- E. Associated Services: Cooperate with agencies performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
1. Access to the Work.
 2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
 3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspecting. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
 4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
 5. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
 6. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspecting equipment at Project site.
- F. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and -control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspecting.
1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.

1.7 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

- A. Special Tests and Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of Owner, and as follows:
1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures and reviews the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
 2. Notifying Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
 3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.
 4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.

5. Interpreting tests and inspections and stating in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
6. Retesting and reinspecting corrected work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspecting, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
 1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 017300 "Execution".
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION 014000

SECTION 014100 – STRUCTURAL TESTS AND SPECIAL INSPECTIONS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements required for compliance with the International Building Code, Chapter 17, Structural Tests and Special Inspections.
- B. Structural testing and special inspection services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve contractor of responsibility for compliance with other construction document requirements.
 - 1. Specific quality-assurance and -control requirements for individual construction activities are specified in the Sections that specify those activities. Requirements in those Sections may also cover production of standard products.
 - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and -control procedures that facilitate compliance with the construction document requirements.
 - 3. Requirements for contractor to provide quality-assurance and -control services required by architect, owner, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this section.
- C. The owner will engage one or more qualified special inspectors and / or testing agencies to conduct structural tests and special inspections specified in this section and related sections and as maybe specified in other divisions of these specifications.
- D. Related Sections include but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. 033000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.
 - 2. 051200 - STRUCTURAL STEEL.
 - 3. 054000 - COLD FORMED METAL FRAMING
 - 4. 053100 - STEEL DECKING
 - 5. 052100 - STEEL JOIST FRAMING

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. **Approved Agency:** An established and recognized agency regularly engaged in conducting tests or furnishing inspection services, when such agency has been approved by the building official.
- B. **Construction Documents:** Written, graphic and pictorial documents prepared or assembled for describing the design, location and physical characteristics of the elements of a project necessary for obtaining a building permit. Construction Documents include all supplemental instructions, sketches, addenda, and revisions to the drawings and specifications issued by the registered design professional beyond those issued for a building permit.
- C. **Shop Drawings / Submittal Data:** Written, graphic and pictorial documents prepared and / or assembled by the contractor based on the Construction Documents.
- D. **Structural Observation:** Visual observation of the structural system by a representative of the registered design professional's office for general conformance to the approved construction documents. Structural observations are not considered part of the structural tests and special inspections and do not replace inspections and testing by the testing agency or special inspector.
- E. **Special Inspector:** A qualified person who demonstrating competence, to the satisfaction of the code enforcement official and registered design professional in responsible charge, for inspection of the particular type of construction or operation requiring special inspection. The special inspector shall be a licensed professional engineer or engineering intern or a qualified representative from the testing agency.

- F. Special Inspection, Continuous: The full-time observation of work requiring special inspection by an approved special inspector who is present in the area where the work is being performed.
- G. Special Inspection, Periodic: The part-time or intermittent observation of work requiring special inspection by an approved special inspector who is present in the area where the work has been or is being performed and at the completion of the work.
- H. Testing Agency: A qualified materials testing laboratory under the responsible charge of a licensed professional engineer, approved by the code enforcement official and the registered design professional in responsible charge, to measure, examine, test, calibrate, or otherwise determine the characteristics or performance of construction materials and verify confirmation with construction documents.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications:

1. Minimum qualifications of inspection and testing agencies and their personnel shall comply with ASTM E329-03 Standard Specification for Agencies in the Testing and / or Inspection of Materials Used in Construction.
 - a. Inspectors and individuals performing tests shall be certified for the work being performed as outlined in the appendix of the ASTM E329. Certification by organizations other than those listed must be submitted to the building official for consideration before proceeding with work.
2. In addition to these requirements, local jurisdiction may have additional requirements. It is the responsibility of the testing and inspection agencies to meet local requirements and comply with local procedures.

1.5 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS, REPORTS, AND TEST RESULTS

- A. General: If compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer uncertainties and requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to the registered design professional in responsible charge for a decision before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to the registered design professional in responsible charge for a decision before proceeding.
- C. The special inspector's reports and testing agencies results shall have precedence over reports and test results provided by the contractor.
- D. Where a conflict exists between the construction documents and approved shop drawings / submittal data, the construction documents shall govern unless the shop drawings / submittal data are more restrictive. All conflicts shall be brought to the attention of the registered design professional in responsible charge.

1.6 SUBMITTALS BY SPECIAL INSPECTOR AND / OR TESTING AGENCY

- A. Special inspectors shall keep and distribute records of inspections. The special inspector shall furnish inspection reports to the building official, and to the registered design professional in responsible charge, contractor, architect, and owner. Reports shall indicate that work inspected was done in conformance to approved construction documents. Discrepancies shall be brought to the immediate attention of the contractor for correction. If the discrepancies are not corrected, the discrepancies shall be brought to the attention of the building official and to the registered design professional in responsible charge prior to the completion of that phase of the work. A final report documenting required special inspections and correction of any discrepancies noted in the inspections shall be submitted at a point in time agreed upon by the permit applicant and the building official prior to the start of work.
 1. Special inspection reports and test results shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
 - a. Date of inspection.

- b. Description of inspections or tests performed including location (reference grid lines, floors, elevations, etc.).
 - c. Statement noting that the work, material, and / or product conforms or does not conform to the construction document requirements.
 - 1) Name and signature of contractor's representative who was notified of work, material, and / or products that do not meet the construction document requirements.
 - d. Name and signature of special inspector and / or testing agency representative performing the work.
- B. Schedule of Non-Compliant Work: Each agent shall maintain a log of work that does not meet the requirements of the construction documents. Include reference to original inspection / test report and subsequent dates of re-inspection / retesting.
- C. Reports and tests shall be submitted within 1 week of inspection or test. Schedule of Non-Compliant Work shall be updated daily and submitted at monthly intervals.
- D. Final Report of Special Inspections. Submitted by each agent listed in the schedule of Structural Testing and Special Inspections.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (not used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITY

- A. The contractor shall coordinate the inspection and testing services with the progress of the work. The contractor shall provide sufficient notice to allow proper scheduling of all personnel. The contractor shall provide safe access for performing inspection and on site testing.
- B. The contractor shall submit schedules to the owner, registered design professionals and testing and inspecting agencies. Schedules will note milestones and durations of time for materials requiring structural tests and special inspections.
- C. The contractor shall repair and / or replace work that does not meet the requirements of the construction documents.
 - 1. Contractor shall engage an engineer / architect to prepare repair and / or replacement procedures.
 - 2. Engineer / architect shall be registered in the state in which the project is located. Engineer shall be acceptable to the registered design professional in responsible charge, code enforcement official, and owner.
 - 3. Procedures shall be submitted for review and acceptance by the registered design professional in responsible charge, code enforcement official, and owner before proceeding with corrective action.
- D. The contractor shall be responsible for costs of:
 - 1. Re-testing and re-inspection of materials, work, and / or products that do not meet the requirements of the construction documents and shop drawings / submittal data.
 - 2. Review of proposed repair and / or replacement procedures by the registered design professional in responsible charge and the inspectors and testing agencies.
 - 3. Repair or replacement of work that does not meet the requirements of the construction documents.

3.2 STRUCTURAL OBSERVATIONS

- A. Structural observations may be made periodically as determined by the registered design professional in responsible charge.

3.3 TESTING AND INSPECTION

- A. Testing and inspection shall be in accordance with the attached Schedule of Special Inspections.

- B. Reference related specifications for the minimum level of inspections and testing. Provide additional inspections and testing as necessary to determine compliance with the construction drawings.

PART 4 - SCHEDULES AND FORMS

- 4.1 STATEMENT OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS.
- 4.2 SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS. (See Contract Drawings)
- 4.3 FINAL REPORT OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS.

END OF SECTION 01410

SECTION 014200 – REFERENCES**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.
- B. "Approved": When used to convey Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, "approved" is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract.
- C. "Directed": A command or instruction by Architect. Other terms including "requested," "authorized," "selected," "required," and "permitted" have the same meaning as "directed."
- D. "Indicated": Requirements expressed by graphic representations or in written form on Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Other terms including "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" have the same meaning as "indicated."
- E. "Regulations": Laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, and rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.
- F. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
- G. "Install": Unload, temporarily store, unpack, assemble, erect, place, anchor, apply, work to dimension, finish, cure, protect, clean, and similar operations at Project site.
- H. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
- I. "Project Site": Space available for performing construction activities. The extent of Project site is shown on Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which Project is to be built.

1.3 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

- A. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.
- B. Publication Dates: Comply with standards in effect as of date of the Contract Documents unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on Project should be familiar with industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Where copies of standards are needed to perform a required construction activity, obtain copies directly from publication source.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 014200

SECTION 015000 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 011000 "Summary" for limitations on work restrictions and utility interruptions.

1.3 USE CHARGES

- A. General: Installation and removal of and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Architect, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sewer Service: Pay sewer-service use charges for sewer usage by all entities for construction operations.
- C. Water Service from Existing System: Water from Owner's existing water system is available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations
- D. Electric Power Service from Existing System: Electric power from Owner's existing system is available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Site Plan: Show temporary facilities, utility hookups, staging areas, and parking areas for construction personnel.
- B. Erosion- and Sedimentation-Control Plan: Show compliance with requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
- C. Fire-Safety Program: Show compliance with requirements of NFPA 241 and authorities having jurisdiction. Indicate Contractor personnel responsible for management of fire-prevention program.
- D. Jobsite Safety Program: Submit manual for jobsite safety, specifically tailored to the project, listing personnel in charge of monitoring and reporting safety related incidents.
 - 1. List safety training procedures and frequency of review of jobsite safety requirements.
 - 2. List steps for implementing safety measures and incorporating subcontractor's personnel in jobsite safety program.
 - 3. List steps for correcting safety violations.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage Installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Portable Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch, 0.148-inch-thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch-OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch-OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch-OD top and bottom rails. Provide galvanized-steel bases for supporting posts.

2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. Field Offices, General: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.
- B. Common-Use Field Office: Of sufficient size to accommodate needs of Owner, Architect, and construction personnel office activities and to accommodate Project meetings specified in other Division 01 Sections. Keep office clean and orderly. Furnish and equip offices as follows:
 - 1. Furniture required for Project-site documents including file cabinets, plan tables, plan racks, and bookcases.
 - 2. Conference room of sufficient size to accommodate meetings of minimum 10 individuals. Provide electrical power service and 120-V ac duplex receptacles.
 - 3. Drinking water and private toilet.
 - 4. Coffee machine and supplies.
 - 5. Heating and cooling equipment necessary to maintain a uniform indoor temperature of 68 to 72 deg F.
 - 6. Lighting fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of 20 fc at desk height.

2.3 EQUIPMENT

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.
- B. HVAC Equipment: Unless Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.
 - 1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
 - 2. Heating Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

3.2 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
 - 1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
- B. Sewers and Drainage: Provide temporary utilities to remove effluent lawfully.
 - 1. Connect temporary sewers to municipal system or private system as directed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Connect to Owner's existing water service facilities. Clean and maintain water service facilities in a condition acceptable to Owner. Coordinate schedules for connection and termination of temporary service with owner to avoid any disruption of water service within existing occupied areas. At Substantial Completion, restore these facilities to condition existing before initial use
- D. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
- E. Heating and Cooling: Provide temporary heating and cooling required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
- F. Ventilation and Humidity Control: Provide temporary ventilation required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed. Coordinate ventilation requirements to produce ambient condition required and minimize energy consumption.
 - 1. Provide dehumidification systems when required to reduce substrate moisture levels to level required to allow installation or application of finishes.
 - 2. Coordinate with Division 9 Sections to determine slab moisture requirements for materials specified. Provide dehumidification where slab moisture cannot be mitigated within the schedule for flooring installation. Delays caused by excessive moisture will not be grounds for extension of the construction period.
- G. Electric Power Service: Connect to Owner's existing electric power service. Coordinate schedule for connection and termination of temporary service with owner to avoid any disruption of electrical service within existing occupied areas. Maintain equipment in a condition acceptable to the Owner
- H. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
 - 1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating the entire system.
 - 2. Install lighting for Project identification sign.
- I. Telephone Service: At the contractor's option, provide temporary telephone service in common-use facilities for use by all construction personnel or provide the superintendent and assistant superintendent(s) cellular telephones for job use. Field personnel's cell numbers shall be made available to the owner, architect and engineers as well as the field superintendents of each major subcontractor.
 - 1. At each telephone, post a list of important telephone numbers.
 - a. Police and fire departments.
 - b. Ambulance service.
 - c. Contractor's home office.
 - d. Contractor's emergency after-hours telephone number.

- e. Architect's office.
 - f. Engineers' offices.
 - g. Owner's office.
 - h. Principal subcontractors' field and home offices.
- J. Electronic Communication Service: Provide secure WiFi wireless connection to internet with provisions for access by Architect and Owner.

3.3 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the following:
- 1. Provide construction for temporary field offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet of building lines that is noncombustible in accordance with ASTM E136. Comply with NFPA 241.
 - 2. Maintain support facilities until Architect schedules Substantial Completion inspection. Remove before Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.
- B. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Locate temporary roads and paved areas within construction limits indicated on Drawings.
- 1. Provide dust-control treatment that is nonpolluting and nontracking. Reapply treatment as required to minimize dust.
- C. Temporary Use of Planned Permanent Roads and Paved Areas: Locate temporary roads and paved areas in same location as permanent roads and paved areas. Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Extend temporary roads and paved areas, within construction limits indicated, as necessary for construction operations.
- 1. Coordinate elevations of temporary roads and paved areas with permanent roads and paved areas.
 - 2. Prepare subgrade and install subbase and base for temporary roads and paved areas in accordance with earthwork sections of specifications.
 - 3. Recondition base after temporary use, including removing contaminated material, regrading, proofrolling, compacting, and testing.
- D. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- 1. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.
- E. Storage and Staging: Use designated areas of Project site for storage and staging needs.
- F. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.
- 1. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining properties or endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
- G. Project Signs: Provide Project signs as indicated. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
- 1. Temporary Signs: Provide other signs as indicated and as required to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project.
 - 2. Maintain and touch up signs, so they are legible at all times.
- H. Waste Disposal Facilities: Provide waste-collection containers in sizes adequate to handle waste from construction operations. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with progress cleaning requirements in Section 017300 "Execution."
- I. Temporary Use of Permanent Stairs: Use of new stairs for construction traffic will be permitted, provided stairs are protected and finishes restored to new condition at time of Substantial Completion.

3.4 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
 - 1. Comply with work restrictions specified in Section 011000 "Summary."
- B. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Comply with requirements specified in "Site Clearing" or other civil drawings and specifications.
- C. Stormwater Control: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.
- D. Pest Control: Engage pest-control service to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests and to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Substantial Completion. Perform control operations lawfully, using environmentally safe materials.
- E. Site Enclosure Fence: Before construction operations begin, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people and animals from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
 - 1. Extent of Fence: As indicated on Drawings or if not shown, as required to secure work site from unauthorized access and for the protection of occupants in the existing building.
- F. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install temporary enclosure around partially completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security. Lock entrances at end of each work day.
- G. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
 - 1. At the existing Phase I building, maintain unobstructed and protected egress from all exits to a public way, throughout the duration of the work. Provide barricades, warning signs, temporary lighting and overhead protection where construction activities pose a threat of injury to occupants of the existing building.
 - 2. Construct site enclosure fencing in such a way to direct egress around the construction site without impeding travel to a public way.
- H. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241; manage fire-prevention program.
 - 1. Prohibit smoking in construction areas.
 - 2. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 3. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.

3.5 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

- A. Contractor's Moisture-Protection Plan: Avoid trapping water in finished work. Document visible signs of mold that may appear during construction.
- B. Exposed Construction Phase: Before installation of weather barriers, when materials are subject to wetting and exposure and to airborne mold spores, protect as follows:
 - 1. Protect porous materials from water damage.
 - 2. Protect stored and installed material from flowing or standing water.
 - 3. Keep porous and organic materials from coming into prolonged contact with concrete.
 - 4. Remove standing water from decks.

5. Keep deck openings covered or dammed.

C. Partially Enclosed Construction Phase: After installation of weather barriers but before full enclosure and conditioning of building, when installed materials are still subject to infiltration of moisture and ambient mold spores, protect as follows:

1. Do not load or install drywall or other porous materials or components, or items with high organic content, into partially enclosed building.
2. Keep interior spaces reasonably clean and protected from water damage.
3. Periodically collect and remove waste containing cellulose or other organic matter.
4. Discard or replace water-damaged material.
5. Do not install material that is wet.
6. Discard, replace, or clean stored or installed material that begins to grow mold.
7. Perform work in a sequence that allows any wet materials adequate time to dry before enclosing the material in drywall or other interior finishes.

D. Controlled Construction Phase of Construction: After completing and sealing of the building enclosure but prior to the full operation of permanent HVAC systems, maintain as follows:

1. Control moisture and humidity inside building by maintaining effective dry-in conditions.
2. Use permanent HVAC system to control humidity.
3. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, relative humidity, and exposure to water limits.
 - a. Hygroscopic materials that may support mold growth, including wood and gypsum-based products, that become wet during the course of construction and remain wet for 48 hours are considered defective.
 - b. Measure moisture content of materials that have been exposed to moisture during construction operations or after installation. Record readings beginning at time of exposure and continuing daily for 48 hours. Identify materials containing moisture levels higher than allowed. Report findings in writing to Architect.
 - c. Remove materials that can not be completely restored to their manufactured moisture level within 48 hours.

3.6 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

A. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.

1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.

B. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.

1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
2. Remove temporary roads and paved areas not intended for or acceptable for integration into permanent construction. Where area is intended for landscape development, remove soil and aggregate fill that do not comply with requirements for fill or subsoil. Remove materials contaminated with road oil, asphalt and other petrochemical compounds, and other substances that might impair growth of plant materials or lawns. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at temporary entrances, as required by authorities having jurisdiction.

END OF SECTION 015000

SECTION 016000 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
 - 2. Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for requests for substitutions.
 - 3. Section 014200 "References" for applicable industry standards for products specified.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
 - 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature, that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
 - 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Products salvaged or recycled from other projects are not considered new products.
 - 3. Comparable Product: Product that is demonstrated and approved through submittal process to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a specific manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation, to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
 - 1. Each contractor is responsible for providing products and construction methods compatible with products and construction methods of other contractors.
 - 2. If a dispute arises between contractors over concurrently selectable but incompatible products, Architect will determine which products shall be used.

1.5 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Delivery and Handling:

1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.

C. Storage:

1. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
2. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
3. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements, under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation.
4. Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
5. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
6. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.

1.6 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.

1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written warranty furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and specifically endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner.

- B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.

1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included with the Specifications, prepare a written document using indicated form properly executed.
3. See other Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.

- C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

- A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.

1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.

3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties not in conflict with requirements of the Contract Documents.
4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
5. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
6. Or Equal: For products specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal," or "or approved equal," or "or approved," comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.

B. Product Selection Procedures:

1. Product: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer and product, provide the named product that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
2. Manufacturer/Source: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer or source, provide a product by the named manufacturer or source that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
3. Products:
 - a. Restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
4. Manufacturers:
 - a. Restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
5. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.

C. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require "match Architect's sample", provide a product that complies with requirements and matches Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.

1. If no product available within specified category matches and complies with other specified requirements, comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for proposal of product.

D. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range" or similar phrase, select a product that complies with requirements. Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

A. Conditions for Consideration: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

1. Evidence that the proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, that it is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce the indicated results, and that it is compatible with other portions of the Work.

2. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those named in the Specifications. Significant qualities include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, and specific features and requirements indicated.
3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
4. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
5. Samples, if requested.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 016000

SECTION 017300 - EXECUTION**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Construction layout.
 - 2. Field engineering and surveying.
 - 3. Installation of the Work.
 - 4. Cutting and patching.
 - 5. Coordination of Owner-installed products.
 - 6. Progress cleaning.
 - 7. Starting and adjusting.
 - 8. Protection of installed construction.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 011000 "Summary" for limits on use of Project site.
 - 2. Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting surveys.
 - 3. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting final property survey with Project Record Documents, recording of Owner-accepted deviations from indicated lines and levels, and final cleaning.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of other work.
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of other work.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates: Submit certificate signed by land surveyor or professional engineer certifying that location and elevation of improvements comply with requirements.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Land Surveyor Qualifications: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing land-surveying services of the kind indicated.
- B. Cutting and Patching: Comply with requirements for and limitations on cutting and patching of construction elements.
 - 1. Structural Elements: Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
 - 2. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Operational elements include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. Primary operational systems and equipment.
 - b. Fire separation assemblies.
 - c. Fire-suppression systems.
 - d. Mechanical systems piping and ducts.
 - e. Control systems.
 - f. Communication systems.
 - g. Fire-detection and -alarm systems.
 - h. Conveying systems.
 - i. Electrical wiring systems.
 - j. Operating systems of special construction.
3. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Other construction elements include but are not limited to the following:
- a. Water, moisture, or vapor barriers.
 - b. Membranes and flashings.
 - c. Exterior curtain-wall construction.
 - d. Sprayed fire-resistive material.
 - e. Equipment supports.
 - f. Piping, ductwork, vessels, and equipment.
 - g. Noise- and vibration-control elements and systems.
4. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of products and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.
- B. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
 - 1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
 - 1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
 - 2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.

3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to local utility and/or Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of Contractor, submit a request for information to Architect according to requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination."
- E. Surface and Substrate Preparation: Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for preparation of substrates to receive subsequent work.

3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect promptly.
- B. General: Engage a land surveyor or professional engineer to lay out the Work using accepted surveying practices.
 1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
 2. Establish limits on use of Project site.
 3. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
 4. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
 5. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
 6. Notify Architect when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
 7. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and rim and invert elevations.
- D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.

3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING

- A. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.

1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly. Report the need to relocate permanent benchmarks or control points to Architect before proceeding.
 2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.
- B. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.
1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
 2. Where the actual location or elevation of layout points cannot be marked, provide temporary reference points sufficient to locate the Work.
 3. Remove temporary reference points when no longer needed. Restore marked construction to its original condition.

3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Unless noted otherwise, maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches in occupied spaces and 90 inches in unoccupied spaces.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.
- F. Tools and Equipment: Do not use tools or equipment that produce harmful noise levels.
- G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
- H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions.
1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
 2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
 3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- J. Hazardous Materials: Use products, cleaners, and installation materials that are not considered hazardous.

3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
 - 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.
- C. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- D. Existing Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: Where existing services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before cutting to prevent interruption to occupied areas.
- E. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
 - 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
 - 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
 - 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
 - 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
 - 5. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- F. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable.
 - 1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate physical integrity of installation.
 - 2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will minimize evidence of patching and refinishing.
 - a. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
 - b. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
 - 3. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
 - a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, prepare substrate and apply primer and intermediate paint coats appropriate for substrate over the patch, and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.
 - 4. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
 - 5. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition and ensures thermal and moisture integrity of building enclosure.

- G. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

3.7 OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS

- A. Site Access: Provide access to Project site for Owner's construction personnel.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by Owner's construction personnel.
 - 1. Construction Schedule: Inform Owner of Contractor's preferred construction schedule for Owner's portion of the Work. Adjust construction schedule based on a mutually agreeable timetable. Notify Owner if changes to schedule are required due to differences in actual construction progress.
 - 2. Preinstallation Conferences: Include Owner's construction personnel at preinstallation conferences covering portions of the Work that are to receive Owner's work. Attend preinstallation conferences conducted by Owner's construction personnel if portions of the Work depend on Owner's construction.

3.8 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. General: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
 - 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.
 - 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
 - a. Use containers intended for holding waste materials of type to be stored.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
 - 1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
 - 2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
- D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.
- E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- F. Exposed Surfaces in Finished Areas: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways.
- H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.
- I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.

- J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to assure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

3.9 STARTING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
- B. Adjust equipment for proper operation. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding.
- C. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Manufacturer's Field Service: Comply with qualification requirements in Section 01400 "Quality Requirements."

3.10 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

END OF SECTION 017300

SECTION 017700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Substantial Completion procedures.
 - 2. Final completion procedures.
 - 3. Warranties.
 - 4. Final cleaning.
 - 5. Repair of the Work.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 000700 "General Conditions of the Contract"
 - 2. Section 017300 "Execution " for progress cleaning of Project site.
 - 3. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.
 - 4. Section 017839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.
- B. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at Final Completion.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.
- C. Field Report: For pest control inspection.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: For maintenance material submittal items specified in other Sections.

1.6 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's punch list).
- B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 5 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
 - 1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.

2. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including project record documents, operation and maintenance manuals, final completion construction photographic documentation, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
 3. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
 4. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Architect. Label with manufacturer's name and model number where applicable.
 5. Submit test/adjust/balance records.
- C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 5 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
 2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
 3. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
 4. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.
 5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training video recordings specified in Section 01820 "Demonstration and Training."
 6. Advise Owner of changeover in heat and other utilities.
 7. Participate with Owner in conducting inspection and walkthrough with local emergency responders.
 8. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
 9. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.
 10. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
 2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for final completion.

1.7 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining final completion, complete the following:
1. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Section 012900 "Payment Procedures."
 2. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
 3. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
 4. Submit pest-control final inspection report.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

1.8 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)

- A. General: It is the responsibility of the General Contractor to develop a comprehensive list of incomplete items, prior to requesting a final inspection. Additional site visits required for final inspection by the architect or his engineers, due to insufficient or substantially incomplete punchlist will be considered extra services and the Owner may deduct those cost from the unpaid balance due the contractor.
- B. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.
 1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, starting with exterior areas first and proceeding from lowest floor to highest floor.
 2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceiling, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
 3. Include the following information at the top of each page:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Name of Architect.
 - d. Name of Contractor.
 - e. Page number.
 4. Submit list of incomplete items in the following format:
 - a. MS Excel electronic file. Architect will return annotated file.

1.9 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where commencement of warranties other than date of Substantial Completion is indicated, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.
- B. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
 1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.
 2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
 3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
 4. Warranty Electronic File: Scan warranties and bonds and assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single indexed electronic PDF file with links enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.
- C. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.

- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
 - a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
 - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
 - c. Rake grounds that are neither planted nor paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
 - d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
 - e. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
 - f. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
 - g. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
 - h. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations if visible soil or stains remain.
 - i. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
 - j. Remove labels that are not permanent.
 - k. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment, elevator equipment, and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
 - l. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
 - m. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
 - n. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction or that display contamination with particulate matter on inspection.
 - o. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
 - p. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.
 - C. Pest Control: Comply with pest control requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls." Prepare written report.
 - D. Construction Waste Disposal: Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."

3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.
- B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
 1. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass, reflective surfaces, and other damaged transparent materials.
 2. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that already show evidence of repair or restoration.

- a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.
3. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.
4. Replace burned-out bulbs, bulbs noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.

END OF SECTION 017700

SECTION 017823 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
 - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory.
 - 2. Emergency manuals.
 - 3. Operation manuals for systems, subsystems, and equipment.
 - 4. Product maintenance manuals.
 - 5. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
- B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

Manual Content: Operations and maintenance manual content is specified in individual Specification Sections to be reviewed at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.

- 1. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.
- B. Format: Submit operations and maintenance manuals in the following format:
 - 1. Two paper copies. Include a complete operation and maintenance directory.
- C. Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least 10 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will return copy with comments.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

- A. Organization: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
 - 1. Title page.
 - 2. Table of contents.
 - 3. Manual contents.
- B. Title Page: Include the following information:
 - 1. Subject matter included in manual.

2. Name and address of Project.
 3. Name and address of Owner.
 4. Date of submittal.
 5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
 6. Name and contact information for Construction Manager.
 7. Name and contact information for Architect.
 8. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
 9. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.
- D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
- E. Manuals, Paper Copy: Submit manuals in the form of hard copy, bound and labeled volumes.
1. Binders: Heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.
 - a. If two or more binders are necessary to accommodate data of a system, organize data in each binder into groupings by subsystem and related components. Cross-reference other binders if necessary to provide essential information for proper operation or maintenance of equipment or system.
 - b. Identify each binder on front and spine, with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, subject matter of contents. Indicate volume number for multiple-volume sets.
 2. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section of the manual. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number and title of Project Manual.
 3. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.
 - a. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

2.2 OPERATION MANUALS

- A. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
 2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor has delegated design responsibility.
 3. Operating standards.
 4. Operating procedures.
 5. Operating logs.
 6. Wiring diagrams.
 7. Control diagrams.
 8. Piped system diagrams.
 9. Precautions against improper use.

10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.

B. Descriptions: Include the following:

1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
2. Manufacturer's name.
3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
4. Equipment function.
5. Operating characteristics.
6. Limiting conditions.
7. Performance curves.
8. Engineering data and tests.
9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.

C. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:

1. Startup procedures.
2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
4. Regulation and control procedures.
5. Instructions on stopping.
6. Normal shutdown instructions.
7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
9. Special operating instructions and procedures.

D. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.

E. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color-coding where required for identification.

2.3 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.

B. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.

C. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:

1. Product name and model number.
2. Manufacturer's name.
3. Color, pattern, and texture.
4. Material and chemical composition.
5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.

D. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:

1. Inspection procedures.
2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
5. Repair instructions.

E. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.

F. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.

1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

2.4 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranty and bond information, as described below.
- B. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- C. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Manufacturers' maintenance documentation including the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:
 1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins.
 2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
 3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
 4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:
 1. Test and inspection instructions.
 2. Troubleshooting guide.
 3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
 4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
 5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
 6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available.
- E. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
 1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
 2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.
- F. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- G. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.
- H. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.

1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 MANUAL PREPARATION

- A. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.

- B. Operation and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of operation and maintenance data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
 - 1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
 - 2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- C. Manufacturers' Data: Where manuals contain manufacturers' standard printed data, include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
 - 1. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.
- D. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
 - 1. Do not use original project record documents as part of operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 2. Comply with requirements of newly prepared record Drawings in Section 01781 "Project Record Documents."
- E. Comply with Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

END OF SECTION 017823

SECTION 017839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:
 - 1. Record Drawings.
 - 2. Record Specifications.
 - 3. Record Product Data.
 - 4. Miscellaneous record submittals.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 000700 "General Conditions of the Contract"
 - 2. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for general closeout procedures.
 - 3. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Digitized Copies: Submit two complete sets of Record Drawings, Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications and Product Data where required as part of operation and maintenance manuals in PDF format, produced from scanned paper copies of the final project record documents, stored on DVD or Flash Drive.
 - 1. At the Owner's option, deliver the original paper copies of the final project documents used in the production of the digitized copies to the Owner for their record.
- B. Shop Drawings, Product Data and Project Submittals: Other submittals, not part of required operation and maintenance manuals may be submitted in whatever format used in the review and approval process during construction. Submit one copy, organized by specification heading, bearing the final approval stamps of the contractor and architect or consultant.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 RECORD DRAWINGS**

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.
 - 1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
 - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
 - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
 - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.

- d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
 - e. Cross-reference record prints to corresponding archive photographic documentation.
- 2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
 - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
 - c. Depths of foundations below first floor.
 - d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
 - e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
 - f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
 - g. Actual equipment locations.
 - h. Duct size and routing.
 - i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
 - j. Changes made by Change Order.
 - k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
 - l. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
 - m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
 - n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
- 3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
- 4. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
- 5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
- 6. Note alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.
- B. Format: Identify and date record Drawings with the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.

2.2 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
 - 1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
 - 2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
 - 3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
- B. Format: Identify and date record specifications with the designation "PROJECT RECORD SPECIFICATIONS" in a prominent location.

2.3 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

- A. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
 - 1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
 - 2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
 - 3. Note related Change Orders and record Drawings where applicable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RECORDING AND MAINTENANCE

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- B. Maintenance of Record Documents and Samples: Store record documents and Samples in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use project record documents for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to project record documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.
 - 1. If during the course of the work, record documents become soiled or tattered, transfer the information to a clean version of the original contract document prior to scanning.

END OF SECTION 017839

SECTION 017900 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:
 - 1. Instruction in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
 - 2. Demonstration and training video recordings.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Instruction Program: Submit outline of instructional program for demonstration and training, including a list of training modules and a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each training module.
 - 1. Indicate proposed training modules using manufacturer-produced demonstration and training video recordings for systems, equipment, and products in lieu of video recording of live instructional module.
- B. Attendance Record: For each training module, submit list of participants and length of instruction time.
- C. Evaluations: For each participant and for each training module, submit results and documentation of performance-based test.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Facilitator Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in training or educating maintenance personnel in a training program similar in content and extent to that indicated for this Project, and whose work has resulted in training or education with a record of successful learning performance.
- B. Instructor Qualifications: A factory-authorized service representative, complying with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," experienced in operation and maintenance procedures and training.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations and to ensure availability of Owner's personnel.
- B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.
- C. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data have been reviewed and approved by Architect.

1.6 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM

- A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system and for equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections.
- B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following as applicable to the system, equipment, or component:

1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:
 - a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
 - b. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
 - c. Operating standards.
 - d. Regulatory requirements.
 - e. Equipment function.
 - f. Operating characteristics.
 - g. Limiting conditions.
 - h. Performance curves.
2. Documentation: Review the following items in detail:
 - a. Emergency manuals.
 - b. Systems and equipment operation manuals.
 - c. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
 - d. Product maintenance manuals.
 - e. Project Record Documents.
 - f. Identification systems.
 - g. Warranties and bonds.
 - h. Maintenance service agreements and similar continuing commitments.
3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:
 - a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
 - b. Instructions on stopping.
 - c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
 - d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
 - e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 - f. Special operating instructions and procedures.
4. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:
 - a. Startup procedures.
 - b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
 - c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
 - d. Regulation and control procedures.
 - e. Control sequences.
 - f. Safety procedures.
 - g. Instructions on stopping.
 - h. Normal shutdown instructions.
 - i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
 - j. Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure.
 - k. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
 - l. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 - m. Special operating instructions and procedures.
5. Adjustments: Include the following:
 - a. Alignments.
 - b. Checking adjustments.
 - c. Noise and vibration adjustments.
 - d. Economy and efficiency adjustments.
6. Troubleshooting: Include the following:
 - a. Diagnostic instructions.

- b. Test and inspection procedures.
- 7. Maintenance: Include the following:
 - a. Inspection procedures.
 - b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
 - c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
 - d. Procedures for routine cleaning.
 - e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
 - f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
 - g. Instruction on use of special tools.
- 8. Repairs: Include the following:
 - a. Diagnosis instructions.
 - b. Repair instructions.
 - c. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
 - d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
 - e. Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.

1.7 PREPARATION

- A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module. Assemble training modules into a training manual organized in coordination with requirements in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- B. Set up instructional equipment at instruction location.

1.8 INSTRUCTION

- A. Engage qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
 - 1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names and positions of participants.
- B. Scheduling: Provide instruction at mutually agreed-on times. For equipment that requires seasonal operation, provide similar instruction at start of each season.
 - 1. Schedule training with Owner with at least seven days' advance notice.
- C. Training Location and Reference Material: Conduct training on-site in the completed and fully operational facility using the actual equipment in-place. Conduct training using final operation and maintenance data submittals.
- D. Cleanup: Collect used and leftover educational materials and give to Owner. Remove instructional equipment. Restore systems and equipment to condition existing before initial training use.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

PART 3 - EXECUTION

END OF SECTION 017900

SECTION 024119 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY****A. Section Includes:**

1. Demolition and removal of selected portions of building or structure.
2. Salvage of existing items to be reused or recycled.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 011000 "Summary" for restrictions on use of the premises, Owner-occupancy requirements, and phasing requirements.
2. Section 017300 "Execution" for cutting and patching procedures.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and dispose of them off-site unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- B. Remove and Salvage: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, and deliver to Owner ready for reuse.
- C. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, prepare for reuse, and reinstall where indicated.
- D. Existing to Remain: Leave existing items that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- E. Dismantle: To remove by disassembling or detaching an item from a surface, using gentle methods and equipment to prevent damage to the item and surfaces; disposing of items unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.

1.3 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.
- B. Historic items, relics, antiques, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, and other items of interest or value to Owner that may be uncovered during demolition remain the property of Owner.
 1. Carefully salvage in a manner to prevent damage and promptly return to Owner.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS**A. Predemolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.**

1. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be selectively demolished.
2. Review structural load limitations of existing structure.
3. Review and finalize selective demolition schedule and verify availability of materials, demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
4. Review requirements of work performed by other trades that rely on substrates exposed by selective demolition operations.
5. Review areas where existing construction is to remain and requires protection.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Proposed Protection Measures: Submit report, including Drawings, that indicates the measures proposed for protecting individuals and property, for environmental protection, for dust control, and for noise control. Indicate proposed locations and construction of barriers.
- B. Predemolition Photographs: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by salvage and demolition operations. Comply with Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation." Submit before Work begins.
- C. Warranties: Documentation indicating that existing warranties are still in effect after completion of selective demolition.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Inventory: Submit a list of items that have been removed and salvaged.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Owner will occupy portions of building immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so Owner's operations will not be disrupted.
- B. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.
- C. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
 - 1. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner before start of the Work.
 - 2. If suspected hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.
- D. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.
- E. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
 - 1. Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Standards: Comply with ANSI/ASSP A10.6 and NFPA 241.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting selective demolition operations.
- B. Survey of Existing Conditions: Record existing conditions by use of preconstruction photos.
 - 1. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and salvaged.

3.2 PREPARATION

3.3 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Existing Services/Systems to Remain: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage.
- B. Existing Services/Systems to Be Removed, Relocated, or Abandoned: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.
 - 1. Arrange to shut off utilities with utility companies.
 - 2. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.
 - 3. Disconnect, demolish, and remove fire-suppression systems, plumbing, and HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated on Drawings to be removed.
 - a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
 - b. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material and leave in place.
 - c. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
 - d. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
 - e. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
 - f. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
 - g. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap or plug ducts with same or compatible ductwork material and leave in place.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Protection: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
 - 1. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
 - 2. Provide temporary weather protection, during interval between selective demolition of existing construction on exterior surfaces and new construction, to prevent water leakage and damage to structure and interior areas.
 - 3. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations.
 - 4. Cover and protect furniture, furnishings, and equipment that have not been removed.
 - 5. Comply with requirements for temporary enclosures, dust control, heating, and cooling specified in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- B. Temporary Shoring: Design, provide, and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction and finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.
 - 1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of selective demolition.
- C. Remove temporary barricades and protections where hazards no longer exist.

3.5 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION, GENERAL

- A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:

1. Proceed with selective demolition systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete selective demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
 2. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
 3. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
 4. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
 5. Maintain fire watch during and for at least two hours after flame-cutting operations.
 6. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
 7. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
 8. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to avoid free fall and to prevent ground impact or dust generation.
 9. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
 10. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly. Comply with requirements in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- B. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
- C. Removed and Salvaged Items:
1. Clean salvaged items.
 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
 3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
 4. Transport items to Owner's storage area on-site.
 5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
- D. Removed and Reinstalled Items:
1. Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse.
 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning and repairing. Identify contents of containers.
 3. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
 4. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.
- E. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by Architect, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition and cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.

3.6 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION PROCEDURES FOR SPECIFIC MATERIALS

- A. Concrete: Demolish in sections. Cut concrete full depth at junctures with construction to remain and at regular intervals using power-driven saw, and then remove concrete between saw cuts.
- B. Masonry: Demolish in small sections. Cut masonry at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw, and then remove masonry between saw cuts.
- C. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade: Saw-cut perimeter of area to be demolished, and then break up and remove.
- D. Resilient Floor Coverings: Remove floor coverings and adhesive according to recommendations in RFCI's "Recommended Work Practices for the Removal of Resilient Floor Coverings."

3.7 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

- A. Remove demolition waste materials from Project site and dispose of them in an EPA-approved construction and demolition waste landfill acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
 - 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
 - 3. Comply with requirements specified in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.

3.8 CLEANING

- A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

END OF SECTION 024119

SECTION 033000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies cast-in place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes, for the following:
 - 1. Footings.
 - 2. Foundation walls.
 - 3. Slabs-on-grade.
 - 4. Columns
 - 5. Beams
 - 6. Slabs
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 03 Section "Architectural Concrete" for general building applications of specially finished formed concrete.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume; subject to compliance with requirements.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
 - 1. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.
- C. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Placing drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement. Include bar sizes, lengths, material, grade, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, splices and laps, mechanical connections, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement.
- D. Welding certificates.
- E. Qualification Data: For Installer & testing agency.
- F. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency, indicating compliance with requirements:
 - 1. Aggregates. Include service record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali aggregate reactivity.
- G. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:

1. Cementitious materials.
2. Admixtures.
3. Form materials and form-release agents.
4. Steel reinforcement and accessories.
5. Waterstops.
6. Curing compounds.
7. Floor and slab treatments.
8. Bonding agents.
9. Adhesives.
10. Vapor retarders.
11. Semirigid joint filler.
12. Joint-filler strips.
13. Repair materials.

- H. Floor surface flatness and levelness measurements to determine compliance with specified tolerances.
- I. Field quality-control test and inspection reports.
- J. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs on Project personnel qualified as ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is an ACI-certified Concrete Flatwork Technician.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
 - 1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
 - 1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-01 or an equivalent certification program.
 - 2. Personnel performing laboratory tests shall be ACI-certified Concrete Strength Testing Technician and Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician - Grade I. Testing Agency laboratory supervisor shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician - Grade II.
- D. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, obtain aggregate from one source, and obtain admixtures through one source from a single manufacturer.
- E. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code-Reinforcing Steel."
- F. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
 - 1. ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."
- G. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.

- H. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."
1. Before submitting design mixtures, review concrete design mixture and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place concrete to attend, including the following:
 - a. Contractor's superintendent.
 - b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
 - c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
 - d. Concrete subcontractor.
 2. Review special inspection and testing and inspecting agency procedures for field quality control, concrete finishes and finishing, cold- and hot-weather concreting procedures, curing procedures, construction contraction and isolation joints, and joint-filler strips, semirigid joint fillers, forms and form removal limitations, shoring and reshoring procedures, vapor-retarder installation, anchor rod and anchorage device installation tolerances, steel reinforcement installation, floor and slab flatness and levelness measurement, concrete repair procedures, and concrete protection.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Waterstops: Store waterstops under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

- A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that will provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
1. Plywood, metal, or other approved panel materials.
 2. Exterior-grade plywood panels, suitable for concrete forms, complying with DOC PS 1, and as follows:
 - a. High-density overlay, Class 1 or better.
 - b. Medium-density overlay, Class 1 or better; mill-release agent treated and edge sealed.
 - c. Structural 1, B-B or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.
 - d. B-B (Concrete Form), Class 1 or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.
- B. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.
- C. Forms for Cylindrical Columns, Pedestals, and Supports: Metal, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic, paper, or fiber tubes that will produce surfaces with gradual or abrupt irregularities not exceeding specified formwork surface class. Provide units with sufficient wall thickness to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.
- D. sufficient to support weight of plastic concrete and other superimposed loads.
- E. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch, minimum.
- F. Rustication Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, kerfed for ease of form removal.

- G. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
 - 1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.
- H. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off metal or glass-fiber-reinforced plastic form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.
 - 1. Furnish units that will leave no corrodible metal closer than **1 inch** to the plane of exposed concrete surface.

2.2 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 , deformed.
- B. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.

2.3 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

- A. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, plain-steel bars, cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
- B. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:
 - 1. For concrete surfaces exposed to view where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.

2.4 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source, throughout Project:
 - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or III
 - a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or F.
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials.
 - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size 3/4 inch nominal.
 - 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- C. Water: ASTM C 94/C and potable.

2.5 ADMIXTURES

- A. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
- B. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that will not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.

1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.

2.6 WATERSTOPS

- A. Flexible Rubber Waterstops: CE CRD-C 513, for embedding in concrete to prevent passage of fluids through joints. Factory fabricate corners, intersections, and directional changes.
 1. Profile: Ribbed with center bulb.
 2. Dimensions: 6 inches by 3/8 inch thick.
- B. Flexible PVC Waterstops: CE CRD-C 572, for embedding in concrete to prevent passage of fluids through joints. Factory fabricate corners, intersections, and directional changes.
 1. Profile: Ribbed with center bulb.
 2. Dimensions: 6 inches by 3/8 inch thick.
- C. Self-Expanding Butyl Strip Waterstops: Manufactured rectangular or trapezoidal strip, butyl rubber with sodium bentonite or other hydrophilic polymers, for adhesive bonding to concrete, 3/4 by 1 inch.
- D. Self-Expanding Rubber Strip Waterstops: Manufactured rectangular or trapezoidal strip, bentonite-free hydrophilic polymer modified chloroprene rubber, for adhesive bonding to concrete, 3/8 by 3/4 inch.

2.7 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Plastic Vapor Retarder: ASTM E 1745, Class A. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.
- B. Plastic Vapor Retarder: ASTM E 1745, Class B. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.
- C. Plastic Vapor Retarder: ASTM E 1745, Class C[, or polyethylene sheet, ASTM D 4397, not less than 10 mils. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive joint tape.

2.8 FLOOR AND SLAB TREATMENTS

- A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Clear, chemically reactive, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or silicate materials and proprietary components; odorless; colorless; that penetrates, hardens, and densifies concrete surfaces.

2.9 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
- B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. when dry.
- C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- D. Water: Potable.
- E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.

- F. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, nondissipating, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering.
- G. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, 18 to 25 percent solids, nondissipating, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering.
- H. Clear, Solvent-Borne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.
- I. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.

2.10 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Semirigid Joint Filler: Two-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, epoxy resin with a Type A shore durometer hardness of 80 per ASTM D 2240.
- B. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- C. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to suit requirements, and as follows:
 - 1. Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
- D. Reglets: Fabricate reglets of not less than 0.0217-inch- thick, galvanized steel sheet. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of reglet to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.
- E. Dovetail Anchor Slots: Hot-dip galvanized steel sheet, not less than 0.0336 inch thick, with bent tab anchors. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of slots to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.

2.11 REPAIR MATERIALS

- A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
 - 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
 - 2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
 - 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
 - 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4100 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
- B. Repair Overlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
 - 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
 - 2. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
 - 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.

4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 5000 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.

2.12 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
 1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:
 1. Fly Ash: 25 percent.
- C. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.
- D. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 1. Use water-reducing, high-range water-reducing or plasticizing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
 2. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
 3. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete for heavy-use industrial slabs and parking structure slabs, concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with a water-cementitious materials ratio below 0.50.
 4. Use corrosion-inhibiting admixture in concrete mixtures where indicated.

2.13 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

- A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

2.14 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M, and furnish batch ticket information.
 1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FORMWORK

- A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.
- B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.
- C. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347R as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
 1. Class A, 1/8 inch for smooth-formed finished surfaces.
 2. Class B, 1/4 inch for all other surfaces

- D. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
- E. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
 - 1. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
 - 2. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.
- F. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.
- G. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.
- H. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.
- I. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
- J. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
- K. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
- L. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

3.2 EMBEDDED ITEMS

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 1. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
 - 2. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.
 - 3. Install dovetail anchor slots in concrete structures as indicated.

3.3 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS

- A. General: Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F for 16 hours after placing concrete, if concrete is hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations and curing and protection operations are maintained.
 - 1. Leave formwork for beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements that supports weight of concrete in place until concrete has achieved at least 70 percent of its 28-day design compressive strength.
 - 2. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without loosening or disturbing shores.

- B. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.
- C. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

3.4 SHORES AND RESHORES

- A. Comply with ACI 318 and ACI 301 for design, installation, and removal of shoring and reshoring.
 - 1. Do not remove shoring or reshoring until measurement of slab tolerances is complete.
- B. Plan sequence of removal of shores and reshore to avoid damage to concrete. Locate and provide adequate reshoring to support construction without excessive stress or deflection.

3.5 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Plastic Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair vapor retarders according to ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Lap joints 6 inches and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.
- B. Bituminous Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair vapor retarders according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.6 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing reinforcement.
 - 1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that would reduce bond to concrete.
- C. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
 - 1. Weld reinforcing bars according to AWS D1.4, where indicated.
- D. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- E. Install welded wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths on bar supports spaced to minimize sagging. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one mesh spacing. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction. Lace overlaps with wire.

3.7 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
 - 1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
 - 2. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.

3. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
 4. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
 5. Space vertical joints in walls at 20'-0" unless noted. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
 6. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
 7. Use epoxy-bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
1. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.
- D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished concrete surface where joint sealants, specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
 3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.
- E. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

3.8 WATERSTOPS

- A. Flexible Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other joints indicated to form a continuous diaphragm. Install in longest lengths practicable. Support and protect exposed waterstops during progress of the Work. Field fabricate joints in waterstops according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Self-Expanding Strip Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other locations indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions, adhesive bonding, mechanically fastening, and firmly pressing into place. Install in longest lengths practicable.

3.9 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
- B. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Architect.
- C. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301.

1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
 - D. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete will be placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
 1. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth to not exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
 2. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.
 3. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.
 - E. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
 1. Consolidate concrete during placement operations so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
 2. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
 3. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
 4. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
 5. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.
 - F. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
 1. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
 - G. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows:
 1. Maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
 2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.
- 3.10 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES
- A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
 1. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.

- B. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defects. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
 - 1. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view, to receive a rubbed finish, to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete.
- C. Rubbed Finish: Apply the following to smooth-formed finished as-cast concrete where indicated:
 - 1. Smooth-Rubbed Finish: Not later than one day after form removal, moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform color and texture. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing process.
 - 2. Grout-Cleaned Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply grout of a consistency of thick paint to coat surfaces and fill small holes. Mix one part portland cement to one and one-half parts fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding admixture and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match adjacent surfaces. Scrub grout into voids and remove excess grout. When grout whitens, rub surface with clean burlap and keep surface damp by fog spray for at least 36 hours.
 - 3. Cork-Floated Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply a stiff grout. Mix one part portland cement and one part fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding agent and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match adjacent surfaces. Compress grout into voids by grinding surface. In a swirling motion, finish surface with a cork float.
- D. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

3.11 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

- A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraighening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Scratch Finish: While still plastic, texture concrete surface that has been screeded and bull-floated or darbied. Use stiff brushes, brooms, or rakes to produce a profile amplitude of 1/4 inch in 1 direction.
 - 1. Apply scratch finish to surfaces to receive mortar setting beds for bonded cementitious floor finishes.
- C. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighen until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
 - 1. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces exposed to view, to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system.
 - 2. Finish surfaces to the following tolerances, according to ASTM E 1155, for a randomly trafficked floor surface:
 - a. Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 35; and of levelness, F(L) 25; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 24; and of levelness, F(L) 17; for slabs-on-grade.
- D. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a first trowel finish to surfaces where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thin-set method. While concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom.

1. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances for trowel finished floor surfaces.
- E. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, and ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.
 1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

3.12 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

- A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures, unless otherwise indicated, after work of other trades is in place. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.
- B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.
- C. Equipment Bases and Foundations: Provide machine and equipment bases and foundations as shown on Drawings. Set anchor bolts for machines and equipment at correct elevations, complying with diagrams or templates from manufacturer furnishing machines and equipment.
- D. Steel Pan Stairs: Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads, landings, and associated items. Cast-in inserts and accessories as shown on Drawings. Screed, tamp, and trowel-finish concrete surfaces.

3.13 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 301 for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- C. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for the remainder of the curing period.
- D. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces.
- E. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:
 1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
 - a. Water.
 - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
 - c. Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
 2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days.

Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.

- a. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings.
 - b. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive penetrating liquid floor treatments.
 - c. Cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings with either a moisture-retaining cover or a curing compound that the manufacturer certifies will not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project..
3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
- a. After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer unless manufacturer certifies curing compound will not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.
4. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

3.14 LIQUID FLOOR TREATMENTS

- A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Prepare, apply, and finish penetrating liquid floor treatment according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Remove curing compounds, sealers, oil, dirt, laitance, and other contaminants and complete surface repairs.
 2. Apply liquid until surface is saturated, scrubbing into surface until a gel forms; rewet; and repeat brooming or scrubbing. Rinse with water; remove excess material until surface is dry. Apply a second coat in a similar manner if surface is rough or porous.
- B. Sealing Coat: Uniformly apply a continuous sealing coat of curing and sealing compound to hardened concrete by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.15 JOINT FILLING

- A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least one month(s). Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.
- B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joint clean and dry.
- C. Install semirigid joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least **2 inches (50 mm)** deep in formed joints. Overfill joint and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

3.16 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.

- B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of one part portland cement to two and one-half parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
- C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
 - 1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch in any dimension in solid concrete, but not less than 1 inch in depth. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
 - 2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar will match surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
 - 3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.
- D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
 - 1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
 - 2. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
 - 3. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
 - 4. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
 - 5. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
 - 6. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts and expose steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
 - 7. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.
- E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
- F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.

3.17 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage a special inspector and qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Testing and Inspecting: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.
- C. Inspections:
 - 1. Steel reinforcement placement.
 - 2. Steel reinforcement welding.
 - 3. Headed bolts and studs.
 - 4. Verification of use of required design mixture.
 - 5. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
 - 6. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
 - 7. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.
- D. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
 - 1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd., but less than 25 cu. yd., plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. (38 cu. m) or fraction thereof.
 - a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
 - 2. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
 - 3. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
 - 4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
 - 5. Unit Weight: ASTM C 567, fresh unit weight of structural lightweight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
 - 6. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M.
 - a. Cast and laboratory cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
 - 7. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one set of two laboratory-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
 - 8. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
 - 9. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.

10. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
 11. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42/C 42M or by other methods as directed by Architect.
 12. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
 13. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.
- E. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness according to ASTM E 1155 within 24 hours of finishing.

END OF SECTION 033000

SECTION 033010 – VAPOR BARRIERS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Products supplied under this section:
 - 1. Vapor barrier and installation accessories for installation under concrete slabs.
- B. Related sections:
 - 1. Section 033000 Cast-in-Place Concrete

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM International:
 - 1. ASTM E1745-17: Standard Specification for Plastic Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Soil or Granular Fill Under Concrete Slabs.
 - 2. ASTM E1643-18a: Selection, Design, Installation, and Inspection of Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth or Granular Fill Under Concrete Slabs.
- B. Technical Reference - American Concrete Institute (ACI):
 - 1. ACI 302.2R-06: Guide for Concrete Slabs that Receive Moisture-Sensitive Flooring Materials.
 - 2. ACI 302.1R-15: Guide to Concrete Floor and Slab Construction.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Quality control/assurance:
 - 1. Summary of test results per paragraph 9.3 of ASTM E1745.
 - 2. Manufacturer's samples and literature.
 - 3. Manufacturer's installation instructions for placement, seaming, penetration prevention and repair, and perimeter seal per ASTM E1643.
 - 4. All mandatory ASTM E1745 testing must be performed on a single production roll per ASTM E1745 Section 8.1.
 - 5. Contact vapor barrier manufacturer to schedule a pre-construction meeting and to coordinate a review, in-person or digital, of the vapor barrier installation.
 - 6. Vapor barrier manufacturer must warrant in writing compliance with the designated ASTM E1745 classification, and no manufacturing defects in the product for, at least, the Life of the Building.
 - 7. Manufacturer verify in writing 20 years in the industry with no reported product failures.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Vapor barrier shall have all the following qualities:
 - 1. Maintain permeance of less than 0.01 Perms [grains/(ft² · hr · inHg)] as tested in accordance with mandatory conditioning tests per ASTM E1745 Section 7.1 (7.1.1-7.1.5).
 - 2. Other performance criteria:
 - a. Strength: ASTM E1745 Class A.
 - b. Thickness: 15 mils minimum
- B. Provide third party documentation that all testing was performed on a single production roll per ASTM E1745 Section 8.1
- C. Vapor barrier products:

1. Basis of Design: Stego Wrap Vapor Barrier (15-mil) by Stego Industries LLC., (877) 464-7834 www.stegoindustries.com
2. Equal Products:
 - a. Vaporguard by Reef Industries, 713-507-4250. www.reefindustries.com
 - b. Moistop Ultra 15 by Fortifiber 1-800-773-4777 www.buildsite.com

2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide accessories from the same source as the primary vapor barrier product. Provide the following accessories as manufactured by the basis of design vapor barrier or equal products from the other manufacturers listed.
- B. Seams: Stego Tape.
- C. Sealing Penetrations of Vapor barrier:
 1. Stego Mastic.
 2. Stego Tape.
- D. Perimeter/terminated edge seal:
 1. Stego Crete Claw (textured tape).
 2. Stego Term Bar.
 3. StegoTack Tape (double-sided sealant tape).
 4. One-sided seaming tape is not a recommended method of sealing at the terminated edge.
- E. Penetration Prevention: Beast Foot.
- F. Vapor Barrier-Safe Hand Screed System: Beast Screed.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Ensure that subsoil is approved by Architect or Geotechnical Engineer.
- B. Level and compact base material.
- C. Contact vapor barrier manufacturer to schedule a pre-construction meeting and to coordinate a review, in-person or digital, of the vapor barrier installation.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install vapor barrier in accordance ASTM E1643.
- B. Unroll vapor barrier with the longest dimension parallel with the direction of the concrete placement and face laps away from the expected direction of the placement whenever possible.
- C. Extend vapor barrier to the perimeter of the slab. If practicable, terminate it at the top of the slab, otherwise
 1. at a point acceptable to the structural engineer or
 2. where obstructed by impediments, such as dowels, water stops, or any other site condition requiring early termination of the vapor barrier.
 3. At the point of termination, seal vapor barrier to the foundation wall, grade beam or slab itself.
- D. Seal vapor barrier to the entire slab perimeter using manufacturer's textured tape with a surface that creates a mechanical seal to freshly-placed concrete, per manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Overlap joints 6 inches and seal with manufacturer's seam tape.
- F. Apply seam tape/textured tape/double-sided tape to a clean and dry vapor barrier.
- G. Seal all penetrations (including pipes) per manufacturer's instructions.

- H. Avoid the use of stakes driven through vapor barrier by utilizing screed and forming systems that will not leave punctures in the vapor barrier.
- I. Repair damaged areas with vapor barrier material of similar (or better) permeance, puncture and tensile.

END OF SECTION 033010

SECTION 033543 - CONCRETE POLISHING**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes polished concrete finish for interior concrete floors denoted on Finish Schedule as PSC (Polished Sealed Concrete). Polished concrete finished for pre-cast concrete, vertical cast-in-place concrete, and exterior concrete are specified in the sections for those types of concrete.
 - 1. Furnish all labor, material, equipment and services necessary for the dry diamond grinding and polishing of concrete floors.
 - 2. Applying densifying impregnator/sealer and polishing to specified sheen level and aggregate exposure.
 - 3. Concrete must be cured a minimum of 28 days prior to polishing.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and will be performed under the designated Sections.
 - 1. Section 099323 "Interior Transparent Finishes" for slab surfaces scheduled to be sealed concrete.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. American Concrete Institute (ACI):
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials:
 - 1. ASTM C779, Standard Test Method for Abrasion of Horizontal Concrete Surfaces
 - 2. ASTM C805, Impact Strength
 - 3. ASTM G23-81, Ultraviolet Light and Water Spray
 - 4. ASTM 1028, Co-Efficient of Friction
 - 5. ASTM C 150, Type I, II Portland cement conformity, depending on soil conditions
 - 6. ASTM C 33, Aggregate conformity
- C. Other Tests:
 - 1. Reflectivity

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit the following in accordance with Submittal Procedures in Division 1 Sections.
- B. Product data for concrete densifying impregnator, penetrating sealer, concrete dyes, joint filler and any other chemicals used in the process.
- C. Applicators qualification data.
- D. Protection Mat System product and installation data.
- E. Polished concrete samples: size 3"x3" for each Polished Concrete finish required.
- F. Maintenance procedures for Polished Concrete using diamond impregnated cleaning pads.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Certified Contractors:
 - 1. Pre-qualified contractors meeting ALL requirements set forth within specifications.
 - 2. No substitutions will be allowed or approved.

- B. Pre-Pour Installation Conference: Conduct conference at project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Sections "Special Conditions" and "Administrative Requirements".
- C. Provide project names, addresses, contact names, phone numbers, of at least three (3) projects of similar scope and size completed by the installer.
- D. Manufacturer's Certification: Provide letter of certification stating that the installer is a certified applicator and is familiar with proper procedures and installation requirements recommended by the manufacturer.
- E. Mock-ups:
 - 1. Mock-ups to be approximately 100 square feet per color and finish in location indicated or if not indicated, as directed by the Architect or Owner Representative.
 - 2. Install mock-ups to verify selections made under sample submittal and to demonstrate methods and workmanship proposed for the project. If mock-up not possible, submitted samples will be accepted as demonstrated methods and workmanship.
 - 3. Control joints should be included in mock-up. Sawing performed by General Contractor can begin as soon as the surface is firm enough not to displace any of the aggregate.
 - 4. Edges should be included in mock-up.
- F. Protection: General Contractor shall protect areas to receive polished concrete finish at all times during construction to prevent oils, dirt, metal, excessive water and other potentially damaging materials from affecting the finished concrete surface. Protection measures listed below shall begin immediately after the concrete slab is poured:
 - 1. All hydraulic powered equipment shall be diapered to avoid staining of the concrete.
 - 2. All vehicle parking shall be prohibited on the finish slab area. If necessary to complete their scope of work, drop clothes shall be placed under vehicles at all times.
 - 3. No pipe cutting machine shall be used on the finish floor slab.
 - 4. Steel shall not be placed on the finish slab to avoid rusting.
 - 5. Acids and acidic detergents will not come in contact with slab.
 - 6. All painters will use drop cloths on the concrete. If paint gets on the concrete, it must be removed immediately.
 - 7. All trades will be informed that the slab must be protected at all times.
- G. Environmental Limitations
 - 1. Comply with manufacturers written instructions for substrate temperature and moisture content, ambient temperature and humidity, ventilation and other conditions affecting chemical performance.
 - 2. Flatness and Levelness
 - a. Finished concrete shall have a minimum Floor Flatness rating of at least 40
 - b. Finished concrete shall have a minimum floor levelness rating of at least 30
 - c. Finished concrete shall be cured a minimum of 28 days or at which point equipment can be put on the slab and does not displace aggregate.
 - 3. Application of finish system shall take place a minimum of 21 days prior to fixture and trim installation and/or substantial completion.
 - 4. Finished concrete area shall be closed to traffic during finish floor application and after application, for the time as recommended by manufacturer.
- H. Concrete Mix Design
 - 1. Concrete Mixture shall be 3000 PSI or higher, non-air entrained.
 - a. Any admixtures, plasticizers, slag, fly ash or anything taking the place of Portland based cement shall be kept to a minimum.
 - b. The cement shall be Portland Cement Type I, conforming to ASTM C150.
 - c. Maintain concrete temperature below 85 degrees. Keep concrete cool and moist for as long as possible. In essence, decrease rate of hydration and drying to minimize cracking.
 - d. A dissipating cure and seal may be used, if required.
 - e. All mix designs must be approved by the Architect. Send all approved mix designs to Installer/Applicator.

- f. The Engineer/Architect shall determine the sawcut pattern, color and layout.
- g. Color loads for integral color should never be smaller than three (3) cubic yards.
- h. Use one (1) source for cement, aggregates, and pozzolans throughout the job. Monitor and control incoming material consistency. Do not use calcium chloride-based admixtures. Non-chloride admixtures may be used.
- i. Wash out all drums before loading. Keep slumps consistent with a maximum of four (4). Minimize driver added water maintaining a .45 water content ratio.
- j. Place concrete to achieve as true and smooth of a top surface as possible. Mounds or dips are not acceptable. General Contractor shall control overall flatness and levelness, including on sloping areas to within tolerances permitted by specification ASTM E1155.
- k. Slab shall be protected from indentation and footprints during pour and curing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 POLISHING MATERIALS

- A. Three-phase 480 Volt generator
- B. Three (3) head or four (4) head counter rotating, variable speed, electric floor grinding/polishing machines with at least 600 pounds down pressure. For example: HTC 950RX, HTC 800HD, SASE PDG 8000, Husqvarna PG820. No substitutes allowed.
- C. HTC/Pullman Dust extraction system, pre-separator, and squeegee attachments with minimum flow rating of 322 cubic feet per minute such as the HTC 75D, HTC 86D, T8600, T12600, Bull 500, Bull 1250 & T55 or C5500. No substitutes allowed.
- D. Grinding Tools
 - 1. Metal bonded diamonds 16, 25, 40, 80, and 150 grits
 - 2. Resin bonded diamonds 100, 200, 400, 800 and 1500 grits
- E. Grinding Pads for Edges
 - 1. 30, 60 and 120 grits
 - 2. 100, 200, 400 and 800 grits
- F. Hand Grinder with dust extraction attachment and pads.
- G. Densifier: A concrete hardener chemically reactive, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or silicate materials and proprietary components; odorless; colorless which hardens and densifies concrete surfaces to protect against abrasion, dusting, and absorption of liquids.
 - 1. Ameripolish 3D HS; Lithium Silicate; Ameripolish
 - 2. Consolideck LS; Lithium Silicate; PROSOCO
 - 3. LionHard; Lithium Silicate; L & M Construction Chemicals
 - 4. No substitutions allowed.
- H. Control Joint and Sawcut Filler, two part polyurea.
 - 1. Hi-Tech Polyurea PE-85; Hi-Tech Systems
 - 2. Spal-Pro RS 88 Semi-Rigid Polyurea Joint Filler; Metzger-McGuire
 - 3. Euco QwikJoint 200, The Euclid Chemical Company
 - 4. No substitutions allowed.
- I. Stain Guard: Protect from debris and contaminants.
 - 1. Ameripolish 3D SP Stain Protector; Ameripolish
 - 2. Consolideck LSGuard; PROSOCO
 - 3. Petrotex; L & M Construction Chemicals
 - 4. No substitutions allowed.
- J. Diamond Impregnated Cleaning Pads
 - 1. Consolideck Heat Pad; PROSOCO, Inc.

2. Magic Polishing Pad; SASE Company

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Floor Protection Mat System: Provide floor protection consisting of a flexible, peelable concrete base coat and a pre-treated polyester fabric mat, combined to form a temporarily adhered slip-resistant protection mat.
- B. Basis of Design Product: Provide Skudo HT (heavy traffic) Commercial Mat System consisting of proprietary base coat and mat material.
 1. Provide heavy duty spray adhesive as recommended by the mat system for sealing lap joints in the mat material.
 2. Provide all necessary tools and accessories as recommended by the manufacturer for a complete installation.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

- A. This concrete slab must be treated as a finished floor at all times during construction. The General Contractor is responsible for protecting the slab until the building is signed off by the owner.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Installer shall examine and approve concrete substrate for conditions affecting performance of finish. General Contractor shall correct conditions that are found to be out of compliance with the requirements of this section. Repairs are not acceptable unless specifically approved on a case-by-case basis by the Architect.
- B. Verify that base slab meets finish and surface profile requirements listed in Division 3, Section "Cast in Place Concrete".
- C. Provide floor clean of materials and debris.
- D. Protect adjacent surfaces as required to prevent damage by the concrete polishing procedure.
- E. Set up grinding machine, dust extraction system, tooling and generator.
- F. Ensure floor cured to accept polishing application.

3.3 PROTECTION MAT

- A. Preparation: Follow manufacturers written requirements for substrate and preparation requirements. Before applying the protective mat system:
 1. Ensure the surface pH is below 11.0 and moisture content is below 15%.
 2. Ensure the surface temperature is above 40 and below 105 degrees F.
 3. Do not apply the system externally if rain is likely within 6 hours.
 4. Ensure all densifiers, grouts, sealers, guards, epoxies etc. have been cured to their manufacturer specifications (touch dry is not sufficient).
 5. Ensure the area is clean and free from any prior coatings and any foreign materials that will contaminate or compromise the base coat.
 6. Clear the area of any traffic and cordon off the area for at least 3 hours to allow the protective mat system to fully dry. Allow no machine traffic for 24 hours minimum.
 7. Ensure good ventilation.
- B. Spot Test: Apply base coat with a brush or roller to a sample test area of approximately 12 square inches. Allow to dry thoroughly (dry time will vary between 10 to 30 minutes depending on airflow, temperature, humidity and sunlight exposure). Once the base coat is completely dry, peel it up. Inspect the surface for:
 1. Peel-ability
 2. Discoloration or staining
 3. Unusual residues
- C. Application: Follow manufacturer's recommended application methods and rates.

1. Base Coat Spread Rates: Apply base coat consistently to a thickness of at least 8 mils wet. The spread rates of the base coat will vary due to weather, how porous the substrate is on which it will be applied, and the application method (roller or sprayer).
 2. Top Mat Placement: Follow manufacturer's written requirements for mat application in wet base coat.
 - a. Press mat roll into wet base coat immediately after placement of base coat. Install mat at the same rate as the base coat. Press into base coat with dry roller.
 - b. Overlap subsequent widths of mats in base coat, leaving the overlap clear of base coat.
 - c. After completion of the protective mat system in an area, apply heavy duty spray adhesive to the edge overlaps and press with a dry roller.
 - d. Allow 3 hours minimum drying time before allowing foot traffic, 24 hours for machine traffic.
 3. Avoid dragging or dropping heavy objects onto the protective mat system. Repair all damage to the protective mat system immediately.
- D. Repairs: Remove damaged area of the protective mat system, clean slab and reapply base coat and top mat as described above.
- E. Removal: Peel mat and base coat from concrete slabs in areas to receive polished and stained concrete and discard. Remove only in the area where polishing and staining operations are immediately to follow. After removal allow no further machine traffic or construction activity that could affect the finish of the exposed concrete slabs.

3.4 POLISHED CONCRETE APPLICATION

- A. Applicator shall examine the areas and conditions under which work of this section will be provided and the General Contractor shall correct conditions detrimental to the timely and proper completion of the work and the Applicator shall not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions are resolved.
- B. Fill construction joints and cracks with filler products as specified in accordance with manufacturer's instructions colored to match (or contrast) with concrete color as specified by architect. All control joint and decorative sawcut filling must be performed prior to grinding application.
- C. Grind the concrete floor to within 2-3 inches of walls with 16, 25, 40 and 80 grit removing construction debris, floor slab imperfections and until there is a uniform scratch pattern and desired concrete aggregate exposure is achieved. Vacuum the floor thoroughly using a squeegee vacuum attachment. Utilize the least aggressive diamond tooling necessary to remove all debris and to achieve uniform scratch pattern.
- D. Grind the edges with 30, 60, and 120 grit grinding pads, prior to grinding the floor with each step on the larger diamond grinder, removing all of the scratches from the previous grit. Vacuum the floor thoroughly after each grind using a squeegee vacuum attachment.
- E. Grind the floor to within 2-3 inches of walls with metal bonded diamond grits of 150 and/or 300, grinding 90 degrees from each previous grind and removing all the scratches from the previous grit. Vacuum the floor thoroughly after each grind using a squeegee vacuum attachment.
- F. Polish the floor with resin bonded diamond grits of 100, 200, 400, first polishing the edges (if specified) with pads of the same grit and then the field of the floor, removing all scratches from the previous grit. After each polish, clean the floor thoroughly using a vacuum with a squeegee attachment. After the 400 grit polishing step thoroughly clean the floor with a mop or auto-scrubber to prepare for dye (if specified).
- G. Apply densifying impregnator undiluted as per manufacturer's specifications and guidelines. Cover the entire work area liberally and allow to sit for ten (10) minutes. Apply again to areas where the densifying impregnator has soaked in and allow to sit for an additional thirty (30) minutes. Squeegee excess material off the floor.
- H. Polish the floor with resin bonded diamond grit of 800, first polishing the edges (if specified) with pads of the same grit and then the field of the floor, removing all scratches from the previous grit. After polishing, clean the floor thoroughly using clean water and an auto scrubber or a mop and a wet vacuum.
- I. Apply stain guard with a micro-fiber applicator and burnish with a fine 800 grit, or very fine 1500 grit diamond impregnated cleaning pad.
- J. Upon completion, the work shall be ready for final inspection and acceptance by the customer.

- K. Protect finished flooring from damage until acceptance of the project as final and complete by the Owner.

PART 4 - SCHEDULES

4.1 SHEEN

- A. Polished Concrete Level 2 1500 grit (Medium Gloss Finish):
 - 1. At a distance of 30 to 50 feet the floor will reveal moderate reflection.
 - 2. Yield a 40 to 60 degree sheen, as measured by a Horiba IG-310

END OF SECTION 033543

SECTION 042000 - UNIT MASONRY ASSEMBLIES**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Clay face brick.
 - 2. Mortar and grout.
 - 3. Ties and anchors.
 - 4. Embedded flashing.
 - 5. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.
- B. Products Installed but not Furnished under This Section:
 - 1. Steel lintels in unit masonry.
 - 2. Steel shelf angles for supporting unit masonry.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 072100 "Building Insulation" for cavity wall insulation.
 - 2. Section 072500 "Gypsum Board Weather-Resistant Barrier and Air Barrier System" for sheathing.
 - 3. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for exposed sheet metal flashing and for furnishing manufactured reglets installed in masonry joints.
 - 4. Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" for exterior coatings for all exposed exterior unit masonry.

1.3 ALLOWANCES

- A. Face brick is part of the Face Brick Allowance.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For the following:
 - 1. Masonry Units: Show sizes, profiles, coursing, and locations of special shapes.
 - 2. Fabricated Flashing: Detail corner units, end-dam units, and other special applications.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection:
 - 1. Clay face brick, in the form of straps of five or more bricks.
 - 2. Weep holes/cavity vents.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For each type and size of the following:
 - 1. Masonry units.
 - a. Include data on material properties.
 - b. For brick, include size-variation data verifying that actual range of sizes falls within specified tolerances.

- c. For exposed brick, include test report for efflorescence according to ASTM C 67.
- 2. Cementitious materials. Include name of manufacturer, brand name, and type.
- 3. Mortar admixtures.
- 4. Preblended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
- 5. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
- 6. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.
- B. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 - 1. Include test reports for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification. Test according to ASTM C 109/C 109M for compressive strength, ASTM C 1506 for water retention, and ASTM C 91/C 91M for air content.
 - 2. Include test reports, according to ASTM C 1019, for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.
- C. Cold-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with requirements.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical wall area as shown on Drawings.
 - 2. Build mockups for typical exterior wall in sizes approximately 72 inches long by 60 inches high by full thickness, including face and backup wythes and accessories.
 - a. Include a sealant-filled joint at least 16 inches long in exterior wall mockup.
 - b. Include lower corner of window opening at upper corner of exterior wall mockup. Make opening approximately 12 inches wide by 16 inches high.
 - c. Include through-wall flashing installed for a 24-inch length in corner of exterior wall mockup approximately 16 inches down from top of mockup, with a 12-inch length of flashing left exposed to view (omit masonry above half of flashing).
 - d. Include metal studs, sheathing, water-resistive barrier sheathing joint-and-penetration treatment, veneer anchors, flashing, cavity drainage material, and weep holes in exterior masonry-veneer wall mockup.
 - 3. Clean one-half of exposed faces of mockups with masonry cleaner as indicated.
 - 4. Protect accepted mockups from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.
 - 5. Approval of mockups is for color, texture, and blending of masonry units; relationship of mortar and sealant colors to masonry unit colors; tooling of joints; and aesthetic qualities of workmanship.
 - a. Approval of mockups is also for other material and construction qualities specifically approved by Architect in writing.
 - b. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 6. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.

- D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms in a dry location or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.
- E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
 - 1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides of walls, and hold cover securely in place.
 - 2. Where one wythe of multiwythe masonry walls is completed in advance of other wythes, secure cover a minimum of 24 inches down face next to unconstructed wythe, and hold cover in place.
- B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least three days after building masonry walls or columns.
- C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.
 - 1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
 - 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
 - 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
 - 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.
- D. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
 - 1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and higher and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven days after completing cleaning.
- E. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from single source from single manufacturer for each product required.
 - 1. All exterior unit masonry to receive paint per Section 099113 "Exterior Painting". Color of masonry units may vary, providing unit dimensions, grade, type, and face characteristics are consistent throughout the masonry units provided.
- B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, from single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from single source or producer for each aggregate.

2.2 UNIT MASONRY, GENERAL

- A. Masonry Standard: Comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6, except as modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- B. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated. Do not use units where such defects are exposed in the completed Work and will be within 20 feet vertically and horizontally of a walking surface.

2.3 MASONRY LINTELS

- A. General: Provide one of the following:
- B. Masonry Lintels: Steel Angle lintels complying with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications".

2.4 BRICK

- A. General: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching finish and color of exposed faces of adjacent units:
 - 1. For ends of sills and caps and for similar applications that would otherwise expose unfinished brick surfaces, provide units without cores or frogs and with exposed surfaces finished.
 - 2. Provide special shapes for applications where stretcher units cannot accommodate special conditions, including those at corners, movement joints, bond beams, sashes, and lintels.
 - 3. Provide special shapes for applications requiring brick of size, form, color, and texture on exposed surfaces that cannot be produced by sawing.
 - 4. Provide special shapes for applications where shapes produced by sawing would result in sawed surfaces being exposed to view.
- B. Clay Face Brick: Facing brick complying with ASTM C 216.
 - 1. Grade: SW.
 - 2. Type: FBS.
 - 3. Efflorescence: Provide brick that has been tested according to ASTM C 67 and is rated "not effloresced."
 - 4. Size (Actual Dimensions): 3-5/8 inches wide by 2-1/4 inches high by 7-5/8 inches long.
 - 5. Application: Use where brick is exposed unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
 - 2. Use portland cement-lime mortar unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
- B. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C270, Proportion Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated.
- C. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
 - 1. Alkali content shall not be more than 0.1 percent when tested according to ASTM C114.
- D. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C207, Type S.
- E. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.
- F. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C144.
 - 1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
- G. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C494/C494M, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Morset.
 - b. Sonneborn Products, BASF Aktiengesellschaft; Trimix-NCA.
- H. Water: Potable.

I. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476.

1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
2. Proportion grout in accordance with ASTM C 476, paragraph 4.2.2 for specified 28-day compressive strength indicated, but not less than 2000 psi.
3. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.

2.6 TIES AND ANCHORS

- A. General: Ties and anchors shall extend at least 1-1/2 inches into veneer but with at least a 5/8-inch cover on outside face.
- B. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in this article that are made from materials that comply with the following unless otherwise indicated:
1. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82/A 82M, with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B-2 coating.
 2. Steel Sheet, Galvanized after Fabrication: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel, with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B coating.
 3. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- C. Screw-Attached, Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Single screw veneer tie for metal stud construction, with a single-diameter barrel with factory-installed EPDM washers to seal both the face of the insulation and the air/vapor barrier.
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Provide 3Gen Masonry Products Barrel Anchor for metal studs as the basis-of-design masonry veneer anchor. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide equal products by one of the following:
 - a. Wire-Bond.
 2. Provide anchors of sufficient length for the thickness of the plywood nailbase and rigid insulation sheathing indicated. Provide anchors with minimum barrel diameter required to penetrate plywood nailbase. Length of barrel and thread should be sufficient to prevent compression of the rigid insulation while allowing metal stud penetration as needed to meet pull-out requirements.
 - a. Provide 3/16-inch diameter hot-dipped galvanized ties with length as required for air space (1" minimum) and designed to extend at least 1-1/2 inches into veneer but with at least a 5/8-inch cover on outside face.
- D. Anchor Bolts: Headed steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A; with ASTM A 563 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers; hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C; of dimensions indicated.

2.7 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Metal Flashing: Provide metal flashing complying with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and as follows:
1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304, 0.016 inch thick.
 2. Fabricate stainless steel drip edge as the exposed leading edge for the specified flexible flashing, set in a bed of sealant, as detailed. Fabricate minimum 3" wide with outer edge bent down 1/2" at a 30 degrees and hemmed.
 - a. On exterior faces where indicated to receive counterflashing, fabricate stainless steel edge with snaplock receiver in lieu of drip edge.
 - b. See drawing details where additional configurations are required that extend into the masonry cavity and onto the wall sheathing.
 3. Fabricate metal expansion-joint strips from stainless steel to shapes indicated.
 4. Solder metal items at corners.
- B. Flexible Flashing: Use the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Rubberized-Asphalt Flashing: Composite flashing product consisting of a pliable, adhesive rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.040 inch.

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- 1) Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
- 2) Grace Construction Products; W.R. Grace & Co. -- Conn.
- 3) Heckmann Building Products, Inc.
- 4) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
- 5) W.R. Meadows, Inc.

- b. Accessories: Provide preformed corners, end dams, other special shapes, and seaming materials produced by flashing manufacturer.

C. Solder and Sealants for Sheet Metal Flashings:

1. Solder for Stainless Steel: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn60, with acid flux of type recommended by stainless-steel sheet manufacturer.
2. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, chemically curing silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and remain watertight.

D. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.

E. Termination Bars for Flexible Flashing: Stainless-steel sheet 0.019 inch by 1-1/2 inches with a 3/8 inch sealant flange at top.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

A. Acoustic Joint Filler: Resilient non-extruding premolded bituminous impregnated.

B. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene.

C. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D 2000, Designation M2AA-805 or PVC, complying with ASTM D 2287, Type PVC-65406 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.

D. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated felt complying with ASTM D 226/D 226M, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).

E. Weep/Cavity Vent Products: Use the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Wicking Material: Absorbent rope, made from cotton, 1/4 to 3/8 inch in diameter, in length required to produce 2-inch exposure on exterior and 18 inches in cavity. Use only for weeps.
2. Cellular Plastic Weep/Vent: One-piece, flexible extrusion made from UV-resistant polypropylene copolymer, full height and width of head joint and depth 1/8 inch less than depth of outer wythe, in color selected from manufacturer's standard.

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- 1) 3Gen Masonry Products
- 2) Advanced Building Products Inc.
- 3) Heckmann Building Products, Inc.
- 4) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
- 5) Wire-Bond.

F. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the

wall cavity.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. 3Gen Masonry Products
 - b. Advanced Building Products Inc.
 - c. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
 - d. Mortar Net USA, Ltd.
2. Configuration: Provide one of the following:
 - a. Strips, full depth of cavity and 10 inches high, with dovetail-shaped notches 7 inches deep that prevent clogging with mortar droppings.

2.9 MASONRY CLEANERS

- A. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from new masonry without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces. Use product expressly approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Diedrich Technologies, Inc.; a division of Sandell Construction Solutions.
 - b. EaCo Chem, Inc.
 - c. PROSOCO, Inc.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
 2. Verify that foundations are within tolerances specified.
 3. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.
 4. Verify that substrates are free of substances that impair mortar bond.
- B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Thickness: Build cavity and composite walls and other masonry construction to full thickness shown.
- B. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections.
- C. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match construction immediately adjacent to opening.
- D. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
- E. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures. Mix units from several pallets or cubes as they are placed.

- F. Wetting of Brick: Wet brick before laying if initial rate of absorption exceeds 30 g/30 sq. in. per minute when tested according to ASTM C 67. Allow units to absorb water so they are damp but not wet at time of laying.

3.3 TOLERANCES

A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:

1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation, do not vary by more than plus 1/2 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
2. For location of elements in plan, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/2 inch.
3. For location of elements in elevation, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/4 inch in a story height or 1/2 inch total.

B. Lines and Levels:

1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls, do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
3. For vertical lines and surfaces, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
5. For lines and surfaces, do not vary from straight by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
6. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet or 1/2-inch maximum.
7. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than 1/16 inch except due to warpage of masonry units within tolerances specified for warpage of units.

C. Joints:

1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch, with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch.
2. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch.
3. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus 3/8 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
4. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch. Do not vary from adjacent bed-joint and head-joint thicknesses by more than 1/8 inch.
5. For exposed bed joints and head joints of stacked bond, do not vary from a straight line by more than 1/16 inch from one masonry unit to the next.

3.4 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in running bond; do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- C. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by stepping back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh masonry.
1. During construction, keep all walls dry by covering the top of the wall with a strong, water-resistant membrane at the end of each day or shutdown period. Overhang the wall 24 in. minimum on each side, and secure against wind. The covering should remain in place until the top of the cavity wall is completed or protected by adjacent materials.
- D. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.

- E. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar unless otherwise indicated.

3.5 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay hollow brick as follows:
 - 1. Bed face shells in mortar and make head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
 - 2. Bed webs in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
 - 3. Bed webs in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
 - 4. Fully bed entire units, including areas under cells, at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.
 - 5. Fully bed units and fill cells with mortar at anchors and ties as needed to fully embed anchors and ties in mortar.
- B. Lay solid masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
- C. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Cut joints flush where indicated to receive cavity wall insulation unless otherwise indicated.

3.6 ANCHORED MASONRY VENEERS

- A. Anchor masonry veneers to wall framing with masonry-veneer anchors to comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Fasten screw-attached anchors through sheathing to wall framing with metal fasteners of type indicated.
 - 2. Embed tie sections in masonry joints.
 - 3. Locate anchor sections to allow maximum vertical differential movement of ties up and down.
 - 4. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 16 inches o.c. vertically and 16 inches o.c. horizontally, with not less than one anchor for each 2 sq. ft. of wall area. Install additional anchors within 12 inches of openings and at intervals, not exceeding 8 inches, around perimeter.
- B. Provide not less than 1 inch of airspace between back of masonry veneer and face of insulation.
 - 1. Keep airspace clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction. Bevel beds away from airspace, to minimize mortar protrusions into airspace. Do not attempt to trowel or remove mortar fins protruding into airspace.

3.7 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. General: Install control- and expansion-joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.
- B. Form expansion joints in brick as follows:
 - 1. Form open joint full depth of brick wythe and of width indicated, but not less than 3/8 inch for installation of sealant and backer rod specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- C. Provide horizontal, pressure-relieving joints by either leaving an airspace or inserting a compressible filler of width required for installing sealant and backer rod specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," but not less than 3/8 inch.
 - 1. Locate horizontal, pressure-relieving joints beneath shelf angles supporting masonry.

3.8 LINTELS

- A. Install steel lintels where indicated.
- B. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.

3.9 FLASHING, WEEP HOLES, AND CAVITY VENTS

- A. General: Install embedded flashing and weep holes in masonry at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other

obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated.

B. Install flashing as follows unless otherwise indicated:

1. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
2. At masonry-veneer walls, extend flashing through veneer, across airspace behind veneer, and up face of sheathing at least 8 inches. Fasten upper edge of flexible flashing to backup through termination bar.
3. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing a minimum of 6 inches into masonry at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing 6 inches at ends and turn up not less than 2 inches to form end dams.
4. Install metal drip edges beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch back from outside face of wall, and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal drip edge.

C. Install reglets and nailers for flashing and other related construction where they are shown to be built into masonry.

D. Install weep holes in exterior wythes and veneers in head joints of first course of masonry immediately above embedded flashing.

1. Use specified weep/cavity vent products to form weep holes.
2. Space weep holes 24 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.

E. Place cavity drainage material in cavities to comply with configuration requirements for cavity drainage material in "Miscellaneous Masonry Accessories" Article.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage special inspectors to perform tests and inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas as needed to perform tests and inspections. Retesting of materials that fail to comply with specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.

3.11 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.

B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated.

C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.

D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:

1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
5. Clean brick by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.
6. Clean concrete masonry by applicable cleaning methods indicated in NCMA TEK 8-4A.
7. Clean stone trim to comply with stone supplier's written instructions.

3.12 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.

- B. Waste Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including excess or soil-contaminated sand, waste mortar, and broken masonry units, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
 - 1. Crush masonry waste to less than 4 inches in each dimension.
 - 2. Mix masonry waste with at least two parts of specified fill material for each part of masonry waste. Fill material is specified in "Division 31 - Earthwork".
 - 3. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within 18 inches of finished grade.
- C. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above or recycled, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 042000

SECTION 042200 - CONCRETE UNIT MASONRY ASSEMBLIES**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Concrete masonry units.
 - 2. Mortar and grout.
 - 3. Masonry-joint reinforcement.
 - 4. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for new clay masonry veneer.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CMU(s): Concrete masonry unit(s).

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For the following:
 - 1. Masonry Units: Show sizes, profiles, coursing, and locations of special shapes.
 - 2. Reinforcing Steel: Detail bending, lap lengths, and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315. Show elevations of reinforced walls.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For each type and size of the following:
 - 1. Masonry units.
 - a. Include data on material properties.
 - 2. Cementitious materials. Include name of manufacturer, brand name, and type.
 - 3. Mortar admixtures.
 - 4. Preblended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 - 5. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 - 6. Joint reinforcement.
- B. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 - 1. Include test reports for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification. Test according to ASTM C 109/C 109M for compressive strength, ASTM C 1506 for water retention, and ASTM C 91/C 91M for air content.
 - 2. Include test reports, according to ASTM C 1019, for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.

- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
- D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms in a dry location or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.
- E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Protection of Masonry: During construction and where exposed to the elements, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
 - 1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides of walls, and hold cover securely in place.
- B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least three days after building masonry walls or columns.
- C. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
 - 1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and higher and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven days after completing cleaning.
- D. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from single source from single manufacturer for each product required.
- B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from single source or producer for each aggregate.

2.2 UNIT MASONRY, GENERAL

- A. Masonry Standard: Comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 except as modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- B. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated. Do not use units where such defects are exposed in the completed Work and will be within 20 feet vertically and horizontally of a walking surface.
- C. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with requirements for fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated.
 - 1. Where fire-resistance-rated construction is indicated, units shall be listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.3 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

- A. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching exposed faces of adjacent units unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.

2. Provide square-edged units for outside corners unless otherwise indicated.

B. CMUs: ASTM C 90.

1. Density Classification: Lightweight.
2. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions 3/8 inch less-than-nominal dimensions.

C. Concrete Building Brick: ASTM C 55.

2.4 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.

1. Alkali content shall not be more than 0.1 percent when tested according to ASTM C 114.

B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.

C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.

D. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91/C 91M.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Cemex S.A.B. de C.V.
 - b. Lafarge North America Inc.
 - c. Lehigh Cement Company.

E. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.

1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
2. For joints less than 1/4 inch thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 sieve.
3. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.

F. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.

G. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. BASF Construction Chemicals - Building Systems.
 - b. Euclid Chemical Company (The); an RPM company.
 - c. Grace Construction Products; W.R. Grace & Co. -- Conn.

H. Water: Potable.

2.5 REINFORCEMENT

A. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement, General: Ladder type complying with ASTM A 951/A 951M.

1. Exterior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized carbon steel.
2. Wire Size for Side Rods: 0.187-inch diameter.
3. Wire Size for Cross Rods: 0.187-inch diameter.
4. Spacing of Cross Rods: Not more than 16 inches o.c.
5. Provide in lengths of not less than 10 feet, with prefabricated corner and tee units.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene urethane or PVC.

B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with

ASTM D 2000, Designation M2AA-805 or PVC, complying with ASTM D 2287, Type PVC-65406 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.

- C. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated felt complying with ASTM D 226/D 226M, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).

2.7 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
 - 2. Use portland cement-lime or masonry cement mortar unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. For exterior masonry, use portland cement-lime or masonry cement mortar.
 - 4. For reinforced masonry, use portland cement-lime or masonry cement mortar.
 - 5. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
- B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.
- C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated.
 - 1. For reinforced masonry, use Type N.
 - 2. For exterior, above-grade, load-bearing and nonload-bearing walls and parapet walls; for interior load-bearing walls; for interior nonload-bearing partitions; and for other applications where another type is not indicated, use Type N.
- D. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476.
 - 1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
 - 2. Proportion grout in accordance with ASTM C 476, paragraph 4.2.2 for specified 28-day compressive strength indicated, but not less than 2000 psi.
 - 3. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Concrete Unit Masonry work is limited to the infill of exterior openings left from the removal of existing doors, frames, windows, overhead doors and elsewhere as noted on the drawings. Inspect surrounding masonry materials, lintels and slab conditions to ensure bearing and abutting surfaces are clean and free of coatings or other materials detrimental to the mortar bond.
- B. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
 - 2. Verify that bearing surfaces are within tolerances specified.
 - 3. Verify that substrates are free of substances that would impair mortar bond.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.

- B. Align head and bed joints of new concrete masonry with existing head and bed joints adjacent to openings to be infilled. Cut first course of block as required to align bed joints of subsequent courses.

3.3 TOLERANCES

A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:

1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation, do not vary by more than plus 1/2 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
2. For location of elements in plan, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/2 inch.
3. For location of elements in elevation, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/4 inch in a story height or 1/2 inch total.

B. Lines and Levels:

1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls, do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
3. For vertical lines and surfaces do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
5. For lines and surfaces, do not vary from straight by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
6. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
7. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than 1/16 inch.

C. Joints:

1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch, with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch.
2. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch.
3. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus 3/8 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
4. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch.

3.4 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in running bond; do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- C. Stopping and Resuming Work: Infill each required opening in one operation.
- D. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.

3.5 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

A. Lay hollow CMUs as follows:

1. Bed face shells in mortar and make head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
2. Bed webs in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
3. Bed webs in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
4. Fully bed entire units, including areas under cells, at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.

- B. Lay solid CMUs with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head

joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.

- C. Match joint profile of existing masonry where CMU will be exposed to view and painted. Strike joints flush where CMU will receive moisture barriers and covered by other exterior finish veneer treatment.

3.6 MASONRY-JOINT REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches.
 - 1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches o.c.

3.7 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
 - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
 - 2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
 - 3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
 - 4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
 - 5. Clean concrete masonry by applicable cleaning methods indicated in NCMA TEK 8-4A.

3.8 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above or recycled, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 042200

SECTION 051200 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Structural steel.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements" for independent testing agency procedures and administrative requirements.
 - 2. Division 05 Section "Steel Decking" for field installation of shear connectors.
 - 3. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for steel lintels or shelf angles not attached to structural-steel frame, miscellaneous steel fabrications and other metal items not defined as structural steel.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Steel: Elements of structural-steel frame, as classified by AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," that support design loads.
- B. Seismic-Load-Resisting System: Beams that have moment connections, Columns that support them, and and their connections.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Connections: Provide details of simple shear connections required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by structural-steel fabricator to withstand ASD-service loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated.
 - 1. Select and complete connections using schematic details indicated and AISC's "Manual of Steel Construction, Allowable Stress Design," Part 4.
- B. Construction: Simple shear connections typical. X-Bracing. Partially restrained moment connections for some wide flange beams.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.
 - 1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
 - 2. Include embedment drawings.
 - 3. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld.
 - 4. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical high-strength bolted connections.
- C. Welding certificates.

- D. Qualification Data: For Installer, fabricator, professional engineer and testing agency.
- E. Mill Test Reports: Signed by manufacturers certifying that the following products comply with requirements:
 - 1. Structural steel including chemical and physical properties.
 - 2. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
 - 3. Direct-tension indicators.
 - 4. Tension-control, high-strength bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
 - 5. Shear stud connectors.
 - 6. Shop primers.
- F. Source quality-control test reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced Installer who has completed structural steel work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-services performance.
- B. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category 1 conventional steel structures.
 - 1. A non-certified fabricator may be considered, pending a submitted resume and qualifications. Any non-certified fabricator shall include the cost of special inspections for shop fabricated items in their bid. Special inspections of shop fabricated structural steel items shall be paid for by the non-certified fabricator and all inspection reports distributed to Owner, General Contractor, Architect, and Structural Engineer.
- C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code-Steel."
- D. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
 - 1. AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
 - 2. AISC's "Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings" and "Supplement No. 2."
 - 3. AISC's [Specification for Structural Steel Buildings--Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design."
 - 4. AISC's "Specification for the Design of Steel Hollow Structural Sections."
 - 5. AISC's "Specification for Allowable Stress Design of Single-Angle Members."
 - 6. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from erosion and deterioration.
 - 1. Store fasteners in a protected place. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
 - 2. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Furnish anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

- A. W-Shapes: ASTM A 992/A 992M.
- B. Channels, Angles: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- C. Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36/A 36M, unless noted as ASTM A 572 Grade 50 for base plates and moment connections.
- D. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 500, Grade C, structural tubing.
- E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Grade B.
 - 1. Weight Class: Standard.
 - 2. Finish: Black, except where indicated to be galvanized.
- F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

2.2 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

- A. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325, Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 hardened carbon-steel washers.
 - 1. Finish: Plain.
 - 2. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 325 compressible-washer type.
 - a. Finish: Plain.
- B. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F 1852, Type 1, heavy hex head steel structural bolts with splined ends; ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 hardened carbon-steel washers.
 - 1. Finish: Plain.
- C. Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1, Type B.
- D. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36 and Grade 55, as indicated
 - 1. Configuration: Hooked.
 - 2. Nuts: ASTM A 563 hex carbon steel.
 - 3. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
 - 4. Washers: ASTM F 436 hardened carbon steel.
 - 5. Finish: Plain.
- E. Threaded Rods: ASTM A 193/A 193M.
 - 1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 hex carbon steel.
 - 2. Washers: ASTM F 436 hardened carbon steel.
 - 3. Finish: Plain.

2.3 PRIMER

- A. Primer: Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer. Grey color, unless specified otherwise by Architect.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and AISC's "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings--Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design."
 - 1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
 - 2. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6/ A 6M and maintain markings until structural steel has been erected.
 - 3. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
 - 4. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.
- B. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.
 - 1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1.
- C. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.
- D. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.
- E. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted according to SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
- F. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Steel Wall-Opening Framing: Select true and straight members for fabricating steel wall-opening framing to be attached to structural steel. Straighten as required to provide uniform, square, and true members in completed wall framing.
- H. Welded Door Frames: Build up welded door frames attached to structural steel. Weld exposed joints continuously and grind smooth. Plug-weld fixed steel bar stops to frames. Secure removable stops to frames with countersunk, cross-recessed head machine screws, uniformly spaced not more than 10 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for passage of other work through steel framing members.
 - 1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning.
 - 2. Base-Plate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
 - 3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

2.5 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
 - 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 for welding procedure specifications, tolerances, appearance, and quality of welds and for methods used in correcting welding work.

1. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
2. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for mill material.
3. Verify that weld sizes, fabrication sequence, and equipment used for architecturally exposed structural steel will limit distortions to allowable tolerances.
 - a. Grind butt welds flush.
 - b. Grind or fill exposed fillet welds to smooth profile. Dress exposed welds.

2.6 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Shop prime steel surfaces except the following:
 1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches.
 2. Surfaces to be field welded.
 3. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:
 1. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
- C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.
 1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
 2. Apply two coats of shop paint to inaccessible surfaces after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.

2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

1. Reference Section 1.6.B for AISC Certified Fabricator requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments, with steel erector present, for compliance with requirements.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place, unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Do not remove temporary shoring supporting composite deck construction until cast-in-place concrete has attained its design compressive strength.

3.3 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings--Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design."
- B. Base and Bearing Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting base and bearing plates. Clean bottom surface of base and bearing plates.
 - 1. Set base and bearing plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
 - 2. Weld plate washers to top of base plate.
 - 3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of base or bearing plate before packing with grout.
 - 4. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and base or bearing plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.
- C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- D. Align and adjust various members forming part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that will be in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
 - 1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
 - 2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.
- E. Splice members only where indicated.
- F. Remove erection bolts on welded, architecturally exposed structural steel; fill holes with plug welds; and grind smooth at exposed surfaces.
- G. Do not use thermal cutting during erection unless approved by Architect. Finish thermally cut sections within smoothness limits in AWS D1.1.
- H. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.
- I. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
 - 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 for welding procedure specifications, tolerances, appearance, and quality of welds and for methods used in correcting welding work.
 - 1. Comply with AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings--Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design" for bearing, adequacy of temporary connections, alignment, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.

2. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
3. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for mill material.
4. Verify that weld sizes, fabrication sequence, and equipment used for architecturally exposed structural steel will limit distortions to allowable tolerances. Prevent weld show-through on exposed steel surfaces.
 - a. Grind butt welds flush.
 - b. Grind or fill exposed fillet welds to smooth profile. Dress exposed welds.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Reference Structural Sheet S0.1 for Schedule of Special Inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and high-strength bolted connections.
- C. Bolted Connections: Shop-bolted connections will be tested and inspected according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- D. Welded Connections: Field welds will be visually inspected according to AWS D1.1.
 1. In addition to visual inspection, field welds will be tested according to AWS D1.1 and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
 - a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
 - b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
 - c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
- E. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field-welded shear connectors according to requirements in AWS D1.1 for stud welding and as follows:
 1. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than- continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
 2. Conduct tests on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested, according to requirements in AWS D1.1.
- F. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Repair damaged galvanized coatings on galvanized items with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Touchup Painting: After installation, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or reprime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted joists and accessories, bearing plates, and abutting structural steel.
 1. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.
 2. Apply a compatible primer of same type as shop primer used on adjacent surfaces.

END OF SECTION 051200

SECTION 052100 - STEEL JOIST FRAMING**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. K-series steel joists.
 - 2. K-series steel joist substitutes.
 - 3. LH- and DLH-series long-span steel joists.
 - 4. Joist girders.
 - 5. Joist accessories.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. SJI "Specifications" : Steel Joist Institute's "Standard Specifications, Load Tables and Weight Tables for Steel Joists and Joist Girders."

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide special joists and connections capable of withstanding design loads indicated.
- B. Design special joists to withstand design loads with live load deflections no greater than the following:
 - 1. Roof Joists: Vertical deflection of 1/360 of the span.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of joist, accessory, and product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layout, designation, number, type, location, and spacings of joists. Include joining and anchorage details, bracing, bridging, joist accessories; splice and connection locations and details; and attachments to other construction.
 - 1. Indicate locations and details of bearing plates to be embedded in other construction.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that joists comply with requirements.
- E. Mill Certificates: Signed by bolt manufacturers certifying that bolts comply with requirements.
- F. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.
- G. Field quality-control test and inspection reports.
- H. Research/Evaluation Reports: For joists.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer certified by SJI to manufacture joists complying with applicable standard specifications and load tables of SJI "Specifications."
 - 1. Manufacturer's responsibilities include providing professional engineering services for designing special joists to comply with performance requirements.
- B. SJI Specifications: Comply with standard specifications in SJI's "Specifications" that are applicable to types of joists indicated.
- C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle joists as recommended in SJI's "Specifications."
- B. Protect joists from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

1.8 SEQUENCING

- A. Deliver steel bearing plates to be built into cast-in-place concrete construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Steel: Comply with SJI's "Specifications" for web and steel-angle chord members.
- B. Steel Bearing Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- C. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325, Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 hardened carbon-steel washers.
 - 1. Finish: Plain.
- D. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

2.2 PRIMERS

- A. Primer: SSPC-Paint 15, or manufacturer's standard shop primer complying with performance requirements in SSPC-Paint 15.

2.3 K-SERIES STEEL JOISTS

- A. Manufacture steel joists of type indicated according to "Standard Specifications for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members, underslung ends, and parallel top chord.
 - 1. Joist Type: K-series steel joists.
- B. Steel Joist Substitutes: Manufacture according to "Standard Specifications for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle or -channel members.
- C. Provide holes in chord members for connecting and securing other construction to joists.
- D. Top-Chord Extensions: Extend top chords of joists with SJI's Type S top-chord extensions where indicated, complying with SJI's "Specifications."

- E. Extended Ends: Extend bearing ends of joists with SJI's Type R extended ends where indicated, complying with SJI's "Specifications."
- F. Camber joists according to SJI's "Specifications."
- G. Equip bearing ends of joists with manufacturer's standard beveled ends or sloped shoes if joist slope exceeds 1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48).

2.4 LONG-SPAN STEEL JOISTS

- A. Manufacture steel joists according to "Standard Specifications for Longspan Steel Joists, LH-Series and Deep Longspan Steel Joists, DLH-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members; of joist type and end and top-chord arrangements as indicated.
 - 1. Joist Type: DLH-series steel joists.
 - 2. End Arrangement: Square.
 - 3. Top-Chord Arrangement: Parallel.
- B. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for shop welding, appearance, quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
- C. Provide holes in chord members for connecting and securing other construction to joists.
- D. Camber long-span steel joists according to SJI's "Specifications."
- E. Equip bearing ends of joists with manufacturer's standard beveled ends or sloped shoes if joist slope exceeds 1/4 inch per 12 inches.

2.5 JOIST GIRDERS

- A. Manufacture joist girders according to "Standard Specifications for Joist Girders" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members; with end and top-chord arrangements [as follows:] [as indicated.]
 - 1. End Arrangement: Underslung with bottom-chord extensions.
 - 2. Top-Chord Arrangement: Parallel.
- B. Provide holes in chord members for connecting and securing other construction to joist girders.
- C. Camber joist girders according to SJI's "Specifications."
- D. Equip bearing ends of joists with manufacturer's standard beveled ends or sloped shoes if joist slope exceeds 1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48).

2.6 JOIST ACCESSORIES

- A. Bridging: Provide bridging anchors and number of rows of horizontal or diagonal bridging of material, size, and type required by SJI's "Specifications" for type of joist, chord size, spacing, and span. Furnish additional erection bridging if required for stability.
- B. Steel bearing plates with integral anchorages are specified in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications."
- C. Supply miscellaneous accessories, including splice plates and bolts required by joist manufacturer to complete joist installation.

2.7 CLEANING AND SHOP PAINTING

- A. Clean and remove loose scale, heavy rust, and other foreign materials from fabricated joists and accessories by hand-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 2.
- B. Do not prime paint joists and accessories to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.

- C. Apply 1 coat of shop primer to joists and joist accessories to be primed to provide a continuous, dry paint film not less than 1 mil thick.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting substrates, embedded bearing plates, and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
 - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Do not install joists until supporting construction is in place and secured.
- B. Install joists and accessories plumb, square, and true to line; securely fasten to supporting construction according to SJI's "Specifications," joist manufacturer's written recommendations, and requirements in this Section.
 - 1. Before installation, splice joists delivered to Project site in more than one piece.
 - 2. Space, adjust, and align joists accurately in location before permanently fastening.
 - 3. Install temporary bracing and erection bridging, connections, and anchors to ensure that joists are stabilized during construction.
 - 4. Delay rigidly connecting bottom-chord extensions to columns or supports until dead loads have been applied.
- C. Field weld joists to supporting steel bearing plates and framework. Coordinate welding sequence and procedure with placement of joists. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
- D. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using high-strength structural bolts. Comply with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or ASTM A 490 Bolts" for high-strength structural bolt installation and tightening requirements.
- E. Install and connect bridging concurrently with joist erection, before construction loads are applied. Anchor ends of bridging lines at top and bottom chords if terminating at walls or beams.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and bolted connections and to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test and inspection reports.
- B. Field welds will be visually inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. High-strength, field-bolted connections will be tested and verified according to procedures in RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or ASTM A 490 Bolts."
- D. Correct deficiencies in Work that test and inspection reports have indicated are not in compliance with specified requirements.
- E. Additional testing will be performed to determine compliance of corrected Work with specified requirements.

3.4 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Touchup Painting: After installation, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or reprime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted joists, bearing plates, abutting structural steel, and accessories.

1. Clean and prepare surfaces by hand-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 2, or power-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 3.
 2. Apply a compatible primer of same type as shop primer used on adjacent surfaces.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that joists and accessories are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 05 2100

SECTION 053100 - STEEL DECKING**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Roof Deck.
 - 2. Non-Composite Form Deck
 - 3. Composite Deck.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for framing deck openings with miscellaneous steel shapes.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of steel deck, signed by product manufacturer.
- D. Welding certificates.
- E. Field quality-control test and inspection reports.
- F. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that each of the following complies with requirements:
 - 1. Power-actuated mechanical fasteners.
- G. Research/Evaluation Reports: For steel deck.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
- B. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
- C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide steel deck units identical to those tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
 - 2. Steel deck units shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

- D. AISI Specifications: Comply with calculated structural characteristics of steel deck according to AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."
- E. FMG Listing: Provide steel roof deck evaluated by FMG and listed in its "Approval Guide, Building Materials" for Class 1 fire rating and Class 1-90 windstorm ratings.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
- B. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.
 - 1. Protect and ventilate acoustical cellular roof deck with factory-installed insulation to maintain insulation free of moisture.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ROOF DECK

- A. Steel Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck," in SDI Publication No. 30, and with the following:
 - 1. For Interior Conditions: Prime-Painted Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 50ksi minimum, shop primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
 - a. Color: Manufacturer's standard
 - 2. For Exterior Conditions: Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 50ksi, G60 zinc coating.
 - 3. Deck Profile: As indicated.
 - 4. Profile Depth: As indicated.
 - 5. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated.
 - 6. Span Condition: Triple span or more.
 - 7. Side Laps: Overlapped or interlocking seam at Contractor's option.

2.2 NON-COMPOSITE FORM DECK

- A. Non-Composite Form Deck: Fabricate ribbed-steel sheet noncomposite form-deck panels to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Noncomposite Steel Form Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, with the minimum section properties indicated, and with the following:
 - 1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 50ksi, G60 (Z180) zinc coating.
 - 2. Profile depth: As indicated
 - 3. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: .As indicated.
 - 4. Span Condition: Triple span or more.

2.3 COMPOSITE DECK

- A. Composite Deck: Fabricate panels, with integrally embossed or raised pattern ribs and interlocking side laps, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Composite Steel Floor Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, with the minimum section properties indicated, and with the following:
 - 1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 50ksi, G60 zinc coating.
 - 2. Profile Depth: As indicated.

3. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: 0.0474 inch for 18 gauge.
4. Span Condition: Triple span or more, where possible.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.
- B. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, power-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon-steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.
- C. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel screws, No. 10 minimum diameter.
- D. Flexible Closure Strips: Vulcanized, closed-cell, synthetic rubber.
- E. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi, not less than 0.0359-inch design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.
- F. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi, of same material and finish as deck, and of thickness and profile recommended by SDI Publication No. 30 for overhang and slab depth.
- G. Column Closures, End Closures, Z-Closures, and Cover Plates: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Piercing Hanger Tabs: Piercing steel sheet hanger attachment devices for use with floor deck.
- I. Weld Washers: Uncoated steel sheet, shaped to fit deck rib, 0.0598 thick, with factory-punched hole of 3/8-inch minimum diameter.
- J. Recessed Sump Pans: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch thick, of same material and finish as deck, with 3-inch wide flanges and level recessed pans of 1-1/2-inch minimum depth. For drains, cut holes in the field.
- K. Repair Paint: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer of same color as primer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting frame and field conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary in SDI Publication No. 30, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
- B. Install temporary shoring before placing deck panels, if required to meet deflection limitations.
- C. Locate deck bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.
- D. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side-lap interlocks.
- E. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.

- F. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.
- G. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.
- H. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.
- I. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to deck manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 ROOF DECK INSTALLATION

- A. Supports: Fasten to supports with mechanical fasteners as indicated.
- B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps as indicated. Fasten perimeter edges of panels as indicated:
- C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches, with end joints as follows:
 - 1. End Joints: Lapped 2 inches minimum or butted at Contractor's option].
- D. Roof Sump Pans and Sump Plates: Install over openings provided in roof deck and mechanically fasten flanges to top of deck. Space mechanical fasteners not more than 12 inches apart with at least one fastener at each corner.
- E. Miscellaneous Roof-Deck Accessories: Install ridge and valley plates, finish strips, end closures, and reinforcing channels according to deck manufacturer's written instructions. mechanically fasten to substrate to provide a complete deck installation.
- F. Flexible Closure Strips: Install flexible closure strips over partitions, walls, and where indicated. Install with adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure complete closure.

3.4 NON-COMPOSITE FLOOR DECK INSTALLATION

- A. Fasten floor-deck panels to steel supporting members by mechanically fastening as indicated and as follows:
 - 1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws @ 6" o.c.
- B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of half of the span or 36 inches, and as follows:
 - 1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
 - 2. Mechanically clinch or button punch.
 - 3. Fasten with a minimum of 1-1/2-inch-long welds.
- C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches, with end joints as follows:
 - 1. End Joints: Lapped or butted at Contractor's option.
- D. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Weld steel sheet pour stops and girder fillers to supporting structure according to SDI recommendations, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Floor-Deck Closures: Weld steel sheet column closures, cell closures, and Z-closures to deck, according to SDI recommendations, to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends of ribs and sides of deck.

3.5 COMPOSITE DECK INSTALLATION

- A. Fasten floor-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated and as follows:
 - 1. Weld Diameter: 5/8 inch, nominal.
 - 2. Weld Spacing: Weld edge ribs of panels at each support. Space additional welds an average of 12 inches apart, but not more than 18 inches apart.
 - 3. Weld Spacing: Space and locate welds as indicated.
 - 4. Weld Washers: Install weld washers at each weld location.
- B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of half of the span or 36 inches, and as follows:
 - 1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
 - 2. Mechanically clinch or button punch.
 - 3. Fasten with a minimum of 1-1/2-inch-long welds.
- C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches, with end joints as follows:
 - 1. End Joints: Lapped.
- D. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Weld steel sheet pour stops and girder fillers to supporting structure according to SDI recommendations unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Floor-Deck Closures: Weld steel sheet column closures, cell closures, and Z-closures to deck, according to SDI recommendations, to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends of ribs and sides of deck.
- F. Install piercing hanger tabs at 14 inches apart in both directions, within 9 inches of walls at ends, and not more than 12 inches from walls at sides unless otherwise indicated.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Field welds will be subject to inspection.
- C. Testing agency will report inspection results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.
- D. Remove and replace work that does not comply with specified requirements.
- E. Additional inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected work with specified requirements.

3.7 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Repair Painting: Wire brush and clean rust spots, welds, and abraded areas on both surfaces of prime-painted deck immediately after installation, and apply repair paint.
 - 1. Apply repair paint, of same color as adjacent shop-primed deck, to bottom surfaces of deck exposed to view.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions to ensure that steel deck is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 053100

SECTION 054000 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY**A. Section Includes:**

1. Interior load-bearing wall and joist framing.
2. Exterior non-load-bearing wall framing.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for miscellaneous steel shapes, masonry shelf angles, and connections used with cold-formed metal framing.
2. Section 092216 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for standard, interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud framing, with height limitations and ceiling-suspension assemblies.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**A. Product Data:** For each type of product.**B. Shop Drawings:**

1. Include layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed steel framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners.
2. Indicate reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For exterior non-load-bearing cold-formed steel framing for walls and suspended soffits. Calculations to be prepared by a Professional Engineer licensed in the State of Alabama.**1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS****A. Qualification Data:** For testing agency.**B. Product Certificates:** For each type of code-compliance certification for studs and tracks.**C. Product Test Reports:** For each listed product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1. Steel sheet.
2. Expansion anchors.
3. Power-actuated anchors.
4. Mechanical fasteners.
5. Vertical deflection clips.
6. Horizontal drift deflection clips

PART 2 - Miscellaneous structural clips and accessories.**2.1 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

- B. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency indicating steel sheet complies with requirements, including base-metal thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, and metallic-coating thickness.
- C. Code-Compliance Certification of Studs and Tracks: Provide documentation that framing members are certified according to the product-certification program of the Certified Steel Stud Association, the Steel Framing Industry Association, or the Steel Stud Manufacturers Association.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design cold-formed steel framing.
 - 1. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed steel framing capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.
 - 2. Design Loads: 5 psf for interior walls, 115 mph exposure C wind loads on exterior walls.
 - 3. Deflection Limits: Design framing systems to withstand design loads without deflections greater than the following:
 - 4. Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/360 of the wall height.
 - 5. Interior Non-Load-Bearing Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 of the wall height under a horizontal load of 5 lbf/sq. ft. (239 Pa).
- B. Design framing systems to provide for movement of framing members located outside the insulated building envelope without damage or overstressing, sheathing failure, connection failure, undue strain on fasteners and anchors, or other detrimental effects when subject to a maximum ambient temperature change of 120 deg F (67 deg C).
- C. Design framing system to maintain clearances at openings, to allow for construction tolerances, and to accommodate live load deflection of primary building structure as follows:
 - 1. Upward and downward movement of 1 inch (25 mm).
- D. Design exterior non-load-bearing wall framing to accommodate horizontal deflection without regard for contribution of sheathing materials.

PART 3 - PRODUCTS

- A. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

3.2 COLD-FORMED STEEL FRAMING MATERIALS

- A. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating designation as follows:
 - 1. Grade: as required by Delegated Design.
 - 2. Coating: G60 (Z180).
- B. Steel Sheet for Clips: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade and coating as follows:
 - 1. Grade: 33 (230).
 - 2. Coating: G60 (Z180).

3.3 INTERIOR LOAD-BEARING WALL AND JOIST FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: as indicated in drawings.
 - 2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches (41 mm).
 - 3. Section Properties: as indicated in drawings.
- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, and as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: as indicated in drawings.
 - 2. Flange Width: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).

3.4 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: as required by Delegated Design.
 - 2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches (41 mm).
 - 3. Section Properties: as required by Delegated Design.
- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, and as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: as required by Delegated Design.
 - 2. Flange Width: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
- C. Vertical Deflection Clips: as required by Delegated Design.

3.5 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS

- A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36/A 36M, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
- B. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener systems with working capacity greater than or equal to the design load, according to an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- C. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping, steel drill screws.
 - 1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing; manufacturer's standard elsewhere.

3.6 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate cold-formed steel framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to referenced AISI's specifications and standards, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
 - 1. Fabricate framing assemblies using jigs or templates.
 - 2. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
 - 3. Fasten cold-formed steel framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, pneumatic pin fastening, or riveting as standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
 - a. Comply with AWS D1.3/D1.3M requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.

- b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, with screws penetrating joined members by no fewer than three exposed screw threads.
- 4. Fasten other materials to cold-formed steel framing by welding, bolting, pneumatic pin fastening, or screw fastening, according to Shop Drawings.
- B. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies by means that prevent damage or permanent distortion.
- C. Tolerances: Fabricate assemblies level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960) and as follows:
 - 1. Spacing: Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.
 - 2. Squareness: Fabricate each cold-formed steel framing assembly to a maximum out-of-square tolerance of 1/8 inch (3 mm).

PART 4 - EXECUTION

4.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, conditions, and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

4.2 PREPARATION

- A. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach continuous angles, supplementary framing, or tracks to structural members indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
- B. After applying sprayed fire-resistive materials, remove only as much of these materials as needed to complete installation of cold-formed framing without reducing thickness of fire-resistive materials below that required to obtain fire-resistance ratings indicated. Protect remaining fire-resistive materials from damage.
- C. Install load-bearing shims or grout between the underside of load-bearing wall bottom track and the top of foundation wall or slab at locations with a gap larger than 1/4 inch (6 mm) to ensure a uniform bearing surface on supporting concrete or masonry construction.
- D. Install sealer gaskets at the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and at the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations.

4.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cold-formed steel framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.
- B. Install cold-formed steel framing according to AISI S200, AISI S202, and manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Install shop- or field-fabricated, cold-formed framing and securely anchor to supporting structure.
 - 1. Screw, bolt, or weld wall panels at horizontal and vertical junctures to produce flush, even, true-to-line joints with maximum variation in plane and true position between fabricated panels not exceeding 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
- D. Install cold-formed steel framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.

1. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
2. Fasten cold-formed steel framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
 - a. Comply with AWS D1.3/D1.3M requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - b. Locate mechanical fasteners, install according to Shop Drawings, and comply with requirements for spacing, edge distances, and screw penetration.
- E. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.
- F. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads equal to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.
- G. Do not bridge building expansion joints with cold-formed steel framing. Independently frame both sides of joints.
- H. Install insulation, specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation," in framing-assembly members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.
- I. Fasten hole-reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's approved or standard punched openings.

4.4 LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION

- A. Install continuous top and bottom tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor at corners and ends, and at spacings as follows:
 1. Anchor Spacing: as indicated.
- B. Squarely seat studs against top and bottom tracks, with gap not exceeding 1/8 inch (3 mm) between the end of wall-framing member and the web of track. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom tracks. Space studs as follows:
 1. Stud Spacing: as indicated.
- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar configurations.
- D. Align studs vertically where floor framing interrupts wall-framing continuity. Where studs cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.
- E. Align floor and roof framing over studs according to AISI S200, Section C1. Where framing cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.
- F. Anchor studs abutting structural columns or walls, including masonry walls, to supporting structure.
- G. Install headers over wall openings wider than stud spacing. Locate headers above openings. Fabricate headers of compound shapes indicated or required to transfer load to supporting studs, complete with clip-angle connectors, web stiffeners, or gusset plates.
 1. Frame wall openings with not less than a double stud at each jamb of frame. Fasten jamb members together to uniformly distribute loads.
 2. Install tracks and jack studs above and below wall openings. Anchor tracks to jamb studs with clip angles or by welding, and space jack studs same as full-height wall studs.

- H. Install supplementary framing, blocking, and bracing in stud framing indicated to support fixtures, equipment, services, casework, heavy trim, furnishings, and similar work requiring attachment to framing.
 - 1. If type of supplementary support is not indicated, comply with stud manufacturer's written recommendations and industry standards in each case, considering weight or load resulting from item supported.
- I. Install horizontal bridging in stud system, spaced vertically 48 inches (1220 mm). Fasten at each stud intersection.
 - 1. Channel Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs with a minimum of two screws into each flange of the clip angle for framing members up to 6 inches (150 mm) deep.
 - 2. Bar Bridging: Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- J. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including supplementary framing, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

4.5 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION

- A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure.
- B. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom track unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:
 - 1. Stud Spacing: as required by Delegated Design.
- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.
- D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.
 - 1. Connect vertical deflection clips to bypassing studs and anchor to building structure.
- E. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced vertically in rows indicated but not more than 48 inches (1220 mm) apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.
 - 1. Channel Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs.
 - 2. Bar Bridging: Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

4.6 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Install cold-formed steel framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960) and as follows:
 - 1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

4.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.
- C. Cold-formed steel framing will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

4.8 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed steel framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780/A 780M and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that cold-formed steel framing is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 054000

BFSECTION 055000 - METAL FABRICATIONS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY**A. Section Includes:**

1. Steel framing and supports for countertops.
2. Steel tube reinforcement for low partitions (pony walls).
3. Steel framing and supports for mechanical, electrical, audio-visual, theatrical lighting and theatrical equipment.
4. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
5. Elevator pit sump covers.
6. Shelf angles.
7. Metal ladders.
8. Loose bearing and leveling plates for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.

B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the following:

1. Loose steel lintels.
2. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.
3. Steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.

C. Related Requirements:

1. Section 033110 "Concrete" for installing anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, wedge-type inserts, and other items cast into concrete.
2. Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing".
3. Section 142100 "Machine Room-Less Traction Elevators" for regulations governing the installation of pit ladders, hoist beams and other miscellaneous metal fabrications required for the elevator installation.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of metal fabrications that are anchored to or that receive other work. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Slotted channel framing.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items. Provide Shop Drawings for the following:

1. Steel framing and supports for countertops.
2. Steel tube reinforcement for low partitions.
3. Steel framing and supports for mechanical, electrical, audio-visual, theatrical lighting and theatrical equipment.
4. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
5. Shelf angles.
6. Metal ladders.
7. Elevator pit sump covers.
8. Metal bollards.
9. Loose steel lintels.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For professional engineer's experience with providing delegated-design engineering services of the kind indicated, including documentation that engineer is licensed in the jurisdiction in which Project is located.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- C. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500/A 500M, cold-formed steel tubing.
- D. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Standard Weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 FASTENERS

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
- B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.

- C. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 325, Type 3; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563, Grade C3; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- D. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
 - 1. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.
- E. Anchors, General: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488/E 488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- F. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded type or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable iron or ASTM A 27/A 27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot-dip galvanized per ASTM F 2329.
- G. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors.
 - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593, and nuts, ASTM F 594.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
 - 1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
- B. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Primer formulated for exterior use over zinc-coated metal and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.
- C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.
- E. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- F. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Section 03300 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.

2.4 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.

- D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing.
- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- G. Fabricate seams and other connections that are exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
- J. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, 1/8 by 1-1/2 inches, with a minimum 6-inch embedment and 2-inch hook, not less than 8 inches from ends and corners of units and 24 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.
- B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
 - 1. Fabricate units from slotted channel framing where indicated.
 - 2. Furnish inserts for units installed after concrete is placed.
- C. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.
- D. Prime miscellaneous framing and supports with zinc-rich primer where indicated.

2.6 STEEL FRAMING AND SUPPORTS FOR MECHANICAL, ELECTRICAL, AUDIO-VISUAL, THEATRICAL LIGHTING AND THEATRICAL EQUIPMENT.

- A. General: Where noted or required for the support of equipment noted, provide steel framing secured to or suspended from roof, floor and wall framing as required to support imposed uniform and concentrated loads.
- B. Slotted Channel Framing: Cold-formed metal box channels (struts) complying with MFMA-4. All channel members shall be fabricated from structural grade steel conforming to ASTM specification A 1011 SS Grade 33.
 - 1. All fittings shall be fabricated from steel that meets/exceeds the physical requirements of ASTM A1011 SS Grade 33
 - 2. Size of Channels: 1-5/8 by 1-5/8 inches.
 - 3. Material: Galvanized steel, ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural steel, Grade 33, with G90 coating; 0.108-inch nominal thickness.

4. Basis of Design: As the basis of design for pierced channel framing and related accessories, provide products by the following or approved equal:
 - a. Unistrut Service Company; Unistrut P1000HS.

C. Threaded Rods: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 heavy-hex carbon steel.
2. Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
3. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C.

2.7 PARTIAL HEIGHT (PONY WALL) BRACES

- A. At partial height walls (cantilevered walls) provide prefabricated steel supports equal to ClarkDietrich "Pony Wall Heavy" (PW series in heights required for partial height walls detailed), 12 gauge structural grade hot rolled steel welded to 1/2" thick base plate and secured to slabs with four 1/2" dia. Hilti Kwik Bolt-3 anchors, as required to support out-of-plane loading of cantilevered partial wall systems that are unsupported at the top track.

2.8 SHELF ANGLES

- A. Fabricate shelf angles from steel angles of sizes indicated and for attachment to concrete framing. Provide horizontally slotted holes to receive 3/4-inch bolts, spaced not more than 6 inches from ends and 24 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
1. Provide mitered and welded units at corners.
 2. Provide open joints in shelf angles at expansion and control joints. Make open joint approximately 2 inches larger than expansion or control joint.
- B. For cavity walls, provide vertical channel brackets to support angles from backup masonry and concrete.
- C. Galvanize and prime shelf angles located in exterior walls.
- D. Furnish wedge-type concrete inserts, complete with fasteners, to attach shelf angles to cast-in-place concrete.

2.9 METAL LADDERS

A. General:

1. Comply with ANSI A14.30.

B. Steel Ladders:

1. Space siderails 18 inches apart minimum, unless a wider space is otherwise indicated.
2. Siderails: Continuous, 1/2-by-2-1/2-inch steel flat bars, with eased edges.
3. Rungs: 3/4-inch- diameter steel bars.
4. Fit rungs in centerline of siderails; plug-weld and grind smooth on outer rail faces.
5. Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung, either by coating rung with aluminum-oxide granules set in epoxy-resin adhesive or by using a type of manufactured rung filled with aluminum-oxide grout.
6. Support each ladder at top and bottom and not more than 60 inches o.c. with welded or bolted steel brackets.
7. Galvanize and prime exterior ladders, including brackets.
8. Prime interior ladders, including brackets and fasteners, with zinc-rich primer.

2.10 ELEVATOR PIT SUMP COVERS

- A. Fabricate from welded or pressure-locked steel bar grating. Limit openings in gratings to no more than 3/4 inch in least dimension.
- B. Provide equal leg steel angle supports with anchor studs designed for concrete embedment.
 - 1. Hot dip galvanize angle frame and steel bar grating after fabrication.

2.11 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL TRIM

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.
- B. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation with other work.
 - 1. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete or masonry construction.
- C. Prime miscellaneous steel trim with zinc-rich primer.

2.12 LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

- A. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.
- B. Prime plates with zinc-rich primer.

2.13 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS

- A. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Fabricate in single lengths for each opening unless otherwise indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.
- B. Size loose lintels to provide bearing length at each side of openings equal to 1/12 of clear span, but not less than 8 inches unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Prime loose steel lintels located in exterior walls with zinc-rich primer.

2.14 STEEL WELD PLATES AND ANGLES

- A. Provide steel weld plates and angles not specified in other Sections, for items supported from concrete construction as needed to complete the Work. Provide each unit with no fewer than two integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete.

2.15 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.
- B. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.

2.16 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.

1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
- B. Preparation for Shop Priming Galvanized Items: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean railings of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with metallic phosphate process.
- C. Shop prime iron and steel items unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Shop prime with universal shop primer unless zinc-rich primer is indicated.
- D. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with requirements indicated below:
 1. Exterior Items: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
 2. Items Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
 3. Other Items: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- E. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
 1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.
- E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

3.2 INSTALLING MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.

- B. Anchor supports for overhead doors and overhead grilles securely to, and rigidly brace from, building structure.
- C. Set slotted channel framing components into final position true to line, level and plumb, in accordance with approved drawings.
 - 1. Anchor material firmly in place, and tighten all connections to manufacturer's recommended torques.
- D. Set partial height (pony) wall supports at locations shown on the drawings and as required to brace top-track unsupported walls. Anchor wall studs to supports as required to transfer deflection loading to the tubes.
 - 1. Place stud track of pony walls to floor slabs prior to setting pony wall supports. Place base plate of support within track and anchor to slab through the stud track.
 - 2. At concealed countertop bracket supports as specified in Division 12 countertop specifications, weld or otherwise fasten bracket angles to side of partial height wall supports.
- E. Place angle frames with studs set in concrete around perimeter of elevator sump as required to support steel bar grating.
 - 1. Cut holes in bar grating only as large as the discharge pipe from the sump pump and for electrical conduit to the pump. Coordinate with plumbing and electrical drawings and specs for exact diameter of grate penetrations.

3.3 INSTALLING BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

- A. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of plates.
- B. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with nonshrink grout. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.
- B. Touchup Painting: Clean and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

END OF SECTION 055000

SECTION 055113 - METAL PAN STAIRS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Preassembled steel stairs with concrete-filled treads.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete fill for stair treads and platforms.
 - 2. Section 051200 "Structural Steel" for structural steel framing indicated for stair support.
 - 3. Section 055213 "Pipe and Tube Railings" for pipe and tube railings.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorages for metal stairs. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- C. Coordinate locations of hanger rods and struts with other work so that they do not encroach on required stair width and are within the fire-resistance-rated stair enclosure.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For stairs and railings, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
 - 2. AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification.
 - 1. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers.
 - 2. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.

3. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures.
 - a. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design stairs and railings.
- B. Structural Performance of Stairs: Metal stairs shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
 1. Uniform Load: 100 lbf/sq. ft..
 2. Concentrated Load: 300 lbf applied on an area of 4 sq. in..
 3. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
 4. Stair Framing: Capable of withstanding stresses resulting from railing loads in addition to loads specified above.
 5. Limit deflection of treads, platforms, and framing members to $L/360$ or 1/4 inch, whichever is less.

2.2 METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For components exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- C. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500 (cold formed) or ASTM A 513.
- D. Uncoated, Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, either commercial steel, Type B, or structural steel, Grade 25, unless another grade is required by design loads; exposed.
- E. Uncoated, Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, either commercial steel, Type B, or structural steel, Grade 30, unless another grade is required by design loads.
- F. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating, either commercial steel, Type B, or structural steel, Grade 33, unless another grade is required by design loads.

2.3 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 12 for exterior use, and Class Fe/Zn 5 where built into exterior walls.
 1. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
- B. Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488/E 488M,

conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 stainless steel bolts, ASTM F593, and nuts, ASTM F594.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
 1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
- B. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Primer formulated for exterior use over zinc-coated metal and compatible with finish system indicated.
- C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.
- E. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout; recommended by manufacturer for interior or exterior use; noncorrosive and nonstaining; mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.
- F. Concrete Materials and Properties: Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, ready-mix concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185/A 185M, 6 by 6 inches, W1.4 by W1.4, unless otherwise indicated.
 1. For galvanized reinforcement, use galvanized wire or dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.

2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Provide complete stair assemblies, including metal framing, hangers, struts, railings, clips, brackets, bearing plates, and other components necessary to support and anchor stairs and platforms on supporting structure.
 1. Join components by welding unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- B. Preassembled Stairs: Assemble stairs in shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- D. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- E. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- F. Weld connections to comply with the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Finish welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards":
 - a. Type 2 Welds: Completely sanded joint, some undercutting and minor pinholes as shown in NAAMM AMP 521.

- G. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) screws or bolts unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.

2.6 FABRICATION OF STEEL-FRAMED STAIRS

- A. NAAMM Stair Standard: Comply with "Recommended Voluntary Minimum Standards for Fixed Metal Stairs" in NAAMM AMP 510, "Metal Stairs Manual,"

1. Commercial Class, unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

- B. Stair Framing:

1. Fabricate stringers of steel channels.
 - a. Stringer Size: As indicated on Drawings.
 - b. Provide closures for exposed ends of rectangular tube stringers.
 - c. Finish:
 - 1) Interior: Shop primed.
 - 2) Exterior: Galvanized.
2. Platforms: Construct of steel channel headers and miscellaneous framing members as required to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article indicated on Drawings.
 - a. Provide closures for exposed ends of channel and rectangular tube framing.
 - b. Finish:
 - 1) Interior: Shop primed.
 - 2) Exterior: Galvanized.
3. Weld stringers to headers; weld framing members to stringers and headers.
4. Where stairs are enclosed by gypsum board assemblies, provide hanger rods or struts to support landings from floor construction above or below.
 - a. Locate hanger rods and struts where they do not encroach on required stair width and are within the fire-resistance-rated stair enclosure.

- C. Metal Pan Stairs: Form risers, subtread pans, and subplatforms to configurations shown from steel sheet of thickness needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than 0.067 inch.

1. Steel Sheet: Uncoated hot-rolled steel sheet unless otherwise indicated.
2. Galvanized Steel Sheet: Galvanized steel sheet at exterior locations.
3. Attach risers and subtreads to stringers with brackets made of steel angles or bars. Weld brackets to stringers and attach metal pans to brackets by welding, riveting, or bolting.
4. Shape metal pans to include nosing integral with riser.
5. Provide subplatforms of configuration indicated or, if not indicated, the same as subtreads. Weld subplatforms to platform framing.

2.7 FINISHES

- A. Finish metal stairs after assembly.

- B. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A153/A153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A123/A123M for other steel and iron products.
 - 1. Do not quench or apply post-galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
- C. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated, ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- D. Apply shop primer to uncoated surfaces of metal stair components, except those with galvanized finishes and those to be embedded in concrete or masonry unless otherwise indicated. Comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify elevations of floors, bearing surfaces and locations of bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLING METAL PAN STAIRS

- A. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing metal stairs to in-place construction. Include threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, through-bolts, lag bolts, and other connectors.
- B. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal stairs. Set units accurately in location, alignment, and elevation, measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
- C. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- D. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- E. Field Welding: Comply with requirements for welding in "Fabrication, General" Article.
- F. Place and finish concrete fill for treads and platforms to comply with Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.

SECTION 055113

SECTION 055213 - PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Steel pipe and tube railings.
 - 2. Wood Cap Rail.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications"
 - 2. Section 055113 "Metal Pan Stairs".

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorages for railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- C. Schedule installation so wall attachments are made only to completed walls. Do not support railings temporarily by any means that do not satisfy structural performance requirements.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Manufacturer's product lines of mechanically connected railings.
 - 2. Railing brackets.
 - 3. Grout, anchoring cement, and paint products.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required.
 - 1. Sections of each distinctly different linear railing member, including handrails, top rails, posts, and balusters.
 - 2. Fittings and brackets.
 - 3. Welded connections.
 - 4. Brazed connections.
 - 5. Assembled Sample of railing system, made from full-size components, including top rail, post, handrail, and infill. Sample need not be full height.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For railings, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
3. AWS D1.6/D1.6M, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- ### A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- ### A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- ### A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design railings, including attachment to building construction.
- ### B. Structural Performance: Railings, including attachment to building construction, shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated in accordance with ASCE 7:

1. Handrails and Top Rail of Guards:

- a. Linear (uniform) load of 50 pounds per linear foot (plf).
- b. Concentrated load of 200 pounds.
- c. Linear and concentrated loads applied at any angle to the rail.
- d. Linear loads are permitted to be applied independent of other loads.
- e. Concentrated loading is a separate load case and is not to be applied with any other design load.

2. Intermediate Rails (all those except the handrail), balusters and panel fillers:

- a. Concentrated load of 50 pounds applied horizontally at a 90 degree angle with the guard members within a 1 square foot area.
- b. This is a localized design load for the guard members and is not to be applied with any other loads.

2.2 METALS, GENERAL

- ### A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.
- ### B. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of same type of material and finish as supported rails unless otherwise indicated.

1. Provide type of bracket with predrilled hole for exposed bolt anchorage and that provides 1-1/2-inch clearance from inside face of handrail to finished wall surface.

2.3 STEEL AND IRON

- ### A. Tubing: ASTM A500/A500M (cold formed) or ASTM A513/A513M, Type 5.
- ### B. Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Type F or Type S, Grade A, Standard Weight (Schedule 40), unless another grade and weight are required by structural loads.
- ### C. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.

2.4 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide the following:
 - 1. Ungalvanized-Steel Railings: Plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5 for zinc coating.
 - 2. Hot-Dip Galvanized Railing Components: Type 304 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel fasteners complying with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329/F2329M for zinc coating.
- B. Fasteners for Anchoring Railings to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction indicated and capable of withstanding design loads.
- C. Fasteners for Interconnecting Railing Components:
 - 1. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488/E 488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
 - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 stainless steel bolts, ASTM F593, and nuts, ASTM F594.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Wood Rails: Where indicated on the drawings, provide clear, straight-grained hardwood rails secured to recessed metal subrail.
 - 1. Species: As indicated on drawing details and/or finish legend.
 - 2. Finish: Transparent polyurethane.
 - 3. Staining: Match Architect's sample.
 - 4. Profile: As indicated on drawing details
- B. Handrail Brackets: Cast iron center of handrail 2-1/2 inches from wall or other mounting condition, unless noted otherwise.
- C. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
- D. Etching Cleaner for Galvanized Metal: Complying with MPI#25.
- E. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint, complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- F. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- G. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
 - 1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
- H. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Primer formulated for exterior use over zinc-coated metal and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.
- I. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.
- J. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.

- K. Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.
- B. Shop assemble railings to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- D. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
- E. Fabricate connections that are exposed to weather in a manner that excludes water.
 - 1. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
 - 2. Locate weep holes in inconspicuous locations.
- F. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- G. Connections: Fabricate railings with welded connections unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces compliant with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards":
 - 5. **Finish welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards":**
 - a. **Type 2 Welds: Completely sanded joint, some undercutting and minor pinholes as shown in NAAMM AMP 521.**
- I. Form Changes in Direction as Follows:
 - 1. By flush bends or by inserting prefabricated flush-elbow fittings.
- J. For changes in direction made by bending, use jigs to produce uniform curvature for each repetitive configuration required. Maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
- K. Close exposed ends of railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
- L. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch or less.
- M. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. At brackets and fittings fastened to plaster or gypsum board partitions, provide crush-resistant fillers or other means to transfer loads through wall finishes to structural supports and prevent bracket or fitting rotation and crushing of substrate.
- N. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry work. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings. Coordinate anchorage devices with

supporting structure.

2.7 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

A. Galvanized Railings:

1. Hot-dip galvanize exterior steel railings, including hardware, after fabrication.
2. Comply with ASTM A123/A123M for hot-dip galvanized railings.
3. Comply with ASTM A153/A153M for hot-dip galvanized hardware.
4. Do not quench or apply post-galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
5. Fill vent and drain holes that are exposed in the finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.

B. For galvanized railings, provide hot-dip galvanized fittings, brackets, fasteners, sleeves, and other ferrous components.

C. Preparing Galvanized Railings for Shop Priming: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean railings of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with etching cleaner and as follows.

1. Comply with SSPC-SP 16.

D. For nongalvanized-steel railings, provide nongalvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves.

E. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with requirements indicated below:

1. Exterior Railings: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3.
2. Railings Indicated To Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3.
3. Other Railings: SSPC-SP 3.

F. Primer Application: Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of railings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.

1. Shop prime uncoated railings with universal shop primer unless zinc-rich primer is indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- #### A.
- Examine plaster and gypsum board assemblies, where reinforced to receive anchors, to verify that locations of concealed reinforcements are clearly marked for Installer. Locate reinforcements and mark locations if not already done.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- #### A.
- Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.

- #### B.
- Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing railings. Set railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.

1. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of railing components that are coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
2. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet.
3. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed 1/4 inch in 12 feet.

- #### C.
- Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.

1. Coat, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint, concealed surfaces of aluminum that are in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals.
- D. Adjust railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints.
- E. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

3.3 RAILING CONNECTIONS

- A. Nonwelded Connections: Use mechanical or adhesive joints for permanently connecting railing components. Seal recessed holes of exposed locking screws using plastic cement filler colored to match finish of railings.
- B. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components. Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article whether welding is performed in the shop or in the field.
- C. Wood Rail Caps: Provide metal subrail drilled for countersunk fasteners. Space fasteners as required to comply with structural loading specifications. Set wood cap rail onto subrail and fasten with countersunk screws.
- D. Expansion Joints: Install expansion joints at locations indicated but not farther apart than required to accommodate thermal movement. Provide slip-joint internal sleeve extending 2 inches beyond joint on either side, fasten internal sleeve securely to one side, and locate joint within 6 inches of post.

3.4 ANCHORING POSTS

- A. Form or core-drill holes not less than 5 inches deep and 3/4 inch larger than OD of post for installing posts in concrete. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Leave anchorage joint exposed with anchoring material flush with adjacent surface.

3.5 ATTACHING RAILINGS

- A. Anchor railing ends at walls with round flanges anchored to wall construction and welded to railing ends or connected to railing ends using nonwelded connections.
- B. Attach railings to wall with wall brackets, except where end flanges are used. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
- C. Secure wall brackets and railing end flanges to building construction as follows:
 1. For steel-framed partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into fire-retardant-treated wood backing between studs. Coordinate with stud installation to locate backing members.

3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finishes of railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings

approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 055213

SECTION 058110 - ARCHITECTURAL JOINT SYSTEMS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Architectural joint systems for building interiors.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 077100 "Roof Specialties" for factory-fabricated roof expansion control.
 - 2. Section 079100 "Preformed Joint Seals" for joint seals in exterior expansion joints.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Provide the following for each joint system specified:
 - 1. Placement Drawings: Include line diagrams showing plans, elevations, sections, details, splices, blockout requirement, entire route of each joint system, and attachments to other work. Where joint systems change planes, provide isometric or clearly detailed drawing depicting how components interconnect.
 - 2. Architectural Joint System Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of the supplier. Include the following information in tabular form:
 - a. Manufacturer and model number for each joint system.
 - b. Joint system location cross-referenced to Drawings.
 - c. Nominal joint width.
 - d. Movement capability.
 - e. Classification as thermal or seismic.
 - f. Materials, colors, and finishes.
 - g. Product options.
 - h. Fire-resistance ratings.
 - 3. Samples for Verification: For each type of architectural joint system indicated.
 - a. Full width by 6 inches long, for each system required.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Aluminum: ASTM B221, Alloy 6063-T5 for extrusions; ASTM B209, Alloy 6061-T6 for sheet and plate.
 - 1. Apply manufacturer's standard protective coating on aluminum surfaces to be placed in contact with cementitious materials.
 - 2. Class II, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A31 (Mechanical Finish: non-specular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class II, clear coating 0.010 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
- B. Elastomeric Seals: Preformed elastomeric membranes or extrusions to be installed in metal frames.
- C. Compression Seals: ASTM E1612; preformed rectangular elastomeric extrusions having internal baffle system and designed to function under compression.
- D. Strip Seals: ASTM E1783; preformed elastomeric membrane or tubular extrusions having an internal baffle

system and secured in or over a joint by a metal locking rail.

- E. Cellular Foam Seals: Extruded, compressible foam designed to function under compression.
- F. Elastomeric Concrete: Modified epoxy or polyurethane extended into a prepackaged aggregate blend, specifically designed for bonding to concrete substrates.
- G. Accessories: Manufacturer's standard anchors, clips, fasteners, set screws, spacers, and other accessories compatible with material in contact, as indicated or required for complete installations.

2.2 ARCHITECTURAL JOINT SYSTEMS, GENERAL

- A. General: Provide architectural joint systems of design, basic profile, materials, and operation indicated. Provide units with capability to accommodate variations in adjacent surfaces.
 - 1. Furnish units in longest practicable lengths to minimize field splicing. Install with hairline mitered corners where joint changes direction or abuts other materials.
 - 2. Include factory-fabricated closure materials and transition pieces, tee-joints, corners, curbs, cross-connections, and other accessories as required to provide continuous joint systems.

2.3 ARCHITECTURAL JOINT SYSTEMS FOR BUILDING INTERIORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the products shown on the drawings as manufactured by Construction Specialties, Inc. as the basis-of-design assembly or equal product by one of the following:
 - 1. Balco, Inc.
 - 2. MM Systems Corporation.
 - 3. Watson Bowman Acme Corp.
- B. Joint Width: Provide products in the series specified designed to accommodate the nominal joint width indicated on drawings.
- C. Interior Joint Systems:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: As indicated on the drawings, provide assemblies designed to conceal and cover expansion joints in floors, walls, and ceilings and transitional conditions between those locations.
 - a. At drywall substrates provide assemblies with mud flanges for concealed frame attachment.
 - b. Seal Material: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 1) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.4 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces where architectural joint systems will be installed for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.
 - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to architectural joint system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Coordinate and furnish anchorages, setting drawings, and instructions for installing joint systems. Provide fasteners of metal, type, and size to suit type of construction indicated and to provide for secure attachment of joint systems.
 - 1. Coordinate depths of slab recesses required for in-slab floor assemblies.
 - 2. Adjust location of ceiling tees used to support aluminum extrusions during layout of grid to ensure alignment of expansion joints between ceiling and walls.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for storing, handling, and installing architectural joint assemblies and materials unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
 - 1. Coordinate the rough-in requirements of expansion joint assemblies to ensure the alignment of the expansion joint seals as they transition from vertical to horizontal applications between walls, ceilings and ceiling bulkheads.
- B. Metal Frames: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required to install joint systems.
 - 1. Install in true alignment and proper relationship to joints and adjoining finished surfaces measured from established lines and levels.
 - 2. Adjust for differences between actual structural gap and nominal design gap due to ambient temperature at time of installation. Notify Architect where discrepancies occur that will affect proper joint installation and performance.
 - 3. Cut and fit ends to accommodate thermal expansion and contraction of metal without buckling of frames.
 - 4. Locate in continuous contact with adjacent surfaces.
 - 5. Standard-Duty Systems: Shim to level where required. Support underside of frames continuously to prevent vertical deflection when in service.
 - 6. Locate anchors at interval recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 3 inches from each end and not more than 24 inches o.c.
- C. Seals in Metal Frames: Install elastomeric seals and membranes in frames to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install with minimum number of end joints.
 - 1. Provide in continuous lengths for straight sections.
 - 2. Seal transitions according to manufacturer's written instructions. Vulcanize or heat-weld field-spliced joints as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 3. Installation: Mechanically lock seals into frames or adhere to frames with adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Terminate exposed ends of joint assemblies with field- or factory-fabricated termination devices.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Do not remove protective covering until finish work in adjacent areas is complete. When protective covering is removed, clean exposed metal surfaces to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Protect the installation from damage by work of other Sections. Where necessary due to heavy construction traffic, remove and properly store cover plates or seals and install temporary protection over joints. Reinstall cover plates or seals prior to Substantial Completion of the Work.

END OF SECTION 058110

SECTION 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Framing with dimension lumber.
2. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
3. Wood blocking and nailers.
4. Wood furring and grounds.
5. Wood sleepers.
6. Plywood backing panels.

- B. Related Sections

1. Section 061600 "Sheathing" for plywood wall sheathing and combination subfloor-underlayment.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5664.
4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
5. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack lumber flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect lumber from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL**

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.

1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.

2. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber: 19 percent unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWP A U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with the ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with the ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with the ground.

1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or that does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
 1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
 2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
 3. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.

2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
 1. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
 2. Exterior Type: Treated materials shall comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated lumber and plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D 2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
 3. Interior Type A: Treated materials shall have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D 3201 at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
- C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.
- E. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
 1. Concealed blocking.
 2. Plywood backing panels.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
 1. Blocking.
 2. Nailers.
 3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
 4. Cants.

5. Furring.
6. Grounds.

- B. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Construction or No. 2 grade lumber of any species.
- C. For concealed boards, provide lumber with 19 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
 1. Mixed southern pine; No. 2 grade; SPIB.
 2. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
- D. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.
- E. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

2.5 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

- A. Equipment Backing Panels: DOC PS 1, Exposure 1, C-D Plugged, fire-retardant treated, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 3/4-inch nominal thickness.

2.6 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
 1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
- D. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A; with ASTM A 563 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.
- E. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to four times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
 1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- B. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to studs; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels. Install fire-retardant treated plywood backing panels with classification marking of testing agency exposed to view.
- C. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
- D. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics will not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.

E. Comply with AWPAC M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.

1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.

3.2 WOOD GROUND, SLEEPER, BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION

- A. Install where indicated and where required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes sufficiently wet that moisture content exceeds that specified, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 061000

SECTION 061600 – SHEATHING**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Roof sheathing.
 - 2. Wall and soffit sheathing not otherwise indicated on drawings as continuous insulated wall sheathing (board faced insulation and SI-structural insulation).
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for plywood backing panels.
 - 2. Section 072110 "Continuous Insulated Wall Sheathing" for board faced insulation and SI-structural insulation.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
 - 1. Wood-preservative-treated plywood.
 - 2. Fire-retardant-treated plywood.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack panels flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect sheathing from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Provide products that offer twelve months of coverage against in-place exposure damage (delamination, deterioration and decay).

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For assemblies with fire-resistance ratings, provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory."

2.2 PRESERVATIVE-TREATED PLYWOOD

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWP A U1; Use Category UC2.
 - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.

- B. Mark plywood with appropriate classification marking of an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings and plywood in contact with masonry or concrete or used with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.

2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
 - 1. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
 - 2. Interior Type A: Treated materials shall have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D 3201 at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
- C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.
- E. Application: Treat plywood indicated on Drawings, and the following:
 - 1. Wall and soffit sheathing.

2.4 ROOF SHEATHING

- A. Plywood Sheathing: Either DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, Exposure 1 sheathing.
 - 1. Span Rating: Not less than 48/24.
 - 2. Nominal Thickness: 3/4 inch.

2.5 WALL AND SOFFIT SHEATHING

- A. Plywood Sheathing: Either DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, Exterior sheathing.
 - 1. Span Rating: Not less than 24/0.
 - 2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 5/8 inch.

2.6 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements of the manufacturer of the specified sheathing and specified in this article by the authority having jurisdiction, International Building Code, International Residential Code, Wood Frame Construction manual, and National Design Specification.
 - 1. For roof sheathing, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- B. Screws for Fastening Wood Structural Panels to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C 954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. Arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.
- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. Chapter 23 in ICC's "International Building Code."

2. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's "International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings."
- D. Coordinate roof sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
- E. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.
- F. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

3.2 WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with applicable recommendations in American Wood Council, "ASD/LRFD Manual for Engineered Wood Construction," 2012 edition for types of structural-use panels and applications indicated.
- B. Fastening Methods: Fasten panels as indicated below:
 1. Roof Sheathing:
 - a. Screw to every other row of high ribs of the deck below with self-tapping screws
 - 1) Place fasteners 6" o.c. around the sheet perimeter with screws at 12" o.c. in the field of the plywood.
 - b. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at edges and ends.
 2. Wall and Soffit Sheathing:
 - a. Screw to cold-formed metal framing.
 - b. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at edges and ends.
 - c. Install fasteners 3/8 inch to 1/2 inch from panel edges.
 - d. Space fasteners in compliance with requirements of authority having jurisdiction.
 3. Parapet Sheathing:
 - a. Screw to cold-formed metal framing.
 - b. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at edges and ends.
 - c. Install fasteners 3/8 inch to 1/2 inch from panel edges.
 - d. Space fasteners in compliance with requirements of authority having jurisdiction.

END OF SECTION 061600

SECTION 064116 - PLASTIC-LAMINATE-FACED ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY**A. Section Includes:**

1. Plastic-laminate-faced architectural cabinets.
2. Wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips for installing plastic-laminate-faced architectural cabinets unless concealed within other construction before cabinet installation.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing cabinets and concealed within other construction before cabinet installation.
2. Section 123623 "Plastic-Laminate-Clad Countertops."
3. Section 123662 "Quartz Agglomerate Countertops".

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including high-pressure decorative laminate and cabinet hardware and accessories.

- B. Shop Drawings: Show location of each item, dimensioned plans and elevations, large-scale details, attachment devices, and other components.

1. Show details full size.
2. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
3. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for electrical switches and outlets and other items installed in architectural plastic-laminate cabinets.

C. Samples for Initial Selection:

1. Plastic laminates.
2. Thermoset decorative panels.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver cabinets until painting and similar operations that could damage woodwork have been completed in installation areas. If cabinets must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas

where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install cabinets until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Field Measurements: Where cabinets are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
 - 1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support cabinets by field measurements before being enclosed, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
- C. Established Dimensions: Where cabinets are indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where cabinets are to fit. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to ensure that cabinets can be supported and installed as indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-FACED ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

- A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the "Architectural Woodwork Standards" for grades of architectural plastic-laminate cabinets indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.
- B. Grade: Custom.
- C. Type of Construction: Frameless.
- D. Cabinet, Door, and Drawer Front Interface Style: Flush overlay.
- E. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, grades as indicated or if not indicated, as required by woodwork quality standard.
 - 1. Products and Manufacturers: As noted on drawings and finish schedules.
- F. Laminate Cladding for Exposed Surfaces:
 - 1. Horizontal Surfaces: Grade HGS.
 - 2. Vertical Surfaces: Grade HGS.
 - 3. Edges: Grade HGS.
 - 4. Pattern Direction: As indicated.
- G. Materials for Semiexposed Surfaces:
 - 1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: Thermoset decorative panels.
 - a. Edges of Thermoset Decorative Panel Shelves: PVC or polyester edge banding.
 - b. For semiexposed backs of panels with exposed plastic-laminate surfaces, provide surface of high-pressure decorative laminate, NEMA LD 3, Grade VGS.
 - c. In cabinets with sliding pocket doors, provide grade HGS laminate cladding on all semi-exposed surfaces, including internal partitions, sides of case concealed behind internal partition, back sides of cabinet doors, and fixed or adjustable shelving.

2. Drawer Sides and Backs: Thermoset decorative panels with PVC or polyester edge banding.
 3. Drawer Bottoms: Thermoset decorative panels.
 4. Dust Panels: 1/4-inch plywood or tempered hardboard above ALL lockable drawers unless located directly under tops.
- H. Drawer Construction: Fabricate with exposed fronts fastened to subfront with mounting screws from interior of body.
1. Join subfronts, backs, and sides with glued rabbeted joints supplemented by mechanical fasteners or glued dovetail joints.
- I. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:
1. Provide materials and products as noted on drawings and finish schedules.

2.2 WOOD MATERIALS

- A. Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of woodwork and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Composite Wood and Agrifiber Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of woodwork and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
1. Medium-Density Fiberboard: ANSI A208.2, Grade 130.
 2. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2.
 3. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1, medium-density overlay.
 4. Thermoset Decorative Panels: Particleboard or medium-density fiberboard finished with thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper and complying with requirements of NEMA LD 3, Grade VGL, for test methods 3.3, 3.4, 3.6, 3.8, and 3.10.

2.3 CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural cabinets except for items specified in Section 087100 "Finish Hardware".
- B. Frameless Concealed Hinges (European Type): BHMA A156.9, B01602, 135 degrees of opening, self-closing.
- C. Pulls: As noted on drawings.
- D. Shelf Rests: BHMA A156.9, B04013; metal.
- E. Drawer Slides: BHMA A156.9.
1. Grade 1 and Grade 2: Side mounted and extending under bottom edge of drawer; full-extension type; epoxy-coated steel with polymer rollers.
 2. Grade 1HD-100 and Grade 1HD-200: Side mounted; full-extension type; zinc-plated-steel ball-bearing slides.
 3. For drawers not more than 3 inches high and not more than 24 inches wide, provide Grade 2.
 4. For drawers more than 3 inches high but not more than 6 inches high and not more than 24 inches wide, provide Grade 1.
 5. For drawers more than 6 inches high or more than 24 inches wide, provide Grade 1HD-100.
 6. For computer keyboard shelves, provide Grade 1.
- F. Door Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07121.
- G. Drawer Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07041.
- H. Door and Drawer Silencers: BHMA A156.16, L03011.
- I. Pocket Door Slides: 30 lb capacity, full overlay design with auto-open feature (springs out door the last 1 1/4" of travel) and attached brackets for installation of internal partition used for shelving or concealing

hardware.

- J. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with BHMA A156.18 for BHMA finish number indicated.

1. See drawing finish schedule for exposed hardware finishes.

- K. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in BHMA A156.9.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.

- B. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide metal expansion sleeves or expansion bolts for post-installed anchors. Use nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts at inside face of exterior walls and at floors.

- C. Metal Countertop Brackets: Provide brackets as manufactured by the following, or approved equal:

1. A & M Hardware, Inc., 1165 Strickler Rd., Mount Joy, PA 17552; 1-888-647-0200; info@aandmhardware.com.

2. Surface Mounted, Exposed Angle Brackets: 1/8" steel brackets with return legs punched for attachment to wall and underside of counters, as indicated on drawings. Brackets fabricated with 45 degree rear notch at corner to allow for wall cleat and wire management.

a. Standard-of-Design Angle Bracket: A&M Hardware, Inc. "Standard Workstation Bracket", size as noted on drawings.

b. Color: Primed for field painting.

3. Concealed Flat-Bar Metal Countertop Brackets: Provide steel brackets with concealed vertical angle mounted to face of stud within wall construction with projecting 1/2-inch thick flat bar steel counter support.

a. Standard-of-Design Bracket: Where noted on drawings, provide concealed countertop brackets by A&M Hardware, Inc.

1) Countertops mounted to full height walls: "ECFLAT" series (2.0), with vertical angle leg (8-inch above projecting support) concealed within wall, full welded to 2-inch-wide x 1/2-inch thick, projecting support. See drawings for support length.

2) Countertops mounted to partial height walls: "CFLAT" series (2.0), with vertical angle leg concealed within wall below 2-inch-wide x 1/2-inch thick, projecting support. See drawings for support length.

3) Finish: Primed for field painting.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate cabinets to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated.

- B. Complete fabrication, including assembly and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.

- C. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition cabinets to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas.
- B. Before installing cabinets, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Grade: Install cabinets to comply with same grade as item to be installed.
- B. Assemble cabinets and complete fabrication at Project site to the extent that it was not completed in the shop.
- C. Install cabinets level, plumb, true, and straight. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches.
- D. Scribe and cut cabinets to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
- E. Anchor cabinets to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing. Use fine finishing nails for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork.
 - 1. Use filler matching finish of items being installed.
- F. Concealed Metal Countertop Brackets: Mount vertical support bracket alongside the metal stud support. Provide continuous vertical wood blocking, nested within metal stud framing to receive bracket anchors. Install drywall trim around horizontal support bar with 1/4" gap between bar and drywall edge. Caulk between bracket and wall.
- G. Cabinets: Install without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings properly and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
 - 1. Install cabinets with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
 - 2. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, and at ends not more than 16 inches o.c. as follows:
 - a. No. 10 wafer-head screws sized for not less than 1-1/2-inch penetration into wood framing, blocking, or hanging strips
 - b. No. 10 wafer-head sheet metal screws through metal backing or metal framing behind wall finish.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair damaged and defective cabinets, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects; where not possible to repair, replace woodwork. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware.
- C. Clean cabinets on exposed and semiexposed surfaces.

END OF SECTION 064116

SECTION 064600 - WOOD TRIM**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Interior standing and running trim.
 - 2. Wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips for installing woodwork items unless concealed within other construction before woodwork installation.
 - 3. Shop finishing of wood trim.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking, and shims required for installing wood trim and concealed within other construction before wood trim installation.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Show location of each item, dimensioned plans and elevations, large-scale details, attachment devices, and other components.
 - 1. Show details full size.
 - 2. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection:
 - 1. Shop-applied transparent finishes.
- C. Samples for Verification:
 - 1. Lumber for transparent finish, not less than 5 inches wide by 12 inches long, for each species and cut, finished on one side and one edge.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver wood trim until operations that could damage wood trim have been completed in installation areas. If wood trim must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations for Interior Work: Do not deliver or install interior wood trim until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to ensure that wood trim can be supported and installed as indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD TRIM, GENERAL

- A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the "Architectural Woodwork Standards" for grades of wood trim indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.

2.2 INTERIOR STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

- A. Grade: Premium.
- B. Hardwood Lumber:
 - 1. Species: White oak.
 - 2. Cut: Rift cut/rift sawn.
 - 3. Wood Moisture Content: 5 to 10 percent.
 - 4. For trim items other than base wider than available lumber, use veneered construction. Do not glue for width.

2.3 INTERIOR STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM FOR OPAQUE FINISH

- A. Grade: Custom.
- B. Wood Species: Any closed-grain hardwood.

2.4 WOOD MATERIALS

- A. Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of wood trim and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Do not use plain-sawn softwood lumber with exposed, flat surfaces more than 3 inches wide.
 - 2. Wood Moisture Content for Interior Materials: 8 to 13 percent.
- B. Composite Wood and Agrifiber Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of wood trim and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Medium-Density Fiberboard: ANSI A208.2, Grade 130, made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Interior Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.
- B. Provide self-drilling screws for metal-framing supports, as recommended by metal-framing manufacturer.
- C. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide metal expansion sleeves or expansion bolts for post-installed anchors. Use nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts at inside face of exterior walls and at floors.
- D. Adhesives: Do not use adhesives that contain urea formaldehyde.
- E. VOC Limits for Installation Adhesives and Sealants: Use products that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
 - 1. Wood Glues: 30 g/L.
 - 2. Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
 - 3. Structural Wood Member Adhesive: 140 g/L.
 - 4. Architectural Sealants: 250 g/L.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate wood trim to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated. Ease edges to radius indicated for the following:
 - 1. Edges of Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members: 1/16 inch unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Edges of Rails and Similar Members More Than 3/4 Inch Thick: 1/8 inch.
- B. Backout or groove backs of flat trim members and kerf backs of other wide, flat members except for members with ends exposed in finished work.
- C. Assemble casings in shop except where shipping limitations require field assembly.
- D. Assemble moldings in shop to maximum extent possible. Miter corners in shop and prepare for field assembly with bolted fittings designed to pull connections together.

2.7 SHOP FINISHING

- A. General: Shop finish transparent-finished wood trim at fabrication shop as specified in this Section. Refer to Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for field finishing opaque-finished wood trim.
- B. Preparation for Finishing: Comply with referenced quality standard for sanding, filling countersunk fasteners, sealing concealed surfaces, and similar preparations for finishing wood trim, as applicable to each unit of work.
 - 1. Backpriming: Apply one coat of sealer or primer, compatible with finish coats, to concealed surfaces of wood trim. Apply two coats to end-grain surfaces.
- C. Transparent Finish for Interior Trim:
 - 1. Grade: Premium.
 - 2. Finish: System - 5, conversion varnish.
 - 3. Staining: Match Architect's sample.
 - 4. Open Finish for Open-Grain Woods: Do not apply filler to open-grain woods.
 - 5. Sheen: Satin, 31-45 gloss units measured on 60-degree gloss meter per ASTM D 523.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition wood trim to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas.
- B. Before installing architectural wood trim, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing and backpriming.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Grade: Install wood trim to comply with same grade as item to be installed.
- B. Assemble wood trim and complete fabrication at Project site to the extent that it was not completed in the shop.
- C. Install wood trim level, plumb, true, and straight. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches.
- D. Scribe and cut wood trim to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
- E. Anchor wood trim to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing. Use fine finishing nails or finishing screws for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork.
 - 1. For shop-finished items, use filler matching finish of items being installed.
- F. Standing and Running Trim: Install with minimum number of joints possible, using full-length pieces (from

maximum length of lumber available) to greatest extent possible. Do not use pieces less than 60 inches long except where shorter single-length pieces are necessary. Scarf running joints and stagger in adjacent and related members.

1. Fill gaps, if any, between top of base and wall with plastic wood filler; sand smooth; and finish same as wood base if finished.
 2. Install standing and running trim with no more variation from a straight line than 1/8 inch in 96 inches.
- G. Touch up finishing work specified in this Section after installation of wood trim. Fill nail holes with matching filler where exposed.
1. Apply specified finish coats, including stains and paste fillers if any, to exposed surfaces where only sealer/prime coats are applied in shop.
- H. Refer to Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for final finishing of installed wood trim not indicated to be shop finished.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair damaged and defective wood trim, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects; where not possible to repair, replace wood trim. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean wood trim on exposed and semiexposed surfaces. Touch up shop-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

END OF SECTION 064600

SECTION 071326 - SELF-ADHERING SHEET WATERPROOFING**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Modified bituminous sheet waterproofing.
 - 2. Molded-sheet drainage panels.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review waterproofing requirements including surface preparation, substrate condition and pretreatment, minimum curing period, forecasted weather conditions, special details and sheet flashings, installation procedures, testing and inspection procedures, and protection and repairs.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details and material descriptions of waterproofing.
 - 2. Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrate.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are licensed, and/or trained and approved by waterproofing manufacturer.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Apply waterproofing within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by waterproofing manufacturer. Do not apply waterproofing to a damp or wet substrate.
 - 1. Do not apply waterproofing in snow, rain, fog, or mist.
- B. Maintain adequate ventilation during preparation and application of waterproofing materials.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard materials-only warranty in which manufacturer agrees to furnish replacement waterproofing material for waterproofing that does not comply with requirements or that fails to remain watertight within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Installer's Special Warranty: Specified form, signed by Installer, covering Work of this Section, for warranty period of five years.

1. Warranty includes removal of site improvements, excavating, removing and reinstalling drainage panels, sheet waterproofing, drainage piping and repair of existing construction to original condition.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Source Limitations for Waterproofing System: Obtain waterproofing materials, protection course, and molded-sheet drainage panels from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 MODIFIED BITUMINOUS SHEET WATERPROOFING

- A. Modified Bituminous Sheet: Minimum 60-mil nominal thickness, self-adhering sheet consisting of 56 mils of rubberized asphalt laminated on one side to a 4-mil- thick, polyethylene-film reinforcement, and with release liner on adhesive side; formulated for application with primer or surface conditioner that complies with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

- a. American Hydrotech, Inc.
- b. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
- c. Henry Company.
- d. Protecto Wrap Company.
- e. Tamko Building Products, Inc.
- f. W.R. Grace & Company.
- g. W.R. Meadows, Inc.

2. Physical Properties:

- a. Tensile Strength, Membrane: 250 psi minimum; ASTM D 412, Die C, modified.
- b. Ultimate Elongation: 300 percent minimum; ASTM D 412, Die C, modified.
- c. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Pass at minus 20 deg F; ASTM D 1970.
- d. Crack Cycling: Unaffected after 100 cycles of 1/8-inch movement; ASTM C 836.
- e. Puncture Resistance: 40 lbf minimum; ASTM E 154.
- f. Water Absorption: 0.2 percent weight-gain maximum after 48-hour immersion at 70 deg F; ASTM D 570.
- g. Water Vapor Permeance: 0.05 perms maximum; ASTM E 96/E 96M, Water Method.
- h. Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: 200 feet minimum; ASTM D 5385.

3. Sheet Strips: Self-adhering, rubberized-asphalt strips of same material and thickness as sheet waterproofing.

2.3 MOLDED-SHEET DRAINAGE PANELS

- A. Nonwoven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Composite subsurface drainage panel consisting of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core; with a nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 70 sieve laminated to one side of the core and a polymeric film bonded to the other side; and with a vertical flow rate of 9 to 15 gpm per ft..

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. American Hydrotech, Inc.
- b. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
- c. W.R. Grace & Company.

2.4 PERFORATED-WALL PIPES AND FITTINGS

A. Perforated PE Pipe and Fittings:

1. NPS 6 and Smaller: ASTM F 405 or AASHTO M 252, Type CP; corrugated, for coupled joints.
2. Couplings: Manufacturer's standard, band type.

2.5 GEOTEXTILE FILTER FABRICS

- A. Description: Fabric of PP or polyester fibers or combination of both, with flow rate range from 110 to 330 gpm/sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM D 4491.
- B. Structure Type: Nonwoven, needle-punched continuous filament.
1. Survivability: AASHTO M 288 Class 2.
 2. Styles: Flat and sock.

2.6 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Furnish auxiliary materials recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with sheet waterproofing.
1. Furnish liquid-type auxiliary materials that comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Primer: Liquid primer recommended for substrate by sheet-waterproofing material manufacturer.
- C. Surface Conditioner: Liquid, waterborne surface conditioner recommended for substrate by sheet-waterproofing material manufacturer.
- D. Liquid Membrane: Elastomeric, two-component liquid, cold fluid applied, of trowel grade or low viscosity.
- E. Substrate Patching Membrane: Low-viscosity, two-component, modified asphalt coating.
- F. Metal Termination Bars: Aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch thick, predrilled at 9-inch centers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

- A. Install sheet waterproofing, drainage panels and drainage tile wherever interior slab on grades occur below the finish grade elevations indicated on the drawings or anticipated due to field conditions. Verify that drainage tile is capable of draining by gravity to grade and contact architect where grades prevent gravity discharge.
1. Continue sheet waterproofing and drainage panels to bottom of footing unless noted otherwise. Place drainage tile at bottom of footing and cover with drainage panel before backfilling.

3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the waterproofing.
1. Verify that concrete has cured and aged for minimum time period recommended in writing by waterproofing manufacturer.
 2. Verify that substrate is visibly dry and within the moisture limits recommended in writing by manufacturer. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
- B. Verify that drainage panels installed as part of foundation wall waterproofing is properly positioned to drain into subdrainage system.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.3 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Clean, prepare, and treat substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free,

and dry substrates for waterproofing application.

- B. Mask off adjoining surfaces not receiving waterproofing to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
- C. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.
- D. Remove fins, ridges, mortar, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, holes, and other voids.
- E. Prepare, fill, prime, and treat joints and cracks in substrates. Remove dust and dirt from joints and cracks according to ASTM D 4258.
 - 1. Install sheet strips of width according to manufacturer's written instructions and center over treated construction and contraction joints and cracks exceeding a width of 1/16 inch.
- F. Bridge and cover isolation joints expansion joints and discontinuous deck-to-wall and deck-to-deck joints with overlapping sheet strips of widths according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Invert and loosely lay first sheet strip over center of joint. Firmly adhere second sheet strip to first and overlap to substrate.
- G. Corners: Prepare, prime, and treat inside and outside corners according to ASTM D 6135.
 - 1. Install membrane strips centered over vertical inside corners. Install 3/4-inch fillets of liquid membrane on horizontal inside corners and as follows:
 - a. At footing-to-wall intersections, extend liquid membrane in each direction from corner or install membrane strip centered over corner.
- H. Prepare, treat, and seal vertical and horizontal surfaces at terminations and penetrations through waterproofing and at drains and protrusions according to ASTM D 6135.

3.4 MODIFIED BITUMINOUS SHEET-WATERPROOFING APPLICATION

- A. Install modified bituminous sheets according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in ASTM D 6135.
- B. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by sheet waterproofing in same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
- C. Apply and firmly adhere sheets over area to receive waterproofing. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform 2-1/2-inch- minimum lap widths and end laps. Overlap and seal seams, and stagger end laps to ensure watertight installation.
 - 1. When ambient and substrate temperatures range between 25 and 40 deg F, install self-adhering, modified bituminous sheets produced for low-temperature application. Do not use low-temperature sheets if ambient or substrate temperature is higher than 60 deg F.
- D. Apply continuous sheets over already-installed sheet strips, bridging substrate cracks, construction, and contraction joints.
- E. Seal edges of sheet-waterproofing terminations with mastic.
- F. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in waterproofing not complying with requirements. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with sheet waterproofing extending 6 inches beyond repaired areas in all directions.
- G. Immediately install protection course with butted joints over waterproofing membrane.
 - 1. Molded-sheet drainage panels may be used in place of a separate protection course to vertical applications when approved by waterproofing manufacturer and installed immediately.

3.5 FOUNDATION DRAINAGE INSTALLATION

- A. Place impervious fill material on subgrade adjacent to bottom of footing after concrete footing forms have been removed. Place and compact impervious fill to dimensions indicated, but not less than 6 inches deep and 12 inches wide.
- B. Lay flat-style geotextile filter fabric in trench and overlap trench sides.
- C. Place supporting layer of drainage course over compacted subgrade and geotextile filter fabric, to compacted depth of not less than 4 inches.
- D. Encase pipe with sock-style geotextile filter fabric before installing pipe. Connect sock sections with adhesive or tape.
- E. Install drainage piping as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Installation" Article for foundation subdrainage.
- F. Add drainage course to width of at least 6 inches on side away from wall and to top of pipe to perform tests.
- G. After satisfactory testing, cover drainage piping to width of at least 6 inches on side away from footing and above top of pipe to within 12 inches of finish grade.
- H. Install drainage course and wrap top of drainage course with flat-style geotextile filter fabric.
- I. Place layer of flat-style geotextile filter fabric over top of drainage course, overlapping edges at least 4 inches.
- J. Install drainage panels on foundation walls as follows:
 - 1. Coordinate placement with other drainage materials.
 - 2. Lay perforated drainage pipe at base of footing. Install as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Installation" Article.
 - 3. Separate 4 inches of fabric at beginning of roll and cut away 4 inches of core. Wrap fabric around end of remaining core.
 - 4. Attach panels to wall beginning at subdrainage pipe. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels, with geotextile facing away from wall.
 - 5. Use adhesives or other methods that do not penetrate waterproofing. Lap edges and ends of geotextile to maintain continuity. Protect installed molded-sheet drainage panels during subsequent construction.
 - 6. Terminate top of drainage mat with termination bar or mastic bead to prevent backfill material from entering open edges of drainage mat.
- K. Place backfill material over compacted drainage course. Place material in loose-depth layers not exceeding 6 inches. Thoroughly compact each layer. Final backfill to finish elevations and slope away from building.

3.6 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Install piping beginning at low points of system, true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Bed piping with full bearing in filtering material. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions and other requirements indicated.
 - 1. Foundation Subdrainage: Install piping level and with a minimum cover of 24 inches unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Lay perforated pipe with perforations down.
 - 3. Excavate recesses in trench bottom for bell ends of pipe. Lay pipe with bells facing upslope and with spigot end entered fully into adjacent bell.
- B. Use increasers, reducers, and couplings made for different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings being connected. Reduction of pipe size in direction of flow is prohibited.

3.7 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join perforated PE pipe and fittings with couplings according to ASTM D 3212 with loose banded, coupled, or push-on joints.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Engage a site representative qualified by waterproofing membrane manufacturer to inspect substrate

conditions, surface preparation, membrane application, flashings, protection, and drainage components, and to furnish daily reports to Architect.

3.9 PROTECTION, REPAIR, AND CLEANING

- A. Protect waterproofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove waterproofing that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates, reapply waterproofing, and repair sheet flashings.
- C. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 071326

SECTION 072100 - BUILDING INSULATION**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Glass-fiber blanket insulation.
 - 2. Mineral-wool sound attenuation blanket insulation
 - 3. Extruded polystyrene foam-plastic board insulation.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 072110 "Continuous Insulated Wall Sheathing" for board faced insulation and SI-structural insulation.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1.5 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS FOR SLAB AND FOUNDATION INSULATION

- A. Coordination: Coordinate installation of the reinforced concrete slab with installation of vapor barrier membrane, insulation, base course, air barrier membrane, and other moisture protection work.
- B. Preinstallation: Convene a meeting of involved subcontractors a minimum of two weeks prior to commencing Work described in this Section.
 - 1. Attendance is required by representatives of related trades including Owner's Representative, Contractor, Architect, Installer, excavation subcontractor, Below Grade Waterproofing Subcontractor, mechanical subcontractor, electrical contractor, and all subcontractors who have materials penetrating the foundation slab system.
 - 2. Contractor shall notify Architect at least 14 days prior to time for meeting.
 - 3. Contractor shall record minutes of meeting and distribute to attending parties.
 - 4. The agenda shall include at a minimum:
 - a. Materials proposed for use.
 - b. Sequence of construction.
 - c. Coordination with substrate preparation, condition, and pretreatment.
 - d. Compatibility of materials.
 - e. Special details.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- B. Protect foam-plastic board insulation as follows:
 - 1. Do not expose to sunlight except to necessary extent for period of installation and concealment.

2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic board materials to Project site before installation time.
3. Quickly complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic board insulation in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MINERAL-WOOL SOUND ATTENUATION BLANKET INSULATION

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Fibrex Insulations Inc.
 2. Owens Corning.
 3. Roxul Inc.
 4. Thermafiber, Inc.; an Owens Corning company.
- B. Unfaced, Mineral-Wool Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
1. Nominal Density: 2.5 pcf minimum.
 2. Thickness: Full depth of cavity or as noted on drawings.

2.2 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET INSULATION

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. CertainTeed Corporation.
 2. Guardian Building Products, Inc.
 3. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
 4. Knauf Insulation.
 5. Owens Corning.
- B. Unfaced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
1. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.
- C. Reinforced-Foil-Faced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type III (reflective faced), Class A (faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil scrim, foil-scrim kraft, or foil-scrim polyethylene.
1. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.

2.3 EXTRUDED POLYSTYRENE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD INSULATION (XPS)

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. DuPont de Nemours Inc.(DuPont Styrofoam)
 2. Kingspan Insulation LLC
 3. Owens Corning.
- B. Extruded Polystyrene Board Insulation, Type IV: ASTM C578, Type IV, 25 psi minimum compressive strength; unfaced.

2.4 INSULATION FASTENERS

- A. Adhesively Attached, Spindle-Type Anchors: Plate welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of specified thickness securely in position indicated with self-locking washer in place.
 - 1. Plate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - 2. Spindle: Copper-coated, low-carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
- B. Adhesively Attached, Angle-Shaped, Spindle-Type Anchors: Angle welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of specified thickness securely in position indicated with self-locking washer in place.
 - 1. Angle: Formed from 0.030-inch-thick, perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet with each leg 2 inches square.
 - 2. Spindle: Copper-coated, low-carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
- C. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge for increased stiffness, sized as required to hold insulation securely in place, but not less than 1-1/2 inches square or in diameter.
 - 1. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in the following locations:
 - a. Ceiling plenums.
- D. Anchor Adhesive: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation anchors securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, fasteners, and substrates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to insulation or that interfere with insulation attachment.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications indicated.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- C. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Provide sizes to fit applications indicated and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units to produce thickness indicated unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF SLAB INSULATION

- A. On vertical slab edge and foundation surfaces, set insulation units using manufacturer's recommended adhesive in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. If not otherwise indicated, extend insulation a minimum of 24 inches below exterior grade line.
- B. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.
 - 1. If not otherwise indicated, extend insulation a minimum of 24 inches in from exterior walls.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF FOUNDATION WALL INSULATION

- A. Butt panels together for tight fit.

- B. Anchor Installation: Install board insulation on concrete substrates by adhesively attached, spindle-type insulation anchors as follows:
 - 1. Fasten insulation anchors to concrete substrates with insulation anchor adhesive in accordance with anchor manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Space anchors in accordance with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for insulation type, thickness, and application.
 - 3. Apply insulation standoffs to each spindle to create cavity width indicated on Drawings between concrete substrate and insulation.
 - 4. After adhesive has dried, install board insulation by pressing insulation into position over spindles and securing it tightly in place with insulation-retaining washers, taking care not to compress insulation.
 - 5. Where insulation will not be covered by other building materials, apply capped washers to tips of spindles.
- C. Adhesive Installation: Install with adhesive or press into tacky waterproofing or dampproofing in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION FOR FRAMED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Apply insulation units to substrates by method indicated, complying with manufacturer's written instructions. If no specific method is indicated, bond units to substrate with adhesive or use mechanical anchorage to provide permanent placement and support of units.
- B. Glass-Fiber (thermal) Insulation: Install in cavities of exterior walls formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
 - 1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
 - 2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
 - 3. Maintain 3-inch clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures not rated for or protected from contact with insulation.
 - 4. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.
 - 5. Vapor-Retarder-Faced Blankets: Tape joints and ruptures in vapor-retarder facings, and seal each continuous area of insulation to ensure airtight installation.
 - a. Exterior Walls: Set units with facing placed toward interior of construction.
- C. Mineral-Wool Sound Attenuation Blanket Insulation: Install in cavities of interior walls formed by framing members at all walls around Noise Critical Areas and where scheduled according to the following requirements:
 - 1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
 - 2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
 - 3. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches, support unfaced blankets mechanically.
 - 4. **Glass-fiber insulation shall not be used in interior walls where mineral-wool is scheduled and in interior walls constructed around Noise Critical Areas.**
- D. Miscellaneous Voids: Install insulation in miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where required to prevent gaps in insulation using the following materials:
 - 1. Loose-Fill Insulation: Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately 2.5 lb/cu. ft..

3.6 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION IN CEILINGS FOR SOUND ATTENUATION

- A. Where mineral wool or glass-fiber blankets are indicated for sound attenuation above ceilings, install blanket insulation over entire ceiling area in thicknesses indicated. Extend insulation 48 inches up either side of partitions.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION 072100

SECTION 072110 – CONTINUOUS INSULATED WALL SHEATHING**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY****A. Section Includes:**

1. Work includes.
 - a. Polyisocyanurate Foam-Plastic Board - Insulated Air and Water-Resistive Barrier System: Provide in all exterior wall assemblies with masonry veneer.
 - b. Board Faced Insulation and SI-Structural Insulation: Provide in all exterior wall assemblies with stucco and extruded aluminum wall panels.
 - c. At the contractor's option, the contractor may use board faced insulation and SI-structural insulation as sheathing behind masonry walls providing the membrane air barriers are added on the face of the fire retardant plywood and the design of the masonry ties are modified to accommodate the different composition of the sheathing assembly.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 01: Administrative, procedural, and temporary work requirements.
2. Section 042000 "Unit Masonry Assemblies" for brick veneer masonry ties.
3. Section 054000 "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for metal exterior wall furring and framing assemblies.
4. Section 061600 "Sheathing" for incidental plywood sheathing.
5. Section 072726 "Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barriers" for vapor-permeable, fluid-applied air barrier applied to fire retardant plywood face of board faced insulation and SI structural insulation.
6. Section 074293 "Extruded Aluminum Wall Panels"
7. Section 092400 "Cement Plastering" for stucco veneers.

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**A. Furnish and install an exterior installation that effectively controls thermal, air and water performance and provides continuity of the building envelope enclosure while meeting fire code compliance per NFPA 285 without exterior gypsum wall sheathing. The system shall include the following:**

1. Exterior wall insulation secured to the exterior of the metal wall framing assembly.
2. Joint, penetration and gap sealing material for sealing component joints, penetrations through the wall system and gaps between the building envelop enclosure components and wall opening frames.

B. Performance Characteristics:

1. Thermal performance: Exterior wall insulation tested per ASTM C518, shall have a stabilized R-value of 6.5 per inch of thickness with a minimum six month exposure capability to outdoor elements and 15 year thermal warranty.
2. Air barrier performance: When tested in accordance with ASTM E2357, at a test pressure of not less than 6.24 psf, air infiltration shall not exceed 0.04 cfm square foot of fixed wall area. Testing should be conducted at positive and negative sustained wind loading of 12.5 psf for one-hour duration in each direction, pressure cycling of the wall at 2000 cycles in both the positive and negative direction, ending with wind gust loading at 25 psf.
3. Water penetration: When tested in accordance with ASTM E331, no uncontrolled water penetration shall occur at a minimum differential pressure of 6.24 psf for minimum test durations of 2 hrs.
4. Mold resistance: Wall system components shall provide non-food source for fungal growth.

C. All joints, penetrations and gaps of the wall system shall be made watertight and airtight.**D. Fire Resistance:**

1. System complies with NFPA 285.
2. Fire-stopping measures, per code, should be included at the floor line in the stud cavity when the wall assembly extends beyond the edge of the floor line.

- E. Code Compliance: Exterior wall system and component materials shall comply with the following requirements:
1. Exterior Wall Insulation:
 - a. Class 1 (< 25 Flame Spread Index and < 450 Smoke Developed Index) classified at max. thickness per ASTM E84 criteria.
 - b. Fire Performance Evaluation as a component of an NFPA 285 approved wall assembly per the requirement of the International Building Code.
 2. System complies with ASTM E2357.
 3. System complies with NFPA 285.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM International) (www.astm.org):
1. C203 Test Method for Breaking Load and Flexural Properties of Block-Type Thermal Insulation.
 2. C209 Test Methods for Cellulosic Fiber Insulating Board
 3. C518 Test Method for Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus.
 4. C1289 Standard Specification for Faced Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation Board.
 5. D1621 Standard Test Method for Compressive Properties Of Rigid Cellular Plastics.
 6. D1622 Standard Test Method for Apparent Density of Rigid Cellular Plastics.
 7. D2126 Standard Test Method for Response of Rigid Cellular Plastics to Thermal and Humid Aging.
 8. E84 Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
 9. E96 Standard Test Method for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials.
 10. E331 Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference.
 11. E2357 Test Method for Determining Air Leakage of Air Barrier Assemblies.
- B. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) (www.nfpa.org):
1. NFPA 285 Standard Method of Test for the Evaluation of Flammability Characteristics of Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Wall Assemblies Containing Combustible Components Using the Intermediate-Scale, Multistory Test Apparatus.
- C. Underwriters Laboratories (UL) (www.ul.com):
1. UL 1715 Room Fire Test Standard of Interior Finish Material.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
 3. Installation methods.
- C. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of metal wall panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
1. Accessories: Include details of all integral panel components and their interface with adjacent materials.
 2. For installed products indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- D. Samples:
1. Submit 12x12 inch sample(s) of exterior wall insulation
 2. Submit 3 total sample(s) of each exterior wall insulation's fasteners/washers and veneer anchors
 3. Submit 5 inch long strip sample(s) of flashing
 4. Submit 5 inch long strip sample(s) of sealant tape

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

- A. Review field quality control procedures. Manufacturer Qualifications: All primary products specified in this section shall be supplied by a single manufacturer with a minimum ten years' experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: All products listed in this section shall be installed by a single installer with a minimum of five (5) years demonstrated experience in installing products of the same type and scope as specified.
 - 1. Only skilled, trained workmen familiar with the specified exterior wall insulation and the various other components of the wall system shall be used to perform the required work.
- C. Certificates of Compliance: Certification from an independent testing laboratory that insulation meets fire hazard classification requirements.
- D. Pre-installation Meeting: Prior to commencement of work, review and document methods and procedures related to installation, including the following:
 - 1. Participants: Authorized representatives of the Contractor,
 - 2. Owner, Architect, Applicator, Independent Inspector.
 - 3. Review metal wall framing assemblies for potential interference and conflicts and coordinate layout and support provisions for interfacing work.
 - 4. Review exterior wall insulation methods and procedures related to application including manufacturer's installation guidelines.
 - 5. Review construction schedule and confirm availability of products, applicator personnel, equipment and facilities.
 - 6. Review governing regulatory requirements, and requirements for insurance and certificates as applicable.
 - 7. Review field quality control procedures.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Follow manufacturer's recommendations for shipping, unloading, storage and handling to avoid damage to insulation materials and accessories.
- B. Store and handle products per manufacturer's written instructions until ready for installation.
- C. Store insulation bundles on pallets or other dunnage at least 4 inches above ground level. Dunnage supplied for shipment of the insulation shall not be used in storage of the materials. Bundles placed directly on the ground shall not be used on the project.
- D. Insulation materials should be kept free of dirt and other foreign matter.
- E. Protect insulation bundles from weather at the project site with additional coverage once off loaded at the site. The wrapping materials used to ship the bundles are not adequate for weather protection at the job site.
 - 1. Wet insulation shall not be installed or sealed within a exterior wall assembly. Installation of wet insulation, tape, flashing or any other components within the wall assembly shall void the manufacturer's warranty.

1.7 SEQUENCING

- A. Ensure that locating templates and other information required for installation of products of this section are furnished to affected trades in time to prevent interruption of construction progress.
- B. Ensure that products of this section are supplied to affected trades in time to prevent interruption of construction progress.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's recommended limits.

1.9 WARRANTY:

- A. Submit the following warranties:
 - 1. Exterior wall insulation: Six month exposure and 15 year thermal warranty
 - 2. Tape: Limited Warranty
 - 3. Flashing: Limited Warranty

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products as manufactured by Rmax - Sika Corporation; 13524 Welch Rd.; Dallas, TX.
 - 1. Subject to compliance with specifications, equal products by the following manufacturers will be considered per the requirements of Section 16000 "Product Requirements":
 - a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
 - b. Dow Chemical Company (The).
 - c. Hunter Panels.
- B. Accessory items listed below are produced by the basis-of-design product manufacturer. In consideration of one of the other manufacturers listed above, the specified accessory items must also be equal to those specified by the basis-of-design manufacturer.
- C. Single Source: Provide insulation and accessories from the same manufacturer.

2.2 POLYISOCYANURATE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD - INSULATED AIR AND WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER SYSTEM

- A. Insulated Air and Water-Resistive Barrier System: Complete single-source continuous insulation system including tapes and flashings. providing air and water-resistive barrier. Tested in accordance with ASTM E2357 and ICC-ES AC71 Acceptance Criteria for Foam Plastic Sheathing Panels Used As Water-Resistive Barriers and listed as an Air Barrier Association of America (ABAA) Evaluated Boardstock Air Barrier Assembly. The system incorporates polyisocyanurate foam insulation board, joint tapes, flashing tapes, liquid sealant, and flashing materials, by one manufacturer. Acceptable for inclusion in exterior wall assemblies when tested in accordance with NFPA 285 with or without exterior gypsum sheathing.
 - 1. System substitutions not be permitted, except when the system substitution includes all components and materials, that have been tested by the manufacturer as a total system. Submission of documentation substantiating testing and compliance shall be required.
 - 2. Exterior Usage in NFPA 285 Wall Assemblies:
 - a. System and all components to be installed within the system shall be acceptable for inclusion in NFPA 285 exterior wall assemblies, including those that do not include exterior gypsum sheathing.
- B. System Insulation Board Component: ECOMAXci FR Air Barrier from Rmax.
 - 1. Aluminum-Faced, Polyisocyanurate-Foam Insulating Sheathing: ASTM C1289, Type I, Class 1 or Class 2, rigid, cellular, polyisocyanurate thermal insulation, bonded to glass fiber reinforced aluminum facers on both sides. Heavy embossed 12 mil facer with aluminum reflective surface on exposed side.
 - 2. Flame Spread Index and Smoke Contribution per ASTM E84:
 - a. Flame: 25 or less.
 - b. Smoke: 450 or less.
 - 3. Water Vapor Permeability per ASTM E96 desiccant method: 0.03 perm or less.
 - 4. Air Permeability per ASTM E2178: 0.004 cfm per sq ft or less.
 - 5. Compressive Strength per ASTM D1621: 25 psi.
 - 6. R-Value per ASTM C518: R-6.5 minimum at thickness of 1 inch and R-13.1 minimum at thickness of 2 inches.

7. Required Insulation Thickness and R-value: As indicated on the Drawings.
- C. System Fastening Components:
 1. General - Fasteners for Fastening Polyisocyanurate Wall Insulation to Light Gauge Metal Wall Framing:
 - a. Steel drill screws, in type and length recommended by insulating sheathing manufacturer for thickness of insulating sheathing to be attached, with organic - polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B117. Fasteners in contact with fire- retardant-treated wood shall be of suitable material or provided with coating suitable for such use.
 - b. Provide washers or plates if recommended by insulating sheathing manufacturer. Washers shall be compatible with screw fasteners.
 2. Fasteners for Fastening Polyisocyanurate Wall Insulation to metal stud framed wall surfaces:
 - a. Self-drilling ceramic coated screw.
 - 1) Product: Rodenhouse Grip-Deck screws.
 3. Washers: Self-sealing for use with Self-drilling screws:
 - a. Self-sealing 2 inches diameter polymer washer, UV stabilized, tested, and approved to provide air and water-resistive seal, in combination with compatible self-drilling screw.
 - 1) Product: Rodenhouse Thermal-Grip ci prong washer.
 4. Washers: Self-sealing for use with barrel style brick ties:
 - a. Self-sealing 2 inches diameter UV stabilized polymer washer tested and approved to provide air and water-resistive seal, barrel-style brick ties.
 - 1) Product: Rodenhouse Thermal-Grip brick tie washer.
- D. System Joint Sealants, Joint Tapes, and Flashing Materials:
 1. General - Joint Treatment and Flashing Components:
 - a. Material Standards:
 - 1) AAMA 711: For self-adhered flashing and joint materials.
 - 2) AAMA 714: For liquid applied flashing and joint materials.
 - b. Components for use at static joints, joining adjacent aluminum-faced insulation panels include liquid flashing, adhered joint tape, and adhered flashing and transition tape.
 - c. Components for use at static joints, joining aluminum-faced insulation and adjacent elements, including window and wall openings and items penetrating the insulation include: liquid flashing and adhered flashing and transition tape.
 - d. Components for use at dynamic joints at aluminum-faced insulation of up to 3/4 inch in width, shall be restricted to the use of flashing and transition tape, or materials and devices specifically designed to allow for dynamic movement.
 - e. Components for use at dynamic joints at aluminum-faced insulation over 3/4 inch in width, shall be restricted to the use of materials and devices specifically designed for such joint widths.
 2. Liquid Flashing for Stationary Joint Treatment of Foil Faced Polyisocyanurate Insulation:
 - a. Product: Rmax R-SEAL 2000 LF sealant or comparable product.
 - 1) One-component flexible flashing and water-resistive barrier sealant.
 - 2) ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 12.5, use NT, G, A, O, M.
 - 3) Application Temperature Range: 40 to 104 degrees F.
 - 4) Service Range: -40 to 170 degrees F.
 - 5) Curing Rate:
 - a) Skin Formation Time: 60 to 90 minutes.
 - b) Cure Depth: 0.16 inch in 24 hours.

3. Joint Sealant Tape for Stationary Joint Treatment of Foil Faced Polyisocyanurate Insulation:
 - a. Product: Rmax R-SEAL 3000 tape or comparable product.
 - 1) Dead soft aluminum foil coated with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive.
 - 2) Width: 4 inches.
 - 3) Width: 5 inches or use where coverage is necessary.
4. Flashing and Transition Tape for Joints Subject to Movement and Openings at Foil Faced Polyisocyanurate Insulation, and transition to other building materials.
 - a. Product: Rmax R-SEAL 6000 tape or comparable product.
 - 1) Polyethylene membrane with butyl rubber adhesive.
 - 2) Width 9 and 12 inches.

2.3 BOARD FACED INSULATION AND SI-STRUCTURAL INSULATION

- A. Fire-Retardant-Treated Nail Base Insulating Sheathing, Consisting of Aluminum-Faced, Polyisocyanurate-Foam Insulating Sheathing bonded to Fire-Retardant-Treated Plywood: ASTM C1289, Type V with Type I, Class 1 or Class 2, rigid, cellular, polyisocyanurate thermal insulation.
 1. Basis of Design: Rmax; ECOMAXci FR Ply.
 2. Flame Spread Index and Smoke Contribution per ASTM E84:
 - a. Flame: 25 or less.
 - b. Smoke: 450 or less.
 3. Water Vapor Permeability per ASTM E96 desiccant method: 0.03 perm or less.
 4. Air Permeability per ASTM E2178: 0.004 cfm per sq ft or less.
 5. Compressive Strength per ASTM D1621:
 - a. 20 psi.
 6. R-Value of insulation component per ASTM C518: R-6.0 minimum at thickness of 1 inch and R-13.1 minimum at thickness of 2 inches.
 7. Required Insulation Thickness and R-value: As indicated on the Drawings.
 8. Exterior Usage in NFPA 285 Wall Assemblies:
 - a. Acceptable for inclusion in NFPA 285 exterior wall assemblies, including those that do not include exterior gypsum sheathing.
 9. Fire-Retardant-Treated Plywood Thickness:
 - a. Fire-Retardant-Treated Plywood, Exposure 1: 3/4 inch.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Insulation Fastener Components:
 1. General - Fasteners for Fastening Polyisocyanurate Wall Insulation to Wood Framing Components, Light Gauge Metal Wall Framing Components and Wood and Metal Roof Decks:
 - a. Steel drill screws, in type and length recommended by insulating sheathing manufacturer for thickness of insulating sheathing to be attached, with organic - polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B117. Fasteners in contact with fire- retardant-treated wood shall be of suitable material or provided with coating suitable for such use.
 - b. Provide washers or plates if recommended by insulating sheathing manufacturer. Washers shall be compatible with screw fasteners.
 2. Fasteners for Fastening Polyisocyanurate Wall Insulation to metal stud framed wall surfaces:
 - a. Self-drilling ceramic coated screw.
 - 1) Product: Rodenhouse Grip-Deck screws or comparable products.

3. Nailboard Fasteners: Engineered for attaching nail base wall and roof panels to wood and metal framing and structural decks.
 - a. Large-diameter, low profile pancake head, case hardened and tempered carbon steel, epoxy e-coat to comply with governing standards for use with treated wood including fire-retardant-treated wood.
 - 1) Product: TurFast; Nailboard Fasteners or comparable product.
 - b. Thread Style and Point:
 - 1) SIPTP: Thread-point for wood and timber applications.
 - 2) SIPLD: Light-duty. Drill point for light gauge metal framing, corrugated steel deck, and wood applications.
 - 3) SIPHD: Heavy-duty. Drill point for thick steel member applications.
4. Washers: Self-sealing for use with Self-drilling screws:
 - a. Self-sealing 2 inches diameter polymer washer, UV stabilized, tested, and approved to provide air and water-resistive seal, in combination with compatible self-drilling screw.
 - 1) Product: Rodenhouse Thermal-Grip ci prong washer or comparable product.
5. Washers: Self-sealing for use with barrel style brick ties:
 - a. Self-sealing 2 inches diameter UV stabilized polymer washer tested and approved to provide air and water-resistive seal, barrel-style brick ties.
 - 1) Product: Rodenhouse Thermal-Grip brick tie washer or comparable product.
6. Washers: Perforated washers for use with self-drilling screws:
 - a. Perforated face washers 1.75 inch diameter polymer washer, with additives for extended UV exposure for use in combination with compatible self-drilling screw.
 - 1) Product: Rodenhouse Plasti-Grip ci prong washer or comparable product.
- B. Insulation Joint and Flashing Components:
 1. General - Joint Treatment and Flashing Components:
 - a. Material Standards:
 - 1) AAMA 711: For self-adhered flashing and joint materials.
 - 2) AAMA 714: For liquid applied flashing and joint materials.
 - b. Components for use at static joints, joining adjacent aluminum-faced insulation panels include liquid flashing, adhered joint tape, and adhered flashing and transition tape.
 - c. Components for use at static joints, joining aluminum-faced insulation and adjacent elements, including window and wall openings and items penetrating the insulation include: liquid flashing and adhered flashing and transition tape.
 - d. Components for use at dynamic joints at aluminum-faced insulation of up to 3/4 inch in width, shall be restricted to the use of flashing and transition tape, or materials and devices specifically designed to allow for dynamic movement.
 - e. Components for use at dynamic joints over 3/4 inch in width, shall be restricted to the use of materials and devices specifically designed for such joint widths.
 2. Liquid Flashing for Stationary Joint Treatment of Foil Faced Polyisocyanurate Insulation:
 - a. Product: Rmax R-SEAL 2000 LF sealant or comparable product.
 - 1) One-component flexible flashing and water-resistive barrier sealant.
 - 2) ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 12.5, use NT, G, A, O, M.
 - 3) Application Temperature Range: 40 to 104 degrees F.
 - 4) Service Range: -40 to 170 degrees F.
 - 5) Curing Rate:
 - a) Skin Formation Time: 60 to 90 minutes.

- b) Cure Depth: 0.16 inch in 24 hours.
- 3. Joint Sealant Tape for Stationary Joint Treatment of Foil Faced Polyisocyanurate Insulation:
 - a. Product: Rmax R-SEAL 3000 tape or comparable product.
 - 1) Dead soft aluminum foil coated with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive.
 - 2) Width: 4 inches.
 - 3) Width: 5 inches for use where coverage is necessary.
- 4. Flashing and Transition Tape for Joints Subject to Movement and Openings at Foil Faced Polyisocyanurate Insulation, and transition to other building materials.
 - a. Product: Rmax R-SEAL 6000 tape or comparable product.
 - 1) Polyethylene membrane with butyl rubber adhesive.
 - 2) Width 9 and 12 inches.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Confirm that all building structural steel members have been erected. Exterior wall stud framing finished surfaces shall be clean and free of irregularities that will affect the placement or performance of the insulated wall system, including, but not limited to dirt, debris, miscellaneous fasteners or warped, defective or otherwise damaged framing.
- B. Confirm that the metal exterior wall steel stud framing bottom track sitting on the floor and the top track attached to the ceiling have been sealed per standard building practices to prevent air leakage at these locations.
- C. Verify that metal wall studs, opening framing, bridging, bracing and other framing support members and anchorage have been installed within thermal wall system alignment tolerances and requirements.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- B. Installation of the insulative wall system constitutes acceptance of existing conditions and responsibility for satisfactory performance.
- C. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum result. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.
- D. Do not proceed with installation during adverse weather conditions or when adverse conditions are anticipated.
- E. Do not install wall system components on walls when water of any type is present. Do not apply any wall system component that is damp or wet.
- F. If insulation boards get wet, ensure they are fully air dried before installing, sealing or covering.
- G. Verify that all surfaces to receive flashing, sealant tape and sealant are free of frost, oil, grease, oxidation, dirt, loose paint, loose scale, or other deleterious materials that would impair bond.
- H. Verify that items required to penetrate the thermal wall system are placed and penetrations gaps and cracks are properly sealed before installation is complete.
- I. At no point between working days should the work be left partially taped. All taping and flashing of a started section shall be completed and all exposed foam edges shall be sealed before the work day ends.

3.3 WALL SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install insulative wall system in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Properly installed exterior wall insulation will completely cover all exposed steel framing members without gaps, voids, or compressions, and it will also act as the exterior air and water barrier material.
1. Starting at an end wall condition, where possible, the insulation boards should be placed on the wall with the long dimension horizontal and level to the floor/slab. The insulation boards should be oriented with the manufacturer's label facing the exterior side of the building.
 2. Each row of insulation should be staggered a minimum of one stud spacing to the row below. All boards must be tightly abutted together.
 3. Each insulation board shall be secured with a fastening pattern of 12 inches o.c. along the edge of each exterior wall facade and at the perimeter of each board where backed by framing. The pattern shall be 16 inch o.c. in the field along framing.
 4. Plates/washers should never break the foil facing of the boards. Do not counter sink plates/washers.
 5. One fastener can be used to bridge a maximum of three adjacent board joints.
 6. The bottom edge of the lowest row of boards along each wall facade should be placed a minimum of 1 inch below finished floor where possible or as noted on the architectural plans. The top edge of the highest row of boards along each wall facade should be placed at the top of the parapet or stud framing.
 7. At changes in wall directions (corners) the boards should snugly fit in an overlap.
 8. 4 inch wide joint tape shall be used to seal all joints of adjacent insulation boards, as well as cover all insulation fasteners. It can also be used to repair minor damages to the foil facer of the board.
 9. Any damages to the foam core and major damages to the foil facing that occur during installation must be replaced by fully cutting out the damaged area. The removed piece should be large enough to span entire stud spacing to ensure new joints are backed by framing. A new piece of insulation board can be cut to fill the open area. This new piece shall be fastened and sealed similar to other insulation boards as outlined in this document.
 10. All surfaces to which the sealant tape and flashing are to be applied should be free of moisture, oils, dust, dirt and other debris that could inhibit adhesion. Clean surfaces with a dry cloth as necessary.
 11. Center tape along joint and fastener locations. Maintain a minimum 3/4 inch radial coverage beyond plastic washers. Do not allow the tape to form voids or buckle as it is applied.
 12. Apply tape in a shingle like fashion, working from bottom of the section up. In other words, first apply tape to the bottom horizontal joint, then both vertical joints and finally the top horizontal joint. A minimum of 2 inch overlap is required when connecting ends of tape segments.
 13. 9 inch or 12 inch wide flashing and transition strip must be used to seal at corners, ceiling and floor transitions, windows, doors and other through wall penetrations.
 14. Use standard flashing practices. Flashing should always be installed in a shingle-like fashion, starting with the bottom and working up.
 15. Flashing and transition strip shall be used at board terminations including but not limited to: building foundations, slabs, shelf protrusions, roofing membranes or blocking, to seal the end joints where butyl rubber tape is compatible.
 16. When installing the exterior veneer, care should be taken to minimize the damage to the insulation, tape, and flashing so as not to break the water and air seal provided by the insulative wall system. Any damages beyond anchor penetrations must be repaired.
 17. The insulative wall system is non-structural and must not be used to support any exterior cover materials.
 18. Exterior anchor penetrations such as brick ties must be sealed using the manufacturer's recommended sealant.
 19. For all other veneer penetrations, consult manufacturer's installation instructions for more details on how to maintain water and air barriers.

END OF SECTION 072110

SECTION 072110 – CONTINUOUS INSULATED WALL SHEATHING**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY****A. Section Includes:**

1. Work includes.
 - a. Board Faced Insulation and SI-Structural Insulation: Provide in all exterior wall assemblies where shown.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 01: Administrative, procedural, and temporary work requirements.
2. Section 042000 "Unit Masonry Assemblies" for brick veneer masonry ties.
3. Section 054000 "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for metal exterior wall furring and framing assemblies.
4. Section 061600 "Sheathing" for incidental plywood sheathing.
5. Section 072726 "Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barriers" for vapor-permeable, fluid-applied air barrier applied to fire retardant plywood face of board faced insulation and SI structural insulation.
6. Section 074293 "Extruded Aluminum Wall Panels"
7. Section 092400 "Cement Plastering" for stucco veneers.

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**A. Furnish and install an exterior installation that effectively controls thermal, air and water performance and provides continuity of the building envelope enclosure while meeting fire code compliance per NFPA 285 without exterior gypsum wall sheathing. The system shall include the following:**

1. Exterior wall insulation secured to the exterior of the metal wall framing assembly.
2. Joint, penetration and gap sealing material for sealing component joints, penetrations through the wall system and gaps between the building envelop enclosure components and wall opening frames.

B. All joints, penetrations and gaps of the wall system shall be made watertight and airtight.**C. Fire Resistance:**

1. System complies with NFPA 285.
2. Fire-stopping measures, per code, should be included at the floor line in the stud cavity when the wall assembly extends beyond the edge of the floor line.

D. Code Compliance: Exterior wall system and component materials shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Exterior Wall Insulation:
 - a. Class 1 (< 25 Flame Spread Index and < 450 Smoke Developed Index) classified at max. thickness per ASTM E84 criteria.
 - b. Fire Performance Evaluation as a component of an NFPA 285 approved wall assembly per the requirement of the International Building Code.
2. System complies with ASTM E2357.
3. System complies with NFPA 285.

1.3 REFERENCES**A. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):**

1. AAMA 711 - Voluntary Specification for Self-Adhering Flashing Used for Installation of Exterior Wall Fenestration Products.
2. AAMA 714 - Voluntary Specification for Liquid Applied Flashing Used to Create a Water-Resistive Seal around Exterior Wall Openings in Buildings.

B. ASTM International (ASTM):

1. ASTM C272 - Standard Test Method for Water Absorption of Core Materials for Sandwich Construction.
2. ASTM C1289 - Standard Specification for Faced Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation Board.
3. ASTM E72 - Standard Test Methods of Conducting Strength Tests of Panels for Building Construction.
4. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

C. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

1. NFPA 285 - Standard Fire Test Method for Evaluation of Fire Propagation Characteristics of Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Wall Assemblies Containing Combustible Components.
2. NFPA 286 - Standard Methods of Fire Tests for Evaluating Contribution of Wall and Ceiling Interior Finish to Room Fire Growth.

D. Underwriters Laboratories (UL): USA.

1. UL 263 - Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
2. UL 723 - Standard for Test for surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
3. UL 1715 - Fire Test of Interior Finish Material.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit under provisions of Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements.

B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:

1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
3. Installation methods.

C. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of metal wall panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.

1. Accessories: Include details of all integral panel components and their interface with adjacent materials.
2. For installed products indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

D. Verification Samples: For each finish product specified, two samples, minimum size 4 by 6 inches.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

A. Review field quality control procedures. Manufacturer Qualifications: All primary products specified in this section shall be supplied by a single manufacturer with a minimum ten years' experience.

B. Installer Qualifications: All products listed in this section shall be installed by a single installer with a minimum of five (5) years demonstrated experience in installing products of the same type and scope as specified.

1. Only skilled, trained workmen familiar with the specified exterior wall insulation and the various other components of the wall system shall be used to perform the required work.

C. Pre-installation Meeting: Prior to commencement of work, review and document methods and procedures related to installation, including the following:

1. Participants: Authorized representatives of the Contractor,
2. Owner, Architect, Applicator, Independent Inspector.
3. Review metal wall framing assemblies for potential interference and conflicts and coordinate layout and support provisions for interfacing work.
4. Review exterior wall insulation methods and procedures related to application including manufacturer's installation guidelines.
5. Review construction schedule and confirm availability of products, applicator personnel, equipment and facilities.

6. Review governing regulatory requirements, and requirements for insurance and certificates as applicable.

D. Mock-Up: Provide a mock-up for evaluation of surface preparation techniques and application workmanship.

1. See Section 014339 "Mockups".

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Follow manufacturer's recommendations for shipping, unloading, storage and handling to avoid damage to insulation materials and accessories.
- B. Store and handle products per manufacturer's written instructions until ready for installation.
- C. Store insulation bundles on pallets or other dunnage at least 4 inches above ground level. Dunnage supplied for shipment of the insulation shall not be used in storage of the materials. Bundles placed directly on the ground shall not be used on the project.
- D. Insulation materials should be kept free of dirt and other foreign matter.
- E. Protect insulation bundles from weather at the project site with additional coverage once off loaded at the site. The wrapping materials used to ship the bundles are not adequate for weather protection at the job site.
 1. Wet insulation shall not be installed or sealed within a exterior wall assembly. Installation of wet insulation, tape, flashing or any other components within the wall assembly shall void the manufacturer's warranty.

1.7 SEQUENCING

- A. Ensure that locating templates and other information required for installation of products of this section are furnished to affected trades in time to prevent interruption of construction progress.
- B. Ensure that products of this section are supplied to affected trades in time to prevent interruption of construction progress.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's recommended limits.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Insulation Warranty: At project closeout, provide to Owner an executed copy of the manufacturer's standard limited warranty against manufacturing defect, outlining its terms, conditions, and exclusions from coverage.
- B. Submit the following warranties:
 1. Exterior wall insulation: Six month exposure and 15 year thermal warranty
 2. Tape: Limited Warranty
 3. Flashing: Limited Warranty

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products as manufactured by Rmax - Sika Corporation; 13524 Welch Rd.; Dallas, TX.
 1. Subject to compliance with specifications, equal products by the following manufacturers will be considered per the requirements of Section 16000 "Product Requirements":
 - a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
 - b. Dow Chemical Company (The).
 - c. Hunter Panels.

- B. Accessory items listed below are produced by the basis-of-design product manufacturer. In consideration of one of the other manufacturers listed above, the specified accessory items must also be equal to those specified by the basis-of-design manufacturer.
- C. Single Source: Provide insulation and accessories from the same manufacturer.

2.2 BOARD FACED INSULATION AND SI-STRUCTURAL INSULATION

- A. Fire-Retardant-Treated Nail Base Insulating Sheathing, Consisting of Aluminum-Faced, Polyisocyanurate-Foam Insulating Sheathing bonded to Fire-Retardant-Treated Plywood: ASTM C1289, Type V with Type I, Class 1 or Class 2, rigid, cellular, polyisocyanurate thermal insulation.
 - 1. Basis of Design: Rmax; ECOMAXci FR Ply.
 - 2. Flame Spread Index and Smoke Contribution per ASTM E84:
 - a. Flame: 25 or less.
 - b. Smoke: 450 or less.
 - 3. Water Vapor Permeability per ASTM E96 desiccant method: 0.03 perm or less.
 - 4. Air Permeability per ASTM E2178: 0.004 cfm per sq ft or less.
 - 5. Compressive Strength per ASTM D1621:
 - a. 20 psi.
 - 6. R-Value of insulation component per ASTM C518: R-6.0 minimum at thickness of 1 inch and R-13.1 minimum at thickness of 2 inches.
 - 7. Required Insulation Thickness and R-value: As indicated on the Drawings.
 - 8. Exterior Usage in NFPA 285 Wall Assemblies:
 - a. Acceptable for inclusion in NFPA 285 exterior wall assemblies, including those that do not include exterior gypsum sheathing.
 - 9. Fire-Retardant-Treated Plywood Thickness:
 - a. Fire-Retardant-Treated Plywood, Exposure 1: 3/4 inch.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Insulation Fastener Components:
 - 1. General - Fasteners for Fastening Polyisocyanurate Wall Insulation to Metal Wall Framing Components:
 - a. Steel drill screws, in type and length recommended by insulating sheathing manufacturer for thickness of insulating sheathing to be attached, with organic - polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B117. Fasteners in contact with fire- retardant-treated wood shall be of suitable material or provided with coating suitable for such use.
 - b. Provide washers or plates if recommended by insulating sheathing manufacturer. Washers shall be compatible with screw fasteners.
 - 2. Nailboard Fasteners: Engineered for attaching nail base wall panels to metal framing.
 - a. Large-diameter, low profile pancake head, case hardened and tempered carbon steel, epoxy e-coat to comply with governing standards for use with treated wood including fire-retardant-treated wood.
 - 1) Product: TurFast; Nailboard Fasteners or comparable product.
 - b. Thread Style and Point:
 - 1) SIPLD: Light-duty. Drill point for light gauge metal framing, corrugated steel deck, and wood applications.
 - 2) SIPHD: Heavy-duty. Drill point for thick steel member applications.
- B. Insulation Joint and Flashing Components:

1. General - Joint Treatment and Flashing Components:
 - a. Material Standards:
 - 1) AAMA 711: For self-adhered flashing and joint materials.
 - 2) AAMA 714: For liquid applied flashing and joint materials.
 - b. Components for use at static joints, joining adjacent aluminum-faced insulation panels include liquid flashing, adhered joint tape, and adhered flashing and transition tape.
 - c. Components for use at static joints, joining aluminum-faced insulation and adjacent elements, including window and wall openings and items penetrating the insulation include: liquid flashing and adhered flashing and transition tape.
 - d. Components for use at dynamic joints at aluminum-faced insulation of up to 3/4 inch in width, shall be restricted to the use of flashing and transition tape, or materials and devices specifically designed to allow for dynamic movement.
 - e. Components for use at dynamic joints over 3/4 inch in width, shall be restricted to the use of materials and devices specifically designed for such joint widths.
2. Liquid Flashing for Stationary Joint Treatment of Foil Faced Polyisocyanurate Insulation:
 - a. Product: Rmax R-SEAL 2000 LF sealant or comparable product.
 - 1) One-component flexible flashing and water-resistive barrier sealant.
 - 2) ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 12.5, use NT, G, A, O, M.
 - 3) Application Temperature Range: 40 to 104 degrees F.
 - 4) Service Range: -40 to 170 degrees F.
 - 5) Curing Rate:
 - a) Skin Formation Time: 60 to 90 minutes.
 - b) Cure Depth: 0.16 inch in 24 hours.
3. Joint Sealant Tape for Stationary Joint Treatment of Foil Faced Polyisocyanurate Insulation:
 - a. Product: Rmax R-SEAL 3000 tape or comparable product.
 - 1) Dead soft aluminum foil coated with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive.
 - 2) Width: 4 inches.
 - 3) Width: 5 inches for use where coverage is necessary.
4. Flashing and Transition Tape for Joints Subject to Movement and Openings at Foil Faced Polyisocyanurate Insulation, and transition to other building materials.
 - a. Product: Rmax R-SEAL 6000 tape or comparable product.
 - 1) Polyethylene membrane with butyl rubber adhesive.
 - 2) Width 9 and 12 inches.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Confirm that all building structural steel members have been erected. Exterior wall stud framing finished surfaces shall be clean and free of irregularities that will affect the placement or performance of the insulated wall system, including, but not limited to dirt, debris, miscellaneous fasteners or warped, defective or otherwise damaged framing.
- B. Confirm that the metal exterior wall steel stud framing bottom track sitting on the floor and the top track attached to the ceiling have been sealed per standard building practices to prevent air leakage at these locations.
- C. Verify that metal wall studs, opening framing, bridging, bracing and other framing support members and anchorage have been installed within thermal wall system alignment tolerances and requirements.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- B. Installation of the insulative wall system constitutes acceptance of existing conditions and responsibility for satisfactory performance.
- C. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum result. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.
- D. Do not proceed with installation during adverse weather conditions or when adverse conditions are anticipated.
- E. Do not install wall system components on walls when water of any type is present. Do not apply any wall system component that is damp or wet.
- F. If insulation boards get wet, ensure they are fully air dried before installing, sealing or covering.
- G. Verify that all surfaces to receive flashing, sealant tape and sealant are free of frost, oil, grease, oxidation, dirt, loose paint, loose scale, or other deleterious materials that would impair bond.
- H. Verify that items required to penetrate the thermal wall system are placed and penetrations gaps and cracks are properly sealed before installation is complete.
- I. At no point between working days should the work be left partially taped. All taping and flashing of a started section shall be completed and all exposed foam edges shall be sealed before the work day ends.

3.3 WALL SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install insulative wall system in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations. Properly installed exterior wall insulation will completely cover all exposed steel framing members without gaps, voids, or compressions, and it will also act as the exterior air and water barrier material.
 - 1. Flashing and transition strip shall be used at board terminations including but not limited to: building foundations, slabs, shelf protrusions, roofing membranes or blocking, to seal the end joints where butyl rubber tape is compatible.
 - 2. When installing the exterior veneer, care should be taken to minimize the damage to the insulated wall sheathing, tape, and flashing so as not to break the water and air seal provided by the insulative wall system. Any damages beyond anchor penetrations must be repaired.
 - 3. The insulative wall system is non-structural and must not be used to support any exterior cover materials.
 - 4. Exterior anchor penetrations must be sealed using the manufacturer's recommended sealant.
 - 5. For all other veneer penetrations, consult manufacturer's installation instructions for more details on how to maintain water and air barriers.

END OF SECTION 072110

SECTION 072726 - FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIERS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Vapor-permeable, fluid-applied air barriers.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 061600 "Sheathing"
 - 2. Section 072110 "Continuous Insulated Wall Sheathing"

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Air-Barrier Material: A primary element that provides a continuous barrier to the movement of air.
- B. Air-Barrier Accessory: A transitional component of the air barrier that provides continuity.
- C. Air-Barrier Assembly: The collection of air-barrier materials and accessories applied to an opaque wall, including joints and junctions to abutting construction, to control air movement through the wall.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review air-barrier requirements and installation, special details, mockups, air-leakage and bond testing, air-barrier protection, and work scheduling that covers air barriers.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Submit technical data, less than 10 years old, showing products conform to the standards listed below.
 - 2. Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating each substrate; technical data; dry film thickness; and tested physical and performance properties of products.
- B. Shop Drawings: For air-barrier assemblies.
 - 1. Show locations and extent of air-barrier materials, accessories, and assemblies specific to Project conditions. Do not include standard published details that are not applicable to the project.
 - 2. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, counterflashing strips, penetrations, inside and outside corners, terminations, and tie-ins with adjoining construction.
 - 3. Include details of interfaces with other materials that form part of air barrier.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit letters showing installer and manufacturer meet the qualifications listed above. "Submit a statement of compatibility from the AB and sealant manufacturers verifying the materials used will perform as required by contract when used together."
- B. Qualification Data: For Installer. Include list of ABAA-certified installers and supervisors employed by Installer, who work on Project.

- C. Product Certificates: From air-barrier manufacturer, certifying compatibility of air barriers and accessory materials with Project materials that connect to or that come in contact with the barrier.
 - 1. Submit a statement of compatibility from the air-barrier manufacturer and sealant manufacturers verifying the materials used will perform as required by contract when used together.
- D. Product Test Reports: For each air-barrier assembly, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer: Minimum of 20 years' experience in manufacturing of liquid applied weather barrier systems.
 - 1. Manufacturer's technical representative shall be on site once every week that product is being installed and issue a short report of observations.
- B. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
 - 1. Installer shall be licensed by ABAA according to ABAA's Quality Assurance Program and shall employ ABAA-certified installers and supervisors on Project.
 - 2. Minimum of 5 years' experience with similar sized projects using similar materials. Installer must have completed three similar projects of similar scope. Installer must be approved by manufacturer to install the products.
- C. Preinstallation Meeting: Shall be held within 10 days of starting mockup installation. Attendees shall be the installer, general contractor, architect, owner and the manufacturer's technical representative.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove and replace liquid materials that cannot be applied within their stated shelf life.
- B. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Apply air barrier within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended in writing by air-barrier manufacturer.
 - 1. Protect substrates from environmental conditions that affect air-barrier performance.
 - 2. Do not apply air barrier to a damp or wet substrate or during snow, rain, fog, or mist.

1.10 FIELD TESTING

- A. In Progress Testing: Owner may test work for material thickness, air leakage (ASTM E 1186) and adhesion (ASTM D7234). Contractor is responsible for providing OSHA approved access to areas for testing. Contractor must remedy all conditions causing failed tests. Areas found to be out of compliance shall be remedied by contractor at no additional expense to owner. Additional applications of material, additional surface prep or the addition of a surface conditioner are some options to remedy non-compliant areas. In rare cases, change of product may be required to meet contract requirements.

1.11 WARRANTIES

- A. Manufacturer shall provide a minimum 5 year material warranty.
 - 1. Installer shall provide a 2 year workmanship warranty.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain primary air-barrier materials and air-barrier accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 HIGH-BUILD AIR BARRIERS, VAPOR PERMEABLE

- A. High-Build, Vapor-Permeable Air Barrier: Synthetic polymer membrane with an installed dry film thickness, according to manufacturer's written instructions, of 35 mils or thicker over smooth, void-free substrates.
- B. The following products are approved for use as air barriers. No substitutions are allowed after bid. All air barriers shall be provided with a liquid applied membrane flashing to be used as a single, warrantable system.
 - 1. Thick Mil Systems
 - a. WR Meadows Air Shield LMP w/ Air Shield Liquid Applied Membrane Flashing
 - b. Prosoco CAT5 w/ Flashflash Liquid Applied Membrane Flashing
 - c. Carlisle Barritech VP w/ Barribond Liquid Applied Membrane Flashing
 - d. WR Grace Permabarrier VPL w/ PB Liquid Flashing Liquid Applied Membrane Flashing
 - e. Tyvek Fluid Applied WB+ w/ Fluid Applied Flashing and Joint Compound Liquid Applied Membrane Flashing
 - f. GP DensElement integral weather barrier in the gypsum wall board with STPe based liquid flashing.
 - 2. Physical and Performance Properties: Only those products designed to work as a system with liquid applied flashing are acceptable. Manufacturer shall have standard detail for various penetrations, flashings and transitions to other envelope materials. Systems shall withstand all positive and negative pressures anticipated for the building, including HVAC and other wind and non-wind pressures, without damage. System shall meet the following minimum requirements:
 - a. Air Leakage: Less than 0.04cfm per sq. ft. of air leakage when tested at 1.57 psf per ASTM E2357.
 - b. ICC-ES AC212 Acceptance Criteria for Water-Resistive Coatings Used as Water Resistive Barriers over Exterior Sheathing.
 - c. Vapor Permeable: 10 perms when tested per ASTM E96 dry cup and 18 perms when tested per wet cup when installed at maximum recommended thickness.
 - d. Air Permeability: Less than 0.004 cfm per sq. ft. per ASTM E2178.
 - e. Nail Sealability: Pass (no leakage) per ASTM D1970
 - f. Chemistry: Acrylic, STPe or STPu
 - g. Adhesion: 15 psi or substrate failure per ASTM C297 or ASTM D4541
 - h. Liquid Flashing: Weather Barrier manufacturer shall offer a liquid applied membrane flashing product for use as flashings at wall openings. Liquid Applied Membrane Flashing product chemistry shall be STPe or STPu and be non-reverting when exposed to saturation condition.
 - i. Elongation: 200% per ASTM D412
 - j. Tensile Strength: 100 psi per ASTM D412
 - k. Exposure: 6 months minimum
 - l. Fire: If required, pass NFPA 285. The wall assemblies used in the project, must resist flame propagation and flame spread requirements of NFPA 285 if applicable for the designated type of construction, building height and exterior insulation. ASTM E84: Class A Rated, Flame Spread < 25, Smoke Development < 450
 - m. VOC Compliant.

2.3 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide primers, transition strips, termination strips, joint reinforcing fabric and strips, joint sealants, counterflashing strips, flashing sheets and metal termination bars, termination mastic, substrate patching materials, adhesives, tapes, foam sealants, lap sealants, and other accessory materials that are recommended in writing by air-barrier manufacturer to produce a complete air-barrier assembly and that are compatible with primary air-barrier material and adjacent construction to which they may seal.
- B. Liquid Flashings: Unless approved otherwise in writing, all wall penetrations shall be flashed with liquid applied membrane flashing. Liquid Applied Membrane Flashing shall be STPe, STPu, or urethane-based products, provided by the air-barrier manufacturer, as long as they meet the following criteria.
 - 1. Vapor permeable (10 perms minimum per ASTM E96 tested wet).
 - 2. Non-reverting when exposed to saturation conditions.

3. 98% solids minimum.
 4. VOC compliant.
 5. Tack free in 2 hours.
 6. Self-healing at fasteners (ASTM D1970).
 7. One step application that does not involve embedding a separate fabric material.
 8. Unless the weather barrier (WB or air barrier) is factory installed on the sheathing, the liquid applied membrane flashing shall be supplied by the same manufacturer of, and compatible with, the air barrier. If the air barrier is factory installed on the sheathing, the liquid applied membrane flashing shall form a part of the compatible, tested assembly and be warranted by the sheathing manufacturer.
 9. Air leakage less than 0.03 cfm/sf @ 1.57 psf when tested per ASTM E2357 for air barrier wall assemblies (ASHRAE/ABAA 90.1) and no leakage when tested per ASTM E331 @ 2.86 psf for 15 minutes (ICC).
 10. Selection of sealants compatible with and properly bonded to the liquid applied membrane flashing is the responsibility of the contractor. Sealant shall be approved by the air barrier and sealant manufacturer.
- C. Self-Adhered Flexible Flashing:
1. Basis of design is Hohmann & Barnard Textra Flash.
 - a. Dow Weathermate, DuPont Flashing Tape and Typar Butyl Flashing are acceptable alternates). Self-adhered butyl, acrylic, PVC, KEE, or other non-bleeding, polymer-based products may be acceptable when submitted for approval prior to bid.
 2. Self-Adhered Flexible Flashing shall meet the minimum requirements listed below.
 - a. Thickness: 40 mils minimum consisting of an 8 mil minimum cross laminated polyethylene film with the remainder consisting of a polymer based adhesive waterproofing membrane.
 - b. Non-drooling when exposed to temperatures up to 220 degrees F.
 - c. UV exposure: No less than 90 days.
 - d. Tensile strength and elongation: Minimum 1,200 psi and 15% per ASTM D412
 - e. Puncture: > 80 lbs. per ASTM E154
 - f. Water Absorption: <1 %
 - g. Adhesion in peel: 60 lbs. minimum per ASTM D903
 - h. Water Permeability: <1 perms per ASTM E96
 - i. Low Temperature Flexibility: No affect per ASTM D1970
 - j. Self-adhered flexible flashing manufacturer shall offer a compatible sealant to use at cut edges, laps and terminations in the self-adhered flexible flashing.
- D. Termination Bars: Termination bars shall be 1/8" thick by 1" wide with integral caulk tray in top for manufacturer specified sealant. Bars in masonry construction (including those in cavity walls for masonry veneer) shall be stainless steel. Termination bars shall be pre-punched at 8 inches on center for anchoring to substrates. 20 gage by minimum 6 inch wide galvanized straps shall be installed behind gypsum wall board centered on termination bars to allow for anchorage of the termination bar at 8 inches on center.
- E. Metallic Flashings: Metallic flashings shall be 26 gauge stainless steel (SS) or 16 oz. copper. Other metals (zinc, lead coated copper, aluminum) may be warranted in rare occasions. All metal flashings shall be end lapped 4" with hems (if present) removed from bottom piece. Mitered corners are NOT allowed.
- F. Primer: Liquid waterborne primer recommended for substrate by air-barrier material manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
1. Verify that substrates are sound and free of oil, grease, dirt, excess mortar, or other contaminants.

2. Verify that substrates have cured and aged for minimum time recommended in writing by air-barrier manufacturer.
 3. Verify that substrates are visibly dry and free of moisture.
 4. Verify that masonry joints are flush and completely filled with mortar.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. All surfaces shall be dry and free from gaps, holes, projections, cracks and voids that could cause pin holing of the air barrier. Strike masonry substrate joints flush. Installer shall inspect substrates and record observations in daily logs. Treat joints in substrate per manufacturer's recommendations prior to installing air barrier.
- B. Clean, prepare, treat, fill, and seal substrate and joints and cracks in substrate according to manufacturer's written instructions and details. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrate for air-barrier application.
- C. Mask off adjoining surfaces not covered by air barrier to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
- D. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.
- E. Remove fins, ridges, mortar, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, holes, and other voids in concrete with substrate-patching material.
- F. Remove excess mortar from masonry ties, shelf angles, and other obstructions.
- G. At changes in substrate plane, apply sealant or termination mastic beads at sharp corners and edges to form a smooth transition from one plane to another.
- H. Cover gaps in substrate plane and form a smooth transition from one substrate plane to another with stainless-steel sheet mechanically fastened to structural framing to provide continuous support for air barrier.
- I. Bridge isolation joints expansion joints and discontinuous wall-to-wall, deck-to-wall, and deck-to-deck joints with air-barrier accessory material that accommodates joint movement according to manufacturer's written instructions and details.

3.3 ACCESSORIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessory materials according to air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions and details to form a seal with adjacent construction and ensure continuity of air and water barrier.
1. Coordinate the installation of air barrier with installation of roofing membrane and base flashing to ensure continuity of air barrier with roofing membrane.
 2. Install transition strip on roofing membrane or base flashing so that a minimum of 3 inches of coverage is achieved over each substrate.
 3. Unless manufacturer recommends in writing against priming, apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry.
 4. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by air-barrier material on same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
- B. Connect and seal exterior wall air-barrier material continuously to roofing-membrane air barrier, concrete below-grade structures, floor-to-floor construction, exterior glazing and window systems, glazed curtain-wall systems, storefront systems, exterior louvers, exterior door framing, and other construction used in exterior wall openings, using accessory materials.
- C. At end of each working day, seal top edge of strips and transition strips to substrate with termination mastic.
- D. Flashings: All penetrations through the air barrier shall be flashed. Flashing shall be installed to meet the following.
1. Liquid applied membrane flashing shall be used at all wall penetrations.
 2. Treat all gaps and joints between blocking per manufacturer's written instructions.

3. Flashings shall extend 6 inches onto the air barrier on all sides of the opening. This shall be measured from the outside edge of blocking.
 4. Install water tight stainless steel (SS) sleeves through the air barrier and the veneer for elements to be installed after the veneer is installed. Install water tight SS sleeves for all HVAC duct penetrations.
 5. Sealants shall be installed between the flashed opening and the penetrating element. The Contractor is responsible for ensuring compatibility between the sealant and the liquid applied membrane flashing. Mockup pull testing of the sealant is required.
- E. Through Wall Flashings:
1. Through wall flashing shall be installed in the following locations.
 - a. Shelf angles.
 - b. Horizontal and VERTICAL transitions into and out of barrier wall and drainage cavity systems (i.e., hung precast).
 - c. Below window sill stones where there is no through wall flashing within 8 feet of the bottom of the sill stone.
 - d. Below all coping stones and APC.
 2. Through wall flashing shall be installed to meet the following minimum requirements.
 - a. Liquid applied membrane flashing shall not be used to fabricate through wall flashings .
 - b. The top of all self-adhered flexible flashing shall be terminated at 8" on center and contain an upper caulk tray at ALL locations. Sealant in termination bars shall be approved by liquid applied membrane flashing manufacturer. Vertical edges typically will not require a termination bar.
 - c. Metallic flashing extenders shall be lapped 4 inches and the hem shall be removed from the lower piece to provide a clean splice at the drip.
 - d. Horizontal and vertical splices in the self-adhered flexible flashing shall lap a minimum of 4" unless a larger lap length is required by the manufacturer. A 3/8" bead of cut edge sealant (lap sealant) shall be installed along the edges of the self-adhered flexible flashing at all splices.
 - e. Flashings below copings shall have the following elements.
 - 1) 3/8" maximum SS hemmed drip on face of building.
 - 2) 360 degree SS receiver projecting below the rear of the coping to hold a metallic counterflashing
 - 3) Self-adhered flexible flashing on top of the metallic flashing to seal tie anchor penetrations.
 - 4) Copings with both faces exposed shall have a two piece flashing extender with drips on both sides to ensure drips do not project beyond 1/4" from the face of the veneer. The inside edges of the flashing extenders shall lap and be sealed with self-adhered flexible flashing.
- F. Apply joint sealants forming part of air-barrier assembly within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges. Consult manufacturer when sealant cannot be applied within these temperature ranges.
- G. Wall Openings: Prime concealed, perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors. Apply transition strip so that a minimum of 3 inches of coverage is achieved over each substrate. Maintain 3 inches of full contact over firm bearing to perimeter frames, with not less than 1 inch of full contact.
1. Transition Strip: Roll firmly to enhance adhesion.
- H. Fill gaps in perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors, and miscellaneous penetrations of air-barrier material with foam sealant.
- I. Seal strips and transition strips around masonry reinforcing or ties and penetrations with termination mastic.
- J. Seal top of through-wall flashings to air barrier with an additional 6-inch-wide, transition strip.
- K. Seal exposed edges of strips at seams, cuts, penetrations, and terminations not concealed by metal counterflashings or ending in reglets with termination mastic.
- L. Repair punctures, voids, and deficient lapped seams in strips and transition strips. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with transition strips extending 6 inches beyond repaired areas in strip direction.

3.4 PRIMARY AIR-BARRIER MATERIAL INSTALLATION

- A. Apply air-barrier material to form a seal with strips and transition strips and to achieve a continuous air barrier according to air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions and details. Apply air-barrier material within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges.
 - 1. Unless manufacturer recommends in writing against priming, apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry.
 - 2. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by air-barrier material on same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
 - 3. Where multiple prime coats are needed to achieve required bond, allow adequate drying time between coats.
- B. High-Build Air Barriers: Apply continuous unbroken air-barrier material to substrates according to the following thickness. Apply air-barrier material in full contact around protrusions such as masonry ties.
 - 1. Vapor-Permeable, High-Build Air Barrier: Total dry film thickness as recommended in writing by manufacturer to comply with performance requirements, but not less than 35 mils.
 - 2. Spraying of air barrier onto masonry substrates is NOT allowed. Application of air barrier on masonry substrates shall be by roller, trowel, or stiff bristle brush. Air barrier at wall ties on masonry substrates shall be touched up with stiff bristle brushes. Six (6) wet mill thickness measurements shall be taken every 1000 square feet of air barrier applied and for every day the air barrier is applied and recorded in installer's daily log.
- C. Do not cover air barrier until it has been tested and inspected by testing agency.
- D. Correct deficiencies in or remove air barrier that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates and reapply air-barrier components.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. ABAA Quality Assurance Program: Perform examinations, preparation, installation, testing, and inspections under ABAA's Quality Assurance Program.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Inspections: Air-barrier materials, accessories, and installation are subject to inspection for compliance with requirements. Inspections may include the following:
 - 1. Continuity of air-barrier system has been achieved throughout the building envelope with no gaps or holes.
 - 2. Air-barrier dry film thickness.
 - 3. Continuous structural support of air-barrier system has been provided.
 - 4. Masonry and concrete surfaces are smooth, clean, and free of cavities, protrusions, and mortar droppings.
 - 5. Site conditions for application temperature and dryness of substrates have been maintained.
 - 6. Maximum exposure time of materials to UV deterioration has not been exceeded.
 - 7. Surfaces have been primed, if applicable.
 - 8. Laps in strips and transition strips have complied with minimum requirements and have been shingled in the correct direction (or mastic has been applied on exposed edges), with no fishmouths.
 - 9. Termination mastic has been applied on cut edges.
 - 10. Strips and transition strips have been firmly adhered to substrate.
 - 11. Compatible materials have been used.
 - 12. Transitions at changes in direction and structural support at gaps have been provided.
 - 13. Connections between assemblies (air-barrier and sealants) have complied with requirements for cleanliness, surface preparation and priming, structural support, integrity, and continuity of seal.
 - 14. All penetrations have been sealed.
- D. Tests: As determined by testing agency from among the following tests:

1. Air-Leakage-Location Testing: Air-barrier assemblies will be tested for evidence of air leakage according to ASTM E1186, chamber pressurization or depressurization with smoke tracers.
 2. Air-Leakage-Volume Testing: Air-barrier assemblies will be tested for air-leakage rate according to ASTM E783.
 3. Adhesion Testing: Air-barrier assemblies will be tested for required adhesion to substrate according to ASTM D4541 for each 600 sq. ft. of installed air barrier or part thereof.
- E. Air barriers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
1. Apply additional air-barrier material, according to manufacturer's written instructions, where inspection results indicate insufficient thickness.
 2. Remove and replace deficient air-barrier components for retesting as specified above.
- F. Repair damage to air barriers caused by testing; follow manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect air-barrier system from damage during application and remainder of construction period, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Protect air barrier from exposure to UV light and harmful weather exposure as recommended in writing by manufacturer. If exposed to these conditions for longer than recommended, remove and replace air barrier or install additional, full-thickness, air-barrier application after repairing and preparing the overexposed materials according to air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Protect air barrier from contact with incompatible materials and sealants not approved by air-barrier manufacturer.
- B. Clean spills, stains, and soiling from construction that would be exposed in the completed work using cleaning agents and procedures recommended in writing by manufacturer of affected construction.
- C. Remove masking materials after installation.

END OF SECTION 072726

SECTION 073113 - ASPHALT SHINGLES**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Scope: Installation of new asphalt shingles is limited to modifications made to the existing hip roof required to pitch water out of pockets created by new construction. See drawing roof plans.
- B. Section Includes:
 - 1. Asphalt shingles.
 - 2. Underlayment.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 061600 "Sheathing" for nailable substrate for asphalt shingles

1.3 DEFINITION

- A. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definitions of terms related to roofing work in this Section.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: A pre-installation meeting is required with contractor, installer, owner, and roofing manufacturer.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.
 - 1. Asphalt Shingles: Full size.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Materials warranties.
- B. Roofing Installer's warranty.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Asphalt Shingles: 100 sq. ft. of each type, in unbroken bundles.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Provide all primary roofing products, including shingles, underlayment, and leak barrier by a single manufacturer.

- B. Installer Qualifications: Installer must be approved for installation of all roofing products to be installed under this section.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store roofing materials in a dry, well-ventilated location protected from weather, sunlight, and moisture in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Store underlayment rolls on end, on pallets or other raised surfaces. Do not double-stack rolls.
- C. Protect unused roofing materials from weather, sunlight, and moisture when left overnight or when roofing Work is not in progress.
- D. Handle, store, and place roofing materials in a manner to prevent damage to roof deck or structural supporting members.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit product installation and related Work to be performed in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace asphalt shingles that fail within specified warranty period.
 - 1. 40 year material warranty for shingles, prorated no sooner than 10 years.
 - 2. Arbitration is not allowed.
 - 3. 15 year wind warranty.
 - 4. Warranty shall be adjudicated in Arkansas.
 - 5. Be warranted for wind speeds up to 90 mph as defined by the three second gust listed in ASCE-7.
 - 6. Warranty shall include labor and material to repair leaks resulting from manufacturer defects. This shall include tear-off and all materials required to replace defective shingles.
 - 7. Time limits for legal action shall be established by state and local statutes and may not be changed by the warranty.
 - 8. Require not less than 30 day notice to manufacturer after observance of a potential warranty defect.
- B. Roofing Installer's Warranty: On warranty form at end of this Section, signed by Installer, in which Installer agrees to repair or replace components of asphalt shingle roofing that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: Provide asphalt shingles and related roofing materials identical to those of assemblies tested for Class A fire resistance according to ASTM E 108 or UL 790 by Underwriters Laboratories or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

2.2 GLASS-FIBER-REINFORCED ASPHALT SHINGLES

- A. Laminated Asphalt Shingles: ASTM D 3462/D 3462M, laminated, multi-ply overlay construction, glass-fiber reinforced, mineral-granule surfaced, and self-sealing.

1. Provide 3-tab strip or dimensional shingles to match shingle appearance of existing shingled roofing. Field verify size and edge cut of existing prior to bid. Other characteristics of new shingles to be as specified.
2. Manufacturers: Provide asphalt shingle roofing products by one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
 - b. GAF.
 - c. Owens Corning.
3. Self-sealing, 250 lb. per square (minimum) architectural heavy weight shingles matching colors dictated otherwise. Notify Architect and UA if matching shingles are not available at this weight.
4. Double layer fiberglass mat, random-cut saw tooth design.
5. Algae resistant
6. Impact Resistance: Meet UL 2218, Class 4 or FM 4470 Severe Hail Rating, AND pass ASTM D3746 impact testing.
7. Wind Resistance: Meet ASTM D7158 Class D and ASTM D3161, Type 1, Class F (110 mph) wind resistance.
8. Shall comply with requirements of ASTM D3462, and ASTM D3018, Type 1 and FM 4475 Class 1A.
9. Fire Resistance: Roofing material shall meet Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108 Class A, or UL 790 Class A for application and roof slopes indicated, FM 4475 Class 1A and shall pass UL Standard 997

B. Hip and Ridge Shingles: Manufacturer's standard units to match asphalt shingles.

2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Synthetic underlayment shall be vapor permeable material that is mechanically fastened to the deck to ease shingle removal for future roof replacement projects (GAF Tiger Paw or equivalent). ASTM 226 No. 30 felt also acceptable. Underlayment must be approved (if applicable) by the roofing manufacturer.
- B. SBS underlayment shall be 40 mil cross laminated, high-density polyethylene film and self- adhesive SBS asphalt sheet (SBS underlayment) embossed with or without a slip resistant or sanded surface and with removable contact/release paper or approved equal capable of withstanding 250 degree temperatures and self-healing at fastener penetrations. Use WR Grace Ice and Water Shield or equal.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, Type II, asbestos free.
- B. Nails: Hot-dip galvanized or stainless steel 11 or 12-gauge, sharp-pointed, conventional roofing nails with barbed or ringed shanks, minimum 3/8" diameter head, and of sufficient length to penetrate 3/4" into solid decking or to penetrate through plywood sheathing. All fasteners shall be approved by the roofing manufacturer. Zinc plated fasteners are not allowed. **All shingles to be hand nailed. Coiled nails not permitted.**
- C. Fasteners other than that required for attaching roof cladding, to be stainless steel or contain a corrosion resistant coating to resist 1000 hours of 5% salt spray testing per ASTM B117 without showing red rust, and meet FM 4470 corrosion resistance requirements. Fasteners for pressure treated wood shall be stainless.
- D. Drive pin expansion anchors typically used to anchor metallic elements to concrete and masonry are not allowed. SS hammer screws shall be used instead.
- E. All exposed sealants shall be silicone.

2.5 METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

- A. General: Comply with requirements in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
 1. Sheet Metal: Copper.
- B. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of the item.

1. Apron Flashings: Fabricate with lower flange a minimum of 4 inches over and 4 inches beyond each side of downslope asphalt shingles and 6 inches up the vertical surface.
2. Step Flashings: Fabricate with a headlap of 2 inches and a minimum extension of 5 inches over the underlying asphalt shingle and up the vertical surface.
3. Counterflashings: Fabricate to cover 4 inches of base flashing measured vertically; and in lengths required so that no step exceeds 8 inches and overall length is no more than 10 feet.
4. Open-Valley Flashings: Fabricate from metal sheet not less than 24 inches wide in lengths not exceeding 10 feet, with 1-inch- high, inverted-V profile water diverter at center of valley and equal flange widths of not less than 11 inches.
 - a. Hem flange edges for fastening with metal cleats.
 - b. Add stiffening ribs in flashings to promote drainage.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 1. The structural roof deck shown in the plans shall be smooth and level and free of water or debris before the ventilated insulation is installed.
 2. Examine roof sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing and blocking or metal clips and that installation is within flatness tolerances.
 3. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and completely anchored; and that provisions have been made for flashings and penetrations through asphalt shingles.
- B. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with asphalt shingle and underlayment manufacturers' written installation instructions and with recommendations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual: Steep-Slope Roof Systems" applicable to products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements are specified in this Section or indicated on Drawings.
- B. Synthetic Underlayment: Install on roof deck parallel with and starting at the eaves. Lap sides and ends and treat laps as recommended in writing by manufacturer. Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at interval recommended in writing by manufacturer. Fasten according to manufacturer's written instructions. Cover underlayment within period recommended in writing by manufacturer.
 1. Install in single layer on roofs sloped at 4:12 and greater.
 2. Install in double layer on roofs sloped at less than 4:12.
 3. Install synthetic underlayment on roof deck not covered by self-adhering, polymer-modified bitumen sheet unless otherwise specified in this Section or indicated on Drawings.
 - a. Lap sides of underlayment over self-adhering sheet not less than 4 inches in direction to shed water.
 - b. Lap ends of underlayment not less than 6 inches over self-adhering sheet.
- C. Self-Adhering, Polymer-Modified Bitumen Sheet: Install, wrinkle free, on roof deck.
 1. Comply with low-temperature installation restrictions of underlayment manufacturer.
 2. Install lapped in direction that sheds water.

- a. Lap sides not less than 4 inches.
 - b. Lap ends not less than 6 inches, staggered 24 inches between succeeding courses.
 - c. Roll laps with roller.
3. Prime concrete, masonry, and metal surfaces to receive self-adhering sheet.
 4. Valleys: Extend from lowest to highest point 18 inches on each side of centerline.
 5. Sidewalls: Extend 18 inches beyond sidewalls and return vertically against sidewalls not less than 4 inches.
 6. Cover underlayment within seven days.

3.3 FLASHINGS

- A. Install SBS underlayment up 30 inches around the perimeter of all deck discontinuities (ridges, eaves, rakes, valleys, changes in slope).
 1. Lap mechanically attached underlayment over SBS underlayment at roof deck perimeter elements. 2 layers of underlayment are required for slopes less than 4 to 12.
 2. SBS underlayment is not allowed as underlayment immediately below the roof covering elements unless required by the manufacturer.
- B. Use only open valleys. Line valleys with a single 36 inch wide strip of SBS underlayment centered on the valley in addition to that required at the deck element perimeter. Show underlayment lapping a minimum of 3 inches over valley metal. Lap roof covering a minimum of 5" over valley metal.
- C. No penetrations are allowed in valley flashings.
- D. SBS underlayment shall be installed below metal flashings and contractor fabricated metallic roofing elements.
- E. Step Flashings: Install with a headlap of 2 inches and extend over the underlying asphalt shingle and up the vertical surface. Fasten to roof deck only.
 1. Step flashing is required at side wall rake conditions. Runner flashing not allowed.
 2. Last piece of step flashing at eave to be formed into a kickout flashing to divert water away from the end wall and into the gutter.
- F. Flashing anchorage shall meet SPRI ES-1 Standards.
- G. Minimum Anchorage of Wood Blocking: No. 12 screws installed at 12 inches on center staggered. Anchor lengths to be sized to provide adequate strength to resist induced loads.
- H. No fasteners through exposed sloping legs of vents or boots. Strip in upper half of vent and boot flanges with SBS underlayment.

3.4 ASPHALT-SHINGLE INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install asphalt shingles according to manufacturer's written instructions, recommendations in NRCA's "NRCA Guidelines for Asphalt Shingle Roof Systems."
- B. Install starter strip along lowest roof edge, consisting of an asphalt-shingle strip with self-sealing strip face up at roof edge.
 1. Extend asphalt shingles 1/2 inch to 3/4 inch over fasciae at eaves and rakes.
 2. Install starter strip along rake edge.
- C. Install first and remaining courses of asphalt shingles stair-stepping diagonally across roof deck with manufacturer's recommended offset pattern at succeeding courses, maintaining uniform exposure.
- D. Use a minimum of six nails per shingle or the manufacturer's standard nail pattern, whichever is greater. Using less than six nails will require a statement from the manufacturer that using less than six nails will be detrimental to the system.
- E. **Shingles are to be hand nailed only. Nail guns are not permitted.**

- F. Use starter shingles at eaves and rakes.
- G. Use manufacturer's hip and ridge shingles. **Cut 3 tab shingles are not allowed.**

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products from foot traffic until completion of the project.
- B. Any roof areas that are not completed by the end of the workday are to be protected from moisture and contaminants.

END OF SECTION 073113

SECTION 074213 - METAL COMPOSITE MATERIAL WALL PANELS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes metal composite material (MCM) wall panels.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 054000 "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for metal exterior wall furring assemblies.
 - 2. Section 061600 "Sheathing" for substrates behind metal composite material wall panels.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. DBVR: Drained and back-ventilated rainscreen system; rainscreen system designed to drain and dry cavity entering water through drainage channels, weeps, and air ventilation.
- B. MCM: Metal composite material; cladding material formed by joining two thin metal skins to polyethylene or fire-retardant core and bonded under precise temperature, pressure, and tension.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, MCM panel Fabricator and Installer, MCM sheet manufacturer's representative, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects MCM panels, including installers of doors, windows, and louvers.
 - 2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 3. Review methods and procedures related to MCM panel installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 4. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
 - 5. Review flashings, special siding details, wall penetrations, openings, and condition of other construction that affect MCM panels.
 - 6. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and tests and inspections if applicable.
 - 7. Review temporary protection requirements for MCM panel assembly during and after installation.
 - 8. Review procedures for repair of panels damaged after installation.
 - 9. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of MCM panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment assembly, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
 2. Accessories: Include details of the flashing, trim and anchorage, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.
- C. Samples: For each type of MCM panel indicated with factory-applied color finishes.
1. Include similar Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.
 2. Include fasteners, closures, and other MCM panel accessories.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each product, tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
1. MCM Manufacturer's Material Test Reports: Certified test reports showing compliance with specific performance or third-party listing documenting compliance to comparable code sections IBC 1407.14 and IBC 1703.5.
 2. MCM System Fabricator's Certified System Tests Reports: Certified system test reports showing system compliance with specific performance or third-party listing documenting compliance code section. Base performance requirements on MCM system type provided.
 - a. DBVR System: Tested to AAMA 509.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For MCM panels to include in maintenance manuals.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by MCM Fabricator.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for MCM fabrication and installation.
1. Build mockup of typical MCM panel assembly as shown on Drawings, including corner, soffits, supports, attachments, and accessories.
 2. Water-Spray Test: Conduct water-spray test of mockup of MCM panel assembly, testing for water penetration in accordance with AAMA 501.2.
 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, MCM panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package MCM panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect MCM panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack MCM panels on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store MCM panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store MCM panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Retain strippable protective covering on MCM panels during installation.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of MCM panels to be performed in accordance with manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.11 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate MCM panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.12 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty on Panel Material: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace MCM that fails within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace MCM panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide MCM panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing in accordance with ASTM E330:
 - 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. Deflection Limits: For wind loads, panel deflection no greater than L/60 of the span.
- B. Air Infiltration: Air leakage of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. of wall area when tested in accordance with ASTM E283 at the following test-pressure difference:
 - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
- C. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration to room side of assembly when tested for 15 minutes in accordance with ASTM E331 at the following test-pressure difference:
 - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
- D. Thermal Movements: Include expansion and contraction points as needed to allow for free and noiseless thermal movements from surface temperature changes.
 - 1. Temperature Change (Range): minus 20 deg F to 175 deg F, material surfaces.
- E. Fire Propagation Characteristics: MCM wall assembly passes NFPA 285 testing.

2.2 MCM WALL PANELS

- A. MCM Wall Panel Systems: Provide factory-formed and -assembled, MCM wall panels fabricated from two metal facings that are bonded to a solid, extruded thermoplastic core; formed into profile for installation method indicated. Include attachment assembly components, and accessories required for weathertight system.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide 3A Composites USA Inc.; ALUCOBOND® PLUS or comparable product by one of the following:

- a. Arconic Architectural Products (USA).
 - b. Mitsubishi Chemical Composites.
- B. Aluminum-Faced Composite Wall Panels: Formed with 0.020-inch-thick, coil-coated aluminum sheet facings.
 - 1. Panel Thickness: 0.157 inch.
 - 2. Core: Fire retardant.
 - 3. Exterior Finish: PVDF fluoropolymer with coats and thicknesses that comply with MCM panel manufacturer's performance and warranty requirements.
 - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 4. Peel Strength: 22.5 in-lb/in. when tested for bond integrity in accordance with ASTM D1781.
 - 5. Fire Performance: Flame spread less than 25 and smoke developed less than 450, in accordance with ASTM E84.
- C. Attachment Assembly Components: Formed from extruded aluminum.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C645, cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet ASTM A653/A653M, G90 hot-dip galvanized coating designation or ASTM A792/A792M, Class AZ50 aluminum-zinc-alloy coating designation unless otherwise indicated. Provide Fabricator's standard sections as required for support and alignment of MCM panel system.
- B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of MCM panels unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material as MCM panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, bases, drips, sills, jambs, corners, endwalls, framed openings, rakes, fasciae, parapet caps, soffits, reveals, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent MCM panels.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide 3A Composites USA Inc.; ALUCOBOND® Axcent™ Trim or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Arconic Architectural Products (USA).
 - b. Mitsubishi Chemical Composites.
 - 2. Aluminum Trim: Formed with 0.040-inch thick, coil-coated aluminum sheet facings.
 - 3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- D. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of MCM panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM or PVC sealing washers for exposed fasteners.
- E. Panel Sealants: ASTM C920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in MCM panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by MCM panel manufacturer.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate and finish MCM panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. Fabricate MCM panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a weathertight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that minimize noise from movements.

- C. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations or recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
 3. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
 4. Sealed Joints: Form non-expansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
 5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
 6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
 - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal wall panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.5 FINISHES

- A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Aluminum Panels and Accessories:
1. PVDF Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, MCM panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
1. Examine wall framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by MCM wall panel manufacturer.
 2. Examine wall sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by MCM wall panel manufacturer.
 - a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and assemblies penetrating MCM panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of MCM panels before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages in accordance with ASTM C754 and MCM panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.3 MCM PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install MCM panels in accordance with Fabricator's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated on Drawings. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor MCM panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
 - 1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving MCM panels.
 - 2. Flash and seal MCM panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by MCM panels are installed.
 - 3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
 - 4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
 - 5. Install flashing and trim as MCM panel work proceeds.
 - 6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
 - 7. Align bottoms of MCM panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
 - 8. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.
- B. Fasteners:
 - 1. Aluminum Panels: Use aluminum or stainless steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use aluminum or galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by MCM panel manufacturer.
- D. Attachment Assembly, General: Install attachment assembly required to support MCM wall panels and to provide a complete weathertight wall system, including subgirts, perimeter extrusions, tracks, drainage channels, panel clips, and anchor channels.
 - 1. Include attachment to supports, panel-to-panel joinery, panel-to-dissimilar-material joinery, and panel-system joint seals.
- E. Panel Installation: Attach MCM wall panels to supports at locations, spacings, and with fasteners recommended by Fabricator to achieve performance requirements specified.
 - 1. DBVR System: Install using Fabricator's standard assembly with vertical channel that provides support and secondary drainage assembly, draining at base of wall. Notch vertical channel to receive support pins. Install vertical channels supported by channel brackets or adjuster angles and at locations, spacings, and with fasteners recommended by Fabricator. Attach MCM wall panels by inserting horizontal support pins into notches in vertical channels and into flanges of panels. Leave horizontal and vertical joints with open reveal.
 - a. Track-Support Installation: Install support assembly at locations, spacings, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer. Use Fabricator's standard horizontal tracks and vertical tracks that provide support and secondary drainage assembly, draining to the exterior at horizontal joints through drain tube. Attach MCM wall panels to tracks by interlocking panel edges with Fabricator's standard "T" clips.
 - b. Panel Installation:
 - 1) Attach routed-and-turned flanges of wall panels to perimeter extrusions with manufacturer's standard fasteners.

- 2) Install wall panels to allow individual panels to "free float" and be installed and removed without disturbing adjacent panels.
- c. Joint Sealing: Seal all joints in accordance with AAMA 509. Do not apply sealants to joints unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
 1. Install components required for a complete MCM panel assembly including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by MCM panel Fabricator; or, if not indicated, provide types recommended in writing by MCM system Fabricator.
- G. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, or SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight.
 1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof performance.
 2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

A. Site Verifications of Conditions:

1. Verify conditions of substrate previously installed under other Sections are acceptable for the MCM system installation. Provide documentation indicating detrimental conditions to the MCM system performance.
2. Once conditions are verified, MCM system installation tolerances are as follows:
 - a. Shim and align MCM wall panel units within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet, non-accumulative, on level, plumb, and location lines as indicated, and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform field tests and inspections.
- B. Water-Spray Test: After installation, test area of assembly as directed by Architect for water penetration in accordance with AAMA 501.2.
- C. Fabricator's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect completed MCM wall panel installation, including accessories.
- D. MCM wall panels will be considered defective if they do not pass test and inspections.
- E. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, are performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as MCM panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of MCM panel

installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by MCM panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.

- B. After MCM panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
- C. Replace MCM panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 074213

SECTION 074293 - EXTRUDED ALUMINUM WALL PANELS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY****A. Section Includes:**

1. Extruded metal wall panel cladding installed using a “drained back ventilated rainscreen” method of installation, relying on air/moisture barrier behind panels to provide secondary moisture management and drainage to the exterior.
2. Trim and accessories to complete installation.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS**A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at project site.**

1. Meet with Contractor, Architect, metal wall and/or soffit panel Installer, metal wall panel manufacturer's representative, and related parties.
2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
3. Review methods and procedures related to metal wall and/or soffit panel installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
5. Review flashings, special siding details, wall penetrations, openings, and condition of other construction that affect metal material panels.
6. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and tests and inspections if applicable.
7. Review procedures for repair of panels damaged after installation.
8. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**A. Product Data: For each type of product.**

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of cladding and accessory.

B. Shop Drawings as required:

1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal cladding; details of edge conditions, joints, cladding profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
2. Accessories: Include details of flashing, trim, and anchorage systems, at a scale of not less than 1- 1/2 inches per 12 inches.

C. Samples:

1. Selection Samples: For each finish product specified, two complete sets of color chips representing manufacturer's full range of available colors and patterns (typical 3”x6”). Include:
 - a. Similar Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection (typical 6” length).
 - b. Attachment accessories including clips, retainers and other means of attaching wall panels.

D. Manufacturer's Certificates: Certify products meet or exceed specified requirements.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranties.
- B. Submit sustainability documentation for recycled content and other pertinent attributes in support of project's sustainability goals.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For metal cladding to be included in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by the manufacturer.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical wall as indicated on Drawings; approximately four units wide (such as four 6" planks), including attachments and accessories.
 - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, aluminum planks, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package aluminum planks for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect aluminum planks in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack planks horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store planks to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store planks in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of aluminum plan to be performed in accordance with manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate plank installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of walls, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal cladding systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. Warranty terms and conditions, found in Lumabuilt warranty, apply.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 2. Buckling not associated with the substrate and/or structure to which the Mosaic system is attached. Defined as 1/16" out of plane per linear foot.

- B. Warranty on Cladding Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal cladding that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
1. Woodgrain Finish Standard Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color Retention: Color fading more than 5 units from the original color, when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
 - b. Gloss Retention: The coated surface will exhibit gloss retention to a minimum of 30% from the original gloss.
 - c. Chalking Resistance: Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
 - d. Checking and Cracking: There will be no clearly visible checking or cracking of the painted finish on the products installed on the building.
 - e. Paint Adhesion: Adhesion of Painted Finish when initially applied to test panels and measured by reference to AAMA 2604-02; Clause 7.4.2 will show no evidence of film removal.
 - f. Finish Warranty Period: Standard 15 years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide metal cladding systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing in accordance with AAMA 1402 (static pressure testing).
1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings or as required to meet applicable building codes.
- B. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- C. Drainage: Provide positive drainage to exterior for moisture entering or condensation occurring within panel system.
- D. Flame Spread: Meets ATM E84, Class A.

2.2 METAL WALL OR SOFFIT CLADDING

- A. Provide metal wall or soffit claddings designed to be installed by interconnecting side edges of adjacent cladding and mechanically attaching through cladding clips to supports using concealed fasteners into the side lap clips. Include accessories required for a complete rainscreen system.
- B. Metal Wall Cladding: Extruded shapes with v-groove joints as indicated.
1. Acceptable Manufacturer and Product: Lumabuilt Mosaic (Alumaboard); www.lumabuilt.com.
 2. Substitutions: Submit in accordance with Section 016000.
- C. Materials: Extruded aluminum meeting ASTM B221, Alloy 6063-T6, of 0.063 inch thickness nominal.
1. Standard Panel Length: 24 feet (7.2 M).
 2. Panel Thickness: 1/2 inch (12 mm).
 3. System Depth: 5/8 inch (16 mm).
- D. Size and Joint Configuration:
1. 6 inch (150 mm) wide V groove

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Panel Attachment Clips: Stainless steel with not less than 14% chromium content, alloy 304-2b (1/4 hard), 0.035 inch (0.889 mm) thickness.
- B. Miscellaneous Metal Sub framing and Furring: ASTM C645, cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A653/A653M, G90 hot-dip galvanized coating designation or ASTM A792/A792M, Class AZ50 aluminum-zinc-alloy coating designation unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Cladding Accessories: Provide components required for a complete cladding system including trim, clips, sealants, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal cladding unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Flashing and Trim: Provide aluminum flashing as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Match material and finish of metal cladding unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Cladding Fasteners: Screws (#8 screws) designed to withstand design loads.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate and finish metal cladding and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. Sheet Metal Flashing: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations.

2.5 FINISHES

- A. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable. Noticeable variations in same piece are acceptable and typical.
- B. Aluminum Panels, Soffits or Accessories:
 - 1. Pretreatment: Chrome Free five stage aluminum pretreatment system. Complies with AAMA 2603 AAMA 2604 and AAMA 2605 Superior Performance Standard and meets EPA, OSHA, State and Local environmental requirements and contains no chromates, cyanides or other heavy metals. Waste treatment is usually a simple pH neutralization and disposal to the sanitary sewer.
 - 2. Wood Grains: Premium wood finishes using a polyurethane powder coat with ink-based wood grain patterns sublimated into the base powder. The combined effect creates all the aesthetic aspects of real wood.
 - a. Color: As selected from manufacturers standard finish options.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal cladding supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Examine framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural cladding support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances of 1/4" within 20 feet, as required by metal cladding manufacturer.
 - 2. Examine sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking, and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal cladding manufacturer.
 - a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal cladding to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal cladding before installation.

- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Supports (by others): Install sub framing, furring, and other miscellaneous cladding support members and anchorages in accordance with ASTM C754 (standard specification for steel framing) and metal cladding manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install metal cladding in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Install cladding perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal cladding and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
 - 1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal cladding.
 - 2. Flash and seal metal cladding at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal cladding are installed.
 - 3. Install trims according to manufacturer's guidelines.
 - 4. Install planks using stainless steel fastening clips and #8 screws, in accordance with manufacturer's guidelines, hard pinning in certain conditions may be required.
 - 5. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
 - 6. Install flashing and trim as metal cladding work proceeds.
 - 7. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating cladding.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. On completion of metal cladding installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal cladding manufacturer. Maintain a clean condition during construction
- B. Replace metal cladding that has been damaged or has deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 074213

SECTION 075423 - THERMOPLASTIC POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Adhered thermoplastic polyolefin (TPO) roofing system.
 - 2. Roof insulation.
- B. Section includes the installation of insulation strips in ribs of roof deck. Insulation strips are furnished under Section 053100 "Steel Decking."
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking; and for wood-based, structural-use roof deck panels.
 - 2. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for metal copings, roof flashings and counterflashings.
 - 3. Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for roof hatches.
 - 4. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants, joint fillers, and joint preparation.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Roofing Terminology: Definitions in ASTM D 1079 and glossary in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" apply to work of this Section.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
 - 2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 3. Review and finalize construction schedule, and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 4. Examine deck substrate conditions and finishes for compliance with requirements, including flatness and fastening.
 - 5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
 - 6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affects roofing system.
 - 7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
 - 8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
 - 9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other

work, including:

1. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
2. Tapered insulation, including slopes.
3. Roof plan showing orientation of steel roof deck and orientation of roofing, fastening spacings, and patterns for mechanically fastened roofing.
4. Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.

C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:

1. Sheet roofing of color required.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.
- B. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
- C. Product Test Reports: For components of roofing system, tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Research/Evaluation Reports: For components of roofing system, from ICC-ES.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed for roofing system identical to that used for this Project.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
- B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
 1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
- C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- D. Handle and store roofing materials, and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Special warranty includes roofing, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, roofing accessories, and other components of roofing system.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Project Warranty: Submit roofing Installer's warranty, on warranty form at end of this Section, signed by Installer, covering the Work of this Section, including all components of roofing system such as roofing, base flashing, roof insulation, fasteners, vapor retarders, roof pavers, and walkway products, for the following warranty period:
 - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Carlisle SynTec Incorporated.
 - 2. Firestone Building Products.
 - 3. GAF Materials Corporation.
 - 4. GenFlex Roofing Systems.
 - 5. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
 - 6. Versico Incorporated.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain components including roof insulation and fasteners for roofing system from same manufacturer as membrane roofing or manufacturer approved by membrane roofing manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Installed roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.
 - 1. Accelerated Weathering: Roofing system shall withstand 2000 hours of exposure when tested according to ASTM G 152, ASTM G 154, or ASTM G 155.
 - 2. Impact Resistance: Roofing system shall resist impact damage when tested according to ASTM D 3746 or ASTM D 4272.
- B. Material Compatibility: Roofing materials shall be compatible with one another and adjacent materials under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- C. Roofing System Design: Design roofing system based on requirements of American Society of Civil Engineers ASCE 7-98 requirements, tested by a qualified testing agency to resist the field, perimeter and corner (zone 1, 2 and 3 respectively) uplift pressures indicated on the structural drawings.
- D. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108 or UL 790, Class A; for application and roof slopes indicated; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

2.3 TPO ROOFING

- A. Fabric-Reinforced TPO Sheet: ASTM D 6878, internally fabric- or scrim-reinforced, uniform, flexible TPO sheet.
 - 1. Thickness: 60 mils, nominal.
 - 2. Exposed Face Color: White.

2.4 AUXILIARY ROOFING MATERIALS

- A. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with roofing.
 - 1. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sheet Flashing: Manufacturer's standard unreinforced TPO sheet flashing, 55 mils thick, minimum, of same color as TPO sheet.
- C. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard.
- D. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless-steel or aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch thick; with anchors.
- E. Metal Battens: Manufacturer's standard, aluminum-zinc-alloy-coated or zinc-coated steel sheet, approximately 1 inch wide by 0.05 inch thick, prepunched.
- F. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Global 4470, designed for fastening roofing to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- G. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, T-joint covers, lap sealants, termination reglets, and other accessories.

2.5 ROOF INSULATION

- A. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by TPO roofing manufacturer, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes suitable for application, of thicknesses indicated.
- B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
- C. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards fabricated to slope of 1/4 inch per 12 inches unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Provide preformed saddles, crickets, tapered edge strips, and other insulation shapes where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate to slopes indicated.

2.6 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with roofing.
- B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Global 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- C. Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.

2.7 WALKWAYS

- A. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway pads or rolls, approximately 3/16 inch thick and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work:

1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place, curbs are set and braced, and roof-drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
2. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
3. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Section 053100 "Steel Deck."

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
- B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.

3.3 ROOFING INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install roofing system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. See construction documents for specific roof details and requirements, including:
 1. Required thicknesses of insulation
 2. Locations where membrane is carried up parapets as wall flashing.
- C. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.

3.4 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate installing roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at the end of the workday.
- B. Comply with roofing system and insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
- C. Installation Over Metal Decking:
 1. Install base layer of insulation with end joints staggered not less than 12 inches in adjacent rows and with long joints continuous at right angle to flutes of decking.
 - a. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
 - b. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than 1/4 inch in width.
 - c. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus 24 inches.
 - 1) Trim insulation so that water flow is unrestricted.
 - d. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
 - e. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
 - f. Mechanically attach base layer of insulation using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to metal decks.
 - 1) Fasten insulation to resist specified uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
 2. Install upper layers of insulation and tapered insulation with joints of each layer offset not less than 12 inches from previous layer of insulation.
 - a. Install with long joints continuous and with end joints staggered not less than 12 inches in adjacent rows.

- b. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
- c. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than 1/4 inch in width.
- d. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus 24 inches.
 - 1) Trim insulation so that water flow is unrestricted.
- e. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
- f. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
- g. Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place as required to resist uplift pressures specified..

3.5 ADHERED ROOFING INSTALLATION

- A. Adhere roofing over area to receive roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Unroll roofing and allow to relax before retaining.
- B. Accurately align roofing and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
- C. Bonding Adhesive: Apply to substrate and underside of roofing at rate required by manufacturer and allow to partially dry before installing roofing. Do not apply to splice area of roofing.
- D. In addition to adhering, mechanically fasten roofing securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.
- E. Apply roofing with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
- F. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap roofing, and hot-air weld side and end laps of roofing and sheet flashings according to manufacturer's written instructions, to ensure a watertight seam installation.
 - 1. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of sheet.
 - 2. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily, and repair seam sample areas.
 - 3. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that do not comply with requirements.
- G. Spread sealant bed over deck-drain flange at roof drains, and securely seal roofing in place with clamping ring.

3.6 BASE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories and adhere to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.
- C. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.
- D. Clean seam areas, overlap, and firmly roll sheet flashings into the adhesive. Hot-air weld side and end laps to ensure a watertight seam installation.
- E. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars.

3.7 WALKWAY INSTALLATION

- A. Flexible Walkways: Install walkway products in locations indicated. Heat weld to substrate or adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspection: An inspection at project start, one in-progress inspection, and at substantial completion shall be made by a representative of the material manufacturer to ensure that said project was installed in accordance

with the manufacturer's specifications and illustrated details. The representative of the material manufacturer shall be authorized to make warranty decisions regarding the work. Field notes, comments and recommendations made by material manufacturer's representatives shall be submitted to the Owner's representative within three working days of each site visit. Upon this manufacturer representative's approval of the completed project, the specified warranty or warranties shall be written. Contractor shall make a reasonable and "good faith" attempt to incorporate recommendations into the scope of work at no additional cost to the Owner.

- B. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion.
- C. Repair or remove and replace components of membrane roofing system where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

3.9 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction does not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and Owner.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.
- C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 075423

SECTION 076200 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY**A. Section Includes:**

1. Formed roof-drainage sheet metal fabrications.
2. Formed low-slope roof sheet metal fabrications.
3. Formed wall sheet metal fabrications.
4. Formed equipment support flashing.
5. Brake metal covers and sill flashing.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
2. Section 072110 "Continuous Insulated Wall Sheathing"
3. Section 077100 "Roof Specialties" for manufactured copings, reglets, counterflashings and roof expansion joint assemblies not associated with the pre-engineered metal building.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim layout and seams with sizes and locations of penetrations to be flashed, and joints and seams in adjacent materials.
- B. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim installation with adjoining roofing and wall materials, joints, and seams to provide leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**A. Product Data:** For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each manufactured product and accessory.

B. Shop Drawings: For sheet metal flashing and trim.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Detail fabrication and installation layouts, expansion-joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled work.
3. Include identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
4. Include details for forming, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.
5. Include details for joining, supporting, and securing, including layout and spacing of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
6. Include details of termination points and assemblies.
7. Include details of expansion joints and expansion-joint covers, including showing direction of expansion and contraction from fixed points.
8. Include details of roof-penetration flashing.
9. Include details of special conditions.
10. Include details of connections to adjoining work.
11. Detail formed flashing and trim at scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.

- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sheet metal and accessory indicated with factory-applied finishes.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.
- B. Sheet Metal Standard for Flashing and Trim: Comply with NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual" and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" requirements for dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. SPRI Wind Design Standard: Manufacture and install copings and roof edge flashings tested according to SPRI ES-1 and capable of resisting the following design pressure:
 - 1. Design Pressure: As indicated on Structural Drawings.
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 SHEET METALS

- A. General: Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper as required to suit forming operations and performance required; with embossed surface.
 - 1. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:

- a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - b. Color: Where used in conjunction with pre-manufactured metal building (PEMB) wall, soffit or roof panels, match finish of exposed PEMB metal panels.
2. Anodic Finish: Where sheet metal fabrications are shown used in conjunction with storefront framing provide the following to match the finish of the storefront:
 - a. Clear Anodic Finish, Coil Coated: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
3. Non-Exposed Applications: Mill finished fabrications where noted.

2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Felt: ASTM D 226/D 226M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt; nonperforated.
- B. Slip Sheet: Rosin-sized building paper, 3 lb/100 sq. ft. minimum.
- C. Sheet Membrane Waterproofing As Underlayment Below Coping: Non-reinforced, homogeneous, waterproof, impermeable sheeting compounded of elastomeric substances which have been reduced to a thermoplastic state, and extruded into a continuous sheet.
 1. Provide 20 mil sheet membrane waterproofing as manufactured by Nervastral, Inc., 2 Soundview Drive, Greenwich, CT 06830 or approved equal.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and as recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item.
 1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
 - a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed EPDM or PVC sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal.
 - b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
 - c. Spikes and Ferrules: Same material as gutter; with spike with ferrule matching internal gutter width.
 2. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
- C. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
- D. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric silicone polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
- E. Epoxy Seam Sealer: Two-part, noncorrosive, aluminum seam-cementing compound, recommended by aluminum manufacturer for exterior nonmoving joints, including riveted joints.
- F. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion according to ASTM D 1187.
- G. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details shown and recommendations in cited sheet metal standard that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item required. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in shop to greatest extent possible.
 - 1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
 - 2. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
 - 3. Form sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line, levels, and slopes; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 - 4. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Do not use exposed fasteners on faces exposed to view.
- B. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
- C. Sealant Joints: Where movable, nonexpansion-type joints are required, form metal to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant according to cited sheet metal standard.
- D. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.
- E. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of sizes as recommended by cited sheet metal standard and by FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.
- F. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

2.6 ROOF DRAINAGE SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Hanging Gutters: Fabricate to cross section indicated, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other accessories as required. Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- long sections. Furnish flat-stock gutter straps fabricated from same metal as gutters, of size recommended by SMACNA but not less than twice the gutter thickness. Fabricate expansion joints, expansion-joint covers, and gutter accessories from same metal as gutters.
 - 1. Gutter Style: SMACNA designation "A", unless noted or detailed otherwise..
 - 2. Expansion Joints: Lap type, SMACNA figure designation 1-6.
 - 3. Gutters with Girth up to 15 Inches: Fabricate from aluminum, 0.032 inch thick.
 - 4. Gutters with Girth 16 to 20 Inches: Fabricate from aluminum, 0.040 inch thick.
 - 5. Gutters with Girth 21 to 25 Inches: Fabricate from aluminum, 0.051 inch thick.
 - 6. Gutters with Girth 26 to 30 Inches: Fabricate from aluminum, 0.063 inch thick.
- B. Downspouts: Fabricate rectangular downspouts complete with mitered elbows. Furnish with metal hangers, from same material as downspouts, and anchors.
 - 1. Fabricated Hanger Style: SMACNA figure designation 1-35B.
 - 2. Fabricate from aluminum, 0.024 inch thick.
- C. Parapet Scuppers: Fabricate scuppers to dimensions required, with closure flange trim to exterior, 4-inch-wide wall flanges to interior, and base extending 4 inches beyond cant or tapered strip into field of roof. Fabricate from the following materials:
 - 1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch thick.
- D. Conductor Heads: Fabricate conductor heads with flanged back and stiffened top edge and of dimensions and shape required, complete with outlet tubes, exterior flange trim, and built-in overflows. Fabricate from the following materials:
 - 1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch thick.

2.7 LOW-SLOPE ROOF SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Roof Edge Flashing (Gravel Stop) and Fascia Cap: Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- long, but not exceeding 12-foot- long sections. Furnish with 6-inch- wide, joint cover plates. Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
 - 1. Joint Style: Butted with expansion space and 6-inch- wide, exposed cover plate.
 - 2. Fabricate from the Following Materials:
 - a. Aluminum: 0.050 inch thick.
- B. Base Flashing: Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners. Fabricate from the following materials:
 - 1. Aluminum: 0.040 inch thick.

2.8 BRAKE METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Storefront Sill Flashing: Where indicated on drawings, provide custom fabricated sill flashing in profiles indicated with separate mill finished continuous cleat designed to lock leading edge of flashing in place at edge of opening.
 - 1. Finish: Unless otherwise indicated, match the finish of the aluminum storefront or entrance framing where the custom sill flashing is shown.
 - 2. Fabricate sill with back and end dams with 1/2" minimum vertical legs.
 - 3. End dams shall be mechanically attached with horizontal screws. No mechanical attachments are allowed through the horizontal leg of the pan. End dams shall be sealed water tight.
 - 4. All anchors and seams shall be lap sealed and cap sealed.
 - 5. All fasteners through the pan shall be set in a bed of sealant and be cap sealed.
 - 6. Hem exposed edges of flashing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, substrate, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.
 - 2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
 - 3. Verify that air- or water-resistant barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Felt Underlayment: Install felt underlayment, wrinkle free, using adhesive to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal flashing and trim. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches.
- B. Sheet Membrane Waterproofing Underlayment: Install sheet membrane waterproofing underlayment, wrinkle free, according to manufacturers' written instructions, and using adhesive where possible to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal.
- C. Apply slip sheet, wrinkle free, over underlayment before installing sheet metal flashing and trim.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.

1. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line, levels, and slopes. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder, welds, and sealant.
 2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before fabricating sheet metal.
 3. Space cleats not more than 12 inches apart. Attach each cleat with at least two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
 4. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim with limited oil canning, and free of buckling and tool marks.
 5. Torch cutting of sheet metal flashing and trim is not permitted.
 6. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other, or where metal contacts pressure-treated wood or other corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action or corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer or cited sheet metal standard.
1. Coat concealed side of uncoated-aluminum sheet metal flashing and trim with bituminous coating where flashing and trim contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
 2. Underlayment: Where installing sheet metal flashing and trim directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install underlayment and cover with slip sheet.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at maximum of 10 feet with no joints within 24 inches of corner or intersection.
1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
 2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Fasteners: Use fastener sizes that penetrate wood blocking or sheathing not less than 1-1/4 inches for nails and not less than 3/4 inch for wood screws.
- E. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.
- F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction.
1. Use sealant-filled joints unless otherwise indicated. Embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch into sealant. Form joints to completely conceal sealant. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures. Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F.
 2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 07920 "Joint Sealants."
- G. Rivets: Rivet joints in uncoated aluminum where necessary for strength.

3.4 ROOF-DRAINAGE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal roof-drainage items to produce complete roof-drainage system according to cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof-drainage system.
- B. Hanging Gutters: Join sections with joints sealed with sealant. Provide for thermal expansion. Attach gutters at eave or fascia to firmly anchor them in position. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant. Slope to downspouts.
1. Fasten gutter spacers to front and back of gutter.
 2. Anchor and loosely lock back edge of gutter to continuous cleat.
 3. Anchor gutter with straps spaced not more than 30 inches apart to roof deck, unless otherwise indicated, fastened behind gravel guard face and loosely locked to front gutter bead.
 4. Install gutter with expansion joints centered between downspout locations, but not exceeding, 50 feet apart. Install expansion-joint caps.

- C. Downspouts: Join sections with 1-1/2-inch telescoping joints.
 - 1. Provide hangers with fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely to walls. Locate hangers at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches o.c.
 - 2. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system.
- D. Splash Pans: Install where downspouts discharge on low-slope roofs. Set in asphalt roofing cement or elastomeric sealant compatible with the substrate.
- E. Parapet Scuppers: Continuously support scupper, set to correct elevation, and seal flanges to interior wall face, over cants or tapered edge strips, and under roofing membrane.
 - 1. Scuppers terminating at exterior walls: Anchor scupper closure trim flange to exterior wall and solder or seal with elastomeric sealant to scupper.
 - 2. Scuppers discharge into conductor head set immediately below elevation of scupper: Loosely lock front edge of scupper with conductor head.
 - 3. Scupper discharge directly into back of conductor head: Solder or seal with elastomeric sealant exterior wall scupper flanges into back of conductor head.
- F. Conductor Heads: Anchor securely to wall, with elevation of conductor head rim at minimum of 1 inch below scupper discharge.

3.5 ROOF FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements and cited sheet metal standard. Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line, levels, and slopes. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight and weather resistant.
- B. Roof Edge Flashing: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Interlock bottom edge of roof edge flashing with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at staggered 3-inch centers.
- C. Pipe or Post Counterflashing: Install counterflashing umbrella with close-fitting collar with top edge flared for elastomeric sealant, extending minimum of 4 inches over base flashing. Install stainless-steel draw band and tighten.
- D. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Coordinate installation of roof-penetration flashing with installation of roofing and other items penetrating roof. Seal with elastomeric sealant and clamp flashing to pipes that penetrate roof.

3.6 WALL FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture according to cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.
- B. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Install continuous head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches beyond wall openings.

3.7 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean off excess sealants.
- C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of sheet metal flashing and trim installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces as recommended by sheet metal flashing and trim manufacturer. Maintain sheet metal flashing and trim in clean condition during

construction.

- D. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 076200

SECTION 077100 - ROOF SPECIALTIES**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY**A. Section Includes:**

1. Copings.
2. Reglets and counterflashings.
3. Manufactured roof expansion joint assemblies.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for downspout guards and downspout boots.
2. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
3. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for custom- and site-fabricated sheet metal flashing and trim.
4. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for field-applied sealants between roof specialties and adjacent materials.
5. Section 108200 "Louvered Roof Top Equipment Screens" for mechanical rooftop equipment screens.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**A. Product Data:** For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For roof specialties.

1. Include plans, elevations, expansion-joint locations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work.
2. Include details for expansion and contraction; locations of expansion joints, including direction of expansion and contraction.
3. Indicate profile and pattern of seams and layout of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments.
4. Detail termination points and assemblies, including fixed points.
5. Include details of special conditions.

C. Samples: For each type of roof specialty and for each color and texture specified.**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain roof specialties approved by manufacturer providing roofing-system warranty specified in Section 075423 "Thermoplastic Polyolefin (TPO) Roofing".

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store roof specialties in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store roof specialties away from uncured concrete and masonry.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on roof specialties from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for the period of roof-specialty installation.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify profiles and tolerances of roof-specialty substrates by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate roof specialties with flashing, trim, and construction of parapets, roof deck, roof and wall panels, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Roofing-System Warranty: Roof specialties are included in warranty provisions in Section Section 075423 "Thermoplastic Polyolefin (TPO) Roofing"
- B. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace roof specialties that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Roof specialties shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. FM Approvals' Listing: Manufacture and install copings that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" and approved for windstorm classification, Class 1-90. Identify materials with FM Approvals' markings.
- C. SPRI Wind Design Standard: Manufacture and install copings tested according to SPRI ES-1 and capable of resisting the following design pressures:
 - 1. Design Pressure: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, hole elongation, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Provide clips that resist rotation and avoid shear stress as a result of thermal movements. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 COPINGS

- A. Metal Copings: Manufactured coping system consisting of metal coping cap in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet, concealed anchorage; with corner units, end cap units, and concealed splice plates with finish matching coping caps.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design product: Metal-Era LLC; Perma-Tite Continuous Cleat Coping. Subject to compliance with specifications, copings of equal design and performance to the basis-of-design may be provided by one of the following manufacturers:
 - a. Architectural Products Company.
 - b. Cheney Flashing Company.

- c. Hickman Company, W. P.
- 2. Formed Aluminum Sheet Coping Caps: Aluminum sheet, 0.040 inch thick.
 - a. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
 - b. Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
 - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- 3. Corners: Factory mitered and sealed watertight by manufacturers standard seaming method..
- 4. Coping-Cap Attachment Method: Snap-on or face leg hooked to continuous cleat with back leg fastener exposed, fabricated from coping-cap material.
 - a. Snap-on Coping Anchor Plates: Concealed, galvanized-steel sheet, 12 inches wide, with integral cleats.
 - b. Face-Leg Cleats: Concealed, continuous galvanized-steel sheet.

2.3 ROOF-EDGE SPECIALTIES

- A. Roof-Edge Fascia Drip Edge: Manufactured, two-piece, roof-edge fascia consisting of metal fascia cover with formed galvanized steel cleat.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design product: Metal-Era LLC; One Drip Edge. Subject to compliance with specifications, drip edges of equal design and performance to the basis-of-design may be provided by one of the following manufacturers:
 - a. Architectural Products Company.
 - b. Cheney Flashing Company.
 - c. Hickman Company, W. P.
 - 2. Formed Aluminum Sheet Fascia: Aluminum sheet, 0.040 inch thick.
 - a. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
 - b. Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
 - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 3. Corners: Factory mitered and sealed watertight by manufacturers standard seaming method..

2.4 REGLETS AND COUNTERFLASHINGS

- A. Reglets: Units of type, material, and profile required, formed to provide secure interlocking of separate reglet and counterflashing pieces, and compatible with flashing indicated with factory-mitered and -welded corners and junctions and with interlocking counterflashing on exterior face, of same metal as reglet.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design product: Fry Reglet's "SpringLok" flashing system. Subject to compliance with specifications, reglets of equal design and performance to the basis-of-design may be provided by one of the following manufacturers:
 - a. Cheney Flashing Company.
 - b. Heckmann Building Products, Inc.
 - c. Hickman Company, W. P.
 - d. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
 - e. Keystone Flashing Company, Inc.
 - 2. Flashing: Factory formed metal flashing designed to snap into reglets, capable of withstanding sustained wind velocities up to 110 mph for two hours.
 - a. Material: Aluminum, 0.024 inch thick.

3. Reglets:

- a. Surface-Mounted Type: Provide with slotted holes for fastening to substrate, with neoprene or other suitable weatherproofing washers, and with channel for sealant at top edge.
- b. Concrete Type: Provide temporary closure tape to keep reglet free of concrete materials, special fasteners for attaching reglet to concrete forms, and guides to ensure alignment of reglet section ends.
- c. Masonry Type: Provide with offset top flange for embedment in masonry mortar joint.

4. Accessories:

- a. Counterflashing Wind-Restraint Clips: Provide clips to be installed before counterflashing to prevent wind uplift of counterflashing's lower edge.

B. Finish: Mill.

2.5 EXPANSION JOINT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Expansion Joints: Provide factory fabricated weatherproof, exterior covers for expansion joint openings consisting of flexible rubber membrane, supported by a closed cell foam to form flexible bellows, with two metal flanges, adhesively and mechanically combined to the bellows by a bifurcation process. Provide product from single-source roofing system supplier that is included in the No Dollar Limit guarantee.
 1. Basis of design: Johns Manville "Expand-O-Flash" style EJ-RW (roof to wall). Transitional assemblies may be fabricated from other JM styles, as required to accommodate varying field conditions.
 2. Provide with manufacturer's optional fiberglass insulation in poly sleeve and integral vapor barrier insulation support.
- B. Provide factory fabricated transition assemblies by the same manufacturer as the expansion joint including inside and outside horizontal corners, and horizontal-to-vertical expansion joint assemblies designed to seamlessly transition horizontal to vertical expansion joints at in-plane and inside corner conditions. Seams in the flexible bellows to be factory sewn and sealed. Joints in the metal flanges at transitions to be factory soldered.

2.6 MATERIALS

- A. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper to suit forming operations and performance required.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners: Manufacturer's recommended fasteners, suitable for application and designed to meet performance requirements. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Fasteners for Stainless-Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
- B. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric silicone polymer sealant of type, grade, class, and use classifications required by roofing-specialty manufacturer for each application.
- C. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type joints with limited movement.
- D. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.
- E. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

2.8 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

- B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- D. Coil-Coated Aluminum Sheet Finishes:
 - 1. High-Performance Organic Finish: Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - b. Concealed Surface Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine walls, roof edges, and parapets for suitable conditions for roof specialties.
- C. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage where applicable, and securely anchored.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Install roof specialties according to manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor roof specialties securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, protective coatings, separators, underlayments, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete roof-specialty systems.
 - 1. Install roof specialties level, plumb, true to line and elevation; with limited oil-canning and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
 - 2. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder and sealant.
 - 3. Install roof specialties to fit substrates and to result in weathertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before manufacture.
 - 4. Torch cutting of roof specialties is not permitted.
 - 5. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 1. Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum roof specialties with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
 - 2. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof specialties for waterproof performance.
- C. Metal Fabrication Expansion Provisions: Allow for thermal expansion of exposed roof specialties.

1. Space movement joints at a maximum of 12 feet with no joints within 18 inches of corners or intersections unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 2. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.
- D. Fastener Sizes: Use fasteners of sizes that penetrate substrate not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.
- E. Seal concealed joints with butyl sealant as required by roofing-specialty manufacturer.
- F. Seal joints as required for weathertight construction. Place sealant to be completely concealed in joint. Do not install sealants at temperatures below 40 deg F.

3.3 COPING INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleats, anchor plates, and other anchoring and attachment accessories and devices with concealed fasteners.
- B. Anchor copings with manufacturer's required devices, fasteners, and fastener spacing to meet performance requirements.
1. Interlock face and back leg drip edges of snap-on coping cap into cleated anchor plates anchored to substrate at manufacturer's required spacing that meets performance requirements.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF ROOF-EDGE SPECIALTIES

- A. Install cleats, cants, and other anchoring and attachment accessories and devices with concealed fasteners.
- B. Anchor roof edgings with manufacturer's required devices, fasteners, and fastener spacing to meet performance requirements.

3.5 REGLET AND COUNTERFLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Coordinate installation of reglets and counterflashings with installation of base flashings.
- B. Embedded Reglets: See Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for installation of reglets.
- C. Surface-Mounted Reglets: Install reglets to receive flashings where flashing without embedded reglets is indicated on Drawings. Install at height so that inserted counterflashings overlap 4 inches over top edge of base flashings.
- D. Counterflashings: Insert counterflashings into reglets or other indicated receivers; ensure that counterflashings overlap 4 inches over top edge of base flashings. Lap counterflashing joints a minimum of 4 inches and bed with butyl sealant. Fit counterflashings tightly to base flashings.

3.6 ROOF EXPANSION JOINT INSTALLATION

- A. General: Follow manufacturers recommendations for the installation of horizontal and vertical expansion joint assemblies. Coordinate flashing and counter flashing requirements with roofing manufacturer and reglet/counterflashing requirements described in this section and shown on drawings.
- B. Coordinate with coping and wall finish details to conceal metal flanges of expansion joint assemblies to the greatest extent possible.
- C. Anchor flanges with manufacturer's required devices, fasteners, and fastener spacing to meet performance requirements. Seal edges against water intrusion.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder and sealants.

- C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as roof specialties are installed. On completion of installation, clean finished surfaces, including removing unused fasteners, metal filings, pop rivet stems, and pieces of flashing. Maintain roof specialties in a clean condition during construction.
- D. Replace roof specialties that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 077100

SECTION 077200 - ROOF ACCESSORIES**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Roof hatches.
- 2. Safety Railing System
- 3. Ladder-Assist Post

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for metal vertical ladders, ships' ladders, and stairs for access to roof hatches.
- 2. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for shop- and field-formed metal flashing, roof-drainage systems, roof expansion-joint covers, and miscellaneous sheet metal trim and accessories.
- 3. Section 108200 "Louvered Roof Top Equipment Screens"

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of roof accessories with roofing membrane and base flashing and interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, weathertight, secure, and noncorrosive installation.
- B. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of roof accessory.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roof accessories.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. General Performance: Roof accessories shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.

2.2 ROOF HATCH

- A. Roof Hatches: Metal roof-hatch units with lids and insulated double-walled curbs, welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints, continuous lid-to-curb counterflashing and weathertight perimeter gasketing, straight sides, and integrally formed deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Babcock-Davis.
 - b. Bilco Company (The).
 - c. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.
 - d. Nystrom.
- B. Type and Size: Single-leaf lid, 36 by 36 inches.

- C. Hatch Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet.
 - 1. Thickness: Manufacturer's standard thickness for hatch size indicated.
 - 2. Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat.
 - 3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- D. Construction:
 - 1. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard rigid board insulation..
 - 2. Hatch Lid: Opaque, insulated, and double walled, with manufacturer's standard metal liner of same material and finish as outer metal lid.
 - 3. Curb Liner: Manufacturer's standard, of same material and finish as metal curb.
 - 4. Fabricate curbs to minimum height of 12 inches above roofing surface unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Hardware: Spring operators, hold-open arm, galvanized-steel spring latch with turn handles, galvanized-steel butt- or pintle-type hinge system, and padlock hasps inside and outside.
- F. Safety Railing System: Roof-hatch manufacturer's standard system including rails, clamps, fasteners, safety barrier at railing opening, and accessories required for a complete installation; attached to roof hatch and complying with 29 CFR 1910.23 requirements and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Height: 42 inches above finished roof deck.
 - 2. Posts and Rails: Galvanized-steel pipe, 1-1/4 inches in diameter or galvanized-steel tube, 1-5/8 inches in diameter.
 - 3. Maximum Opening Size: System constructed to prevent passage of a sphere 21 inches in diameter.
 - 4. Chain Passway Barrier: Galvanized proof coil chain with quick link on fixed end.
 - 5. Self-Latching Gate: Fabricated of same materials and rail spacing as safety railing system. Provide manufacturer's standard hinges and self-latching mechanism.
 - 6. Post and Rail Tops and Ends: Weather resistant, closed or plugged with prefabricated end fittings.
 - 7. Provide weep holes or another means to drain entrapped water in hollow sections of handrail and railing members.
 - 8. Fabricate joints exposed to weather to be watertight.
 - 9. Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard, finished to match railing system.
 - 10. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
- G. Ladder-Assist Post: Roof-hatch manufacturer's standard device for attachment to roof-access ladder.
 - 1. Operation: Post locks in place on full extension; release mechanism returns post to closed position.
 - 2. Height: 42 inches above finished roof deck.
 - 3. Material: Steel tube.
 - 4. Post: 1-5/8-inch- diameter pipe.
 - 5. Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked enamel or powder coat.

2.3 METAL MATERIALS

- A. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation.
 - 1. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: After cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat to a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils.
- B. Steel Shapes: ASTM A 36/A 36M, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Steel Tube: ASTM A 500/A 500M, round tube.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Tube: ASTM A 500/A 500M, round tube, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
- E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, galvanized.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items required by manufacturer for a complete installation.
- B. Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 726, nominal density of 3 lb/cu. ft., thermal resistivity of 4.3 deg F

x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F, thickness as indicated.

- C. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.
- D. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric silicone polymer sealant as recommended by roof accessory manufacturer for installation indicated; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints and remain watertight.
- E. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for expansion joints with limited movement.
- F. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586/D 4586M, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work. Verify that supplemental steel and/or treated wood framing has been installed to provide roof accessories a solid base at the finish roof elevation for the setting of the roof accessory curbs.
 - 1. Curbs of roof accessories shall be placed to allow 8" minimum roof membrane flashing up the side of the accessory curbs.
- B. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- C. Verify dimensions of roof openings for roof accessories.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Install roof accessories level; plumb; true to line and elevation; and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
 - 2. Anchor roof accessories securely in place so they are capable of resisting indicated loads.
 - 3. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete installation of roof accessories and fit them to substrates.
 - 4. Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, or loosening of fasteners and seals.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 1. Coat concealed side of roof accessories with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
 - 2. Underlayment: Where installing roof accessories directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of underlayment and cover with manufacturer's recommended slip sheet.
 - 3. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof accessories for waterproof performance.
- C. Roof-Hatch Installation:
 - 1. Verify that roof hatch operates properly. Clean, lubricate, and adjust operating mechanism and hardware.
 - 2. Attach safety railing system to roof-hatch curb.

3. Attach ladder-assist post according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 REPAIR AND CLEANING

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A 780/A 780M.
- B. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Clean off excess sealants.
- D. Replace roof accessories that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 077200

SECTION 079100 - PREFORMED JOINT SEALS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Preformed, foam joint seals.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for liquid sealants applied over preformed seals in dual seal systems.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each preformed joint seal product.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of preformed joint seal required, provide Samples with joint seals in 1/2-inch- wide joints formed between two 6-inch- long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint seals.
- D. Preformed Joint Seal Schedule: Include the following information:
 - 1. Joint seal location and designation.
 - 2. Joint width and movement capability.
 - 3. Joint seal manufacturer and product name.
 - 4. Joint seal color.

1.4 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace preformed joint seals that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 PREFORMED, FOAM JOINT SEALS**

- A. Preformed, Foam Joint Seals: Manufacturer's standard joint seal manufactured from urethane or EVA (ethylene vinyl acetate) foam with minimum density of 10 lb/cu. ft. and impregnated with a nondrying, water-repellent agent. Factory produce in precompressed sizes in roll or stick form to fit joint widths based on design criteria indicated, with factory- or field-applied adhesive for bonding to substrates.
- B. Architectural Joint Systems for Exterior Walls:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: EMSEAL Joint Systems, "ColorSeal".
 - 2. Type: Preformed cellular foam.
 - a. Foam Material: Manufacturer's standard fire retardant impregnated foam.
 - 1) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 3. Provide manufacturers "Universal 90" transitions for inside and outside 90-degree transitions.

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by preformed-joint-seal manufacturer for joint substrates indicated.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to preformed joint seal manufacturer, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces, and formulated to promote best adhesion to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with preformed joint seals and surfaces adjacent to joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive preformed joint seals, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting preformed-joint seal performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing preformed joint seals to comply with preformed joint seal manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of preformed joint seal, including dust, paints (except for permanent protective coatings tested and approved for seal adhesion and compatibility by seal manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
 - 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimal bond with preformed joint seals. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Concrete.
 - b. Masonry.
 - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
 - 4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint seals. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Metal.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by preformed joint seal manufacturer or as indicated by tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint seal manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint seal bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of adhesive or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with preformed joint seal manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Installation of Preformed, Foam Joint Seals:
 - 1. Install each length of seal immediately after removing protective wrapping.
 - 2. Firmly secure compressed joint seals to joint gap side to obtain full bond using exposed pressure-sensitive adhesive or field-applied adhesive as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 3. Do not pull or stretch material. Produce seal continuity at splices, ends, turns, and intersections of joints.

4. For applications at low ambient temperatures, heat foam joint seal material in compliance with manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect preformed joint seals from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so seals are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated seals immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

END OF SECTION 079100

SECTION 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Silicone joint sealants.
 - 2. Nonstaining silicone joint sealants.
 - 3. Urethane joint sealants.
 - 4. Mildew-resistant joint sealants.
 - 5. Latex joint sealants.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 079219 "Acoustical Joint Sealants" for sealing joints in sound-rated construction.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each kind and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in 1/2-inch- wide joints formed between two 6-inch- long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field-Adhesion-Test Reports: For each sealant application tested.
- B. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Product Testing: Test joint sealants using a qualified testing agency.
 - 1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

1.6 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Testing: Before installing sealants, field test their adhesion to Project joint substrates as follows:
 - 1. Locate test joints where indicated on Project or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
 - 2. Conduct field tests for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
 - 3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when test joints will be erected.
 - 4. Arrange for tests to take place with joint-sealant manufacturer's technical representative present.
 - a. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1.1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.

- 1) For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
5. Report whether sealant failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. For sealants that fail adhesively, retest until satisfactory adhesion is obtained.
6. Evaluation of Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing, in absence of other indications of noncompliance with requirements, will be considered satisfactory. Do not use sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:

1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
2. When joint substrates are wet.
3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Twenty years from date of Substantial Completion.

C. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:

1. Movement of the structure caused by stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
2. Disintegration of joint substrates from causes exceeding design specifications.
3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.

B. Materials, General: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

1. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range for this characteristic.

- C. Elastomeric Joint Sealants: Comply with ASTM C920 and other requirements indicated for each liquid-applied chemically curing sealant in the Elastomeric Joint-Sealant Schedule at the end of Part 3, including those referencing ASTM C920 classifications for type, grade, class, and uses.
 - 1. Additional Movement Capability: Where additional movement capability is specified in the Elastomeric Joint-Sealant Schedule, provide products with the capability, when tested for adhesion and cohesion under maximum cyclic movement per ASTM C719, to withstand the specified percentage change in the joint width existing at the time of installation and remain in compliance with other requirements of ASTM C920 for uses indicated.
 - 2. Stain-Test-Response Characteristics: Where elastomeric sealants are specified in the Elastomeric Joint-Sealant Schedule to be nonstaining to porous substrates, provide products that have undergone testing according to ASTM C1248 and have not stained porous joint substrates indicated for Project.
- D. Latex Joint Sealants: Comply with ASTM C834 for each product of this description indicated in the Latex Joint-Sealant Schedule at the end of Part 3.
- E. Joint-sealant Backing, General: Provide sealant backings of material and type that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
 - 1. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C1330, of type indicated below and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance:
 - a. Type C: Closed-cell material with a surface skin.
 - b. Type O: Open-cell material.
 - c. Type B: Bicellular material with a surface skin.
 - d. Type: Any material indicated above.
 - 2. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint where such adhesion would result in sealant failure. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.
- F. Miscellaneous Materials:
 - 1. Primer: Material recommended by joint sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
 - 2. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants with joint substrates.
 - 3. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:

1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Concrete.
 - b. Masonry.
 - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
 - d. Stucco.
 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
 4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Metal.
 - b. Glass.
 - c. Porcelain enamel.
 - d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
 3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application, and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
 3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193 unless otherwise indicated.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:

1. Extent of Testing: Test completed and cured sealant joints as follows:
 - a. Perform 10 tests for the first 1000 feet of joint length for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
2. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.
 - a. For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
3. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:
 - a. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
 - b. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
 - c. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion complies with sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
4. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant material, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.
5. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.

- B. Evaluation of Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

PART 4 - ELASTOMERIC JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

4.1 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. ASTM C 920, U.S. Federal Specification TT-S-00227E Class A, Type II , urethane sealant products complying with the following:
- B. Products: Available products include the following:
 - 1. Dynatrol II; Pecora Corporation.
 - 2. Dymeric 240; Tremco.
- C. Type and Grade: M (multi-component) and NS (nonsag).
- D. Class: 50.
- E. Additional Movement Capability: 50 percent movement in extension and 50 percent movement in compression for a total of 100 percent movement.
- F. Use Related to Exposure: NT (nontraffic).
- G. Uses Related to Joint Substrates: Primarily for use in joints of tilt-up concrete, masonry, EIFS and elsewhere as indicated.
- H. Stain-Test-Response Characteristics: Nonstaining to porous substrates per ASTM C1248.

4.2 LOW-MODULUS NONACID-CURING SILICONE SEALANT:

- A. Where joint sealants of this type are indicated, provide products complying with the following:
- B. Products: Available products include the following:
 - 1. 790; Dow Corning.
 - 2. Silpruf; GE Silicones.
 - 3. UltraPruf SCS2300; GE Silicones.
 - 4. HiFlex 331; NUCO Industries, Inc.
 - 5. NuFlex 309; NUCO Industries, Inc.
 - 6. VP 275; Ohio Sealants, Inc.
 - 7. 864; Pecora Corporation.
 - 8. 890; Pecora Corporation.
 - 9. PSI-641; Polymeric Systems, Inc.
 - 10. Omniseal; Sonneborn Building Products Div., ChemRex Inc.
 - 11. Spectrem 1; Tremco.
- C. Type and Grade: S (single component) and NS (nonsag).
- D. Class: 25.
- E. Additional Movement Capability: 100 percent movement in extension and 50 percent movement in compression for a total of 150 percent movement.
- F. Use Related to Exposure: NT (nontraffic).
- G. Uses Related to Joint Substrates: M, G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
 - 1. Use O Joint Substrates: Coated glass, color anodic aluminum, aluminum coated with a high-performance coating, galvanized steel, brick, granite, limestone, marble, ceramic tile, and wood.
- H. Stain-Test-Response Characteristics: Nonstaining to porous substrates per ASTM C1248.

4.3 MEDIUM-MODULUS NEUTRAL-CURING SILICONE SEALANT:

- A. Where joint sealants of this type are indicated, provide products complying with the following:
- B. Products: Available products include the following:

1. 756 H.P.; Dow Corning.
 2. Silglaze II; GE Silicones.
 3. 895; Pecora Corporation.
- C. Type and Grade: S (single component) and NS (nonsag).
- D. Class: 25.
- E. Additional Movement Capability: 50 percent movement in extension and 50 percent movement in compression for a total of 100 percent movement.
- F. Use[s] Related to Exposure: NT (nontraffic)
- G. Uses Related to Joint Substrates: M, G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
1. Use O Joint Substrates: Coated glass, color anodic aluminum, aluminum coated with a high-performance coating, galvanized steel, brick, granite, limestone, marble, ceramic tile, and wood.

4.4 MILDEW-RESISTANT SILICONE SEALANT:

- A. Where joint sealants of this type are indicated, provide products formulated with fungicide that are intended for sealing interior ceramic tile joints and other nonporous substrates that are subject to in-service exposures of high humidity and temperature extremes, and that comply with the following:
- B. Products: Available products include the following:
1. 786 Mildew Resistant; Dow Corning.
 2. Sanitary 1700; GE Silicones.
 3. NuFlex 302; NUCO Industries, Inc.
 4. 898 Silicone Sanitary Sealant; Pecora Corporation.
 5. PSI-611; Polymeric Systems, Inc.
 6. Tremsil 600 White; Tremco.
- C. Type and Grade: S (single component) and NS (nonsag).
- D. Class: 25.
- E. Use Related to Exposure: NT (nontraffic).
- F. Uses Related to Joint Substrates: G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
1. Use O Joint Substrates: ceramic tile.

PART 5 - LATEX JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

5.1 LATEX SEALANT:

- A. Where joint sealants of this type are indicated, provide products complying with the following:
- B. Products: Available products include the following:
1. Chem-Calk 600; Bostik Inc.
 2. NuFlex 330; NUCO Industries, Inc.
 3. LC 160 All Purpose Acrylic Caulk; Ohio Sealants, Inc.
 4. AC-20; Pecora Corporation.
 5. PSI-701; Polymeric Systems, Inc.
 6. Sonolac; Sonneborn Building Products Div., ChemRex, Inc.
 7. Tremflex 834; Tremco.

END OF SECTION 079200

SECTION 079219 - ACOUSTICAL JOINT SEALANTS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes acoustical joint sealants.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for elastomeric, latex, and butyl-rubber-based joint sealants for non-acoustical applications.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each acoustical joint sealant.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each kind and color of acoustical joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in 1/2-inch- wide joints formed between two 6-inch- long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.
- D. Acoustical-Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
 - 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
 - 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
 - 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
 - 4. Joint-sealant color.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Provide acoustical joint-sealant products that effectively reduce airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction, as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.

2.2 ACOUSTICAL JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex acoustical sealant complying with ASTM C 834.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.
 - b. Hilti, Inc.
 - c. Pecora Corporation.
 - d. Tremco Incorporated.
 - e. USG Corporation.

2. Colors of Exposed Acoustical Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

B. Non-Hardening Sealants

1. Non-hardening polyurethane type, ASTM C920, Type M, Class 25, Grade NS.
 - a. Basis-of-Design: Tremco "Dymeric 511".
2. Non-hardening polysulphide type, ASTM C920, one-part.
 - a. Basis-of-Design: Pecora "GC-9".
3. Non-hardening silicone type, ASTM C920, Type S, Class 25, Grade NS, one-part, low modulus type.
 - a. Acceptable Products: GE "Silpruf", Dow Corning 790, Tremco "Spectrum" 1 inch, Pecora 864, or approved equal.

C. Non-hardening Fire-Stop Sealant:

1. Gun or trowel-applied intumescent sealant: 3M "CPW-25WB+" or approved equal.
2. Moldable intumescent putty: 3M "Moldable Fire Stop" or approved equal.
3. Non-intumescent silicone sealant: 3M "Silicone Fire Stop", USG "SmokeSeal" or approved equal may be used in lieu of the sealant on foam rod in Noise Critical walls that are also fire rated.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Closed-cell tape sponge neoprene, 1/4 inch x 1 inch, Press-on Products (800-323-7467 or 630-628-2255), Part No. P8200 or P8100.
- B. Foam Backer Rod: Closed cell polyethylene, ASTM C962. Acceptable Manufacturers: ITP, Nomaco, or approved equal.
- C. Primer: Material recommended by acoustical-joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates.
- D. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- E. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive acoustical joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing acoustical joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by acoustical-joint-sealant manufacturer. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF ACOUSTICAL JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Comply with acoustical joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical joint sealant. Install acoustical joint sealants at both faces of partitions, at perimeters, and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C 919, ASTM C 1193, and manufacturer's written recommendations for closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions to underside of floor slabs above acoustical ceilings.
- C. Furnish and install acoustical sealant at the following locations:
 - 1. All penetrations of partition, wall, and floor construction by ductwork, conduit, piping, or structure.
 - 2. All termination of partitions enclosing Noise Critical Spaces to abutting construction (e.g. partitions, structure, etc.)
 - 3. Both sides of door frames to abutting construction where doors are scheduled to have acoustical seals.
 - 4. Both sides of window frames to adjacent construction.
 - 5. Perimeter of and penetrations through sound isolating ceilings, roof systems, and floor systems.
- D. Backer Rod shall be used in all joints. Product to be constructed of closed cell foam, or appropriate resilient material for sealant. Dimension shall be minimum 30% greater than joint width, unless otherwise indicated on details.
- E. Acoustical Ceiling Areas: Apply acoustical joint sealant at perimeter edge moldings of acoustical ceiling areas in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of acoustical joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect acoustical joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated acoustical joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

END OF SECTION 079219

SECTION 081113 – HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes hollow-metal work.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 087100 "Door Hardware" for door hardware for hollow-metal doors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings according to NAAMM-HMMA 803 or SDI A250.8.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate anchorage installation for hollow-metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, fire-resistance ratings, temperature-rise ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include the following:
 - 1. Elevations of each door type.
 - 2. Details of doors, including vertical- and horizontal-edge details and metal thicknesses.
 - 3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
 - 4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
 - 5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
 - 6. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
 - 7. Details of accessories.
 - 8. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
 - 9. Details of conduit and preparations for power, signal, and control systems.
- C. Schedule: Provide a schedule of hollow-metal work prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with final Door Hardware Schedule.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver hollow-metal work palletized, packaged, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.
 - 1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to factory-finished units.
- B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.

- C. Store hollow-metal work vertically under cover at Project site with head up. Place on minimum 4-inch- high wood blocking. Provide minimum 1/4-inch space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. Ceco Door; ASSA ABLOY.
 - 2. Curries Company; ASSA ABLOY.
 - 3. Fleming Door Products Ltd.; Assa Abloy Group Company.
 - 4. Republic Doors and Frames.
 - 5. Steelcraft; an Ingersoll-Rand brand.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain hollow-metal work from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Complying with NFPA 80 and listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for fire-protection ratings and temperature-rise limits indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.

2.3 INTERIOR DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct interior doors and frames to comply with the standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Standard-Duty Doors and Frames: SDI A250.8, Level 1. At locations indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
 - 1. Doors:
 - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
 - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
 - c. Face:
 - 1) Standard Interior Doors: Uncoated, cold-rolled steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.032 inch.
 - d. Edge Construction: Model 1, Full Flush.
 - e. Core: Manufacturer's standard kraft-paper honeycomb, polystyrene, polyurethane, polyisocyanurate, mineral-board, or vertical steel-stiffener core at manufacturer's discretion.
 - 2. Frames:
 - a. Materials:
 - 1) Standard Interior Frames: Uncoated, cold-rolled steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch.
 - b. Construction: Full profile welded.
 - c. Sound-Seal Openings: Where noted on door and frame schedule, non-fire rated sound seal frames to be cased opening type having a flat profile at the head and jamb, with the acoustical seals serving as stops. Fire rated frames shall utilize acoustical seals surface-mounted to the molded stops.
 - 3. Exposed Finish: Prime.

2.4 EXTERIOR HOLLOW-METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct exterior doors and frames to comply with the standards indicated for materials, fabrication,

hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.

B. Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: SDI A250.8, Level 2. At locations indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.

1. Physical Performance: Level B according to SDI A250.4.
2. Doors:
 - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
 - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches
 - c. Face:
 - 1) Non-Sound Rated Doors: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch, with minimum A40 coating.
 - d. Edge Construction: Model 1, Full Flush.
 - e. Core: Manufacturer's standard kraft-paper honeycomb, polystyrene, polyurethane, polyisocyanurate, mineral-board, or vertical steel-stiffener core at manufacturer's discretion.
 - 1) Thermal-Rated Doors: Provide doors fabricated with thermal-resistance value (R-value) of not less than 2.1 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu when tested according to ASTM C 1363.
3. Frames:
 - a. Materials: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch, with minimum A40 coating.
 - b. Construction: Full profile welded.
4. Exposed Finish: Prime.

2.5 FRAME ANCHORS

A. Jamb Anchors:

1. Stud-Wall Type: Designed to engage stud, welded to back of frames; not less than 0.042 inch thick.
2. Postinstalled Expansion Type for In-Place Concrete or Masonry: Minimum 3/8-inch- diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts. Provide pipe spacer from frame to wall, with throat reinforcement plate, welded to frame at each anchor location.

B. Floor Anchors: Formed from same material as frames, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch, and as follows:

1. Monolithic Concrete Slabs: Clip-type anchors, with two holes to receive fasteners.

2.6 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
- D. Frame Anchors: ASTM A 879/A 879M, Commercial Steel (CS), 04Z coating designation; mill phosphatized.
 1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M or ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B.
- E. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- F. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow-metal frames of type indicated.

- G. Grout: ASTM C 476, except with a maximum slump of 4 inches, as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.
- H. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers manufactured from slag or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
- I. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."
- J. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, compounded for 15-mil dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.

2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate hollow-metal work to be rigid and free of defects, warp, or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles, with minimum radius for metal thickness. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. To ensure proper assembly at Project site, clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment.
- B. Hollow-Metal Doors:
 - 1. Sound-Seal Openings: At openings scheduled to receive sound-seal doors, fabricate doors to receive fully mortised automatic door bottoms unless noted otherwise.
 - 2. Steel-Stiffened Door Cores: Provide minimum thickness 0.026 inch, steel vertical stiffeners of same material as face sheets extending full-door height, with vertical webs spaced not more than 6 inches apart. Spot weld to face sheets no more than 5 inches o.c. Fill spaces between stiffeners with glass- or mineral-fiber insulation.
 - 3. Fire Door Cores: As required to provide fire-protection and temperature-rise ratings indicated.
 - 4. Vertical Edges for Single-Acting Doors: Provide beveled or square edges at manufacturer's discretion.
 - 5. Top Edge Closures: Close top edges of doors with inverted closures, except provide flush closures at exterior doors of same material as face sheets.
 - 6. Bottom Edge Closures: Close bottom edges of doors where required for attachment of weather stripping with end closures or channels of same material as face sheets.
 - 7. Exterior Doors: Provide weep-hole openings in bottoms of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape. Seal joints in top edges of doors against water penetration.
- C. Hollow-Metal Frames: Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of same thickness metal as frames.
 - 1. Sidelite Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints, fabricated from same material as door frame. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by butt welding.
 - 2. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Grout Guards: Weld guards to frame at back of hardware mortises in frames to be grouted.
 - 4. Floor Anchors: Weld anchors to bottoms of jambs with at least four spot welds per anchor; however, for slip-on drywall frames, provide anchor clips or countersunk holes at bottoms of jambs.
 - 5. Jamb Anchors: Provide number and spacing of anchors as follows:
 - a. Stud-Wall Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches o.c. and as follows:
 - 1) Three anchors per jamb up to 60 inches high.
 - 2) Four anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches high.
 - 3) Five anchors per jamb from 90 to 96 inches high.
 - 4) Five anchors per jamb plus one additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches or fraction thereof above 96 inches high.
 - b. Postinstalled Expansion Type: Locate anchors not more than 6 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 26 inches o.c.

6. Head Anchors: Two anchors per head for frames more than 42 inches wide and mounted in metal-stud partitions.
7. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped frames, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.
 - a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
 - b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.
- D. Fabricate concealed stiffeners and edge channels from either cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet.
- E. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow-metal work to receive templated mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to SDI A250.6, the Door Hardware Schedule, and templates.
 1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.
 2. Comply with applicable requirements in SDI A250.6 and BHMA A156.115 for preparation of hollow-metal work for hardware.
- F. Stops and Moldings: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites and louvers where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted or mitered hairline joints.
 1. Single Glazed Lites: Provide fixed stops and moldings welded on secure side of hollow-metal work.
 2. Multiple Glazed Lites: Provide fixed and removable stops and moldings so that each glazed lite is capable of being removed independently.
 3. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames.
 4. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of hollow-metal work.
 5. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with glazing and installation types indicated.
 6. Provide frames without stops where scheduled to receive surface mounted acoustic sound-seal stops.
- G. Low Voltage Wiring: Where low voltage door hardware or security devices are scheduled, provide conduit or other pathways integral with hollow metal frames, from the door frame head to device mortises to allow conductors to be pulled through frames that are solidly grouted or filled with acoustic insulation.
 1. Coordinate with hardware schedule and with Owner's security vendor to ensure provisions are in place for low voltage conductors.

2.8 STEEL FINISHES

- A. Prime Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard primer.
 1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with SDI A250.10; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.

2.9 ACCESSORIES

- A. Louvers: Provide louvers for interior doors, where indicated, which comply with SDI 111C, with blades or baffles formed of 0.020-inch- thick, cold-rolled steel sheet set into 0.032-inch- thick steel frame.
- B. Mullions and Transom Bars: Join to adjacent members by welding or rigid mechanical anchors.
- C. Grout Guards: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.016 inch thick.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for embedded and built-in anchors to verify actual locations before frame installation.

- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
- B. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install hollow-metal work plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place. Comply with Drawings and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Install hollow-metal frames for doors, transoms, sidelites, borrowed lites, and other openings, of size and profile indicated. Comply with SDI A250.11 or NAAMM-HMMA 840 as required by standards specified.
 - 1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.
 - a. At fire-rated openings, install frames according to NFPA 80.
 - b. Where frames are fabricated in sections because of shipping or handling limitations, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
 - c. Install frames with removable stops located on secure side of opening.
 - d. Install door silencers in frames before grouting.
 - e. Remove temporary braces necessary for installation only after frames have been properly set and secured.
 - f. Check plumb, square, and twist of frames as walls are constructed. Shim as necessary to comply with installation tolerances.
 - g. Field apply bituminous coating to backs of frames that will be filled with grout containing antifreezing agents.
 - 2. Frames with Low Voltage Conductor Raceways: Prior to setting frames with low voltage conductor raceways, confirm with electrical drawings, hardware schedule, security vendor or other sources of electrically operated hardware, the termination requirements for the raceway (termination method, location, etc.).
 - 3. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor, and secure with post-installed expansion anchors.
 - a. Floor anchors may be set with power-actuated fasteners instead of post-installed expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.
 - 4. Metal-Stud Partitions: Solidly pack inside of ALL FRAMES set in metal-stud partitions with 2.5 pcf mineral wool batt insulation (USG Thermafiber or approved equal) prior to installation.
 - 5. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction (where applicable): Secure frames in place with post-installed expansion anchors. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
 - 6. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow-metal door frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumb to the following tolerances:
 - a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
 - b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
 - c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.

- d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs at floor.
- 7. Tightly caulk openings between steel frame and adjoining partition with sealant.
- 8. Apply sealant to all jamb and head seals prior to application of seals to frame.
- C. Hollow-Metal Doors: Fit hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below. Shim as necessary.
 - 1. Non-Fire-Rated Steel Doors:
 - a. Between Door and Frame Jambs and Head: 1/8 inch plus or minus 1/32 inch.
 - b. Between Edges of Pairs of Doors: 1/8 inch to 1/4 inch plus or minus 1/32 inch.
 - c. At Bottom of Door: 3/4 inch plus or minus 1/32 inch.
 - d. Between Door Face and Stop: 1/16 inch to 1/8 inch plus or minus 1/32 inch.
 - 2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances according to NFPA 80.
- D. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Section 08800 "Glazing" and with hollow-metal manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Secure stops with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than 9 inches o.c. and not more than 2 inches o.c. from each corner.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Final Adjustments: Check and readjust operating hardware items immediately before final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition. Remove and replace defective work, including hollow-metal work that is warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.
- B. Remove grout and other bonding material from hollow-metal work immediately after installation.
- C. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.

END OF SECTION 081113

SECTION 081416 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Solid-core doors with wood-veneer faces.
 - 2. Light frames and louvers.
 - 3. Factory finishing flush wood doors.
 - 4. Factory fitting flush wood doors to frames and factory machining for hardware.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 087100 "Door Hardware" for door hardware.
 - 2. Section 088000 "Glazing" for glass view panels in flush wood doors.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of door. Include details of core and edge construction, louvers, and trim for openings. Include factory-finishing specifications.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each kind of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; and the following:
 - 1. Dimensions and locations of blocking.
 - 2. Dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
 - 3. Dimensions and locations of cutouts.
 - 4. Undercuts.
 - 5. Requirements for veneer matching.
 - 6. Doors to be factory finished and finish requirements.
 - 7. Fire-protection ratings for fire-rated doors.
- C. Samples: For factory-finished doors, provide 12"x12" sample indicating matching stain color, sheen and wood species of the adjacent existing wood doors.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Package doors individually in plastic bags or cardboard cartons.
- C. Mark each door on bottom rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during remainder of construction period.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Warping (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch in a 42-by-84-inch section.
 - b. Telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch span.
 - 2. Warranty shall also include installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.
 - 3. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Algoma Hardwoods, Inc. (Marshfield Door Systems)
 - 2. Chappell Door Co.
 - 3. Eggers Industries.
 - 4. Graham Wood Doors; ASSA ABLOY Group company.
 - 5. Ipik Door Company.
 - 6. Mohawk Flush Doors, Inc.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain flush wood doors from single manufacturer.

2.2 FLUSH WOOD DOORS, GENERAL

- A. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, comply with WDMA I.S.1-A, "Architectural Wood Flush Doors."
- B. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade: Heavy Duty.
- C. Fire-Rated Wood Doors: Doors complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
 - 1. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.
 - 2. Cores: Provide core specified or mineral core as needed to provide fire-protection rating indicated.
 - 3. Edge Construction: Provide edge construction with intumescent seals concealed by outer stile. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
 - 4. Pairs: Provide fire-retardant stiles that are listed and labeled for applications indicated without formed-steel edges and astragals. Provide stiles with concealed intumescent seals. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
 - 5. Pairs: Provide formed-steel edges and astragals with intumescent seals.
 - a. Finish steel edges and astragals with baked enamel.
- D. Particleboard-Core Doors:
 - 1. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade LD-2.
 - 2. Blocking: Provide wood blocking in particleboard-core doors as follows:
 - a. 5-inch top-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have closers.
 - b. 5-inch bottom-rail blocking, in exterior doors and doors indicated to have kick, mop, or armor plates.

3. Provide doors with glued-wood-stave or structural-composite-lumber cores instead of particleboard cores for doors indicated to receive exit devices.
 - a. Structural Composite Lumber: WDMA I.S.10.
 - b. Screw Withdrawal, Edge: 400 lbf.

E. Mineral-Core Doors:

1. Core: Noncombustible mineral product complying with requirements of referenced quality standard and testing and inspecting agency for fire-protection rating indicated.
2. Blocking: Provide composite blocking with improved screw-holding capability approved for use in doors of fire-protection ratings indicated as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware.
3. Edge Construction: At hinge stiles, provide laminated-edge construction with improved screw-holding capability and split resistance. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
 - a. Screw-Holding Capability: 475 lbf per WDMA T.M.-10.

2.3 VENEER-FACED DOORS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

A. Interior Solid-Core Doors:

1. Grade: Premium, with Grade A faces.
2. Cut and Species, veneer leaf matching and assembly: See drawings and schedules for species and cut.
3. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening or separated only by mullions.
4. Room Match: Provide door faces of compatible color and grain within each separate room or area of building.
5. Exposed Vertical Edges: Same species as faces or a compatible species - edge Type A Same species as faces - edge Type A.
6. Construction: Five or seven plies. Stiles and rails are bonded to core, then entire unit is abrasive planed before veneering.
7. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade: Heavy Duty.

2.4 LIGHT FRAMES AND LOUVERS

- A. Wood Beads for Light Openings in Wood Doors: Provide manufacturer's standard wood beads unless otherwise indicated.

1. Wood Species: Same species as door faces.
2. Profile: Manufacturer's standard shape.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting unless otherwise indicated.

1. Comply with NFPA 80 requirements for fire-rated doors.

- B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, BHMA-156.115-W, and hardware templates.

1. Coordinate with hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
2. Coordinate Mortising for sound seals, door bottoms and scheduled acoustic hardware.
3. Metal Astragals: Factory machine astragals and formed-steel edges for hardware for pairs of fire-rated doors.
4. Coordinate door undercut with floor finish and threshold requirements at openings scheduled to receive mortised automatic door bottoms.

- C. Openings: Factory cut and trim openings through doors.

1. Notify architect where drawings indicate an opening that effects the warranty coverage of the door due to its proximity to the door edge or other openings or hardware mortises.
2. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.
3. Glazing: Factory install glazing in doors indicated to be factory finished. Comply with applicable requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."

2.6 FACTORY FINISHING

- A. General: Comply with referenced quality standard for factory finishing. Complete fabrication, including fitting doors for openings and machining for hardware that is not surface applied, before finishing.
 1. Finish faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises. Stains and fillers may be omitted on top and bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
- B. Factory finish doors.
- C. Transparent Finish:
 1. Grade: Premium .
 2. Finish: WDMA TR-6 catalyzed polyurethane.
 3. Staining: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 4. Sheen: Satin.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and installed door frames, with Installer present, before hanging doors.
 1. Verify that installed frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.
 2. Reject doors with defects.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Hardware: For installation, see Section 087100 "Door Hardware."
- B. Installation Instructions: Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and referenced quality standard, and as indicated.
- C. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.
- D. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.
- E. Coordinate with electrical the rough-in requirements for low voltage wiring within the body of the door.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.
- B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or that do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if Work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

END OF SECTION 081416

SECTION 083113 - ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Access doors and frames for walls and ceilings.
- B. Project Requirements: This section is intended to establish the standard for access doors and frames where required on the project. Coordinate with mechanical, electrical, plumbing and fire protection documents to determine where access is required within normally inaccessible construction.
 - 1. Where access is required in fire rated construction provide fire rated assemblies with UL assemblies with same rating as surrounding construction.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, fire ratings, materials, individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Detail fabrication and installation of access doors and frames for each type of substrate.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. Babcock-Davis.
 - 2. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.
 - 3. Karp Associates, Inc.
 - 4. Larsens Manufacturing Company.
 - 5. Milcor; Commercial Products Group of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of access door and frame from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES FOR WALLS AND CEILINGS

- A. Flush Access Doors with Concealed Flanges:
 - 1. Assembly Description: Fabricate door to fit flush to frame. Provide frame with gypsum board beads for concealed flange installation.
 - 2. Locations: As shown on drawings for wall and/or ceiling applications
 - 3. Door Size: As indicated on drawings.
 - 4. Uncoated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.060 inch, 16 gage.
 - a. Finish: Factory prime.

5. Frame Material: Same material and thickness as door.
6. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard.
7. Hardware: Latch.

2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- B. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 786/A 786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C or D.
- C. Steel Sheet: Uncoated or electrolytic zinc coated, ASTM A 879/A 879M, with cold-rolled steel sheet substrate complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), exposed.
- D. Frame Anchors: Same type as door face.
- E. Inserts, Bolts, and Anchor Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide access door and frame assemblies manufactured as integral units ready for installation.
- B. Metal Surfaces: For metal surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.
- C. Doors and Frames: Grind exposed welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Furnish attachment devices and fasteners of type required to secure access doors to types of supports indicated.
 1. For concealed flanges with drywall bead, provide edge trim for gypsum board securely attached to perimeter of frames.
- D. Latching Mechanisms: Furnish number required to hold doors in flush, smooth plane when closed.

2.5 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Painted Finishes: Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
 1. Factory Primed: Apply manufacturer's standard, lead- and chromate-free, universal primer immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing access doors and frames.
- B. Install doors flush with adjacent finish surfaces or recessed to receive finish material.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust doors and hardware, after installation, for proper operation.

- B. Remove and replace doors and frames that are warped, bowed, or otherwise damaged.

END OF SECTION 083113

SECTION 08385 – SOUND CONTROL DOOR ASSEMBLIES**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Work of this Section, as shown or specified, shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.2 WORK INCLUDED

- A. Work of this Section includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to complete the furnishing and installation of Sound Control Door Assemblies as shown on the drawings and specified herein.

1.3 RELATED WORK

- A. Consult all other Sections to determine the extent of work specified elsewhere but related to this Section. This work shall be properly coordinated to produce an installation satisfactory to the Owner.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit certified copies of 1/3 Octave Band Transmission Loss test data and STC rating as issued by an accredited independent acoustical laboratory.
- B. Submit Shop Drawings for fabrication and installation of door panels, door frames, hardware, and acoustical seals. Shop drawings shall include detail assembly drawings, showing the complete installation, a listing of materials, surface finishes, fabricating assembly and installation tolerances. No Shop Drawing shall be submitted which shows details or components that deviate from those shown or described on Construction Documents. A request for deviations must be submitted in writing to Architect for review and approval.
- C. Provide a Schedule of door assemblies using the same reference numbers for details and openings as those shown on Construction Documents.
- D. Submit with proposal a Schedule indicating a comparison of the Acoustical Performance and hardware requirements of these Specifications with the Acoustical Performance and hardware offered in the proposal.
- E. Samples: For factory-finished wood veneered doors, provide 12"x12" sample indicating matching stain color, sheen and wood species of architect's sample or of prefinished wood doors specified in Section 081416 "Flush Wood Doors".

1.5 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Deliver hollow metal work crated to provide protection during job storage. Use all means necessary to protect the material of this Section before, during and after installation and to protect the installed work and materials of all other trades. Inspect for damage prior to installation. Minor damage may be repaired on jobsite on approval; otherwise, replace damaged item.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

- A. The manufacturer of Sound Control Door Assemblies shall have a minimum 5 years experience in the fabrication and installation of acoustically-rated door assemblies similar to those of this Section.
- B. Laboratory Certification: Acoustical testing of submitted door assemblies shall be conducted in an accredited independent acoustical laboratory. Sound transmission loss values shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E90-90. Sound Transmission Class (STC) shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E413-87.
- C. Certification of acoustical tests must be submitted by Contractor for approval prior to installation.
- D. The Contractor shall employ an organization and personnel who are trained and skilled mechanics with previous experience in the installation of similar precision fabricated assemblies.
- E. Fabrication shall not proceed until written approval of Submittal has been issued.

- F. The force in pounds required to open and operate each door panel shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Americans with Disabilities Act.

1.7 FIELD CERTIFICATION

- A. Contractor shall guarantee acoustical performance in the field of the Sound Control Door Assemblies. The acoustical performance rating in the field shall not be less than a Noise Isolation Class (NIC) 0 dB lower than the laboratory STC rating of the door assembly when tested in the field in accordance with the noise reduction test procedure ASTM 336-75.
- B. The field test will be conducted by the Architect's acoustical consultant. The manufacturer's representatives should be present to observe testing procedures and conditions. Approval of test data to be given by Architect or representative of Architect.
- C. The requirement that the Contractor, at the time of bidding, submit certification of STC rating as obtained in an accredited acoustical laboratory, is mandatory. The guarantee of the achievement of acoustical performance of the NIC rating in the field will not be accepted as a substitute for the laboratory test certification. Complete compliance with the acoustical performance specifications, both laboratory and field, is required of the Contractor to be eligible as a bidder on the furnishing and installation of the Sound Control Door Assemblies.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. Basis of Design Door Assembly: As a basis of design provide units fabricated by Industrial Acoustics Company, Model "Noise Lock 51" or equivalent models by one of the other manufacturers listed below.
 - 1. Noise Barriers, LLC Libertyville, IL 847-843-0500
 - 2. Overly Manufacturing Company Greensburg, PA 724-834-7300
 - 3. Krieger Steel Products Company Pico Rivera, CA 310-695-0645

2.2 GENERAL

- A. Fabricate units to be rigid, neat in appearance and free from defects, warp or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles. Wherever practical, fit and assemble units in the manufacturer's plant. Identify work that is not permanently factory-assembled before shipment to ensure proper assembly at the Project site. Weld exposed joints continuously: grind, fill dress and make smooth flush and invisible.
- B. Cold rolled sheet steel: Per ASTM A366 and ASTM A568.
- C. Supports and anchors: Fabricate not less than 14-gauge sheet metal of shapes and sizes required to secure frames to partitions and concrete floor. Provide jamb anchors as determined by wall construction. Anchors are to be spaced at 12" on center (max) and are to be of a corrosion resistant material.
- D. Frames: Frames shall be slip-in configuration, continuously reinforced, fabricated from 14 gauge cold rolled, galvanized steel with an A60 coating weight and furnished "split" in two (2) pieces, inside and outside, that are mitered and welded together allowing for easy installation into either existing or new construction openings.
- E. Shop applied paint: For all steel surfaces use rust-inhibitive type primer paint suitable for finish coat of paint applied in the field.
- F. Fire Rating: As specified below or as shown on Drawings.
- G. Fabrication: Steel units to be rigid and free of defects, warp or buckle.

2.3 HARDWARE

- A. Hinges: Cam-lift, butt-type, hinges, by door manufacturer. Hinge manufacturer to furnish laboratory test data on request certifying that hinges of identical design have been cycled a minimum of 125,000 times while supporting a door leaf weighing a minimum of 350 lbs.
 - 1. Quantity of hinges as follows:

- a. For door leaf thickness less than or equal to 2 1/2":
 - 1) Two (2) hinges required per leaf for openings up to and including 96" high.
 - 2) Three (3) hinges required per leaf for openings up to and including 120" high
- 2. Closers: "LCN" or "Norton"
- 3. Pull Handles: 1" diameter x 9" overall length, 3" projection.
- 4. Push Plates: 4" wide x 16" high x .050" thick.
- 5. Latchsets/Locksets: Provided by door supplier. Refer to finish hardware schedule for details
- 6. Thresholds: Thresholds shall be ungrooved solid metal or wood. Thickness shall match finish floor height. Finish to be selected by architect.
- 7. Hardware Finish: Match door hardware finish specified in Section 087100.
- B. Finish hardware preparation: Prepare hollow metal units to receive mortised and concealed finish hardware, including cutouts, reinforcing plates, and drilling and tapping as required. Provide reinforcing plates for surface mounted items. Weight of door panels to be considered.

2.4 PRE-HUNG

- A. Assembly and adjustment of door leaf, frame, acoustic seals, hinges and associated finish hardware shall take place at the factory to insure ease of installation, reliable operation and acoustic performance. The entire manufactured assembly shall be shipped to the job site ready to install and operate.

2.5 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforce door panels for required hardware as follows:
- B. Hinges: 3/8" steel plate x 6" longer than hinge. Secure with not less than 6 spot-welds.
- C. Mortised Latchsets with Lever Handles: 14-gauge steel sheet with not less than 2 spot-welds.
- D. Surface Mounted Closers: 12-gauge steel sheet secured with not less than 6 spot-welds.

2.6 TYPE STC-51 SOUND CONTROL DOOR ASSEMBLY:

- A. Acoustical Performance: The acoustical performance requirements are that the door assembly (door frame, panel and acoustical seals) shall have not less than an STC 55 and include expanded specifications concerning sound transmission loss (TL) values in dB for each 1/3-octave band from 100 Hz to 5000 Hz, including TL at the 125 Hz 1/3-octave band which shall be a minimum 25 dB.
- B. Fabrication: The steel frame shall be 14-gauge cold rolled steel, reinforced continuously at jambs and head. The frame shall be of a "slip-in" configuration, and abut and terminate to specific partition construction as shown on Drawings. The sound insulating door panel shall be 2-1/2" thick, having cold rolled 14-gauge steel panel facings and continuously welded edges. The door shall be provided with a mortised astragal where scheduled on the drawings. The weight of door panel shall not exceed 11 psf. Vision ports to be installed in door panels where shown on Drawings and in Schedule. Provide integral double magnetic acoustical seals equal to those installed for certification tests.
- C. Door Finish: Provide metal doors with applied wood veneers, in species and finish to match prefinished wood doors specified in Section 081416 "Flush Wood Doors".
- D. Laminated Acoustical Glass (where applicable):
 - 1. Glass shall meet minimum requirements as specified in ASTM C1036-85.
 - 2. Interlayer shall be clear Saflex by Monsanto.
 - 3. Acoustical Performance: Laminated acoustical glass shall have not less than the STC values shown below, and include expanded specifications concerning sound transmission loss (TL) values in dB for each 1/3 octave band from 100 Hz to 5000 Hz, including TL at the 125 Hz 1/3 octave band which shall be no less than the values indicated below:

Glazing Thickness	STC	TL at 125 Hz
1/4"	36	27
1/2"	38	29

3/4"

41

30

4. Provide double glazed vision panels where required to meet or exceed the STC rating of the door.
- E. Glazing in Doors shall consist of the number of lites of glass type, thickness and treatment as required to achieve the specified acoustical performance of the door assembly, but shall in no case consist of fewer than two lites, each 1/4" thick laminated acoustical glass.
- F. Glazing channel shall be closed cell sponge EPDM glazing channel. Extruded U-channels by Atlantic India Rubber (219-534-1531), or approved equal.
- G. Non-Fire Rated Doors: Provide factory-installed, aluminum extruded stops and moldings with true mitered corners for double, glazed assemblies. Size of vision lite is to be determined from the door schedule. Safety glass or fire-resistive glazing product meeting doors' sound control and labeling requirements is acceptable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

- A. Prior to all work of this Section, carefully inspect the installed work of all other trades and verify that all is complete to the point where this installation may properly commence. Verify that Door Assemblies may be installed in complete accordance with the original design and the approved Shop Drawings. In the event of discrepancy, immediately notify the Architect immediately in writing.
- B. Shop prefabricate all doors and frames into complete units, verifying all measurements at the site prior to fabrication. Knock-down frames shall not be approved.
- C. Fabricate in strict accordance with approved Shop Drawings. Accurately miter and fit all members to hairline joints. Weld or mechanically fasten along entire line of contact on the unexposed side.
- D. Install units in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. The manufacturer shall provide a factory-trained engineer or mechanic at the jobsite to supervise the unloading, erection, final adjustments, and final check out of the Door Assemblies, including door panels, frames, hardware, and accessories.
- E. Back of steel frame shall be packed solid with minimum 6 pcf mineral wool batt insulation prior to installation when installed in drywall partition, or filled with grout prior to installation when installed in block partition.
- F. Set frames accurately in position, plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set.
- G. Tightly caulk openings between steel frame and adjoining partition with clear silicone sealant.
- H. Door frames shall be delivered to jobsite with a steel spreader connecting the bottom legs of the frame to ensure non-racking. Spreader does not determine the opening width.
- I. Fit doors accurately in frames with clearances recommended by the manufacturer.
- J. Apply clear silicone sealant to all jamb and head seals prior to application of seals to frame.
- K. Check and readjust the operating finish hardware items just prior to final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition. Remove and replace defective work, including doors or frames that are warped, bowed or otherwise unacceptable.

END OF SECTION 083850

SECTION 084113 - ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Exterior and interior storefront framing.
 - 2. Storefront framing for window walls.
 - 3. Storefront framing for punched openings.
 - 4. Exterior manual-swing entrance doors.
 - 5. Interior manual-swing entrance doors.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 087100 "Door Hardware" for door hardware not specified in this section.
- C. Alternate Requirements:
 - 1. See Section 012100 "Alternates" for description of base bid and alternate requirements pertaining to systems specified in this section.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts. Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
 - 2. Include full-size isometric details of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, showing the following:
 - a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
 - b. Anchorage.
 - c. Expansion provisions.
 - d. Glazing.
 - e. Flashing and drainage.
 - 3. Show connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
- D. Entrance Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under supervision of supplier, detailing fabrication and assembly of entrance door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams. Coordinate final entrance door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of entrance door hardware.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.
 - 1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
 - b. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - d. Water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas.
 - e. Failure of operating components.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts.
- B. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
 - 1. Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts shall withstand movements of supporting structure including, but not limited to, story drift, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
 - 2. Failure also includes the following:
 - a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
 - b. Glass breakage.
 - c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
 - e. Failure of operating units.
- C. Structural Loads:
 - 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.

D. Deflection of Framing Members: At design wind pressure, as follows:

1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to edge of glass in a direction perpendicular to glass plane not exceeding 1/175 of the glass edge length for each individual glazing lite or an amount that restricts edge deflection of individual glazing lites to 3/4 inch, whichever is less.
2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to 1/360 of clear span or 1/8 inch, whichever is smaller.

E. Structural: Test according to ASTM E 330 as follows:

1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies, including anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, or permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not less than 10 seconds.

F. Air Infiltration: Test according to ASTM E 283 for infiltration as follows:

1. Fixed Framing and Glass Area:
 - a. Maximum air leakage of 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
2. Entrance Doors:
 - a. Pair of Doors: Maximum air leakage of 1.0 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft..
 - b. Single Doors: Maximum air leakage of 0.5 cfm/sq. ft. Insert value at a static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft..

G. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Test according to ASTM E 331 as follows:

1. No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 10 lbf/sq. ft..

H. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from ambient and surface temperature changes:

1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. EFCO Corporation.
2. Kawneer North America; an Alcoa company.
3. Oldcastle Building Envelope™.
4. Tubelite Inc.
5. United States Aluminum.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain all components of aluminum-framed entrance and storefront system, including framing and accessories, from single manufacturer.

2.3 FRAMING

A. Framing Members: Manufacturer's extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.

1. Construction:
 - a. Exterior Locations: Thermally broken, 2" x 4 1/2" mullion profile, designed to accommodate 1"

- glazing.
 - b. Interior Locations: 1-3/4" x 4" nominal dimension; non-thermal designed to accommodate 1/4" glazing.
 - c. Sill Members: Provide manufacturer's extended height sill framing, thermally broken at exterior applications, non-thermal design at interior locations, 4-inch nominal height by same the depth as the remaining window members.
 - 2. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
 - 3. Glazing Plane: Center.
 - 4. Fabrication Method: Field-fabricated stick system.
- B. Backer Plates: Manufacturer's thermally broken extruded aluminum, continuous backer plates for framing members where framing abuts adjacent construction.
- C. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- D. Materials:
 - 1. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
 - a. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209.
 - b. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221.
 - c. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429/B 429M.
 - d. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.
 - 2. Steel Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM, and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.
 - a. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
 - b. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
 - c. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.

2.4 ENTRANCE DOOR SYSTEMS

- A. Entrance Doors: Manufacturer's standard glazed entrance doors for manual-swing operation.
 - 1. Door Construction: 1-3/4-inch overall thickness, with minimum 0.125-inch- thick, extruded-aluminum tubular rail and stile members. Mechanically fasten corners with reinforcing brackets that are deeply penetrated and fillet welded or that incorporate concealed tie rods.
 - 2. Door Design: Wide stile; 5-inch nominal width, with 10" bottom rail.
 - 3. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Square, snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.
 - a. Design exterior storefront doors to accommodate 1" insulated glass.
 - b. Provide nonremovable glazing stops on outside of door.

2.5 ENTRANCE DOOR HARDWARE

- A. Entrance Door Hardware: Hardware not specified in this Section is specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware". Coordinate fabrication of doors and frames with hardware specified to ensure proper anchorage, reinforcing and backing are incorporated into the system.

2.6 GLAZING

- A. Glazing: Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."
- B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard sealed-corner pressure-glazing system of black, resilient elastomeric glazing gaskets, setting blocks, and shims or spacers.

- C. Glazing Sealants: As recommended by manufacturer.

2.7 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.
 - 1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
 - 2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
 - 3. Use exposed fasteners with countersunk Phillips screw heads, finished to match framing system.
- B. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of 1 inch that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.
 - 1. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M requirements.
- C. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials.
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil thickness per coat.

2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- C. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
 - 1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
 - 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
 - 3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
 - 4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
 - 5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from exterior.
 - 6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- D. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.
- E. Entrance Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing entrance door hardware.
 - 1. At exterior doors, provide compression weather stripping at fixed stops.
- F. Entrance Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing entrance door hardware.
 - 1. At pairs of exterior doors, provide sliding-type weather stripping retained in adjustable strip and mortised into door edge.
 - 2. At exterior doors, provide weather sweeps applied to door bottoms.
- G. Entrance Door Hardware Installation: Factory install entrance door hardware to the greatest extent possible. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed entrance door hardware before applying finishes.
 - 1. Coordinate door and frame hardware prep where access control hardware is scheduled. Provide path for low voltage conductors through framing members and door stiles as required.
- H. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

2.9 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. High-Performance Organic Finish, Two-Coat PVDF: Fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat.
 - 1. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - 2. Color and Gloss: Black, manufacturer's standard gloss.
- B. Superior-Performance Organic Finish, Three-Coat PVDF: Fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat.
 - 1. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - 2. Color and Gloss: Black, manufacturer's standard gloss.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work. Before setting frames, review rough opening conditions to ensure proper amount of overlap with adjoining construction exists for proper installation of backer rod and perimeter caulk.
- B. Review head flashing details to ensure frame anchors do not penetrate any through-wall flashings.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare surfaces that are in contact with structural sealant according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to ensure compatibility and adhesion. Preparation includes, but is not limited to, cleaning and priming surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
 - 1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Do not install damaged components.
 - 3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
 - 4. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
 - 5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
 - 6. Seal perimeter and other joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal Protection:
 - 1. Where aluminum is in contact with dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with materials recommended by manufacturer for this purpose or by installing nonconductive spacers.
 - 2. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
- C. Install backer plates in jamb and head sections of open backed framing members in all storefront openings. Follow manufacturer's requirements for anchoring frames with backer plates.
- D. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed as specified in Section 07920 "Joint Sealants" to produce weathertight installation.
- E. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.

- F. Install operable units level and plumb, securely anchored, and without distortion. Adjust weather-stripping contact and hardware movement to produce proper operation.
- G. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 "Glazing."
- H. Install weatherseal sealant according to Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" and according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to produce weatherproof joints. Install joint filler behind sealant as recommended by sealant manufacturer.
- I. Entrance Doors: Install doors to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.
 - 1. Exterior Doors: Install to produce weathertight enclosure and tight fit at weather stripping.
 - 2. Field-Installed Entrance Door Hardware: Install surface-mounted entrance door hardware according to entrance door hardware manufacturers' written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.
 - 3. Coordinate routing of low-voltage wiring for access control hardware.

3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Erection Tolerances: Install aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to comply with the following maximum tolerances:
 - 1. Plumb: 1/8 inch in 10 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
 - 2. Level: 1/8 inch in 20 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
 - 3. Alignment:
 - a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to 1/2 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch.
 - b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from 1/2 to 1 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/8 inch.
 - c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of 1 inch wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to 1/4 inch.
 - 4. Location: Limit variation from plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet; 1/2 inch over total length.

END OF SECTION 084113

SECTION 084413 - GLAZED ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALLS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes glazed aluminum curtain walls.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 084113 - Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts for aluminum entrances set in curtain wall framing.
 - 2. Section 087100 "Door Hardware" for finish hardware not specified in this section.
 - 3. Section 088000 "Glazing" for glass in storefront and entrance doors.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For glazed aluminum curtain walls. Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
 - 2. Include full-size isometric details of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of glazed aluminum curtain walls, showing the following:
 - a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
 - b. Anchorage.
 - c. Expansion provisions.
 - d. Glazing.
 - e. Flashing and drainage.
 - 3. Show connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Fabrication Sample: Of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of assemblies, made from 12-inch lengths of full-size components and showing details of the following:
 - 1. Joinery, including concealed welds.
 - 2. Anchorage.
 - 3. Expansion provisions.
 - 4. Glazing.
 - 5. Flashing and drainage.
- E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For glazed aluminum curtain walls indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For glazed aluminum curtain walls to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.
 - 1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Assembly Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of glazed aluminum curtain wall that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
 - b. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - d. Water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas.
 - e. Failure of operating components.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01400 "Quality Requirements," to design glazed aluminum curtain walls.
- B. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of glazed aluminum curtain walls representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
 - 1. Glazed aluminum curtain walls shall withstand movements of supporting structure including, but not limited to, story drift, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
 - 2. Failure also includes the following:
 - a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
 - b. Glass breakage.
 - c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
 - e. Failure of operating units.
- C. Structural Loads:
 - 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. Deflection of Framing Members: At design wind pressure, as follows:

1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Maximum calculated deflection of any framing member in direction normal to plane of wall when subjected to specified design pressures for spans up to and including 13'-6", deflection shall be limited to 1/175 of its clear span; and for spans greater than 13'-6", deflection shall be limited to 1/240 of its span + 1/4", except that maximum deflection of members supporting plaster surfaces shall not exceed 1/360 of its span.
 2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to 1/360 of clear span or 1/8 inch, whichever is smaller.
- E. Structural: Test according to ASTM E 330 as follows:
1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
 2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies, including anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, or permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
 3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not less than 10 seconds.
- F. Air Infiltration: Test according to ASTM E 283 for infiltration as follows:
1. Fixed Framing and Glass Area:
 - a. Maximum air leakage of 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
- G. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Test according to ASTM E 331 as follows:
1. No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 15 lbf/sq. ft..
- H. Water Penetration under Dynamic Pressure: Test according to AAMA 501.1 as follows:
1. No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested at dynamic pressure equal to 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 18 lbf/sq. ft..
 2. Maximum Water Leakage: According to AAMA 501.1. Water leakage does not include water controlled by flashing and gutters, or water that is drained to exterior.
- I. Energy Performance: Certify and label energy performance according to NFRC as follows:
1. Thermal Transmittance (U-factor): When tested to AAMA Specification 1503, the thermal transmittance (U-factor) shall not be more than 0.67.
 2. Condensation Resistance (CRF): When tested to AAMA Specification 1503, the condensation resistance factor shall not be less than 69(frame) and 55(glass).
 3. Sound Transmission Class (STC):
- J. Noise Reduction: When tested to AAMA Specification 1801, the STC Rating shall be no less than 34 based upon 1" insulating glass (1/4", 1/2" air space, 1/4"); or no less.
- K. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from ambient and surface temperature changes:
1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. EFCO Corporation.
 2. Kawneer North America; an Alcoa company.
 3. Oldcastle, Inc.
 4. Tubelite Inc.
 5. U.S. Aluminum.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain all components of curtain wall system, including framing and accessories, from

single manufacturer.

1. Provide aluminum curtain wall framing from the same manufacturer and installer of aluminum storefront.

2.3 FRAMING

- A. Framing Members: Manufacturer's extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
 1. Construction: Thermally broken, 2-1/2" x 6-1/2" mullion profiles; pressure glazed, front set, stick wall system; designed to accommodate 1" glazing.
 2. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
 3. Glazing Plane: Front.
 4. Fabrication Method: Either factory- or field-fabricated system.
- B. Pressure Caps: Manufacturer's standard aluminum components that mechanically retain glazing.
 1. Include snap-on aluminum trim that conceals fasteners.
- C. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- D. Materials:
 1. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
 - a. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209.
 - b. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221.
 - c. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429/B 429M.
 - d. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.
 2. Steel Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM, and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.
 - a. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
 - b. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
 - c. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.

2.4 ENTRANCES

- A. Entrances: Comply with Section 084113 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts."

2.5 GLAZING

- A. Glazing: Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."
- B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard sealed-corner pressure-glazing system of black, resilient elastomeric glazing gaskets, setting blocks, and shims or spacers.
- C. Glazing Sealants: As recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Weatherseal Sealants: ASTM C 920 for Type S; Grade NS; Class 25; Uses NT, G, A, and O; chemically curing silicone formulation that is compatible with structural sealant and other system components with which it comes in contact; recommended by structural-sealant, weatherseal-sealant, and structural-sealant-glazed curtain-wall manufacturers for this use.
 1. Color: Match structural sealant.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.
 - 1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
 - 2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
 - 3. Use exposed fasteners with countersunk Phillips screw heads, finished to match framing system.
- B. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of 1 inch that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.
 - 1. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M requirements.
- C. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials.
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil thickness per coat.

2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- C. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
 - 1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
 - 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
 - 3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
 - 4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
 - 5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from exterior.
 - 6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- D. Fabricate components to resist water penetration as follows:
 - 1. Internal guttering system or other means to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within glazed aluminum curtain wall to exterior.
- E. Curtain-Wall Framing: Fabricate components for assembly using manufacturer's standard assembly method.
- F. Factory-Assembled Frame Units:
 - 1. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
 - 2. Prepare surfaces that are in contact structural sealant according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to ensure compatibility and adhesion.
 - 3. Preparation includes, but is not limited to, cleaning and priming surfaces.
 - 4. Seal joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.
 - 5. Install glazing to comply with requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."
- G. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

2.8 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. High-Performance Organic Finish, Two-Coat PVDF: Fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat.

1. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 2. Color and Gloss: Black, manufacturer's standard gloss.
- B. Superior-Performance Organic Finish, Three-Coat PVDF: Fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat.
1. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 2. Color and Gloss: Black, manufacturer's standard gloss.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare surfaces that will contact structural sealant according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to ensure compatibility and adhesion. Preparation includes, but is not limited to, cleaning and priming surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
 1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Do not install damaged components.
 3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
 4. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
 5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
 6. Where welding is required, weld components in concealed locations to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Protect glazing surfaces from welding.
 7. Seal joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal Protection:
 1. Where aluminum is in contact with dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer, applying sealant or tape, or installing nonconductive spacers as recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.
 2. Where aluminum is in contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
- C. Install components to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within glazed aluminum curtain wall to exterior.
- D. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.
- E. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 "Glazing."
 1. Prepare surfaces that will contact structural sealant according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to ensure compatibility and adhesion. Preparation includes, but is not limited to, cleaning and priming surfaces.
- F. Install weatherseal sealant according to Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" and according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to produce weatherproof joints. Install joint filler behind sealant as

recommended by sealant manufacturer.

3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Erection Tolerances: Install glazed aluminum curtain walls to comply with the following maximum tolerances:
1. Plumb: 1/8 inch in 10 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
 2. Level: 1/8 inch in 20 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
 3. Alignment:
 - a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to 1/2 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch.
 - b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from 1/2 to 1 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/8 inch.
 - c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of 1 inch wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to 1/4 inch.
 4. Location: Limit variation from plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet; 1/2 inch over total length.

END OF SECTION 08911

SECTION 087100 - DOOR HARDWARE**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY:

- A. This Section includes items known commercially as finish or door hardware that are required for swing, sliding, and folding doors, except special types of unique hardware specified in the same sections as the doors and door frames on which they are installed.
- B. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Architectural Hinges
 - 2. Continuous Hinges
 - 3. Pivots Sets
 - 4. Key Control System, Cylinders and Cores.
 - 5. Locksets, Latchsets and Deadbolts
 - 6. Panic Devices and Fire Rated Exit Devices
 - 7. Closers and Door Control Devices
 - 8. Automatic Door Operators
 - 9. Overhead Door Stops and Holders
 - 10. Floor and Wall Stops
 - 11. Door Bolts and Coordinators
 - 12. Door Pulls, Push/Pull Plates and Push/Pull Sets
 - 13. Protective Plates
 - 14. Door Seals, Gasketing and Weatherstripping
 - 15. Thresholds
 - 16. Miscellaneous Door Control Devices
 - 17. Electromechanical Hardware
 - 18. Miscellaneous Access Control Components and Security Equipment
- C. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to the following sections.
 - 1. Section 08 1113: Hollow Metal Doors and Frames
 - 2. Section 08 1400: Wood Doors
 - 3. Section 08 3323: Coiling Doors
 - 4. Section 08 4113: Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts
 - 5. Division 26: Electrical
 - 6. Division 28: Electronic Safety and Security
- D. Products furnished but not installed under this Section to include:
 - 1. Cylinders for locks on entrance doors.
 - 2. Final replacement cores and keys to be installed by Owner.

1.3 REFERENCES:

- A. UL - Underwriters Laboratories
 - 1. UL 10B - Fire Test of Door Assemblies
 - 2. UL 10C - Positive Pressure Test of Fire Door Assemblies
 - 3. UL 1784 - Air Leakage Tests of Door Assemblies
 - 4. UL 305 - Panic Hardware

B. DHI - Door and Hardware Institute

1. Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule
2. Recommended Locations for Builders Hardware
3. Keying Systems and Nomenclature
4. Installation Guide for Doors and Hardware

C. NFPA – National Fire Protection Association

1. NFPA 70 – National Electric Code
2. NFPA 80 – 2016 Edition – Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives
3. NFPA 101 – Life Safety Code
4. NFPA 105 – Smoke and Draft Control Door Assemblies
5. NFPA 252 – Fire Tests of Door Assemblies

D. ANSI - American National Standards Institute

1. ANSI A117.1 – 2017 Edition – Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities
2. ANSI/BHMA A156.1 - A156.29, and ANSI/BHMA A156.31 - Standards for Hardware and Specialties
3. ANSI/BHMA A156.28 - Recommended Practices for Keying Systems
4. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A - Interior Architectural Wood Flush Doors
5. ANSI/SDI A250.8 - Standard Steel Doors and Frames

1.4 SUBMITTALS:

A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specification sections.

B. Product data including manufacturers' technical product data for each item of door hardware, installation instructions, maintenance of operating parts and finish, and other information necessary to show compliance with requirements. For items other than those scheduled in the "Headings" of Section 3, provide catalog information for the specified items and for those submitted.

C. Final hardware schedule coordinated with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of door hardware.

1. Final Hardware Schedule Content: Based on hardware indicated, organize schedule into vertical format "hardware sets" indicating complete designations of every item required for each door or opening. Use specification heading numbers with any variations suffixed a, b, etc. Include the following information:
 - a. Type, style, function, size, and finish of each hardware item.
 - b. Name and manufacturer of each item.
 - c. Fastenings and other pertinent information.
 - d. Location of each hardware set cross-referenced to indications on Drawings both on floor plans and in door and frame schedule.
 - e. Explanation of all abbreviations, symbols, and codes contained in schedule.
 - f. Mounting locations for hardware.
 - g. Door and frame sizes and materials.
 - h. Keying information.
 - i. Cross-reference numbers used within schedule deviating from those specified.
 - j. Column 1: State specified item and manufacturer.
 - k. Column 2: State prior approved substituted item and its manufacturer.
2. Furnish complete wiring diagrams, riser diagrams, elevation drawings and operational descriptions of electrical components and systems, listed by opening in the hardware submittals. Elevation drawings shall identify locations of the system components with respect to their placement in the door opening. Operational descriptions shall fully detail how each electrical component will function within the

- opening, including all conditions of ingress and egress. Provide a copy with each hardware schedule submitted for approval. Supply a copy with delivery of hardware to the jobsite and another copy to the Owner at the time of project completion.
3. Submittal Sequence: Submit final schedule at earliest possible date particularly where acceptance of hardware schedule must precede fabrication of other work that is critical in the Project construction schedule. Include with schedule the product data, samples, shop drawings of other work affected by door hardware, and other information essential to the coordinated review of schedule.
 4. Keying Schedule: Submit separate detailed schedule indicating clearly how the Owner's final instructions on keying of locks has been fulfilled.
- D. Provide samples if requested of each type of exposed hardware unit in finish indicated and tagged with full description for coordination with schedule. Submit samples prior to submission of final hardware schedule.
1. Samples will be returned to the supplier. Units that are acceptable and remain undamaged through submittal, review, and field comparison process may, after final check of operation, be incorporated in the Work, within limitations of keying coordination requirements.
- E. Templates for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared for the installation of door hardware. Check shop drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.
- F. Contract closeout submittals:
1. Operation and maintenance data: Complete information for installed door hardware.
 2. Warranty: Completed and executed warranty forms.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE:
- A. Single Source Responsibility: Obtain each type of hardware (latch and locksets, hinges, closers, etc.) from a single manufacturer.
1. Supplier Qualifications: A recognized architectural door hardware supplier, with warehousing facilities in the Project's vicinity, that has a record of successful in-service performance for supplying door hardware similar in quantity, type, and quality to that indicated for this Project and that employs an experienced Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) who is available for consultation to Owner, Architect, and Contractor, at reasonable times during the Work.
- B. Coordination Meetings:
1. Contractor to set up and attend the following:
 - a. Lock distributor to meet with the Owner to finalize lock functions and keying requirements and to obtain final instructions in writing.
 - b. Lock distributor and lock, closer and exit device manufacturer to meet with the installer prior to beginning of installation of door hardware. Instruct installer on proper installation of specified products.
 2. General Contractor to set up and attend the following:
 3. Meet with the Owner, General Contractor, Supplier, electrical and security contractors to coordinate all electrical hardware items. Supplier to provide riser diagrams, elevation drawings, wiring diagrams and operational descriptions as required by the General and sub-contractors.
- C. Fire-Rated Openings: Provide door hardware for fire-rated openings that complies with NFPA Standard No. 80 requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Provide only items of door hardware that are listed and tested by UL or Warnock Hersey for given type/size opening and degree of label. Provide proper latching hardware, door closers, approved-bearing hinges and seals whether listed in the Hardware Schedule or not. All hardware to comply with State and local codes and UL 10C.

2. Where emergency exit devices are required on fire-rated doors, (with supplementary marking on doors' UL labels indicating "Fire Door to be equipped with Fire Exit Hardware") provide UL label on exit devices indicating "Fire Exit Hardware".
- D. All hardware is to comply with Federal and State Handicap laws.
- E. Substitutions: Request for substitutions of items of hardware other than those listed as "acceptable and approved" shall be made to the architect in writing no later than fourteen (14) days prior to bid opening. Approval of substitutions will only be given in writing or by Addenda. Requests for substitutions shall be accompanied by samples and/or detailed information for each manufacturer of each product showing design, functions, material thickness and any other pertinent information needed to compare your product with that specified. Lack of this information will result in a refusal.
- F. Pre-Installation Coordination:
 1. Installation of hardware shall be installed or directly supervised and inspected by a skilled installer certified by the manufacturer of locksets, door closers, and exit devices used on the project, or with not less than 3 years' experience in successful completion of projects similar in size and scope.
 2. Schedule a hardware pre-installation meeting on site to review and discuss the installation of continuous hinges, locksets, door closers, exit devices, overhead stops, and electromechanical door hardware.
 3. Meeting attendees shall be notified 7 days in advance and shall include: Architect, Contractor, Door Hardware Installers (including low voltage hardware), Manufacturers representatives for above hardware items, and any other effected subcontractors or suppliers.
 4. All attendees shall be prepared to distribute installation manuals, hardware schedules, templates, and physical hardware samples.

1.6 PRODUCT HANDLING:

- A. Tag each item or package separately with identification related to final hardware schedule and include basic installation instructions with each item or package.
- B. Packaging of door hardware is responsibility of supplier. As material is received by hardware supplier from various manufacturers, sort and repackage in containers clearly marked with appropriate hardware set number to match set numbers of approved hardware schedule. Two or more identical sets may be packed in same container.
- C. Inventory door hardware jointly with representatives of hardware supplier and hardware installer until each is satisfied that count is correct.
- D. Deliver individually packaged door hardware items promptly to place of installation (shop or Project site).
- E. Provide secure lock up for door hardware delivered to the Project, but not yet installed. Control handling and installation of hardware items that are not immediately replaceable so that completion of the Work will not be delayed by hardware losses both before and after installation.

1.7 WARRANTY:

- A. Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within published warranty period.
 1. Warranty does not cover damage or faulty operation due to improper installation, improper use, or abuse.
 2. Warranty Period: Beginning from date of Substantial Completion, for durations indicated in manufacturer's published listings.
- B. Warranties:
 1. Locksets: 10 Year Period
 2. Electromechanical Locksets: 3 Year Period
 3. Exit Devices: 10 Year Period

4. Electromechanical Exit devices: 3 Year Period
5. Surface Closers: 25 Year Period
6. Power Supplies: 3 Year Period
7. Weather Stripping/Gasketing: 5 Year Period
8. Overhead Stops: 10 Year Period

1.8 MAINTENANCE:

- A. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions that are packed in hardware items for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of door hardware.
- B. Parts kits: Furnish manufacturers' standard parts kits for locksets, exit devices, and door closers.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS:

- A. Requirements for design, grade, function, finish, size, and other distinctive qualities of each type of finish hardware are indicated in the hardware schedule at the end of this Section.

2.2 MANUFACTURED UNITS: (*Denotes manufacturer referenced in the Hardware Headings)

A. Hinges:

1. Acceptable manufacturers:

- a. Ives*
- b. Stanley
- c. McKinney

2. Characteristics:

- a. Provide hinges conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.1.
- b. Provide five knuckle, ball bearing hinges.
- c. 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) thick doors, up to and including 36 inches (914 mm) wide:
 - 1) Exterior: Standard weight, bronze or stainless steel, 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) high
 - 2) Interior: Standard weight, steel, 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) high
- d. 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) thick doors over 36 inches (914 mm) wide:
 - 1) Exterior: Heavy weight, bronze/stainless steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
 - 2) Interior: Heavy weight, steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
- e. 2 inches or thicker doors:
 - 1) Exterior: Heavy weight, bronze, or stainless steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
 - 2) Interior: Heavy weight, steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
- f. Adjust hinge width for door, frame, and wall conditions to allow proper degree of opening.
- g. Provide three hinges per door leaf for doors 90 inches (2286 mm) or less in height, and one additional hinge for each 30 inches (762 mm) of additional door height.
- h. Where new hinges are specified for existing doors or existing frames, provide new hinges of identical size to hinge preparation present in existing door or existing frame.
- i. Hinge Pins: Except as otherwise indicated, provide hinge pins as follows:
 - 1) Steel Hinges: Steel pins
 - 2) Non-Ferrous Hinges: Stainless steel pins
 - 3) Out-Swinging Exterior Doors: Non-removable pins
 - 4) Out-Swinging Interior Lockable Doors: Non-removable pins

5) Interior Non-lockable Doors: Non-rising pins

- j. Provide hinges with electrified options as scheduled in the hardware sets. Provide with number and gage of wires enough to accommodate electric function of specified hardware. Locate electric hinge at second hinge from bottom or nearest to electrified locking component. Provide mortar guard for each electrified hinge specified.

B. Geared Continuous Hinges:

- 1. Acceptable manufacturers:
 - a. Ives*
 - b. Select Products
 - c. Markar
- 2. Characteristics:
 - a. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.26, Grade 1.
 - b. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges, where specified in the hardware sets, fabricated from 6063-T6 aluminum.
 - c. Provide split nylon bearings at each hinge knuckle for quiet, smooth, self-lubricating operation.
 - d. Provide hinges capable of supporting door weights up to 450 pounds, and successfully tested for 1,500,000 cycles.
 - e. On fire-rated doors, provide aluminum geared continuous hinges classified for use on rated doors by testing agency acceptable to authority having jurisdiction.
 - f. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges with electrified option scheduled in the hardware sets. Provide with number and gage of wires enough to accommodate electric function of specified hardware.
 - g. Provide hinges 1 inch (25 mm) shorter in length than nominal height of door, unless otherwise noted or door details require shorter length and with symmetrical hole pattern.

C. Power Transfer:

- 1. Acceptable manufacturers:
 - a. Von Duprin EPT-10
- 2. Requirements:
 - a. Provide power transfer with electrified options as scheduled in the hardware sets. Provide with number and gage of wires enough to accommodate electric function of specified hardware.
 - b. Locate electric power transfer per manufacturer's template and UL requirements, unless interference with operation of door or other hardware items.
 - c. All hardwired, door mounted, electrified hardware to receive EPT-10 power transfer, unless scheduled authorized.

D. Power Supplies:

- 1. Acceptable manufacturers:
 - a. Von Duprin PS902 series.
- 2. Requirements:
 - a. Provide one power supply at each door scheduled to receive electric security hardware.
 - b. Verify with electrical drawings that service is run to each door where power supplies are scheduled. Prior to electrical rough-in, notify Architect of accessed controlled locations with no line voltage power.
- 3. Optional Provisions:

- a. Coordinate with Owner's Security Integrator to determine if low voltage power is available and can be provided by the Security Integrator's equipment to operate the specified electric security hardware.
 - b. Where low voltage power can be provided by the security integrator in the proper voltage and current draw, the specified power supply may be omitted at those openings.
 - c. Provide letter from Owner or Owner's Security Integrator stating availability and compatibility of their equipment to provide the necessary power for the operation of the specified hardware. Include specific locations and power to be supplied at each location.
- E. Cylinders and Keying:
 1. Acceptable manufacturers:
 - a. Match existing keying system per owner direction.
 2. Characteristics:
 - a. Existing System: Grandmaster key the locks to the Owner's existing system, with a new master key for the Project.
 - b. Review the keying system with the Owner and provide the type required (master, grandmaster or great-grandmaster), either new or integrated into Owner's existing system.
 - c. Metals: Construct lock cylinder parts from brass or bronze, stainless steel, or nickel silver.
 - d. Comply with Owner's instructions for master keying and, except as otherwise indicated, provide individual change key for each lock that is not designated to be keyed alike with a group of related locks.
 - e. Permanently inscribe each key with number of locks that identifies cylinder manufacturer's key symbol, and notation, "DO NOT DUPLICATE".
 - f. Key Material: Provide keys of nickel silver only.
 - g. Furnish the following Key Quantities:
 - 1) Three (3) change keys for each lock.
 - 2) Five (5) master keys for each master system.
 - 3) Five (5) grandmaster keys for each grandmaster system.
 - 4) Ten (10) construction master keys.
 - 5) Two (2) construction Control Keys.
 - 6) One (1) extra blank for each lock.
 - h. Furnish construction master keys to General Contractor.
 - 1) Deliver keys to Owner.
- F. Grade One Cylindrical Locks and Latches:
 1. Acceptable manufacturers:
 - a. Schlage ND Series*
 - b. Falcon T Series
 - c. Corbin CL3300 Series
 2. Required Features:
 - a. Chassis: Cylindrical design, corrosion-resistant plated cold-rolled steel.
 - b. Locking Spindle: Stainless steel, interlocking design.
 - c. Latch Retractors: Forged steel. Balance of inner parts: Corrosion-resistant plated steel, or stainless steel.
 - d. Lever Trim: Accessible design, independent operation, spring-cage supported, minimum 2" clearance from lever mid-point to door face.
 - e. All lock functions: 7-year warranty, Vandlgard function outside lever is disengaged when in the locked mode.

- f. Rosettes: Minimum 3-7/16" diameter for coverage of ANSI/DHI A115.18, 1994 door preparation, through-bolt lugs on both spring cages to fully engage this pattern.
 - g. Springs: Full compression type.
 - h. Electric operation: Manufacturer-installed continuous duty solenoid.
 - i. Strikes: 16 gage curved steel, bronze, or brass with 1" deep box construction, lips of sufficient length to clear trim and protect clothing.
 - j. Scheduled Lock Series Design:
 - 1) Lever Design RHODES.
 - k. Certifications:
 - 1) ANSI A156.2, 1994, Series 4000, Grade 1. Tested to exceed 3,000,000 cycles.
 - 2) UL listed for A label single doors up to 4 ft x 8 ft.
- G. Grade 2 Cylindrical Locks and Latches:
 - 1. Acceptable manufacturers:
 - a. Schlage ALX-Series*
 - b. Falcon W Series
 - c. Corbin Russwin CL3800 Series
 - 2. Required Features:
 - a. Chassis: Cylindrical design, corrosion-resistant plated cold-rolled steel.
 - b. Locking Spindle: Stainless steel, interlocking design.
 - c. Latch Retractors: Forged steel. Balance of inner parts: Corrosion-resistant plated steel or stainless steel.
 - d. Lever Trim: Accessible design, independent operation, spring-cage supported, minimum 2" clearance from lever mid-point to face of door.
 - e. Rosettes: Minimum 3-7/16" diameter for coverage of ANSI/DHI A115.18, 1994 door preparation, through-bolt lugs on both spring cages to fully engage this pattern.
 - f. Springs: Full compression type.
 - g. Strikes: 16 gage curved steel, bronze, or brass with 1" deep box construction, lips of sufficient length to clear trim and protect clothing.
 - h. Scheduled Lock Series Design:
 - 1) Lever Design RHODES.
 - i. Certifications:
 - 1) ANSI A156.2, 1994, Series 4000, Grade 2
 - 2) UL listed for A label single doors up to 4 ft x 8 ft.
- H. Exit Devices:
 - 1. Acceptable manufacturers:
 - a. Von Duprin 78 Series*
 - b. Sargent 8000 Series
 - c. Precision Apex 2100
 - 2. Characteristics:
 - a. Exit devices to be UL Listed for life safety. Exit devices for fire rated openings to have "UL" labels for "Fire Exit Hardware."
 - b. Exit devices mounted on labeled wood doors to be mounted on the door per the door manufacturer's requirements.
 - c. All trim to be thru bolted to the lock stile case.
 - d. Lever trim to be solid case material with a break-away feature to limit damage to the unit from vandalism. Lever design to match locksets.

- e. All exit devices to be made of brass, bronze, stainless steel, or aluminum material, powder coated, anodized, or plated to the standard architectural finishes to match the balance of the door hardware.
 - f. Provide glass bead kits (GBK) to shim exit devices on doors with raised glass beads, as required.
 - g. All exit devices to be one manufacturer. No deviation will be considered.
 - h. All series exit devices to incorporate a fluid damper, which decelerates the touchpad on its return stroke and eliminates noise associated with exit device operation. All exit devices to be non-handed. Touchpad to extend a minimum of 1/2 of the door width and to extend to the height of the cross-rail housing for a “no pinch” operation. Plastic touchpads are not acceptable. All latchbolts to be the deadlocking type. Latchbolts to have a self-lubricating coating to reduce wear. Plated or plastic coated latchbolts are not acceptable. Plastic linkage and “dogging” components are not acceptable.
 - i. Surface vertical rod devices to be UL labeled for fire door applications without the use of bottom rod assemblies. Where bottom rods are required for security applications, the devices to be UL labeled for fire doors applications with rod and latch guards by the device manufacturer.
 - j. Exit devices to include impact resistant, flush mounted end cap design to avoid damage due to carts and other heavy objects passing through an opening. End cap to be of heavy-duty metal alloy construction and provide horizontal adjustment to provide alignment with device cover plate. When exit device end cap is installed, no raised edges will protrude.
- I. Surface Closers:
- 1. Acceptable manufacturers:
 - a. LCN Closers 4050A Series*
 - b. Falcon SC70 Series
 - c. Norton 7500 Series
 - 2. Characteristics:
 - a. Provide door closers conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.4 Grade 1 requirements by BHMA certified independent testing laboratory. ISO 9000 certifies closers. Stamp units with date of manufacture code.
 - b. Provide door closers with fully hydraulic, full rack and pinion action with cast aluminum cylinder.
 - c. Body: 1-1/2-inch (38 mm) diameter with 11/16-inch (17 mm) diameter heat-treated pinion journal and full complement bearings.
 - d. Hydraulic Fluid: Fireproof, passing requirements of UL10C, and all weather requiring no seasonal closer adjustment for temperatures ranging from 120 degrees F to -30 degrees F.
 - e. Spring Power: Continuously adjustable over full range of closer sizes, and providing reduced opening force as required by accessibility codes and standards.
 - f. Hydraulic Regulation: By tamper-proof, non-critical valves, with separate adjustment for latch speed, general speed, and back check.
 - g. Pressure Relief Valve (PRV) Technology: Not permitted.
 - h. Provide stick on templates, special templates, drop plates, mounting brackets, or adapters for arms as required for details, overhead stops, and other door hardware items interfering with closer mounting.
- J. Surface Closers:
- 1. Acceptable manufacturers:
 - a. LCN Closers 1450 Series*
 - b. Falcon SC80 Series
 - c. Norton 8501 Series

2. Characteristics:
 - a. Provide door closers conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.4 Grade 1 requirements by BHMA certified independent testing laboratory.
 - b. Provide door closers with fully hydraulic, full rack and pinion action with cast aluminum cylinder.
 - c. Closer Body: 1-1/4-inch (32 mm) diameter, with 5/8 inch (16 mm) diameter heat-treated pinion journal and full complement bearings.
 - d. Hydraulic Fluid: Fireproof, passing requirements of UL10C, and requiring no seasonal closer adjustment for temperatures ranging from 120 degrees F to -30 degrees F.
 - e. Spring Power: Continuously adjustable over full range of closer sizes, and providing reduced opening force as required by accessibility codes and standards.
 - f. Hydraulic Regulation: By tamper-proof, non-critical valves, with separate adjustment for latch speed, general speed, and back check.
 - g. Pressure Relief Valve (PRV) Technology: not permitted.
 - h. Provide stick on and special templates, drop plates, mounting brackets, or adapters for arms as required for details, overhead stops, and other door hardware items interfering with closer mounting.
- K. Overhead Door Stop/Holders:
 1. Acceptable manufacturers:
 - a. Glynn Johnson*
 - b. Rixson Firemark
 2. Characteristics:
 - a. Provide heavy duty concealed door holders of stainless steel.
 - b. Provide heavy duty surface mounted door holders of stainless steel.
 - c. Concealed holders to be installed with the jamb bracket mortised flush with the bottom of the jamb. The arm and channel to be mortised into the door.
 - d. Surface holders to be installed with the jamb bracket mounted on the stop.
- L. Floor Stops and Wall Bumpers:
 1. Acceptable manufacturers:
 - a. Ives*
 - b. Trimco
 - c. Rockwood Manufacturing
 2. Characteristics: Refer to Hardware Headings.
- M. Door Bolts/Coordinators:
 1. Acceptable manufacturers:
 - a. Ives*
 - b. Trimco
 - c. Rockwood Manufacturing
 2. Characteristics:
 - a. Flush bolts to be forged brass 6-3/4" x 1", with 1/2" diameter bolts. Plunger to be supplied with milled surface one side that fits into a matching guide.
 - b. Automatic flush bolts to be UL listed as top and bottom bolts on a pair of classified fire doors. Bolt construction to be of rugged steel and brass components.
 - c. Self-latching flush bolts to be UL listed as top and bottom bolts on a pair of classified fire doors. Bolt construction to be of rugged steel and brass components.

- d. Automatic flush bolts and self-latching flush bolts to be UL listed for fire door application without bottom bolts (LBB).
 - e. Furnish dust proof bottom strikes.
 - f. Coordinator to be soffit mounted non-handed fully automatic UL listed coordinating device for sequential closing of paired doors with or without astragals.
 - g. Provide filler piece to close the header. Provide brackets as required for mounting of soffit applied hardware.
- N. Push Plates:
- 1. Acceptable manufacturers:
 - a. Ives*
 - b. Trimco
 - c. Rockwood Manufacturing
 - 2. Characteristics:
 - a. Exposed Fasteners: Provide manufacturers standard exposed fasteners.
 - b. Material to be forged stainless steel, per the Hardware Headings.
 - c. Provide plates sized as shown in Hardware Headings.
- O. Door Pulls & Pull Plates:
- 1. Acceptable manufacturers:
 - a. Ives*
 - b. Trimco
 - c. Rockwood Manufacturing
 - 2. Characteristics:
 - a. Provide concealed thru-bolted trim on back-to-back mounted pulls, but not for single units.
 - b. Material to be forged stainless steel.
 - c. Provide units sized as shown in Hardware Headings.
- P. Push Pull Sets:
- 1. Acceptable manufacturers:
 - a. Ives*
 - b. Trimco
 - c. Rockwood Manufacturing
 - 2. Characteristics:
 - a. Provide mounting systems as shown in hardware sets.
 - b. Material to be tubular stainless steel.
 - c. Provide Push/Pull sets sized as shown in Hardware Headings.
- Q. Protective Plates:
- 1. Acceptable manufacturers:
 - a. Ives*
 - b. Trimco
 - c. Rockwood Manufacturing
 - 2. Characteristics:
 - a. Provide manufacturers standard exposed fasteners for door trim units consisting of either machine screws or self-tapping screws.
 - b. Materials:
 - c. Metal Plates: Stainless Steel, .050 inch (U.S. 18 gage).

- d. Fabricate protection plates not more than 2 inches less than door width on push side and not more than 1 inch less than door width on pull side.
 - e. Sizes:
 - 1) Refer to hardware headings for specific sizes.
 - 2) Kick plates to be 8 inches in height.
 - 3) Mop plates to be 6 inches in height.
- R. Thresholds:
- 1. Acceptable manufacturers:
 - a. Zero Weatherstripping Co., Inc.*
 - b. Pemko
 - c. Reese Industries
 - 2. Types: Indicated in Hardware Headings.
- S. Door Seals/Gasketing:
- 1. Acceptable manufacturers:
 - a. Zero Weatherstripping Co., Inc.*
 - b. Pemko
 - c. Reese Industries
 - 2. Types: Indicated in Hardware Headings.
- T. Silencers:
- 1. Acceptable manufacturers:
 - a. Ives*
 - b. Hager
 - c. Rockwood Manufacturing
 - 2. Provide three for each single door; two for each pair of doors.
- U. Key Cabinet and System:
- 1. Acceptable manufacturers:
 - a. Telkee, Inc. (AS REQUIRED)
 - 2. Provide a key control system including envelopes, labels, tags with self-locking key clips, receipt forms, 3-way visible card index, temporary markers, permanent markers, and standard metal cabinet, all as recommended by system manufacturer, with capacity for 150 percent of the number of locks required for the project.
 - 3. Provide complete cross index system set up by key control distributor, and place keys on markers and hooks in the cabinet as determined by the final key schedule.
 - 4. Provide hinged-panel type cabinet for wall mounting.
 - 5. Provide multiple-drawer type cabinet.
- V. Knox Box:
- 1. Acceptable manufacturers:
 - a. Knox Box 3200 Series. (AS REQUIRED)
 - 2. Characteristics:
 - a. Provide one surface mount Knox Box 3200 Series.

- b. Provide unit compatible with the local Fire Department Knox key system.
- c. General contractor shall install in location provided by architect.

2.3 MATERIALS AND FABRICATION

- A. Manufacturer's Name Plate: Do not use manufacturers' products that have manufacturer's name or trade name displayed in a visible location (omit removable nameplates) except in conjunction with required fire rated labels and as otherwise acceptable to Architect.
 - 1. Manufacturer's identification will be permitted on rim of lock cylinders only.
- B. Base Metals: Produce hardware units of basic metal and forming method indicated, using manufacturer's standard metal alloy, composition, temper, and hardness, but in no case of lesser (commercially recognized) quality than specified for applicable hardware units by applicable ANSI/BHMA A156 series standards for each type of hardware item and with ANSI/BHMA A156.18 for finish designations indicated. Do not furnish "optional" materials or forming methods for those indicated, except as otherwise specified.
- C. Fasteners: Provide hardware manufactured to conform to published templates, generally prepared for machine screw installation.
 - 1. Do not provide hardware that has been prepared for self-tapping sheet metal screws, except as specifically indicated.
 - 2. Furnish screws for installation with each hardware item. Provide Phillips flat head screws except as otherwise indicated. Finish exposed (exposed under any condition) screws to match hardware finish or, if exposed in surfaces of other work, to match finish of this other work as closely as possible including "prepared for paint" surfaces to receive painted finish.
 - 3. Provide concealed fasteners for hardware units that are exposed when door is closed except to the extent no standard units of type specified are available with concealed fasteners.
 - 4. Do not use thru-bolts or sex bolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed in other work unless their use is the only means of adequately fastening the hardware, or otherwise found in Headings. Coordinate with wood doors and metal doors and frames. Where thru-bolts are used, provide sleeves for each thru-bolt as a means of reinforcing the work, or use sex screw fasteners.

2.4 Hardware Finishes:

- A. Match items to the manufacturer's standard color and texture finish for the latch and lock sets (or push-pull units if no latch or lock sets).
- B. Provide finishes that match those established by ANSI or, if none established, match the Architect's sample.
- C. Provide quality of finish, including thickness of plating or coating (if any), composition, hardness, and other qualities complying with manufacturer's standards, but in no case less than specified by referenced standards for the applicable units of hardware.
- D. Provide protective lacquer coating on all exposed hardware finishes of brass, bronze, and aluminum, except as otherwise indicated. The suffix "-NL" is used with standard finish designations to indicate "no lacquer."
- E. The designations used to indicate hardware finishes are those listed in ANSI/BHMA A156.18, "Materials and Finishes," including coordination with the traditional U.S. finishes shown by certain manufacturers for their products.
- F. All hardware to be 622 (US19/US315), 631 (F-BLK) Flat/Matte Black Finish, with the following exceptions:
 - 1. Exterior Hinges: 622 (Brass Substrate)
 - 2. Interior Hinges: 631 (Steel Substrate)
 - 3. Push Plates: BLK Matte Black (Stainless Steel Substrate)
 - 4. Pull Plates: BLK Matte Black (Stainless Steel Substrate)
 - 5. Protective Plates: BLK Matte Black (Stainless Steel Substrate)
 - 6. Hinges at rated openings to be of steel substrate, 631 finish.

7. Balance of hardware to be manufacturer's standard Flat/Matte Black Finish

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION:

- A. Mount hardware units at heights indicated in following applicable publications, except as specifically indicated or required to comply with governing regulations and except as otherwise directed by Architect.
 1. "Recommended Locations for Builders Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames" by the Door and Hardware Institute.
 2. "Recommended Locations for Builders Hardware for Custom Steel Doors and Frames" by the Door and Hardware Institute.
 3. NWWDA Industry Standard I.S.1.7, "Hardware Locations for Wood Flush Doors."
- B. Install each hardware item in compliance with the manufacturer's instructions and recommendations. Where cutting and fitting is required to install hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation or application of surface protection with finishing work specified in the Division 9 Sections. Do not install surface mounted items until finishes have been completed on the substrates involved.
- C. Set units level, plumb, and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce the attachment substrate as necessary for proper installation and operation.
- D. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors in accordance with industry standards.
- E. Set thresholds for exterior doors in full bed of butyl rubber or polyisobutylene mastic sealant complying with requirements specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealers".
- F. Weatherstripping and Seals: Comply with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations to the extent installation requirements are not otherwise indicated.

3.2 ADJUSTING, CLEANING, AND DEMONSTRATING:

- A. Adjust and check each operating item of hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate freely and smoothly or as intended for the application made.
 1. Where door hardware is installed more than one month prior to acceptance or occupancy of a space or area, return to the installation during the week prior to acceptance or occupancy and make final check and adjustment of all hardware items in such space or area. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish of hardware and doors. Adjust door control devices to function properly with final operation of heating and ventilating equipment.
- B. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by hardware installation.
- C. Door Hardware Supplier's Field Service:
 1. Inspect door hardware items for correct installation and adjustment after complete installation of door hardware.
 2. Instruct Owner's personnel in the proper adjustment and maintenance of door hardware and hardware finishes.
 3. File written report of this inspection to Architect.
- D. HARDWARE SCHEDULE

HARDWARE SET: 01

DOOR NUMBER:

EXTF EXTO EXTW

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	IVE
1	PANIC HARDWARE	78-NL	VON
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
1	SURFACE CLOSER	4050A SCUSH	LCN
1	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	GASKETING	8144FSBK PSA	ZER
1	DOOR SWEEP	8198BK	ZER
1	THRESHOLD	65BK-223	ZER

HARDWARE SET: 02

DOOR NUMBER:

EXTG

EACH TO HAVE:

6	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	IVE
1	REMOVABLE MULLION	4954 STAB	VON
1	PANIC HARDWARE	78-DT	VON
1	PANIC HARDWARE	78-NL	VON
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
2	SURFACE CLOSER	4050A SCUSH	LCN
2	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	MULLION SEAL	139N	ZER
2	MEETING STILE	328AA-S (PAIR)	ZER
1	GASKETING	8144FSBK PSA	ZER
2	DOOR SWEEP	8198BK	ZER
1	THRESHOLD	65BK-223	ZER

HARDWARE SET: 03

DOOR NUMBER:

EXTH

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	IVE
1	STOREROOM LOCK	ND80	SCH
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
1	OH STOP	100S	GLY
1	GASKETING	8144FSBK PSA	ZER
1	DOOR SWEEP	8198BK	ZER
1	THRESHOLD	65BK-223	ZER

HARDWARE SET: 04

DOOR NUMBER:

E101I E101J

EACH TO HAVE:

6	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	IVE
2	SURFACE BOLT	SB360 12" T	IVE
1	STOREROOM LOCK	ND80	SCH
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
2	OH STOP	100S	GLY

HARDWARE SET: 05

DOOR NUMBER:

W103A W105A

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	IVE
1	PANIC HARDWARE	78-L	VON
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
1	SURFACE CLOSER	4050A EDA	LCN
1	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	IVE
1	GASKETING	8144FSBK PSA	ZER
1	AUTO WD DOOR BOTTOM	369AA	ZER

HARDWARE SET: 06

DOOR NUMBER:

W104A W104B

EACH TO HAVE:

4	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	IVE
1	PANIC HARDWARE	78-L-NL	VON
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	IVE

TEMPLATE CLOSER FOR 180/MAX DEGREE SWING AS WALL CONDITION ALLOWS.

HARDWARE SET: 07

DOOR NUMBER:

K213A

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	IVE
1	FIRE EXIT HARDWARE	78-L-F	VON
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
1	SURFACE CLOSER	4050A EDA	LCN
1	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	IVE
1	GASKETING	8144FSBK PSA	ZER

HARDWARE SET: 08

DOOR NUMBER:

K203B

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	IVE
1	FIRE EXIT HARDWARE	78-L-NL-F	VON
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
1	SURFACE CLOSER	1450 SCUSH STD	LCN
1	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	GASKETING	8144FSBK PSA	ZER

HARDWARE SET: 09

DOOR NUMBER:

W201A

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	IVE
1	ENTRANCE/OFFICE LOCK	ALX50	SCH
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
1	SURFACE CLOSER	1450 EDA STD	LCN
1	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	GASKETING	8144FSBK PSA	ZER
1	AUTO WD DOOR BOTTOM	369AA	ZER
1	THRESHOLD	564	ZER

HARDWARE SET: 10

DOOR NUMBER:

K103A K201A

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5	IVE
1	FIRE EXIT HARDWARE	78-L-BE-F	VON
1	SURFACE CLOSER	4050A RW/PA	LCN
1	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	IVE
1	GASKETING	8144FSBK PSA	ZER

HARDWARE SET: 11

DOOR NUMBER:

K117A

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	IVE
1	FIRE EXIT HARDWARE	78-L-F	VON
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
1	SURFACE CLOSER	4050A RW/PA	LCN
1	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	IVE
1	GASKETING	8144FSBK PSA	ZER

HARDWARE SET: 12

DOOR NUMBER:

W103B

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	IVE
1	FIRE EXIT HARDWARE	78-L-F	VON
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
1	SURFACE CLOSER	4050A SCUSH	LCN
1	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	GASKETING	8144FSBK PSA	ZER

HARDWARE SET: 13

DOOR NUMBER:

W101A

EACH TO HAVE:

8	HINGE	5BB1HW 5 X 4.5 NRP	IVE
1	PANIC HARDWARE	7827-EO-LBR-785	VON
1	PANIC HARDWARE	7827-NL-OP-LBR-110MD	VON
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
2	90 DEG OFFSET PULL	8190EZHD 12" O	IVE
2	SURFACE CLOSER	4050A SHCUSH	LCN
2	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	GASKETING	8144FSBK PSA	ZER
1	MEETING STILE	56 X 156AA	ZER
2	AUTO WD DOOR BOTTOM	369AA	ZER

HARDWARE SET: 14

DOOR NUMBER:

W101B W101C

EACH TO HAVE:

8	HINGE	5BB1HW 5 X 4.5 NRP	IVE
2	PANIC HARDWARE	7827-EO-LBR-785	VON
2	90 DEG OFFSET PULL	8190EZHD 12" O	IVE
2	SURFACE CLOSER	4050A SHCUSH	LCN
2	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	GASKETING	8144FSBK PSA	ZER
1	MEETING STILE	56 X 156AA	ZER
2	AUTO WD DOOR BOTTOM	369AA	ZER

HARDWARE SET: 15

DOOR NUMBER:

W114A

EACH TO HAVE:

6	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	IVE
1	PANIC HARDWARE	7827-EO-LBR-785	VON
1	PANIC HARDWARE	7827-L-NL-LBR	VON
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
2	SURFACE CLOSER	4050A EDA	LCN
2	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
2	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	IVE
1	GASKETING	8144FSBK PSA	ZER
1	MEETING STILE	56 X 156AA	ZER
2	AUTO WD DOOR BOTTOM	369AA	ZER

TEMPLATE CLOSER FOR 180/MAX DEGREE SWING AS WALL CONDITION ALLOWS.

HARDWARE SET: 16

DOOR NUMBER:

K203A

EACH TO HAVE:

6	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	IVE
1	PANIC HARDWARE	7827-EO-LBR-785	VON
1	PANIC HARDWARE	7827-L-NL-LBR	VON
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
2	SURFACE CLOSER	4050A SCUSH	LCN
2	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	GASKETING	8144FSBK PSA	ZER
1	MEETING STILE	56 X 156AA	ZER
2	AUTO WD DOOR BOTTOM	369AA	ZER

HARDWARE SET: 17

DOOR NUMBER:

C116B

EACH TO HAVE:

6	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	IVE
1	FIRE EXIT HARDWARE	7827-EO-F-LBR-785-499F	VON
1	FIRE EXIT HARDWARE	7827-L-F-LBR-499F	VON
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
2	SURFACE CLOSER	4050A SCUSH	LCN
2	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	GASKETING	8144FSBK PSA	ZER
1	MEETING STILE	56 X 156AA	ZER

TEMPLATE CLOSER FOR 180/MAX DEGREE SWING AS WALL CONDITION ALLOWS.

HARDWARE SET: 18

DOOR NUMBER:

W114B

EACH TO HAVE:

6	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	IVE
2	PUSH/PULL BAR	9103EZHD-12"-NO	IVE
1	SURFACE CLOSER	4050A EDA	LCN
1	SURFACE CLOSER	4050A SCUSH	LCN
2	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	IVE
1	GASKETING	8144FSBK PSA	ZER
1	MEETING STILE	56 X 156AA	ZER

TEMPLATE CLOSER FOR 180/MAX DEGREE SWING AS WALL CONDITION ALLOWS.

HARDWARE SET: 19

DOOR NUMBER:

C104A C106A C106B K273A

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	IVE
1	CLASSROOM LOCK	ALX70	SCH
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	IVE

HARDWARE SET: 20

DOOR NUMBER:

C107A

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	IVE
1	CLASSROOM LOCK	ALX70	SCH
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
1	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	IVE

HARDWARE SET: 21

DOOR NUMBER:

C118A

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	IVE
1	CLASSROOM LOCK	ALX70	SCH
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
1	SURFACE CLOSER	1450 SCUSH STD	LCN
1	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	GASKETING	8144FSBK PSA	ZER

HARDWARE SET: 22

DOOR NUMBER:

K104A	K106A	K108A	K110A	K112A	K113A
K114A	K116A	K204A	K205A	K206A	K208A
K209A	K211A	K212A			

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	IVE
1	ENTRANCE/OFFICE LOCK	ALX50	SCH
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	IVE

HARDWARE SET: 23

DOOR NUMBER:

A102A	A104A	A108A	A110A	A114A	C105A
C105B	K107A	W111A	W115A		

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	IVE
1	ENTRANCE/OFFICE LOCK	ALX50	SCH
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	IVE

HARDWARE SET: 24

DOOR NUMBER:

C114A

EACH TO HAVE:

4	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	IVE
1	ENTRANCE/OFFICE LOCK	ALX50	SCH
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	IVE

HARDWARE SET: 25

DOOR NUMBER:

W115B

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	IVE
1	ENTRANCE/OFFICE LOCK	ALX50	SCH
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
1	OH STOP	100S	GLY

HARDWARE SET: 26

DOOR NUMBER:

A101A

EACH TO HAVE:

6	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	IVE
1	CONST LATCHING BOLT	FB51P	IVE
1	DUST PROOF STRIKE	DP1	IVE
1	ENTRANCE/OFFICE LOCK	ALX50	SCH
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
1	OH STOP	100S	GLY
1	SURFACE CLOSER	1450 CUSH STD	LCN
2	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE

HARDWARE SET: 27

DOOR NUMBER:

W203A

W204A

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	BY OTHERS	
1	PASSAGE SET	ALX10 43-005	SCH
1	FLOOR STOP	FS439	IVE

COORDINATE HARDWARE WITH STC RATED DOOR/FRAME MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER.
 BALANCE OF HARDWARE BY STC RATED DOOR/FRAME MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER.
 PROVIDE STC DOOR MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER APPROVED HINGE AS REQUIRED.

HARDWARE SET: 28

DOOR NUMBER:

W106A

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	IVE
1	PASSAGE SET	ALX10	SCH
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	IVE

HARDWARE SET: 29

DOOR NUMBER:

C115A

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	IVE
1	PASSAGE SET	ALX10	SCH
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
1	OH STOP	100S	GLY

HARDWARE SET: 30

DOOR NUMBER:

A202A

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1HW 5 X 4.5	IVE
1	PASSAGE SET	ALX10	SCH
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
1	OH STOP	100S	GLY

HARDWARE SET: 31

DOOR NUMBER:

K207A K210A

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5	IVE
1	PUSH PLATE	8200 4" X 16"	IVE
1	PULL PLATE	8303 10" 4" X 16"	IVE
1	SURFACE CLOSER	4050A RW/PA	LCN
1	MOP PLATE	8400 6" X 1" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	IVE

HARDWARE SET: 32

DOOR NUMBER:

A115A

EACH TO HAVE:

6	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	IVE
2	DOUBLE DUMMY TRIM	ALX172	SCH
1	ROLLER LATCH	RL32	IVE
2	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	IVE

TEMPLATE CLOSER FOR 180/MAX DEGREE SWING AS WALL CONDITION ALLOWS.

HARDWARE SET: 33

DOOR NUMBER:

A111A	A113A	K105A	K105B	K111A	K111B
K115A	W109A				

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	IVE
1	PRIVACY LOCK	ALX40	SCH
1	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	IVE

HARDWARE SET: 34

DOOR NUMBER:

A109A

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	IVE
1	PRIVACY LOCK	ND40S OS-OCC	SCH
1	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	IVE

HARDWARE SET: 35

DOOR NUMBER:

C108B	C108C	C108D	C108E	C108F	C108G
C108H	C108I	C112B	C112C	C112D	

EACH TO HAVE:

1	HINGE	3CB1 4.5 X 4.5	IVE
2	SPRING HINGE	3SP1 4.5 X 4.5	IVE
1	PRIVACY LOCK	ALX40	SCH
1	MOP PLATE	8400 6" X 1" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	IVE

ADJUST SPRING HINGES TO CLOSE STALL DOORS JUST SHORT OF LATCHING THE STALL DOOR. PROVIDE WALL STOP WHERE APPLICABLE.

HARDWARE SET: 36

DOOR NUMBER:

A111B

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	IVE
1	PRIVACY LOCK	ALX40	SCH
1	OH STOP	100S	GLY
1	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE

HARDWARE SET: 37

DOOR NUMBER:

W107A	W108A	W110A

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	IVE
1	PRIVACY LOCK	ND40S OS-OCC	SCH
1	OH STOP	100S	GLY

HARDWARE SET: 38

DOOR NUMBER:

A105A	A203A	C109A	C111A	C117A	K109A

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	IVE
1	PRIVACY LOCK	ND40S OS-OCC	SCH
1	SURFACE CLOSER	1450 RW/PA STD	LCN
1	MOP PLATE	8400 6" X 1" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	IVE

HARDWARE SET: 39

DOOR NUMBER:

W116A	W202A

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	IVE
1	PRIVACY LOCK	ND40S OS-OCC	SCH
1	SURFACE CLOSER	1450 EDA STD	LCN
1	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	IVE

HARDWARE SET: 40

DOOR NUMBER:

C110A

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	IVE
1	STOREROOM LOCK	ALX80	SCH
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
1	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	IVE

HARDWARE SET: 41

DOOR NUMBER:

W205A

EACH TO HAVE:

6	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	IVE
1	CONST LATCHING BOLT	FB51P	IVE
1	DUST PROOF STRIKE	DP1	IVE
1	STOREROOM LOCK	ALX80	SCH
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
2	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
2	FLOOR STOP	FS441	IVE

TEMPLATE CLOSER FOR 180/MAX DEGREE SWING AS WALL CONDITION ALLOWS.

HARDWARE SET: 42

DOOR NUMBER:

EXTV

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	IVE
1	FIRE EXIT HARDWARE	78-NL-F-SNB	VON
2	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
1	ELECTRIC STRIKE	6300 FSE 12/24 VAC/VDC	VON
1	SURFACE CLOSER	4050A SCUSH	LCN
1	RAIN DRIP	142AA (AS REQ'D)	ZER
1	GASKETING	8144FSBK PSA	ZER
1	DOOR SWEEP	8198BK	ZER
1	THRESHOLD	65BK-223	ZER
1	CREDENTIAL READER	BY SECURITY/ACCESS CTRL SYSTEMS	
1	DOOR CONTACT	679-05WD/HM	SCE
1	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 900-2RS 120/240 VAC	VON

COORDINATE HARDWARE WITH FIRE, ELECTRICAL, SECURITY AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEMS.

BALANCE OF EAC COMPONENTS BY ELECTRICAL, SECURITY AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEMS.

OPERATION: CREDENTIAL READER TO UNLOCK HARDWARE AND ALLOW PASSAGE MOMENTARILY. DOOR CONTACT MONITORED REMOTELY VIA SECURITY AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEMS. FREE EGRESS AT ALL TIMES.

HARDWARE SET: 43

DOOR NUMBER:

EXTK

EACH TO HAVE:

6	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	IVE
1	POWER TRANSFER	EPT10	VON
1	PANIC HARDWARE	LD-7847-EO	VON
1	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	QEL-7847-NL 24 VDC	VON
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
2	SURFACE CLOSER	4050A SCUSH	LCN
1	RAIN DRIP	142AA (AS REQ'D)	ZER
2	MEETING STILE	328AA-S (PAIR)	ZER
2	DOOR SWEEP	8198BK	ZER
1	THRESHOLD	65BK-223	ZER
1	CREDENTIAL READER	BY SECURITY/ACCESS CTRL SYSTEMS	
2	DOOR CONTACT	679-05WD/HM	SCE
1	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 900-2RS 120/240 VAC	VON

COORDINATE HARDWARE WITH ELECTRICAL, SECURITY AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEMS.

BALANCE OF EAC COMPONENTS BY ELECTRICAL, SECURITY AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEMS.

OPERATION: CREDENTIAL READER TO UNLOCK HARDWARE AND ALLOW PASSAGE MOMENTARILY. DOOR CONTACT MONITORED REMOTELY VIA SECURITY AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEMS. FREE EGRESS AT ALL TIMES.

HARDWARE SET: 44

DOOR NUMBER:

C116A

EACH TO HAVE:

6	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	IVE
2	POWER TRANSFER	EPT10	VON
1	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	QEL-7847-EO 24 VDC	VON
1	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	QEL-7847-NL-OP-110MD 24 VDC	VON
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
2	90 DEG OFFSET PULL	8190EZHD 12" O	IVE
2	SURFACE CLOSER	4050A SCUSH	LCN
1	CREDENTIAL READER	BY SECURITY/ACCESS CTRL SYSTEMS	
2	DOOR CONTACT	679-05WD/HM	SCE
1	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 900-2RS 120/240 VAC	VON

COORDINATE HARDWARE WITH ELECTRICAL, SECURITY AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEMS.

BALANCE OF EAC COMPONENTS BY ELECTRICAL, SECURITY AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEMS.

OPERATION: CREDENTIAL READER TO UNLOCK HARDWARE AND ALLOW PASSAGE MOMENTARILY. DOOR CONTACT MONITORED REMOTELY VIA SECURITY AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEMS. FREE EGRESS AT ALL TIMES.

HARDWARE SET: 45

DOOR NUMBER:

A107A

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	IVE
1	STOREROOM LOCK	ALX80	SCH
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
1	ELECTRIC STRIKE	4211/4212 FSAFSE 12/24 VDC	VON
1	SURFACE CLOSER	1450 RW/PA STD	LCN
1	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	IVE
1	CREDENTIAL READER	BY SECURITY/ACCESS CTRL SYSTEMS	
1	DOOR CONTACT	679-05WD/HM	SCE
1	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 120/240 VAC	VON

COORDINATE HARDWARE WITH ELECTRICAL, SECURITY AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEMS.

BALANCE OF EAC COMPONENTS BY ELECTRICAL, SECURITY AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEMS.

OPERATION: CREDENTIAL READER TO UNLOCK HARDWARE AND ALLOW PASSAGE MOMENTARILY. DOOR CONTACT MONITORED REMOTELY VIA SECURITY AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEMS. FREE EGRESS AT ALL TIMES.

HARDWARE SET: 46

DOOR NUMBER:

A107B

EACH TO HAVE:

3	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	IVE
1	STOREROOM LOCK	ALX80	SCH
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
1	ELECTRIC STRIKE	4211/4212 FSAFSE 12/24 VDC	VON
1	SURFACE CLOSER	1450 EDA STD	LCN
1	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	IVE
1	CREDENTIAL READER	BY SECURITY/ACCESS CTRL SYSTEMS	
1	DOOR CONTACT	679-05WD/HM	SCE
1	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 120/240 VAC	VON

COORDINATE HARDWARE WITH ELECTRICAL, SECURITY AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEMS.

BALANCE OF EAC COMPONENTS BY ELECTRICAL, SECURITY AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEMS.

OPERATION: CREDENTIAL READER TO UNLOCK HARDWARE AND ALLOW PASSAGE MOMENTARILY. DOOR CONTACT MONITORED REMOTELY VIA SECURITY AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEMS. FREE EGRESS AT ALL TIMES.

HARDWARE SET: 47

DOOR NUMBER:

A103A

EACH TO HAVE:

4	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	IVE
1	STOREROOM LOCK	ALX80	SCH
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
1	ELECTRIC STRIKE	4211/4212 FSAFSE 12/24 VDC	VON
1	SURFACE CLOSER	1450 EDA STD	LCN
1	KICK PLATE	8400 8" X 2" LDW B-CS	IVE
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	IVE
1	CREDENTIAL READER	BY SECURITY/ACCESS CTRL SYSTEMS	
1	DOOR CONTACT	679-05WD/HM	SCE
1	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 120/240 VAC	VON

COORDINATE HARDWARE WITH ELECTRICAL, SECURITY AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEMS.

BALANCE OF EAC COMPONENTS BY ELECTRICAL, SECURITY AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEMS.

OPERATION: CREDENTIAL READER TO UNLOCK HARDWARE AND ALLOW PASSAGE MOMENTARILY. DOOR CONTACT MONITORED REMOTELY VIA SECURITY AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEMS. FREE EGRESS AT ALL TIMES.

HARDWARE SET: 48

DOOR NUMBER:

C108A C112A K207B K210B

CASED OPENING TO RECEIVE NO HARDWARE.

HARDWARE SET: AL-01

DOOR NUMBER:

EXTE EXTL EXTS

EACH TO HAVE:

2	CONT. HINGE	112XY EPT	IVE
2	POWER TRANSFER	EPT10	VON
2	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	QEL-7847-EO 24 VDC	VON
1	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	QEL-7847-NL 24 VDC	VON
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
2	90 DEG OFFSET PULL	8190EZHD 12" O	IVE
2	OH STOP	100S	GLY
2	SURFACE CLOSER	4050A TOP JAMB	LCN
2	MOUNTING PLATE	4050A-18G SRT	LCN
1	THRESHOLD	65BK-223	ZER
1	CREDENTIAL READER	BY SECURITY/ACCESS CTRL SYSTEMS	
2	DOOR CONTACT	679-05WD/HM	SCE
1	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 900-2RS 120/240 VAC	VON

COORDINATE HARDWARE WITH ALUMINUM DOOR/FRAME MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER.

BALANCE OF HARDWARE BY ALUMINUM DOOR/FRAME MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER.

COORDINATE HARDWARE WITH ELECTRICAL, SECURITY AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEMS.

BALANCE OF EAC COMPONENTS BY ELECTRICAL, SECURITY AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEMS.

OPERATION: CREDENTIAL READER TO UNLOCK HARDWARE AND ALLOW PASSAGE MOMENTARILY. DOOR CONTACT MONITORED REMOTELY VIA SECURITY AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEMS. FREE EGRESS AT ALL TIMES.

HARDWARE SET: AL-02

DOOR NUMBER:

EXTA	EXTM	EXTT

EACH TO HAVE:

2	CONT. HINGE	112XY	IVE
1	PANIC HARDWARE	7847-EO	VON
1	PANIC HARDWARE	7847-NL-OP-110MD	VON
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
2	90 DEG OFFSET PULL	8190EZHD 12" O	IVE
2	OH STOP	100S	GLY
2	SURFACE CLOSER	4050A TOP JAMB	LCN
2	MOUNTING PLATE	4050A-18G SRT	LCN
1	THRESHOLD	65BK-223	ZER

COORDINATE HARDWARE WITH ALUMINUM DOOR/FRAME MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER.
BALANCE OF HARDWARE BY ALUMINUM DOOR/FRAME MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER.

HARDWARE SET: AL-03

DOOR NUMBER:

EXTB	EXTC	EXTD	EXTU

EACH TO HAVE:

2	CONT. HINGE	112XY	IVE
2	PANIC HARDWARE	7847-EO	VON
2	90 DEG OFFSET PULL	8190EZHD 12" O	IVE
2	OH STOP	100S	GLY
2	SURFACE CLOSER	4050A TOP JAMB	LCN
2	MOUNTING PLATE	4050A-18G SRT	LCN
1	THRESHOLD	65BK-223	ZER

COORDINATE HARDWARE WITH ALUMINUM DOOR/FRAME MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER.
BALANCE OF HARDWARE BY ALUMINUM DOOR/FRAME MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER.

HARDWARE SET: AL-04

DOOR NUMBER:

C101A	C101B	C101C	C101D

EACH TO HAVE:

2	CONT. HINGE	112XY	IVE
2	PUSH/PULL BAR	9103EZHD-12"-NO	IVE
2	OH STOP	100S	GLY
2	SURFACE CLOSER	4050A TOP JAMB	LCN
2	MOUNTING PLATE	4050A-18G SRT	LCN

COORDINATE HARDWARE WITH ALUMINUM DOOR/FRAME MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER.
BALANCE OF HARDWARE BY ALUMINUM DOOR/FRAME MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER.

HARDWARE SET: AL-05

DOOR NUMBER:

K101A

EACH TO HAVE:

2	CONT. HINGE	112XY EPT	IVE
2	POWER TRANSFER	EPT10	VON
2	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	QEL-7847-EO 24 VDC	VON
1	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	QEL-7847-NL 24 VDC	VON
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
2	90 DEG OFFSET PULL	8190EZHD 12" O	IVE
2	OH STOP	100S	GLY
2	SURFACE CLOSER	4050A RW/PA	LCN
2	MOUNTING PLATE	4050A-18G SRT	LCN
1	CREDENTIAL READER	BY SECURITY/ACCESS CTRL SYSTEMS	
2	DOOR CONTACT	679-05WD/HM	SCE
1	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 900-2RS 120/240 VAC	VON

COORDINATE HARDWARE WITH ALUMINUM DOOR/FRAME MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER.

BALANCE OF HARDWARE BY ALUMINUM DOOR/FRAME MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER.

COORDINATE HARDWARE WITH ELECTRICAL, SECURITY AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEMS.

BALANCE OF EAC COMPONENTS BY ELECTRICAL, SECURITY AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEMS.

OPERATION: CREDENTIAL READER TO UNLOCK HARDWARE AND ALLOW PASSAGE MOMENTARILY. DOOR CONTACT MONITORED REMOTELY VIA SECURITY AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEMS. FREE EGRESS AT ALL TIMES.

HARDWARE SET: AL-06

DOOR NUMBER:

A207A	A208A	A209A	A210A

EACH TO HAVE:

1	CONT. HINGE	112XY	IVE
1	ENTRANCE/OFFICE LOCK	ALX50	SCH
1	CYL/CORE	AS REQUIRED	
1	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	IVE

END OF SECTION 087100

SECTION 088000 - GLAZING**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
 - 1. Glass for windows, doors, interior borrowed lites, and storefront framing.
 - 2. Glazing sealants and accessories.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 084113 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts"

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters according to ASTM C 1036.
- C. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit.
- D. Sealed Insulating Glass Unit Surfaces:
 - 1. Surface No. 1: Exterior surface of outer lite.
 - 2. Surface No. 2: Interior surface of outer lite.
 - 3. Surface No. 3: Exterior surface of inner lite.
 - 4. Surface No. 4: Interior surface of inner lite.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate glazing channel dimensions to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Glass Samples: For each type of glass product other than clear monolithic vision glass the following products; 12 inches square.
 - 1. Tinted glass.
 - 2. Coated glass.
 - 3. Insulating glass.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications for Insulating-Glass Units with Sputter-Coated, Low-E Coatings: A qualified insulating-glass manufacturer who is approved by coated-glass manufacturer.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under the National Glass Association's Certified Glass Installer Program.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.
- B. Comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written instructions for venting and sealing units to avoid hermetic seal ruptures due to altitude change.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
 - 1. Do not install glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer agrees to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of coated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in coating.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Insulating Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of insulating glass is defined as failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products as follows:
 - 1. Basis of Design Product: Guardian Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Products equal in appearance and meeting or exceeding the performance specifications of the basis-of-design product as produced by one of the following:
 - a. Cardinal Glass Industries.
 - b. Pilkington North America.
 - c. PPG Industries, Inc.
 - d. Viracon, Inc.
- B. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each glass type.
 - 1. Obtain tinted glass from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each product and installation method.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Installed glazing systems shall withstand normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective

manufacture, fabrication, or installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.

- B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design glazing.
- C. Structural Performance: Glazing shall withstand the following design loads within limits and under conditions indicated determined according to the IBC and ASTM E 1300.
 - 1. Design Wind Pressures: Determine design wind pressures applicable to Project according to ASCE/SEI 7, based on heights above grade indicated on Drawings.
 - a. Basic Wind Speed: As indicated on drawings.
 - b. Importance Factor: As indicated on drawings.
 - c. Exposure Category: As indicated on drawings.
 - 2. Maximum Lateral Deflection: For glass supported on all four edges, limit center-of-glass deflection at design wind pressure to not more than 1/50 times the short-side length or 1 inch, whichever is less.
 - 3. Differential Shading: Design glass to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading within individual glass lites.
- D. Safety Glazing: Where safety glazing is indicated, provide glazing that complies with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.
- E. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified, as indicated in manufacturer's published test data, based on procedures indicated below:
 - 1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6 mm thick.
 - 2. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite.
 - 3. U-Factors: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 100 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program, expressed as Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F.
 - 4. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 200 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program.
 - 5. Visible Reflectance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 300.

2.3 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below unless more stringent requirements are indicated. See these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
 - 1. GANA Publications: "Laminated Glazing Reference Manual" and "Glazing Manual."
 - 2. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use."
- B. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.
- C. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of IGCC.
- D. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass that complies with performance requirements and is not less than the thickness indicated.
 - 1. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites: 6 mm.
 - 2. Thickness of Tinted Glass: Provide same thickness for each tint color indicated throughout Project.

- E. Strength: Where annealed float glass is indicated, provide annealed float glass, heat-strengthened float glass, or fully tempered float glass. Where heat-strengthened float glass is indicated, provide heat-strengthened float glass or fully tempered float glass. Where fully tempered float glass is indicated, provide fully tempered float glass.

2.4 GLASS PRODUCTS

- A. Clear Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality-Q3.
- B. Fully Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
 - 1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Heat-Strengthened Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind HS (heat strengthened), Type I, Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
 - 1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Pyrolytic-Coated, Low-Maintenance Glass: Clear float glass with a coating on first surface having both photocatalytic and hydrophilic properties that act to loosen dirt and to cause water to sheet evenly over the glass instead of beading.

2.5 INSULATING GLASS

- A. Insulating-Glass Units: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified according to ASTM E 2190.
 - 1. Sealing System: Dual seal, with manufacturer's standard primary and secondary sealants.
 - 2. Spacer: Aluminum with anodic finish to match storefront.
 - 3. Desiccant: Molecular sieve or silica gel, or a blend of both.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, with requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- C. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
- D. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
- E. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).

2.7 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

- A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.
 - 1. Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on glass framing members and glazing components.
 - a. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- B. Grind smooth and polish exposed glass edges and corners.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine framing, glazing channels, and stops, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
 - 1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
 - 2. Presence and functioning of weep systems.
 - 3. Minimum required face and edge clearances.
 - 4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.
- B. Examine glazing units to locate exterior and interior surfaces. Label or mark units as needed so that exterior and interior surfaces are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that leave visible marks in the completed Work.

3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass includes glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass, impair performance, or impair appearance.
- C. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.
- D. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- E. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- F. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches.
 - 1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
 - 2. Provide 1/8-inch minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.
- G. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- H. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
- I. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.
- J. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.
- K. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

3.4 TAPE GLAZING

- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
- B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
- C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first, then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs, then to heads and sills.
- D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
- E. Do not remove release paper from tape until right before each glazing unit is installed.
- F. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.
- G. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
- H. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.

3.5 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

- A. Cut compression gaskets to lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.
- B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
- C. Installation with Drive-in Wedge Gaskets: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- D. Installation with Pressure-Glazing Stops: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket. Install dense compression gaskets and pressure-glazing stops, applying pressure uniformly to compression gaskets. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- E. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after installation remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains.
 - 1. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer. Remove and replace glass that cannot be cleaned without damage to coatings.
- C. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period.
- D. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

PART 4 - GLAZING SCHEDULE

4.1 MONOLITHIC GLASS SCHEDULE

A. Glass Type: Clear annealed float glass.

1. Minimum Thickness: 6 mm.
2. Extent: At interior locations not requiring safety glazing (tempered or laminated), wire glass, fire protection rated or fire resistant rated glazing.

B. Glass Type: Clear fully tempered float glass.

1. Minimum Thickness: 6 mm.
2. Safety glazing label required.
3. Extent: At non-rated interior locations requiring safety glazing.

4.2 INSULATING GLASS SCHEDULE

A. Glass Type: Double-glazed insulating glass units, conforming to ASTM E 2190.

1. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch.

B. Interior Locations:

1. Inboard and Outdoor Lites: Guardian Clear float glass.
 - a. Annealed Clear Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type 1, Class 1, Quality q3.
 - b. Glass Thickness: 6 mm.
 - c. Heat Treatment: Heat-strengthened, ASTM C 1048, Kind HS
 - 1) Where required for safety glazing, provide fully tempered; ASTM C 1048, Kind FT; CPSC 16CFR-1201; ANSI Z 97.1
2. Air Space: 12 mm wide, hermetically sealed, dehydrated air space.
3. Edge Seals: ASTM E 2188, with aluminum spacers, dual-sealed with a primary seal of polyisobutylene and a secondary seal of silicone sealant for glass-to-spacer seals.
4. Sealant: Approved by glass manufacturer.

C. Exterior Locations, including fixed storefront and aluminum entrances (doors and fixed framing).

1. Glass Type: Double-Glazed Sputter-Coated Insulating Glass Units.
2. Outdoor Lite: Sputter-coated Guardian gray-tinted float glass.
 - a. Annealed Gray-Tinted Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type 1, Class 2, Quality q3.
 - b. Vacuum Deposition Sputtered Coating: ASTM C 1376.
 - c. Coating on Surface No. 2: **SunGuard SNX 62/27.**
 - d. Glass Thickness: 6 mm.
 - e. Heat Treatment: Heat-strengthened, ASTM C 1048, Kind HS
 - 1) Where required for safety glazing, provide fully tempered; ASTM C 1048, Kind FT; CPSC 16CFR-1201; ANSI Z 97.1
3. Air Space: 12 mm wide, hermetically sealed, dehydrated air space.
4. Inboard Lite: Guardian Clear float glass.
 - a. Annealed Clear Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type 1, Class 1, Quality q3.
 - b. Glass Thickness: 6 mm.
 - c. Heat Treatment: Heat-strengthened, ASTM C 1048, Kind HS
 - 1) Where required for safety glazing, provide fully tempered; ASTM C 1048, Kind FT; CPSC 16CFR-1201; ANSI Z 97.1
5. Glass Unit Performance Characteristics:
 - a. Visible Light Transmittance: 31 percent
 - b. Visible Light Reflectance Outdoors: 6 percent

- c. Direct Solar Energy Transmittance: 12 percent
 - d. Direct Solar Energy Reflectance Outdoors: 19 percent
 - e. Winter U-Value Nighttime: 0.29
 - f. Summer U-Value Daytime: 0.27
 - g. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: 0.18
 - h. Summer Relative Heat Gain: 45
6. Edge Seals: ASTM E 2188, with aluminum spacers, dual-sealed with a primary seal of polyisobutylene and a secondary seal of silicone sealant for glass-to-spacer seals.
7. Sealant: Approved by glass manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 088000

SECTION 092216 - NON-LOAD-BEARING STEEL FRAMING**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Non-load-bearing steel framing systems for interior gypsum board assemblies.
 - 2. Suspension systems for interior gypsum ceilings, soffits, and grid systems.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 054000 "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for exterior and interior load-bearing and exterior non-load-bearing wall studs.
 - 2. Section 064116 "Plastic-Laminate-Faced Architectural Cabinets" for requirements of additional metal stud framing and related wood blocking where concealed metal countertop brackets are indicated.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Submit base metal thicknesses for each stud depth required, based on the limiting heights of studs for partitions with different number of layers of gypsum board, and one sided or two sided applications.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated, according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.
- B. Horizontal Deflection: For wall assemblies, limited to 1/240 1/360 of the wall height based on horizontal loading of 5 lbf/sq. ft..
- C. Design framing systems in accordance with American Iron and Steel Institute Publication "S220 - North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Nonstructural Members", except as otherwise shown or specified.
- D. Design loads: As indicated on the Architectural Drawings or 5 PSF minimum as required by the International Building Code.
- E. Design framing systems to accommodate deflection of primary building structure and construction tolerances.

2.2 FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Framing Members, General: Comply with ASTM C 754 for conditions indicated.
 - 1. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with ASTM C 645 requirements for metal unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Protective Coating: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G40, hot-dip galvanized unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645. Use either steel studs and runners or dimpled steel studs and runners.

1. Steel Studs and Runners:
 - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As required by the manufacturer for partition heights and layers of gypsum board indicated, but not less than 0.018 inch.
 - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
2. Dimpled Steel Studs and Runners:
 - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As required by the manufacturer for partition heights and layers of gypsum board indicated, but not less than 0.015 inch.
 - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
- C. Firestop Tracks: Top runner manufactured to allow partition heads to expand and contract with movement of the structure while maintaining continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
- D. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width indicated.
 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.033 inch.
- E. Cold-Rolled Channel Bridging: Steel, 0.053-inch minimum base-metal thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.
 1. Depth: 1-1/2 inches.
 2. Clip Angle: Not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches, 0.068-inch- thick, galvanized steel.
- F. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645.
 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.018 inch.
 2. Depth: 7/8 inch.
- G. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch- deep, steel sheet members designed to reduce sound transmission.
 1. Configuration: Asymmetrical.
- H. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: 0.053-inch uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- wide flanges.
 1. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
 2. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge type of steel sheet with minimum uncoated-steel thickness of 0.033 inch.
 3. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch- diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch- diameter wire.

2.3 SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch- diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch- diameter wire.
- B. Hanger Attachments to Concrete:
 1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials with clips or other devices for attaching hangers of type indicated, and capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to 10 times that imposed by construction as determined by testing according to ASTM E 1190 by an independent testing agency.
- C. Wire Hangers: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.16 inch in diameter.
- D. Grid Suspension System for Gypsum Board Ceilings: ASTM C 645, direct-hung system composed of main beams and cross-furring members that interlock.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
 - b. Chicago Metallic Corporation.
 - c. USG Corporation.

2.4 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards.
 1. Fasteners for Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.
- B. Isolation Strip at Exterior Walls: Provide one of the following:
 1. Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt: ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt), nonperforated.
 2. Foam Gasket: Adhesive-backed, closed-cell vinyl foam strips that allow fastener penetration without foam displacement, 1/8 inch thick, in width to suit steel stud size.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

- A. Structural Performance: Provide non-load bearing steel framing capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.
 1. Seismic Category: A.

3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames, cast-in anchors, and structural framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Suspended Assemblies: Coordinate installation of suspension systems with installation of overhead structure to ensure that inserts and other provisions for anchorages to building structure have been installed to receive hangers at spacing required to support the Work and that hangers will develop their full strength.
 1. Furnish concrete inserts and other devices indicated to other trades for installation in advance of time needed for coordination and construction.

3.4 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Installation Standard: ASTM C 754.
 1. Gypsum Board Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 840 that apply to framing installation.
- B. Install supplementary framing, and blocking to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction.
 1. Where concealed or exposed countertop brackets are indicated, provide additional full height 18 ga. stud framing behind each bracket location with wood blocking nested inside the stud to receive the bracket manufacturer's recommended fasteners.
- C. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies.
- D. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with non-load-bearing steel framing members. Frame both sides of joints independently.

3.5 INSTALLING FRAMED ASSEMBLIES

- A. Install framing system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
 - 1. Single-Layer Application: 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Multilayer Application: 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Tile Backing Panels: 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Where studs are installed directly against exterior masonry walls or dissimilar metals at exterior walls, install isolation strip between studs and exterior wall.
- C. Install studs so flanges within framing system point in same direction.
- D. Install tracks (runners) at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings except where partitions are indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing around ducts penetrating partitions above ceiling.
 - 1. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where framing extends to overhead structural supports, install to produce joints at tops of framing systems that prevent axial loading of finished assemblies.
 - 2. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install runner track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.
 - a. Install two studs at each jamb unless otherwise indicated. At door openings scheduled as “sound seal” doors and STC 45 doors, provide minimum double 18 ga. studs at jambs.
 - b. Install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum 1/2-inch clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint in finished assembly.
 - c. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of overhead structure.
 - 3. Other Framed Openings: Frame openings other than door openings the same as required for door openings unless otherwise indicated. Install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads.
 - 4. Fire-Resistance-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated and support closures and to make partitions continuous from floor to underside of solid structure.
 - a. Firestop Track: Where indicated, install to maintain continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.
 - 5. Sound-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with sound-rated assembly indicated.
 - 6. Curved Partitions:
 - a. Bend track to uniform curve and locate straight lengths so they are tangent to arcs.
 - b. Begin and end each arc with a stud, and space intermediate studs equally along arcs. On straight lengths of no fewer than two studs at ends of arcs, place studs 6 inches o.c.
- E. Direct Furring:
 - 1. Attach to concrete or masonry with stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches o.c.
- F. Installation Tolerance: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/8 inch from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.

3.6 INSTALLING SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Install suspension system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
- B. Isolate suspension systems from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.

C. Suspend hangers from building structure as follows:

1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system.
 - a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with locations of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
 - a. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced installation standards.
3. Wire Hangers: Secure by looping and wire tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
4. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck.
5. Do not attach hangers to permanent metal forms. Furnish cast-in-place hanger inserts that extend through forms.
6. Do not attach hangers to rolled-in hanger tabs of composite steel floor deck.
7. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.

D. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Wire tie furring channels to supports.

E. Grid Suspension Systems: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension systems meet vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross-furring members to each other and butt-cut to fit into wall track.

F. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within 1/8 inch in 12 feet measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.

END OF SECTION 092216

SECTION 092423 – PORTLAND CEMENT STUCCO**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Materials and installation of exterior stucco wall covering with air and water-resistive barrier (AWRB) for use on concrete, concrete masonry, and frame wall construction.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 072726 “Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barriers”.
- B. Section 076200 “Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim”.
- C. Section 079200 “Joint Sealants”.

1.3 PROJECT REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work required in this section includes all components from the weather barrier (applied to sheathing - see Section 072110 “Continuous Insulated Wall Sheathing”) to the finish coat including the weather barrier, lath, scratch, brown and finish coats and associated primers, felts, fasteners, PVC accessories and crack suppression materials.
 - 1. The basis-of-design manufacturer of materials listed in this section is Sto Corp., 3800 Camp Creek Parkway, Building 1400, Suite 120. Atlanta, GA 30331. As such, their proprietary products are listed throughout the section. Products of equal physical characteristics, quality, appearance and function manufactured by one of the additional companies listed in “Part 2 – Products” under “Manufacturers” will be acceptable, subject to compliance with the specifications.
 - 2. All products will be from a single source, or as approved by the stucco manufacturer.

1.4 REFERENCED DOCUMENTS

Add/delete depending on specific project requirements

- A. ASTM Standards:
 - 1. A641 Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire
 - 2. A653 Specification for Sheet Steel Zinc coated (Galvanized) by the Hot-Dip Process, Commercial Quality
 - 3. B69 Specification for Rolled Zinc
 - 4. C847 Standard Specification for Metal Lath
 - 5. C897 Standard Specification for Aggregate for Job-Mixed Portland Cement-Based Plasters
 - 6. C926 Standard Specification for Application of Portland Cement-Based Plaster
 - 7. C1063 Standard Specification for Installation of Lathing and Furring for Portland Cement Plaster
 - 8. C1861 Standard Specification for Lathing and Furring Accessories, and Fasteners, for Interior and Exterior Portland Cement-Based Plaster
 - 9. E96 Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials
 - 10. E283 Test Method for Determining Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen
 - 11. E330 Test Method for Structural Performance of Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference
 - 12. E331 Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors, and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference
 - 13. E783 Standard Test Method for Field Measurement of Air Leakage Through Installed Exterior Windows and Doors
 - 14. E2178 Standard Test Method for Air Permeance of Building Materials

15. E2357 Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage of Air Barrier Assemblies
16. F1667 Standard Specification for Driven Fasteners: Nails, Spikes, and Staples
17. G154 Recommended Practice for Operating Light-and Water-Exposure Apparatus
18. (Fluorescent UV-Condensation Type) for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials

B. ICC (International Code Council)

1. 2018 and 2021 IBC (International Building Code)
2. 2018 and 2021 IRC (International Residential Code)

C. ICC-ES (International Code Council Evaluation Service)

1. AC11, Cementitious Exterior Wall Coatings
2. AC308, Acceptance Criteria for Water-resistive Barriers
3. AC208, Acceptance Criteria for Water-resistive Coatings used as Water-resistive Barriers over Exterior Sheathing
4. ICC ESR-1233: StoGuard Air and Water-Resistive Barrier System and StoEnergy Guard (StoGuard with Continuous Insulation)
5. ICC ESR-2323: StoPowerwall One Coat Stucco System

D. IAPMO (International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials)

1. IAPMO ER 2017: Structural No. 17 SFCR Twin Track 2.5
2. IAPMO ER 382: Western 1-Kote Exterior Stucco System

E. Sto Corp. Publications

1. Sto RapidGuard: Installation Guide
2. StoGuard Conformable Membrane: Installation Guide
3. StoPowerwall Design Guide and Detail Booklet

F. US EPA (United States Environmental Protection Agency)

1. 40 CFR Part 59 (Code of Federal Regulations Title 40 Part 59 – National Volatile Organic Compound Emission Standards for Consumer and Commercial Products)

1.5 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural (wind and axial loads)

1. Design for maximum allowable deflection, normal to the plane of the wall of L/360
2. Design for wind load in conformance with code requirements
3. Metal framing: minimum 18 gage, maximum 1-5/8-inch flange width, cold formed steel stud framing in conformance with AISI Standard S200-16
4. Maximum stud spacing: 16-inches on center
5. Sheathing: minimum 5/8-inch glass mat faced gypsum sheathing in conformance with ASTM C1177
6. Metal Lath: minimum 2.5 lb/yd² self-furred galvanized steel diamond mesh metal lath in conformance with ASTM C847 or equivalent self-furring welded wire lath
7. Lath fasteners:
 - a. Self-drilling corrosion resistant minimum 7/16-inch diameter round washer head screws in conformance with ASTM C954 with minimum 3/4-inch and three thread penetration through steel framing members
 - b. Self-piercing tapping corrosion resistant minimum 7/16-inch diameter round washer head screws in conformance with ASTM C1002 for wood studs with minimum 1-inch penetration into wood framing members
 - c. Minimum 3/8-inch corrosion resistant concrete stud nails in conformance with ASTM F1667 for solid substrates with minimum 3/4-inch penetration into solid concrete or CMU substrates
8. Lath fastener spacing: maximum 7-inches vertically along studs

9. Stucco: 7/8-inch StoPowerwall portland cement stucco in conformance with ASTM C926 of uniform thickness applied in two coats, scratch and brown coat.
- B. Moisture Control
1. Prevent the accumulation of water into or behind the stucco, either by condensation or leakage into the wall construction, in the design and detailing of the wall assembly:
 - a. Provide corrosion resistant flashing to protect exposed elements and to direct water to the exterior, including, above window and door heads, beneath window and door sills, at floor lines, at roof/wall intersections, decks, abutments of lower walls with higher walls, above projecting features, and at the base of the wall.
 - b. Air Leakage Prevention-prevent excess air leakage in the design and detailing of the wall assembly. Provide continuity between air barrier components in the wall assembly, and connections or tie-ins with foundation and roof air barrier components.
 - c. Vapor Diffusion and Condensation - perform a dew point analysis of the wall assembly to determine the potential for accumulation of moisture in the wall assembly as a result of water vapor diffusion and condensation. Adjust wall assembly components accordingly to minimize the risk of condensation. Avoid the use of vapor retarders on the interior side of the wall in hot, humid climates.
 - d. **Provide StoGuard air and water-resistive barrier over sheathing.**
 - e. Seal stucco terminations and accessory butt joints with appropriate sealant. Seal all penetrations through the stucco wall assembly with appropriate backer and sealant, as dictated by joint type.
- C. Grade Condition
1. Do not specify stucco for use below grade or on surfaces subject to continuous or intermittent water immersion or hydrostatic pressure. Provide minimum 4-inch clearance above earth grade, minimum 2-inch clearance above finished grade (pavers/sidewalk). Provide increased clearance in freeze/thaw climate zones.
- D. Joints and Accessories
1. Provide two-piece expansion joints or back-to-back casing beads in the stucco system where building movement is anticipated: at joints in the substrate or supporting construction, where the system is to be installed over dissimilar construction or substrates, at changes in building height, at floor lines, at columns and cantilevered areas.
 2. Provide one piece expansion joints every 144 ft². Cut and wire tie lath to the expansion joint accessory so lath is discontinuous at or beneath the accessory. Do not exceed length to width ratio of 2-1/2:1 in expansion joint layout and do not exceed more than 18 feet in any direction without an expansion joint.
 3. Provide one piece expansion joints at through wall penetrations, for example, above and below doors or windows.
 4. Provide minimum 1/2-inch wide joints where the system abuts windows, doors and other through wall penetrations.
 5. Provide appropriate accessories at stucco terminations and joints.
 6. Avoid the use of channel reveal accessories which can interfere with proper drainage and proper stress relief.
 7. Provide appropriate sealant at stucco terminations and at stucco accessory butt joints.
 8. Indicate location of joints, accessories and accessory type on architectural drawings.
- E. Stucco Thickness (does not include primer or textured finish coat)
1. Application to Metal Plaster Bases: Stucco thickness shall be uniform 7/8-inch. Stucco thickness shall not exceed 7/8-inch.
 2. Stucco shall be applied in 2 coats, scratch and brown coat, to achieve the prescribed thickness.
 3. Thickness shall be uniform throughout the wall area.

1.6 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Air and Water-Resistive Barrier

1. Coatings: Compliant with ICC ES Acceptance Criteria AC 212 (ICC ESR 1233)
2. Self-adhered Membranes: compliant with ICC ES Acceptance Criteria AC 38
3. Material Air Leakage Resistance, ASTM E 2178: less than 0.004 cfm/ft² at 1.57 psf
4. Assembly Air Leakage Resistance, ASTM E 2357: less than 0.04 cfm/ft² at 1.57 psf
5. Vapor Permeable: Water Vapor Permeance, ASTM E 96, Method B: greater than 10 perms
6. Vapor Impermeable: Water Vapor Permeance, ASTM E96, Method A: less than 0.1 perm
7. Surface Burning, ASTM E84: Flame Spread less than 25, Smoke Developed, less than 450, Class A Building Material
8. Coatings: VOC, calculation:
9. Less than 50 g/L:
 - a. Compliant with US EPA 40 CFR 59 for Waterproofing Sealer
 - b. Compliant with South Coast AQMD Rule 1113 for Building Envelope Coating

B. Stucco Base

Review and select one based on job conditions. Pre-blended stucco provides greater quality control than stucco concentrates by eliminating field mixing of sand at the job sit

1. Portland cement stucco pre-bend with properly graded sand in compliance with ASTM C926

C. Stucco Primers

Review and select one based on desired attributes. Refer to Product Bulletins for more detailed information

1. Alkaline resistant acrylic-based primer for freshly placed (minimum 4 day old) stucco surfaces with alkaline resistance up to pH13, Class A building material with VOC less than 50 g/L
2. Standard acrylic-based primer for fully cured (minimum 28 day old) or stucco surfaces with pH less than 10, Class A Building Material with VOC less than 50 g/L

D. Stucco Textured Finishes

Review and select one of the textured finishes based on desired attributes. Refer to Product Bulletins for more detailed information

1. Standard vapor permeable acrylic textured finish, Class A building material with VOC less than 50 g/L

1.7 SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturer's specifications, details, installation instructions and product data.
- B. Manufacturer's code compliance report for air and water-resistive barrier or supporting data
- C. Manufacturer's standard warranty
- D. Samples for approval as directed by architect or owner
- E. Fastener manufacturer's pull-out or withdrawal capacity for applicable substrates
- F. Prepare and submit project-specific details (when required by contract documents)

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer requirements

1. Stucco and air barrier products manufacturer for a minimum of thirty (30) years.
2. Stucco finish products and air and water-resistive barrier products manufactured under ISO 9001 Quality System and 14001 Environmental Management System.

B. Contractor requirements

1. Licensed, insured and engaged in application of portland cement stucco for a minimum of three (3) years.
2. Knowledgeable in the proper use and handling of Sto materials.
3. Employ skilled mechanics who are experienced and knowledgeable in portland cement stucco application, and familiar with the requirements of the specified work.
4. Successful completion of minimum of three (3) projects of similar size and complexity to the specified project.
5. Provide the proper equipment, manpower and supervision on the job site to install the system in compliance with Sto's published specifications and details and the project plans and specifications.

C. Testing

1. Construct full-scale mock-up of typical stucco/window wall assembly with specified tools and materials and test air and water infiltration and structural performance in accordance with ASTM E283, E331 and E330, respectively, through independent laboratory. Mock-up shall comply with requirements of project specifications. Where mock-up is tested at job site maintain approved mock-up at site as reference standard. If tested off-site accurately record construction detailing and sequencing of approved mock-up for replication during construction.
2. Conduct air barrier adhesion testing in accordance with ASTM D4541.
3. Conduct air barrier assembly testing in accordance with ASTM E783.
4. Verify adequacy of pull-out or withdrawal capacity of fasteners used for frame construction with manufacturer in relation to negative design wind pressures.
5. Conduct pH testing to check stucco surface alkalinity before application of primer or finish materials. Where alkaline resistant primer is used pH testing may be waived.
6. Conduct wet sealant adhesion testing in accordance with sealant manufacturer's field quality control test procedure.
7. Notify design professional minimum 7-days prior to testing.

D. Inspections

1. Provide independent third-party inspection where required by code or contract documents.
2. Conduct inspections in accordance with code requirements and contract documents.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver all materials in their original sealed containers bearing manufacturer's name and identification of product.
- B. Protect coatings (pail products) from freezing and temperatures in excess of 90°F (32°C). Store away from direct sunlight.
- C. Protect portland cement-based materials (bag products) from moisture and humidity. Store under cover off the ground in a dry location.
- D. Protect STPE products and sealant products from freezing and temperatures in excess of 90°F (32°C). Store away from direct sunlight and from sources of ignition.
- E. Handle and store all products as directed on labeling.

1.10 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

Weather conditions affect application, drying time and curing requirements. Hot or dry conditions limit working time and accelerate drying and may require adjustments in application, scheduling and curing to achieve desired results; cool or damp conditions extend working time and retard drying (except for Sto STPE products which cure faster with moisture) and may require added measures of protection against wind, dust, dirt, rain and freezing

- A. Maintain ambient and surface temperatures above 40°F during application and for 24 hours after set of stucco, and during application and curing of air and water-resistive barrier and finish materials.
- B. Provide supplementary heat for installation in temperatures less than 40°F such that material temperatures are maintained as in 1.09A. Prevent concentration of heat on uncured stucco and vent fumes and other products of combustion to the outside to prevent contact with stucco.
- C. Prevent uneven or excessive evaporation of moisture from stucco during hot, dry or windy weather. For installation under any of these conditions provide special measures to properly moist cure the stucco. Do not install stucco if ambient temperatures are expected to rise above 100°F within a 24-hour period.
- D. Provide protection of surrounding areas and adjacent surfaces from application of materials.

1.11 COORDINATION/SCHEDULING

The work in this section requires close coordination with related sections and trades. Sequence work to provide protection of construction materials from weather deterioration and damage from trades

- A. Protect sheathing from climatic conditions to prevent weather damage
- B. Install diverter flashings wherever water can enter the wall assembly to direct water to the exterior.
- C. Coordinate installation of foundation waterproofing, roofing membrane, windows, doors and other wall penetrations to provide a continuous air barrier and continuous moisture protection. Provide protection of rough openings before installing windows, doors, and other penetrations through the wall and provide sill flashing. Coordinate installation of air and water-resistive barrier components with window and door installation to provide weather proofing of the structure and to prevent moisture infiltration and excess air infiltration.
- D. Install window and door head flashing immediately after windows and doors are installed.
- E. Protect air and water-resistive barrier with paper or felt WRB within the period allowed by the manufacturer. Refer to manufacturer's published information. Protect paper or felt WRB from damage during construction
- F. Commence the stucco installation after completion of all floor and roof construction, and other construction that imposes dead loads on the walls to prevent excessive deflection (and potential cracking) of the stucco.
- G. Sequence interior work such as drywall installation prior to stucco installation to prevent stud distortion (and potential cracking) of the stucco.
- H. Provide site grading such that the stucco terminates above earth grade minimum 4-inches and above finished grade (pavers/sidewalk) minimum 2-inches. Provide increased clearance in freeze/thaw climate zones.
- I. Install copings and sealant immediately after installation of the stucco and when finish coatings are dry.
- J. Attach penetrations through stucco to structural support and provide air-tight and watertight seals at penetrations.

1.12 WARRANTY

- A. Provide manufacturer's standard warranty.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Air and Water-Resistive Barrier, Portland Cement Stucco, Stucco Primers, Stucco Finishes, Joint Sealant
 - 1. Basis-of-Design: Sto Corp., 3800 Camp Creek Parkway, Building 1400, Suite 120. Atlanta, GA 30331.
 - 2. Subject to compliance with specifications, products of equal physical characteristics, quality, appearance and function, as manufactured by one of the following:

- a. Dryvit
- b. Finestone (LaHabra/Sika, USA)

2.2 AIR AND WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER

A. StoGuard Detail Components:

1. Sto Gold Fill -- ready mixed acrylic based flexible joint treatment for rough opening protection, joint treatment of wall sheathing, CMU crack repair, and detail component for shiplap connections with flashing, weep screed, and similar ship lap details.
2. StoGuard Mesh -- nominal 4.2 oz/yd² (142 g/m²), self-adhesive, flexible, symmetrical, interlaced glass fiber mesh, with alkaline resistant coating for compatibility with Sto materials, used with Sto Gold Fill to reinforce rough openings, inside and outside corners, sheathing joints, and shiplap connections with flashing, weep screed, and similar shingle lap details
3. StoGuard Fabric -- nonwoven cloth reinforcement used with AWRB coating for rough opening protection, joint treatment of wall sheathing, and detail component for shiplap connections with flashing, weep screed, and similar shingle lap details. StoGuard Redicorner is a preformed fabric piece used in the corners of rough openings in tandem with StoGuard Fabric for quicker installation
4. StoGuard Conformable Membrane - self-adhered membrane flashing for use over prepared vertical above-grade concrete, concrete masonry, brick masonry, wood sheathing, glass mat gypsum sheathing, and cementitious sheathing used to: seal joints and seams in wall sheathing, seal static joints between dissimilar materials, flash exterior wall openings and protect rough openings, seal between window flange and wall sheathing, connect to above grade foundation waterproofing, connect to roof membrane, seal around wall penetrations such as pipes, scuppers, vents, cack masonry wall ties, seal dynamic joints in wall construction
5. Sto RapidGuard® - one component STPE rapid drying gun-applied treatment for sheathing joints, rough openings, seams, cracks, penetrations and other static transitions in above grade wall construction such as: shingle lap over flashing, wall to balcony floor slab or ceiling, and through wall penetrations – pipes, electrical boxes, and scupper penetrations

Note: verify adhesion to foundation waterproofing, roof membrane, and other proprietary substrates with lab and/or field adhesion tests

B. Air & Water-Resistive Barrier Coating

Choose one coating and select application by Substrate, Medium-Build, or High-Build as indicated

1. Sto Gold Coat: ready mixed vapor permeable air and water-resistive barrier coating applied,
 - a. By substrate as follows:
 - 1) Plywood: apply one coat at minimum 10 mils WFT
 - 2) CMU: apply two or three coats at minimum 20-60 mils WFT.
 - 3) Concrete: apply one coat at minimum 10 mils WFT

2.3 PAPER OR FELT WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER

Supplied by others

- A. Minimum No. 15 asphalt saturated felt complying with ASTM D226, Type 1, or one layer of Grade D kraft building paper, or paper-backed stucco lath conforming with paragraph 2.04B.

2.4 LATH

Supplied by others

- A. Structalath SFCR Twin Track 2.5 self-furring welded wire lath. See IAPMO ER 2017.
- B. Minimum 2.5 lb./yd² self-furred galvanized steel diamond mesh metal lath in compliance with ASTM C847

Note: metal lath is susceptible to corrosion in coastal environments. Provide weather protection to prevent moisture entry into wall construction as outlined in Design Requirements Section 1.04B. Consider the use of stainless steel lath for coastal environments. Exercise care when attaching metal lath and accessories through the air and water-resistive barrier so that fasteners go into [not between] framing supports. Do not use power, powder-actuated or other fastening tools/methods that can damage the air and water-resistive barrier or substrate.

2.5 MECHANICAL FASTENERS FOR METAL LATH

Supplied by others

A. Non-corroding fasteners in compliance with ASTM C954, C1002, or F1667:

1. Self-drilling corrosion resistant minimum 7/16-inch diameter round washer head screws in conformance with ASTM C954 with minimum 3/4-inch and three thread penetration through steel framing members
2. Self-piercing tapping corrosion resistant minimum 7/16-inch diameter round washer head screws in conformance with ASTM C1002 for wood studs with minimum 1-inch penetration into wood framing members
3. Minimum 3/8-inch corrosion resistant concrete stub nails in conformance with ASTM F1667 for solid substrates with minimum 3/4-inch penetration into solid concrete or CMU substrates

Note: pull-out or withdrawal capacity of the selected fastener must be verified with respect to design wind loads, required safety factor and building code requirements. Consult applicable code compliance report for specific assemblies and fastening schedules or conduct project specific testing to verify compliance with design wind pressure requirements

B. Tie Wire—18 gauge galvanized and annealed low-carbon steel in compliance with ASTM A641 with Class I coating.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

Metal accessories supplied by others, select one type

- A. Plastic Accessories: Weep screed, casing bead, corner bead, corner lath, expansion and control joint accessories. All accessories shall meet the requirements of ASTM C1861 and its referenced documents.
- B. Manufactured from high-impact PVC in compliance with ASTM D1784, cell classification 13244C.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal):
 - a. Plastic Components, Inc.
 2. Cornerbeads: With perforated flanges.
 - a. Basis-of-Design: #1A (2 1/2" x 2 1/2" flange)
 - b. Smallnose cornerbead; use at outside corners as indicated on Drawings.
 3. Casing Beads: Square-edge style, with perforated flanges in depth required to suit plaster bases indicated and flange length required to suit applications indicated. Provide beads with built-in moisture seal to seal against edges of doors, windows and dissimilar claddings in stucco applications
 - a. Basis-of-Design: #1078UCB.
 4. Control Joints: One-piece-type, folded pair of unperforated screeds in M-shaped configuration; with perforated flanges and removable protective tape on exposed face of control joint.
 - a. Basis-of-Design:
 - 1) #2178X for in-plane joints

2) #2078IC for inside corners

- C. All accessories shall have perforated or expanded flanges and shall be designed with grounds for the specified thickness of stucco.
- D. StoSeal® STPE joint sealant in conformance with ASTM C920: Type S, Grade NS, Use NT, A, M, Class 100/50

Note: metal accessories are susceptible to corrosion in coastal environments. Consider the use of zinc alloy or PVC accessories in these environments. Metal corner beads with solid metal noses are susceptible to corrosion in exposed exterior applications. Consider the use of several layers of woven-wire mesh or other corner accessories in lieu of corner bead and completely encase the metal in stucco. Care must be taken when attaching metal lath or other wall assembly components so that fasteners go into [not between] framing supports. Powder actuated or other fastening devices that can damage the air and water-resistive barrier, sheathing, or CI should be avoided. CAUTION: AVOID THE USE OF CHANNEL REVEAL ACCESSORIES THAT INTERFERE WITH PROPER DRAINAGE AND STRESS RELIEF.

2.7 JOB MIXED INGREDIENTS

Supplied by others

- A. Water: clean and potable.
- B. Sand: in compliance with ASTM C897 or C144, for use with ASTM C926 stucco concentrates

2.8 STUCCO

- A. 80102 StoPowerwall Stucco Pre-Blended: fiber reinforced portland cement stucco pre-blended with graded sand and in compliance with ASTM C96 and ICC AC11

2.9 CRACK DEFENSE

Sto Crack Defense is optional and uses the components listed below for added crack resistance

- A. Base Coat

Select one base coat material based on desired attributes. Refer to Product Bulletins for more detailed information.

1. Sto BTS Xtra - lightweight one component polymer modified cement-based extra high build base coat material
2. Sto BTS Plus - one component polymer modified cement-based high build base coat material
3. Sto Primer/Adhesive-B - one component polymer modified cement-based base coat material
4. Sto Primer/Adhesive – two component acrylic based base coat material field mixed with portland cement
5. Sto RFP – ready mixed non-cementitious fiber reinforced base coat material
6. StoArmat Classic Plus – ready mixed non-cementitious fiber reinforced high build base coat material
7. Sto Flexyl – two component fiber reinforced acrylic-based waterproof base coat material field mixed with portland cement (for use as a waterproof base coat to waterproof foundations, parapets, splash areas, trim and other projecting architectural features).

- B. Reinforcing Mesh

1. Sto Mesh - nominal 4.5 oz./yd², symmetrical, interlaced open-weave glass fiber mesh made with alkaline resistant coating for compatibility with Sto materials.

2.10 PRIMER

Optional component. Select one primer based on desired attributes. Refer to Product Bulletins for more detailed information.

- A. StoPrime Hot - acrylic-based primer/sealer for freshly placed (minimum 4 day old) and high pH stucco surfaces.
- B. StoPrime Sand - acrylic-based tinted, sanded primer for fully cured (minimum 28 day old or pH less than 10) stucco surfaces.
- C. StoPrime - acrylic-based tinted primer for fully cured (minimum 28 day old or pH less than 10) stucco surfaces.

Note: priming is recommended to provide uniform substrate absorption and finish color, to improve adhesion and water resistance, and to retard efflorescence. StoPrime Hot may be applied 48 hours after moist curing the brown coat. Other Sto primers require 28 days curing of brown coat or pH less than 10 before application.

2.11 FINISH

Select one or more as dictated by project design requirements

- A. StoPowerwall Finish - integrally colored, factory blended, flexible acrylic textured wall finish with graded marble aggregate.
- B. Sto Essence DPR Finish - integrally colored, factory blended, acrylic textured wall finish with graded marble aggregate

2.12 MIXING

- A. Mix all materials as directed by manufacturer in written instructions on product literature or packaging
- B. Do not add anti-freeze or other foreign ingredients unless instructed to do so in writing by the manufacturer
- C. When mixing stucco batches, only mix as much material as can readily be used

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Inspect sheathing surfaces for damage and deterioration. Record any areas of moisture damage. Inspect sheathing application for compliance with applicable requirement:
 - 1. Exterior Grade and Exposure 1 wood based sheathing—refer to APA Engineered Wood Association E 30.
- B. Report deviations from the requirements of project specifications or other conditions that might adversely affect the air and water-resistive barrier, or stucco installation to the General Contractor. Do not proceed with air and water-resistive barrier, or stucco installation until deviations are corrected.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Concrete and Concrete Masonry (CMU): Remove surface contamination such as oil, grease, dust, dirt, algae, mildew, salts, paint or coatings. Correct weak surface conditions such as laitance. Use chemical cleaners such as TSP (trisodium phosphate) detergent to remove oil and grease and rinse with potable water. Use chemical cleaners to remove efflorescence or other surface contamination in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Use mechanical methods such as waterblasting, sandblasting, and wire brushing to remove weak surface conditions.
 - 1. Repair cracks up to 1/8-inch (3mm) wide by raking with a sharp tool to remove loose, friable material and blow clean with oil-free compressed air. Apply joint treatment material over crack, embed reinforcement (where applicable), and smooth joint treatment material with a trowel, drywall or putty knife to cover the reinforcement.
 - 2. Remove projecting fins, ridges, and mortar by mechanical means.
 - 3. Fill honeycombs, aggregate pockets, holes and other voids with Sto patching material.

4. Where the surface is excessively “rough” or out of plane, skim coat the wall surface with Sto base coat material to provide a smooth, level surface.

B. Sheathing

1. Remove surface contaminants and replace damaged sheathing.
2. All sheathing must be handled and installed in compliance with applicable building code and manufacturer requirements. Installed sheathing must be clean, dry and free from damage, frost, and all bond-inhibiting materials. Gap wood sheathing 1/8-inch (3mm) at joints. Should gaps exceed 1/8-inch up to 1/2-inch wide, use Sto RapidGuard to fill joints, or apply low expanding urethane foam into joints and rasp or shave flush with sheathing surface in preparation for installation of StoGuard joint treatment.
3. Spot surface defects in sheathing with joint treatment (Sto Gold Fill or Sto RapidGuard).
4. Report deviations from the requirements of project specifications or other conditions that might adversely affect the air and water-resistive barrier, ci, or stucco installation to the General Contractor. Do not proceed with air and water-resistive barrier, ci, or stucco installation until deviations are corrected.

3.3 AIR AND WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER INSTALLATION

Important Note: the air and water-resistive barrier installation described below is one component of the air barrier assembly for the building envelope and the moisture protection of the wall construction. Installation of the air and water-resistive barrier must be integrated with other air and air and water-resistive barrier components in the construction. This requires coordination with other trades to ensure proper sequencing of work, to achieve air barrier continuity, and to direct rain water to the exterior, not into the wall assembly. Always protect rough openings in wall construction BEFORE installing windows, doors, louvers, etc. Where water is likely to penetrate the wall assembly, such as windows, flashing must be installed to direct water to the exterior at the leak source. Refer to Sto Guide Details as needed.

A. The following instructions are applicable to:

1. Exterior or Exposure I Plywood in compliance with PS-1

B. Transition Detailing: Detail transition areas with Sto RapidGuard (static joints and seams) or StoGuard Conformable Membrane (static and dynamic joints and seams) to achieve air barrier continuity. For illustrations of installation, refer to StoPowerwall ci Design Guide and Detail Booklet, Sto RapidGuard Installation Guide, and StoGuard Conformable Membrane Installation Guide (www.stocop.com)

C. Rough Opening Protection

Select one of the options below for frame construction; for concrete or concrete masonry rough openings with wood bucks and similar openings with complex 3-dimensional geometry, select Sto RapidGuard

1. Sto Gold Fill with StoGuard Mesh: apply 9-inch (229mm) wide StoGuard Mesh at rough openings. Immediately apply Sto Gold Fill by spray or trowel over the mesh and spread smooth with a trowel to completely cover the mesh (refer to StoPowerwall ci Design Guide and Detail Booklet).
2. Sto Gold Coat, Sto AirSeal, or StoGuard VaporSeal with StoGuard Fabric: apply coating liberally by spray or roller to corners of openings, immediately place StoGuard RediCorners in the wet coating, and apply additional coating over the RediCorners to completely embed them. After all corners have been completed apply coating liberally to the entire rough opening, immediately place StoGuard Fabric in the wet coating, smooth any wrinkles with a brush or roller, and apply additional coating over the fabric to completely embed it. Overlap all seams minimum 2-inches (51mm). Once completed topcoat with additional coating as needed to completely seal the surface. Allow to dry and inspect for pinholes or voids. If pinholes or voids are present, seal with additional coating or Sto RapidGuard.
3. Sto RapidGuard: apply a fillet bead of material with a caulking gun at interior corners inside the opening to seal jamb/sill and jamb/head seams. Then apply material in a zig-zag pattern along sill, jambs, and head to form a generous bead of material along the surface to be covered. Use a 6-inch (152 mm) wide

- plastic drywall knife or handheld spreader to spread the material to a uniform thickness of 12-20 mils (0.3-0.5 mm) before the material skins. Treat the entire rough opening surface in this manner and overlap onto the face of the sheathing 2-inches (51 mm) minimum all the way around.
4. StoGuard Conformable Membrane: install the membrane in conformance with manufacturer's written installation instructions (refer to StoGuard Conformable Membrane Installation Guide)

D. Sheathing Joint Treatment

Note: sheathing joint treatment is typically not required when working with StoShield SA (Self-Adhered) membranes. Select one of the options below

1. Sto Gold Fill with StoGuard Mesh: place 4-inch (102 mm) wide mesh centered along sheathing joints and minimum 9-inch (229 mm) wide mesh centered and folded at inside and outside corners. Immediately apply Sto Gold Fill by spray or trowel and spread smooth with a trowel to completely cover the mesh.
2. Sto AirSeal, Sto Gold Coat or StoGuard VaporSeal with StoGuard Fabric: apply coating liberally by spray or roller along sheathing joints and immediately place 4-inch (102mm) wide fabric centered over the joints into the wet coating, and 6-inch (152mm) wide fabric centered and folded at inside and outside corners into the wet coating. Smooth any wrinkles with a brush or roller and apply additional coating to completely embed the fabric. Overlap seams minimum 2-inches (51mm).
3. Sto RapidGuard: apply to properly installed sheathing – joints butted for gypsum sheathing, and joints gapped for plywood and OSB sheathings (wood-based sheathing typically requires 1/8-inch [3mm] spacing at edge and end joints). Apply a thick bead of Sto RapidGuard with a caulking gun along sheathing joints, or apply in a zig-zag pattern across and down the joints. Spread to a uniform thickness of 20-30mils (0.5-0.6 mm) before the material skins. Spread 1-inch (25mm) beyond the sheathing joint on each side. Follow the same procedure for inside and outside corners.
4. StoGuard Conformable Membrane: install the membrane in conformance with manufacturer's written installation instructions (refer to StoGuard Conformable Membrane Installation Guide)

E. Primary Air and Water-Resistive Barrier Installation

1. Coating: install the specified AWRB coating uniformly by spray or roller to the required wet film thickness. Refer to individual Product Bulletins for more detailed installation instructions.

F. Air and Water-Resistive Barrier Connections and Shingle Laps

1. Coordinate installation of connecting air barrier components with other trades to provide a continuous airtight membrane.
2. Coordinate installation of flashing and other moisture protection components with other trades to achieve complete moisture protection such that water is directed to the exterior, not into the wall assembly, and drained to the exterior at sources of leaks (windows, doors and similar penetrations through the wall assembly).
3. Splice-in head flashings above windows, doors, floor lines, roof/sidewall step flashing, and similar locations with StoGuard detail component to achieve shingle lap of the air and water-resistive barrier such that water is directed to the exterior.

Note: windows and doors are typically installed immediately following installation of the air and water-resistive barrier and work should be sequenced accordingly. Consult with window manufacturer for installation requirements to maintain air barrier continuity and for head, jamb, sill flashing and perimeter sealant requirements needed to prevent leaks into the wall assembly.

IMPORTANT: do not allow air and water-resistive barrier installation to remain exposed more than allowed by the manufacturer. Refer to product literature for the specific air barrier selected. Protect with continuous insulation promptly after installation.

3.4 PAPER OR FELT WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER INSTALLATION

- A. Install in compliance with the applicable building code requirements for building paper. Lap paper over foundation weep screed attachment flange, floor line flashing, and window/door head flashings. Refer to Sto Guide Details at www.stocorp.com

Note: code requirements may vary. Always consult the applicable code and the manufacturer's code compliance report. Typically building paper in compliance with the code is lapped shingle style, upper courses over lower courses, by minimum 2-inches (51mm), with vertical laps of minimum 6-inches (150mm). Courses are staggered so that vertical joints do not align. Care must be taken to prevent tears in the paper and to limit penetrations to only those required for attachment. Flashing must be in place and properly integrated with the sheet WRB at sills, above windows and doors, at floor lines, decks and at roof/wall intersections such that water is directed to the exterior.

3.5 STUCCO INSTALLATION

- A. General: after satisfactory inspection of surfaces and correction of any deviations from specification requirements commence the stucco installation. Apply the stucco in discrete panels without interruption to avoid cold joints and differences in appearance. Abut wet stucco to set stucco at natural or architectural breaks in the wall such as expansion joints, pilasters, terminations, or changes in plane. Hot or dry conditions accelerate drying and moisture loss from stucco which can diminish strength and resistance to cracking. Under these conditions, adjustments in the application, scheduling and curing of stucco to prevent rapid loss of moisture are necessary to achieve a satisfactory stucco installation. Cold temperatures retard drying and strength gain and adjustments may have to be made in the application, scheduling and curing of stucco to prevent damage from frost and other trades. Do not install stucco during extremely hot, dry and/or windy conditions. Do not install stucco during freezing conditions or on frozen substrates. Do not install stucco onto grounds of accessories. Completely embed lath and flanges of accessories and completely cover fastener attachments with stucco. Moist cure stucco minimum 48 hours for optimum strength gain and resistance to cracking. Allow final stucco application to completely cure (minimum 28 days) before applying primer or finish or until pH of stucco surface is less than 10 (except in the case of StoPrime Hot which can be applied 48 hours after completing moist cure of stucco). The finished installation must be true, plumb and square. Should stucco get into control or expansion joints, remove the stucco from within the joint before the stucco sets. Refer to Sto Guide Details as needed.
- B. Installation over StoGuard:
 - 1. Weep Screed Installation: install foundation weep screed at the base of the wall securely to solid substrate or framing with the appropriate fastener. Locate foundation weep screed so that it overlaps the joint between the foundation and framing by a minimum of 1-inch (25mm). Locate the foundation weep screed nosing minimum 4-inches (100mm) above earth grade, 2-inches (51mm) above finished grade (paved surfaces, for example). Lap air and water-resistive barrier, sheet water-resistive barrier, and drainage mat over the weep screed attachment flange.

Weep screed may also be installed in conjunction with flashing and air and water-resistive barrier installation to facilitate shingle lapping of components at base of wall

- C. Casing Bead and Two-Piece Expansion Joint Installation: install casing beads at stucco terminations—doors, windows and other through wall penetrations. Install two-piece expansion joints (or back-to-back casing beads) at building expansion joints, thru-wall joints, where the stucco is to be installed over dissimilar construction or substrates, at changes in building height, at floor lines, columns, and cantilevered areas. Install full accessory pieces where possible and avoid small pieces. Seal adjoining pieces by embedding ends in sealant. Abut horizontal into vertical joint accessories (except where horizontal movement joints exist that prevent continuous vertical runs of accessories). Attach at no more than 7-inches (178mm) into solid substrate/framing with appropriate fasteners.

Note: refer to architectural drawings for joint locations and accessory type. Air and water-resistive barrier must be continuous behind joints and accessories – refer to Sto Guide Details.

- D. Lath Installation; for welded wire lath refer to Structa Wire Corp. TwinTrac Installation Guide and IAPMO ER 2017
- E. Diamond Mesh Metal Lath: conform to ASTM C1063
 - 1. General--install metal lath with the long dimension at right angles to structural framing (horizontally on solid substrates). Terminate lath at expansion joints. Do not install continuously at joints.
 - 2. Seams/Overlaps--overlap side seams minimum 1/2-inch (13mm) and end seams minimum 1-inch (25mm). Stagger end seams. Overlap casing beads and expansion joints minimum 1-inch (25 mm) over narrow wing accessories, minimum 2-inches (51mm) over expanded flange accessories. Do not install lath continuously beneath expansion joints.
 - 3. Attachment--fasten securely through sheathing into structural framing at 6-inches (152mm) on center maximum vertically and 16-inches (406mm) on center horizontally. Wire tie at no more than 9-inches (225mm) on center at: side laps, accessory overlaps, and where end laps occur between supports.

Note: the type fastener selected, its layout and pullout or withdrawal value from the supporting construction must be verified and approved by the project engineer/architect with respect to design wind load and local building code requirements. Exercise care when attaching metal lath and accessories through the air and water-resistive barrier so that fasteners go into [not between] framing supports. Do not use power, powder-actuated or other fastening tools/methods that can damage the air barrier, air and water-resistive barrier or substrate.

- F. Inside and Outside Corners: install corner lath at inside corners and corner bead at outside corners over lath. Attach through lath into solid substrate or framing at no more than 7-inches (178mm) on center with appropriate fasteners.
- G. Stucco Installation
 - 1. Scratch Coat: apply stucco with sufficient pressure to key into and embed the metal lath. Apply sufficient material, 3/8-inch or 1/2-inch, to cover the metal lath and to permit scoring the surface. Score the stucco upon completion of each panel in preparation for a second coat. Score horizontally.
 - 2. Brown Coat: as soon as the first coat is firm enough to receive the second coat without damage, apply the second coat. Alternatively, moist cure the first coat up to 48 hours and dampen the scratched surface with water immediately before applying the second coat. Apply the second coat with sufficient pressure to ensure intimate contact with the first coat and as needed to bring the stucco to a uniform thickness that matches the grounds of the accessories. Use a rod or straight edge to bring the surface to a true, even plane. Fill depressions in plane with stucco. Final thickness of stucco shall be uniform throughout the wall area and shall be either 3/4-inch or 7/8-inch as dictated by final design requirements, and shall not exceed 7/8-inch.
 - 3. After the stucco has become slightly firm float the surface lightly with a darby or wood float to densify the surface and to provide a smooth, even surface. The proper time to float is when the wood float no longer sticks to the surface of the stucco.
 - 4. Moist cure after the stucco has set by lightly fogging for at least 48 hours. Fog as frequently as required during the 48-hour period to prevent loss of moisture from the stucco. Avoid eroding the stucco surface with excess moisture. If relative humidity exceeds 75% the frequency of moist curing can be diminished.
- H. Crack Defense

Crack Defense is optional. It provides additional crack resistance to the stucco wall surface.

- 1. Apply base coat over the moist cured stucco with appropriate spray equipment or a stainless steel trowel to a uniform thickness of approximately 1/8-inch.
- 2. Work horizontally or vertically in strips of 40-inches, and immediately embed the mesh into the wet base coat by troweling from the center to the edge of the mesh.
- 3. Overlap mesh not less than 2-1/2 -inches at mesh seams and at overlaps of detail mesh. Feather seams and edges. Avoid wrinkles in the mesh.
- 4. The mesh must be fully embedded so that no mesh color shows through the base coat when it is dry.

5. Re-skim with additional base coat if mesh color is visible.
6. Do not install base coat or mesh over joints or accessories in the stucco wall assembly.

I. Primer Installation

Priming is optional. Priming is recommended to provide uniform substrate absorption and finish color, to improve adhesion and water resistance, and to retard efflorescence. StoPrime Hot may be applied 48 hours after moist curing the brown coat. Other Sto primers require 28 days curing of brown coat or pH less than 10 before application.

1. **StoPrime Hot**—Moist cure stucco for a minimum of 48 hours. Allow stucco to dry an additional 48 hours, then apply primer evenly with brush, roller or proper spray equipment over the clean, dry stucco and foam build-outs, and allow to dry. Final age of primed stucco application must be minimum 7 days before application of finish.
2. **StoPrime Sand**—Moist cure stucco for a minimum of 48 hours. Wait until stucco is 28 days old or the pH level of the surface is below 10 before applying primer. Final age of primed stucco application must be minimum 28 days before application of finish or pH must be below 10.
3. **StoPrime**— Moist cure stucco for a minimum of 48 hours. Wait until stucco is 28 days old or the pH level of the surface is below 10 before applying primer. Final age of primed stucco application must be minimum 28 days before application of finish or the pH must be below 10.

J. Finish Installation

1. **Sto Textured Finish:** apply finish to minimum 28-day old stucco or primed stucco and foam build-outs, or when pH of stucco surface is less than 10. If StoPrime Hot is used as the primer the primed stucco/foam build-out surfaces need only be minimum 7 days old. Apply finish by spraying or troweling with a stainless steel trowel, depending on the finish specified. Follow these general rules for application of finish:
 - a. Avoid application in direct sunlight.
 - b. Apply finish in a continuous application and work a wet edge towards the unfinished wall area. Work to an architectural break in the wall before stopping to avoid cold joints.
 - c. Weather conditions affect application and drying time. Hot or dry conditions limit working time and accelerate drying. Adjustments in the scheduling of work may be required to achieve desired results. Cool or damp conditions extend working time and retard drying and may require added measures of protection against wind, dust, dirt, rain and freezing. Adjust work schedule and provide protection.
 - d. Do not install separate batches of finish side-by-side.
 - e. Do not apply finish into or over sealant joints. Apply finish to outside face of wall only.
 - f. Do not apply finish over irregular or unprepared surfaces, or surfaces not in compliance with the requirements of the project specifications.
 - g. Do not install finish over high pH (> 10) stucco surfaces or surfaces that have not been fully cured.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Provide protection of installed materials from water infiltration into or behind them.
- B. Provide protection of installed stucco from dust, dirt, precipitation, and freezing.
- C. Provide protection of installed primer and finish from dust, dirt, precipitation, freezing and continuous high humidity until fully dry.
- D. Provide sealant and backer material at stucco terminations and at fixture penetrations through the stucco to protect against air, water and insect infiltration. Provide weeps at floor lines, window and door heads, and other areas to conduct water to the exterior.

3.7 CLEANING, REPAIR AND MAINTENANCE

- A. Clean and maintain the stucco finish for a fresh appearance and to prevent water entry into and behind the stucco. Repair cracks, impact damage, spalls or delamination promptly.
- B. Maintain adjacent components of construction such as sealants, windows, doors, and flashing, to prevent water entry into the wall assembly.
- C. Refer to Sto reStore Repair and Maintenance Guide ([reStore Program](#)) for detailed information on stucco restoration - cleaning, repairs, recoating, resurfacing and refinishing, or re-cladding.

END OF SECTION 092423

SECTION 092900 - GYPSUM BOARD**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Interior gypsum board.
 - 2. Concealed interior drywall trim.
 - 3. Extruded aluminum reveals.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation" for sound insulation in walls around noise critical areas.
 - 2. Section 092216 "Non-Load-Bearing Steel Framing" for non-structural framing and suspension systems that support gypsum board panels.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C 840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.
- C. Do not install panels that are wet, those that are moisture damaged, and those that are mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL**

- A. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

2.2 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. CertainTeed Corporation.
 - 2. Georgia-Pacific Building Products.
 - 3. Lafarge North America Inc.
 - 4. National Gypsum Company.

5. Temple-Inland Building Product by Georgia-Pacific.
 6. USG Corporation.
- B. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
1. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- C. Moisture- and Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M. With moisture- and mold-resistant core and paper surfaces.
1. Core: As indicated.
 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.

2.3 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C 1047.
1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet, rolled zinc, plastic, or paper-faced galvanized steel sheet.
 2. Shapes:
 - a. Cornerbead.
 - b. Bullnose bead.
 - c. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - d. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - e. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
 - f. Expansion (control) joint: Provide 0.93 inch zinc control joints, style no. 093 with perforated flanges for fully concealed embedment with removable plastic protective tape applied to the open joint, removed after application of joint compound.
 - g. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: With notched or flexible flanges.
- B. Aluminum Trim: Extruded accessories of profiles and dimensions indicated.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Fry Reglet Corporation.
 - b. Gordon, Inc.
 2. Aluminum: Alloy and temper with not less than the strength and durability properties of ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T5. Unless noted otherwise, provide shapes with flanges designed to be taped and floated with joint compound.
 3. Color Anodized Finish: Integral colors to conform with designation 3AA-M112C22A32 of the Aluminum Association.
 - a. Color: Black Anodized.
 4. Basis of Design: Provide the following shapes as manufactured by Fry Reglet Corporation or equal products by the other manufacturers listed:
 - a. Z-Molding: continuous reveal with mud flanges:
 - 1) Below wood caps and waterfall cap edges: DRMZ-625-XX.
 - a) Size: See drawing details and elevations for reveal width. Provide depth of extrusion equal to the gypsum board thickness indicated.
 - 2) Miter outside corners and carry reveal under the full length of the wood cap - typ. both sides.
 - b. Non-Vented Reveal Moldings with mud flanges:
 - 1) Wall-to-Wall (in plane): DRM 625-XX.

- a) Size: See drawing details and elevations for reveal width. Provide depth of extrusion equal to the gypsum board thickness indicated.
- c. Provide factory fabricated intersections wherever moldings change direction or intersect, including but not limited to inside and outside corners, crossing intersections, and “Tee” intersections.
- d. Wherever reveal moldings terminate in an open-end condition (the throat of a hollow metal frame, the back side of storefront members or behind surface applied trim) and elsewhere as noted on the drawings, provide end caps (without mud flanges) to close the end of the DRM reveal moldings.

2.4 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475/C 475M.
- B. Joint Tape:
 - 1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
 - 2. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.
- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
- D. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:
 - 1. Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board: Use setting-type taping compound and setting-type, sandable topping compound.

2.5 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written recommendations.
- B. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick.
- C. Sound Attenuation Blankets: As specified in Section 072100 “Building Insulation”.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C 840.
- B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
- C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
- D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at

corners of framed openings.

- E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
- F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
 - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. in area.
 - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
 - 3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch- wide joints to install sealant.
- G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments, except floors. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch- wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
- H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.
- I. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

3.3 APPLYING INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:
 - 1. Wallboard Type: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Type X: Where required for fire-resistance-rated assembly and elsewhere as specified. Type X may be used in non-fire rated assemblies at the contractor's option.
 - 3. Ceiling Type: Ceiling surfaces.
 - 4. Moisture- and Mold-Resistant Type: As indicated on Drawings.
- B. Single-Layer Application:
 - 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) as required to meet the criteria for limiting heights based on wall construction, top of wall conditions, bracing, deflection and lateral loading specified, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and to minimize end joints.
 - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
 - 3. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.
- C. Multilayer Application:
 - 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying base layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints one framing member, 16 inches minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
 - 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.
 - 3. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers and face layers separately to supports with screws.
 - 4. Seal perimeter of walls in noise critical areas with acoustic sealant.
- D. Laminating to Substrate: Where gypsum panels are indicated as directly adhered to a substrate (other than studs, joists, furring members, or base layer of gypsum board), comply with gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations and temporarily brace or fasten gypsum panels until fastening adhesive has set.

3.4 INSTALLING TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Control Joints: Install control joints according to ASTM C 840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect.
 - 1. Install control joints in wall and ceiling membranes by breaking the gypsum boards behind the control joint.
 - a. In ceiling construction, break the framing above joint locations.
 - b. In partitions, separate studs should be used on each side of the control joints.
 - c. Control joints should be positioned to intersect light fixtures, air diffusers, door openings and other areas of stress concentration.
 - 2. Gypsum construction should be isolated by control joints where:
 - a. Partitions or ceilings of dissimilar construction meet and remain in the same plane;
 - b. Wings of "L," "U" and "T" shaped ceiling areas are joined; and
 - c. Expansion or control joints occur in the base wall construction and/or building structure.
 - 3. Provide control joints in the face of gypsum partitions and ceilings when the size of the surface exceeds the following control-joint spacings:
 - a. Partitions, 30' maximum in either direction
 - b. Interior ceilings, 30' maximum in either direction
 - c. Exterior ceilings, 30' maximum in either direction
 - 4. Ceiling-height door frames may be used as vertical control joints for partitions. At door frames of lesser height provide control joints extended to the ceiling from both corners of the top of the door frame.
 - 5. Provide ceiling control joints around column penetrations
 - 6. At control joint locations:
 - a. Leave continuous opening between gypsum boards as recommended by manufacturer for insertion of control joint.
 - b. Provide separate supports for each control joint flange.
 - c. Provide an adequate seal or fire-safing insulation behind control joints at sound rated construction, walls and ceilings scheduled for sound attenuation at fire rated applications.
- C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
 - 1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners.
 - 2. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
 - 3. L-Bead: Use where indicated.
 - 4. U-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges where indicated.
 - 5. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: Use at curved openings.
- D. Extruded Aluminum Trim: Install in locations indicated on Drawings. Mask or take necessary steps to prevent joint compound or paint from anodized surfaces intended to be left exposed.

3.5 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C 840:
 - 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
 - 2. Level 2: Panels that are substrate for tile.

3. Level 3: Surfaces receiving medium- or heavy-textured finishes before painting or heavy wall coverings where lighting conditions are not critical.
4. Level 4: Provide level 4 finish at the following locations:
 - a. At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.
5. See Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for primer and its application to drywall surfaces.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 092900

SECTION 093013 - CERAMIC TILE**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY**A. Section Includes:**

1. Porcelain tile.
2. Glazed wall tile.
3. Stone thresholds.
4. Crack isolation membrane.
5. Metal edge strips.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for sealing of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile surfaces.
2. Section 092900 "Gypsum Board" for cementitious backer units.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Definitions in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards and in ANSI A137.1 apply to Work of this Section unless otherwise specified.
- B. ANSI A108 Series: ANSI A108.01, ANSI A108.02, ANSI A108.1A, ANSI A108.1B, ANSI A108.1C, ANSI A108.4, ANSI A108.5, ANSI A108.6, ANSI A108.8, ANSI A108.9, ANSI A108.10, ANSI A108.11, ANSI A108.12, ANSI A108.13, ANSI A108.14, ANSI A108.15, ANSI A108.16, and ANSI A108.17, which are contained in its "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile."
- C. Module Size: Actual tile size plus joint width indicated.
- D. Face Size: Actual tile size, excluding spacer lugs.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show locations of each type of tile and tile pattern. Show widths, details, and locations of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile substrates and finished tile surfaces.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For tile, grout, and accessories involving color selection.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match and are from same production runs as products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Tile and Trim Units: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer who has completed tile installations similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirements in ANSI A137.1 for labeling tile packages.
- B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.
- D. Store liquid materials in unopened containers and protected from freezing.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS - GENERAL

- A. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain tile from single source or producer.
 - 1. Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from same production run and of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.
- B. Source Limitations for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for each mortar, adhesive, and grout component from single manufacturer and each aggregate from single source or producer.
 - 1. Obtain setting and grouting materials, except for unmodified Portland cement and aggregate, from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Obtain crack isolation membrane, except for sheet products, from manufacturer of setting and grouting materials.
- C. Source Limitations for Other Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section from a single manufacturer:
 - 1. Crack isolation membrane.
 - 2. Metal edge strips.

2.2 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1 for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
 - 1. Provide tile complying with Standard grade requirements unless otherwise indicated.
- B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.02, ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced by TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.
- C. Factory Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges, blend tile in factory and package so tile units taken from one package show same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples.
- D. Mounting: For factory-mounted tile, provide back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies as standard with manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Where tile is indicated for installation in wet areas, do not use back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies unless tile manufacturer specifies in writing that this type of mounting is suitable for installation indicated and has a record of successful in-service performance.

2.3 TILE PRODUCTS

- A. General: See Finish Schedule, Floor Pattern Plans and Interior Elevations for extent of tile, installation patterns, and sizes required.
 - 1. Manufacturers and products are specified in the drawing schedules and details. No substitutions will be considered without approval by the architect prior to bid or finalization of construction pricing.
- B. Ceramic Tile Type: Unglazed porcelain tile.
 - 1. Certification: Tile certified by the Porcelain Tile Certification Agency.
 - 2. Face Size: See Finish Schedule for size.
 - 3. Thickness: Manufacturers standard for sizes shown.
 - 4. Tile Color, Glaze, and Pattern: As noted in Finish Schedules.
 - 5. Grout Color: As noted in Finish Schedules.
 - 6. Trim Units: As noted on finish schedule, finish notes or in drawing details. Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile. Provide shapes as follows, selected from manufacturer's standard shapes:
 - a. Base Cove: Cove, manufacturers standard module size.
 - b. Wainscot Cap: Surface bullnose, module size same as adjoining flat tile.
 - 7. Tile Pattern: Limit overlap of patterns of large staggered floor tile, especially in brickwork patterns to the maximum percentage of overlap recommended by the tile manufacturer. Do not proceed with installation of staggered floor tile patterns with an edge dimension 18" or greater, until manufacturer's recommended limit of overlap is established.

2.4 CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANE

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product, selected from the following, that complies with ANSI A118.12 for standard performance and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Fabric-Reinforced, Fluid-Applied Membrane: System consisting of liquid-latex rubber or elastomeric polymer and fabric reinforcement.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Bostik, Inc.
 - b. C-Cure.
 - c. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - d. MAPEI Corporation.
 - e. TEC; H.B. Fuller Construction Products Inc.

2.5 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Latex-Portland Cement Mortar (Thinset): ANSI A118.4.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.
 - b. Bostik, Inc.
 - c. C-Cure.
 - d. Custom Building Products.
 - e. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - f. MAPEI Corporation.
 - g. Southern Grouts & Mortars, Inc.
 - h. Summitville Tiles, Inc.
 - i. TEC; H.B. Fuller Construction Products Inc.

2. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix containing dry, redispersible, vinyl acetate or acrylic additive to which only water must be added at Project site.
3. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonsagging mortar in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A118.4.

2.6 GROUT MATERIALS

A. Standard Cement Grout: ANSI A118.6.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.
 - b. Bostik, Inc.
 - c. C-Cure.
 - d. Custom Building Products.
 - e. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - f. MAPEI Corporation.
 - g. Southern Grouts & Mortars, Inc.
 - h. Summitville Tiles, Inc.
 - i. TEC; H.B. Fuller Construction Products Inc.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.
- B. Metal Edge Strips: Angle or L-shaped, height to match tile and setting-bed thickness, metallic, designed specifically for flooring applications; mill finish aluminum exposed-edge material.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Blanke Corporation.
 - b. Ceramic Tool Company, Inc.
 - c. Schluter Systems L.P.
 2. Shapes: As indicated on drawings or if not shown, provide 25 degree sloped metal transition piece with anchoring leg set in mortar bond coat by one of the manufacturer's listed, equal to Schluter's "Reno-U".
- C. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.

2.8 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT

- A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.
- C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free of coatings that are incompatible with

- tile-setting materials, including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone; and comply with flatness tolerances required by ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
2. Verify that concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thinset mortar comply with surface finish requirements in ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
 - a. Verify that surfaces that received a steel trowel finish have been mechanically scarified.
 - b. Verify that protrusions, bumps, and ridges have been removed by sanding or grinding.
 - c. Verify slabs on grade are free of shrinkage cracks. When necessary install crack isolation membranes when cracks in slabs receiving floor tile are evident.
 3. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed.
 4. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thinset mortar with trowelable leveling and patching compound specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.
- B. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.

3.3 CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation" for TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of the ANSI A108 series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that are referenced in TCNA installation methods, specified in tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting materials used.
 1. For the following installations, follow procedures in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards for providing 95 percent mortar coverage:
 - a. Tile floors in wet areas.
 - b. Tile floors consisting of tiles 8 by 8 inches or larger.
- B. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.
- C. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.
- D. Provide manufacturer's standard trim shapes where necessary to eliminate exposed tile edges.
- E. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern shown on drawings. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Lay out tile work to minimize the use of pieces that are less than half of a tile. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Joint Widths: Unless otherwise indicated, install tile with the following joint widths:
 1. Porcelain Tile: Provide 1/8" joints unless wider joints are recommended by tile manufacturer for field conditions indicated.
- G. Lay out tile wainscots to dimensions indicated or to next full tile beyond dimensions indicated.
- H. Expansion Joints: Provide expansion joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated. Form joints during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Do

not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.

1. Where joints occur in concrete substrates, locate joints in tile surfaces directly above them.

- I. Metal Edge Strips: Install where exposed edge of tile flooring meets carpet, wood, or other flooring that finishes flush with or below top of tile and no threshold is indicated.

3.4 TILE BACKING PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install panels and treat joints according to ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's written instructions for type of application indicated. Use latex-portland cement mortar for bonding material unless otherwise directed in manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANE INSTALLATION

- A. Install crack isolation membrane at elevated slabs where tile is scheduled and where required.
- B. Install crack isolation membrane to comply with ANSI A108.17 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
- C. Allow crack isolation membrane to cure before installing tile or setting materials over it.

3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace tile that is damaged or that does not match adjoining tile. Provide new matching units, installed as specified and in a manner to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.
 1. Remove grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
 2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use only cleaners recommended by tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear. If recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors.
- B. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed.
- C. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral protective cleaner from tile surfaces.

3.8 INTERIOR CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

- A. Interior Floor Installations, Concrete Slab-On-Grade Subfloor:

1. Slab-on-Grade Installation: TCNA F113; thinset mortar.
 - a. Thinset Mortar: Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - b. Grout: Standard sanded cement grout.

- B. Interior Floor Installations, Elevated Concrete Subfloor:

1. Elevated Subfloor Installations: TCNA F125-Full; thinset mortar on crack isolation membrane.
 - a. Bonded Crack Isolation Membrane: Full Coverage
 - b. Thinset Mortar: Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - c. Grout: Standard sanded cement grout.

C. Interior Wall Installations, Metal Studs or Furring:

1. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA W243; thinset mortar on gypsum board.
 - a. Thinset Mortar: Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - b. Grout: Standard sanded cement grout.

END OF SECTION 093013

SECTION 095113 - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes acoustical panels and exposed suspension systems for ceilings.
- B. Products furnished, but not installed under this Section, include anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices to be cast in concrete.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each component indicated and for each exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
 - 1. Acoustical Panel: Set of 6-inch- square Samples of each type, color, pattern, and texture.
 - 2. Exposed Suspension-System Members, Moldings, and Trim: Set of 6-inch- long samples of each type, finish, and color, ***including each specified shadow molding.***

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Suspended ceiling components.
 - 2. Structural members to which suspension systems will be attached.
 - 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical panels.
 - 4. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - 5. Perimeter moldings.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Acoustical Ceiling Panels: Full-size panels equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver acoustical panels, suspension-system components, and accessories to Project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against

damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.

- B. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.
- C. Handle acoustical panels carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaging units in any way.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
 - 1. Pressurized Plenums: Operate ventilation system for not less than 48 hours before beginning acoustical panel ceiling installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame-Spread Index: Comply with ASTM E 1264 for Class A materials.
 - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
 - 3. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

2.2 ACOUSTICAL PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Source Limitations:
 - 1. Acoustical Ceiling Panel: Obtain each type from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Suspension System: Obtain each type from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of acoustical ceiling panel and supporting suspension system from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Acoustical Panel Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard panels of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E 1264 classifications as designated by types, patterns, acoustical ratings, and light reflectances unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Acoustical Panel Colors and Patterns: Match appearance characteristics indicated for each product type.
 - 1. Where appearance characteristics of acoustical panels are indicated by referencing pattern designations in ASTM E 1264 and not manufacturers' proprietary product designations, provide products selected by Architect from each manufacturer's full range that comply with requirements indicated for type, pattern, color, light reflectance, acoustical performance, edge detail, and size.

2.3 ACOUSTICAL PANELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products in size, thickness, edge configurations and color as indicated on the finish schedule.
- B. Broad Spectrum Antimicrobial Fungicide and Bactericide Treatment: Provide acoustical panels treated with manufacturer's standard antimicrobial formulation that inhibits fungus, mold, mildew, and gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria and showing no mold, mildew, or bacterial growth when tested according to ASTM D 3273 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274 or ASTM G 21.

2.4 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Suspension-System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard direct-hung metal suspension systems of types, structural classifications, and finishes indicated that comply with applicable requirements in ASTM C 635/C 635M.
 - 1. High-Humidity Finish: Where indicated, provide coating tested and classified for "severe environment performance" according to ASTM C 635/C 635M.
- B. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires complying with the following requirements:
 - 1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
 - 2. Size: Select wire diameter so its stress at three times hanger design load (ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but provide not less than 0.106-inch-diameter wire.
- D. Hanger Rods: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.
- E. Angle Hangers: Angles with legs not less than 7/8 inch wide; formed with 0.04-inch- thick, galvanized-steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation; with bolted connections and 5/16-inch- diameter bolts.
- F. Hold-Down Clips: Where indicated, provide manufacturer's standard hold-down clips spaced 24 inches o.c. on all cross tees.

2.5 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. Metal Suspension-System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard, direct-hung, metal suspension system and accessories according to ASTM C 635/C 635M and designated by type, structural classification, and finish indicated.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
 - 2. CertainTeed Corporation.
 - 3. Chicago Metallic Corporation.
 - 4. USG Interiors, Inc.
- C. Narrow-Face, Capped, Double-Web, Steel Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from cold-rolled steel sheet; prepainted, electrolytically zinc coated, or hot-dip galvanized, G30 coating designation; with prefinished 9/16-inch-wide metal caps on flanges.
 - 1. Structural Classification: Heavy-duty system.
 - 2. End Condition of Cross Runners: Override (stepped) type.
 - 3. Face Design: Flat, flush.
 - 4. Cap Material: Cold-rolled steel or aluminum.
 - 5. Cap Finish: Painted to match color of acoustical unit.
 - 6. Extent: At all suspended acoustical panel ceilings except as noted for high humidity areas.
- D. Narrow-Face, Capped, Double-Web, Hot-Dip Galvanized, G60, Steel Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from cold-rolled steel sheet; hot-dip galvanized, G60 coating designation; with prefinished, 9/16-inch-wide aluminum caps on flanges.
 - 1. Structural Classification: Heavy-duty system.
 - 2. Face Design: Flat, flush.
 - 3. Cap Material: Aluminum.
 - 4. Cap Finish: Painted to match color of acoustical unit.
 - 5. Extent: At Baptistery and adjacent changing rooms.

2.6 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM

- A. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated,

manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension-system runners.

1. Provide manufacturer's standard edge moldings that fit acoustical panel edge details and suspension systems indicated and that match width and configuration of exposed runners unless otherwise indicated.
2. For lay-in panels with reveal edge details, provide stepped edge molding that forms reveal of same depth and width as that formed between edge of panel and flange at exposed suspension member.
 - a. Basis-of-Design: Provide the following Armstrong Ceiling shadow molding or equivalent edge molding by the other manufacturers listed.
 - 1) Narrow faced, non-seismic applications: #7874 Shadow Molding
3. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing to which acoustical panel ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical panel ceilings.
- B. Examine acoustical panels before installation. Reject acoustical panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders, and comply with layout shown on approved coordination drawings.
- B. Coordinate layout with other trades to ensure ceiling mounted devices are centered in the tile (unless noted otherwise on the reflected ceiling plans). Items include, but are not limited to:
 1. Sprinkler heads.
 2. Light fixtures.
 3. Mechanical grilles and louvers.
 4. Fire Alarm components.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install acoustical panel ceilings to comply with ASTM C 636/C 636M, according to manufacturer's written instructions and Cisca's "Ceiling Systems Handbook."
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
 2. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
 3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension-system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
 4. Secure wire hangers to ceiling-suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly either to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that

- are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
 - 5. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to cast-in-place hanger inserts, postinstalled mechanical or adhesive anchors, or power-actuated fasteners that extend through forms into concrete.
 - 6. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
 - 7. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
 - 8. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
 - 9. Space hangers not more than 48 inches o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches from ends of each member.
 - 10. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards and publications.
- C. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical panels.
- 1. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches o.c. and not more than 3 inches from ends, leveling with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
 - 2. Install shadow molding oriented with the leg that corresponds to the width of the main grid in the horizontal (exposed) position.
 - 3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- D. Install suspension-system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- E. Install acoustical panels with undamaged edges and fit accurately into suspension-system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide a neat, precise fit.
- 1. For reveal-edged panels on suspension-system runners, install panels with bottom of reveal in firm contact with top surface of runner flanges.
 - 2. Paint cut edges of panel remaining exposed after installation; match color of exposed panel surfaces using coating recommended in writing for this purpose by acoustical panel manufacturer.
 - 3. Install hold-down clips in areas indicated, in areas required by authorities having jurisdiction, and for fire-resistance ratings; space as recommended by panel manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Protect lighting fixtures and air ducts to comply with requirements indicated for fire-resistance-rated assembly.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
- 1. Periodic inspection during the installation of suspended ceiling grids according to ASCE/SEI 7.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections of completed installations of acoustical panel ceiling hangers and anchors and fasteners in successive stages and when installation of ceiling suspension systems on each floor has reached 20 percent completion, but no panels have been installed. Do not proceed with installations of acoustical panel ceiling hangers for the next area until test results for previously completed installations of acoustical panel ceiling hangers show compliance with requirements.
- 1. Within each test area, testing agency will select one of every 10 power-actuated fasteners and postinstalled anchors used to attach hangers to concrete and will test them for 200 lbf of tension; it will also select one of every two postinstalled anchors used to attach bracing wires to concrete and will test them for 440 lbf of tension.
 - 2. When testing discovers fasteners and anchors that do not comply with requirements, testing agency will test those anchors not previously tested until 20 pass consecutively and then will resume initial testing frequency.

- D. Acoustical panel ceiling hangers, anchors, and fasteners will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension-system members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION 095113

SECTION 096513 - RESILIENT WALL BASE AND ACCESSORIES**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Resilient base.
- 2. Resilient stair accessories.
- 3. Resilient molding accessories.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 096519 "Resilient Tile Flooring" for resilient flooring and extruded aluminum transition accessories.
- 2. Section 096813 "Carpet Tile" for extruded aluminum stair nosing.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each type of product indicated.
- C. Product Schedule: For resilient base and accessory products. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Furnish not less than 10 linear feet for every 500 linear feet or fraction thereof, of each type, color, pattern, and size of resilient product installed.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F, in spaces to receive resilient products during the following time periods:
 - 1. 48 hours before installation.
 - 2. During installation.
 - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
- C. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 THERMOSET-RUBBER BASE

- A. Manufacturers: See Finish Schedule for manufacturers and colors.
- B. Product Standard: ASTM F 1861, Type TS (rubber, vulcanized thermoset), Group I (solid, homogeneous).
 - 1. Style and Location:
 - a. Style B, Cove
- C. Thickness: 0.125 inch.
- D. Height: 4 inches
- E. Lengths: Coils in manufacturer's standard length.
- F. Outside Corners: Preformed.
- G. Inside Corners: Job formed.
- H. Colors: As indicated on the Finish Schedule.

2.2 RUBBER MOLDING ACCESSORY

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the rubber base manufacturer.
- B. Description: Rubber carpet edge for glue-down applications, nosing for carpet, nosing for resilient flooring, reducer strip for resilient flooring, joiner for tile and carpet and transition strips.
- C. Profile and Dimensions: As indicated.
- D. Locations: Provide rubber molding accessories wherever flooring transitions from one type to another, and in areas indicated or noted on the Finish Schedule.
 - 1. Coordinate thickness of flooring materials and provide molding design appropriate for the height of the transition.
- E. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors.

2.3 STAIR PRODUCTS

- A. Stair Treads: ASTM F 2169.
 - 1. Manufacturer: See Finish Schedule for manufacturer, styles, and colors
 - 2. Type: TS (rubber, vulcanized thermoset) or TP (rubber, thermoplastic).
 - 3. Class: 1 (smooth, flat) .
 - 4. Group: 2 (with contrasting color for the visually impaired).
 - 5. Nosing Style: Square, adjustable to cover angles between 60 and 90 degrees.
 - 6. Nosing Height: 2 inches.
 - 7. Thickness: 1/4 inch and tapered to back edge.
 - 8. Size: Lengths and depths to fit each stair tread in one piece.
- B. Landing Tile: Matching treads; produced by same manufacturer as treads and recommended by manufacturer for installation with treads.
 - 1. Install landing tile on all horizontal walking surfaces within new stairs not otherwise covered by tread material.
- C. Colors and Patterns: As noted on Finish Schedule..

2.4 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient-product manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by resilient-product manufacturer for resilient products and

substrate conditions indicated.

- C. Stair-Tread Nose Filler: Two-part epoxy compound recommended by resilient stair-tread manufacturer to fill nosing substrates that do not conform to tread contours.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Installation of resilient products indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates for Resilient Stair Accessories: Prepare horizontal surfaces according to ASTM F 710.
 - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
 - 2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
 - 3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 10 pH.
 - 4. Moisture Testing: Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing according to manufacturer's written recommendations, but not less stringent than the following:
 - a. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test according to ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
 - 1. At the base of gyp. bd. on metal stud walls, fill excessive voids between bottom edge of gyp. bd. and the slab as required to provide solid substrate at the bottom, coved edge of the base.
- D. Do not install resilient products until they are the same temperature as the space where they are to be installed.
 - 1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products.

3.3 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.
- B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.
- C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practical without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
- D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.

- E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.
- F. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.
- G. Preformed Outside Corners: At outside corners, install preformed corners before installing straight pieces.
- H. Job-Formed Inside Corners:
 - 1. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.
 - a. Miter or cope corners to minimize open joints.
 - 2. At storefront framing, door and cased opening frames inset in the wall construction, provide pre-fabricated outside corners with their return leg cut to fit the distance from the face of wall to the face of frame. Avoid short lengths of cut base 2" or less.

3.4 RESILIENT ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient accessories.
- B. Resilient Stair Accessories:
 - 1. Tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece.
- C. Resilient Molding Accessories: Butt to adjacent materials and tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece. Install reducer strips at edges of floor covering that would otherwise be exposed.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient products.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient-product installation:
 - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
 - 2. Sweep and vacuum horizontal surfaces thoroughly.
 - 3. Damp-mop horizontal surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect resilient products from marks, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Cover resilient products subject to wear and foot traffic until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 096513

SECTION 096519 - RESILIENT TILE FLOORING**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Solid vinyl floor tile (Luxury Vinyl Tile or LVT)
 - 2. Extruded aluminum tile accessories.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 096513 "Resilient Wall Base and Accessories" for resilient wall base and accessories installed with resilient tile.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of floor tile. Include floor tile layouts, edges, columns, doorways, enclosing partitions, built-in furniture, cabinets, and cutouts.
 - 1. Show details of special patterns.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of floor tile indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of floor tile to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Floor Tile: Furnish one box for every 50 boxes or fraction thereof, of each type, color, and pattern of floor tile installed.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs workers for this Project who are competent in techniques required by manufacturer for floor tile installation and seaming method indicated.
 - 1. Engage an installer who employs workers for this Project who are trained or certified by floor tile manufacturer for installation techniques required.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store floor tile and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F. Store floor tiles on flat surfaces.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F, in spaces to receive floor tile during the following time periods:
 - 1. 48 hours before installation.
 - 2. During installation.
 - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
- C. Close spaces to traffic during floor tile installation.
- D. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after floor tile installation.
- E. Install floor tile after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOLID VINYL FLOOR TILE (Luxury Vinyl Tile)

- A. Manufacturer: See Finish Schedule for manufacturer and types of each floor tile required.
- B. Tile Standard: ASTM F 1700.
 - 1. Class: Class III (printed film vinyl tile)
 - 2. Type: Type B (embossed surface).
- C. Thickness: See published specifications from tile manufacturer for overall thickness including backing and wear layer(s).
- D. Size: As indicated on Finish Schedule.
- E. Colors and Patterns: As indicated on Finish Schedule

2.2 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by floor tile manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by floor tile and adhesive manufacturers to suit floor tile and substrate conditions indicated.
 - 1. Adhesives for Textured Solid Vinyl Tile: Provide only those adhesives recommended by tile manufacturer for applicable substrates. NO SUBSTITUTIONS.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Stair Nosings: Where indicated, provide extruded aluminum profiles designed to protect the exposed edges of solid vinyl floor tile used for the tread and riser finish.
 - 1. Manufacturer: Provide stair nosings by Schluter Systems L.P., 194 Pleasant Ridge Road.; Plattsburgh, NY 12901-5841; 800-472-4588
 - 2. Product: Schluter-VINPRO-STEP: Stair Nosing profile with flat exposed vertical face and, 7/16 inch (11 mm) wide ribbed squared exposed top surface and integrated perforated tapered anchoring leg.
 - a. Profile Height: As required to coordinate with tile selection and setting system.
 - b. Finish: Brushed Chrome Anodized.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of floor tile.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to floor tile manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Subfloors: Verify that concrete slabs comply with ASTM F 710 and the following:
 - 1. Slab substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, hardeners, and other materials that may interfere with adhesive bond. Determine adhesion and dryness characteristics by performing bond and moisture tests recommended by resilient tile manufacturer.
 - 2. Subfloor finishes comply with requirements specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for slabs receiving resilient tile.
 - 3. Subfloors are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits.
 - 4. Moisture Test Methods: A moisture test is essential on all concrete floors. Two methods are recognized. ASTM F 1869 (calcium chloride test) or ASTM F 2170 (relative humidity). Care should be taken to follow proper testing procedures for both to insure accuracy. Testing should be performed in several areas including the perimeter of the room, at columns, and wherever else moisture might occur. The moisture level from the concrete should not exceed 6.0 lbs./1000 sq. ft. (CC) or 75% relative humidity in a 24 hour time period. If the concrete exceeds the moisture limitations, the installation should not proceed until the problem is corrected. After remediation, always retest to ensure that the problem has been corrected.
 - 5. PH Test: Ph levels are important. Concrete slab shall have a ph level not to exceed 9.0 before, during, and after installation.
- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install floor tiles until they are the same temperature as the space where they are to be installed.
 - 1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient floor tile and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient floor tile.

3.3 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing floor tile.
- B. Lay out floor tiles from center marks established with principal walls, discounting minor offsets, so tiles at opposite edges of room are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid using cut widths that equal less than one-half tile at perimeter.
 - 1. Lay tiles square with room axis except where special floor patterns are indicated which might preclude a room axis orientation.
- C. Match floor tiles for color and pattern by selecting tiles from cartons in the same sequence as manufactured and packaged, if so numbered. Discard broken, cracked, chipped, or deformed tiles.
 - 1. Solid Vinyl Tile: Pre-blend tile before installation begins. Lay tiles in pattern as shown and recommended by manufacture to achieve designs indicated.

- D. Scribe, cut, and fit floor tiles to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces and permanent fixtures including built-in furniture, cabinets, pipes, outlets, and door frames.
- E. Extend floor tiles into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings. Extend floor tiles to center of door openings.
- F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on floor tiles as marked on substrates. Use chalk or other nonpermanent marking device.
- G. Adhere floor tiles to flooring substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting floor tile.
- B. Protect floor tile from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- C. Cover floor tile until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 096519

SECTION 096813 - CARPET TILE**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes
 - 1. Modular, carpet tile.
 - 2. Extruded aluminum carpet accessories.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 096513 "Resilient Wall Base and Accessories" for resilient wall base and accessories installed with carpet tile.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review methods and procedures related to carpet tile installation including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Review delivery, storage, and handling procedures.
 - b. Review ambient conditions and ventilation procedures.
 - c. Review subfloor preparation procedures.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include manufacturer's written data on physical characteristics, durability, and fade resistance.
 - 2. Include installation recommendations for each type of substrate.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show the following:
 - 1. Columns, doorways, enclosing walls or partitions, built-in cabinets, and locations where cutouts are required in carpet tiles.
 - 2. Carpet tile type, color, and dye lot.
 - 3. Type of subfloor.
 - 4. Type of installation.
 - 5. Pattern of installation.
 - 6. Pattern type, location, and direction.
 - 7. Pile direction.
 - 8. Type, color, and location of insets and borders.
 - 9. Type, color, and location of edge, transition, and other accessory strips.
 - 10. Transition details to other flooring materials.
- C. Samples: For each of the following products and for each color and texture required. Label each Sample with manufacturer's name, material description, color, pattern, and designation indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
 - 1. Carpet Tile: Full-size Sample.
 - 2. Exposed Edge, Transition, and Other Accessory Stripping: 12-inch- long Samples.

- D. Product Schedule: For carpet tile. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For carpet tiles to include in maintenance manuals. Include the following:
 - 1. Methods for maintaining carpet tile, including cleaning and stain-removal products and procedures and manufacturer's recommended maintenance schedule.
 - 2. Precautions for cleaning materials and methods that could be detrimental to carpet tile.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Carpet Tile: Full-size units equal to 5 percent of amount installed for each type indicated, but not less than 10 sq. yd..

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is certified by the International Certified Floorcovering Installers Association at the Master II certification level.
- B. Coordinate with Section 096513 "Resilient Wall Base and Accessories" mockup requirements for a typical aisle stair tread detailed for Theatre T135.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with CRI 104.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Comply with CRI 104 for temperature, humidity, and ventilation limitations.
- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install carpet tiles until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- C. Do not install carpet tiles over concrete slabs until slabs have cured and are sufficiently dry to bond with adhesive and concrete slabs have pH range recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- D. Where demountable partitions or other items are indicated for installation on top of carpet tiles, install carpet tiles before installing these items.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Carpet Tiles: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of carpet tile installation that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty does not include deterioration or failure of carpet tile due to unusual traffic, failure of substrate, vandalism, or abuse.
 - 2. Failures include, but are not limited to, more than 10 percent edge raveling, snags, runs, dimensional stability, excess static discharge, loss of tuft bind strength, loss of face fiber, and delamination.
 - 3. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CARPET TILE

- A. Manufacturers: Provide carpet tile in sizes, colors and textures by the product designations and manufacturers listed on the Finish Schedule.

2.2 INSTALLATION ACCESSORIES

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant, mildew-resistant, nonstaining, pressure-sensitive type to suit products and subfloor conditions indicated, that complies with flammability requirements for installed carpet tile and is recommended by carpet tile manufacturer for releasable installation.
- C. Transition Strips: Rubber or extruded aluminum in profile and width shown, of height required to protect exposed edge of carpet, and of maximum lengths to minimize running joints.
- D. Stair/Step Nosings: Where indicated, provide extruded aluminum profiles designed to protect the exposed edges of carpet tile used for the tread and riser finish.
 - 1. Manufacturer: Provide stair nosings by Schluter Systems L.P., 194 Pleasant Ridge Road.; Plattsburgh, NY 12901-5841; 800-472-4588
 - 2. Product: Schluter-VINPRO-STEP: Stair Nosing profile with flat exposed vertical face and, 7/16 inch (11 mm) wide ribbed squared exposed top surface and integrated perforated tapered anchoring leg.
 - a. Profile Height: As required to coordinate with tile selection and setting system.
 - b. Finish: Brushed Nickle Anodized.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, alkalinity range, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting carpet tile performance. Examine carpet tile for type, color, pattern, and potential defects.
- B. Concrete Subfloors: Verify that concrete slabs comply with ASTM F 710 and the following:
 - 1. Slab substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, hardeners, and other materials that may interfere with adhesive bond. Determine adhesion and dryness characteristics by performing bond and moisture tests recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
 - 2. Subfloor finishes comply with requirements specified in Section 03300 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for slabs receiving carpet tile.
 - 3. Subfloors are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits.
 - 4. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 1000 sq. ft., and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
 - a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
 - b. Relative Humidity Test: Using in situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
 - c. Perform additional moisture tests recommended in writing by adhesive and carpet tile manufacturers. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Comply with CRI 104, Section 6.2, "Site Conditions; Floor Preparation," and with carpet tile

manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparing substrates indicated to receive carpet tile installation.

- B. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to fill cracks, holes, depressions, and protrusions in substrates. Fill or level cracks, holes and depressions 1/8 inch wide or wider and protrusions more than 1/32 inch unless more stringent requirements are required by manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Remove coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, without using solvents. Use mechanical methods recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.
- D. Broom and vacuum clean substrates to be covered immediately before installing carpet tile.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with CRI 104, Section 14, "Carpet Modules," and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Installation Method: As recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.
- C. Maintain dye lot integrity. Do not mix dye lots in same area.
- D. Cut and fit carpet tile to butt tightly to vertical surfaces, permanent fixtures, and built-in furniture including cabinets, pipes, outlets, edgings, thresholds, and nosings. Bind or seal cut edges as recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- E. Extend carpet tile into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, open-bottomed obstructions, removable flanges, alcoves, and similar openings.
- F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on finish flooring as marked on subfloor. Use nonpermanent, nonstaining marking device.
- G. Install pattern parallel to walls and borders.
- H. Access Flooring: Stagger joints of carpet tiles so carpet tile grid is offset from access flooring panel grid. Do not fill seams of access flooring panels with carpet adhesive; keep seams free of adhesive.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Perform the following operations immediately after installing carpet tile:
 - 1. Remove excess adhesive, seam sealer, and other surface blemishes using cleaner recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
 - 2. Remove yarns that protrude from carpet tile surface.
 - 3. Vacuum carpet tile using commercial machine with face-beater element.
- B. Protect installed carpet tile to comply with CRI 104, Section 16, "Protecting Indoor Installations."
- C. Protect carpet tile against damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during the remainder of construction period. Use protection methods indicated or recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 096813

SECTION 097200 - WALL COVERINGS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include data on physical characteristics, durability, fade resistance, and fire-test-response characteristics.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show location and extent of each wall-covering type. Indicate pattern placement, veneer matching, seams and termination points.
- C. Samples: For each type of wall covering and for each color, pattern, texture, and finish specified.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For wall coverings to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Wall-Covering Materials: For each type, color, texture, and finish, full width by length to equal to 5 percent of amount installed.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for installation.
 - 1. Build mockups for each type of wall covering on each substrate required. Comply with requirements in ASTM F1141 for appearance shading characteristics.
 - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install wall coverings until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at levels intended for occupants after Project completion during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Lighting: Do not install wall covering until lighting that matches conditions intended for occupants after Project completion is provided on the surfaces to receive wall covering.
- C. Ventilation: Provide continuous ventilation during installation and for not less than the time recommended by wall-covering manufacturer for full drying or curing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing identical wall coverings applied with identical adhesives to substrates according to test method indicated below by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - a. Flame-Spread Index: 26-75.
 - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

2.2 WALLCOVERINGS

- A. Manufacturers: See Finish Schedule and interior elevations for listing of all required wallcovering manufacturers and products.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesive: Mildew-resistant, nonstaining adhesive, for use with specific wall covering and substrate application indicated and as recommended in writing by wall-covering manufacturer.
- B. Primer/Sealer: Mildew resistant, complying with requirements in Section 099123 "Interior Painting" and recommended in writing by primer/sealer and wall-covering manufacturers for intended substrate.
- C. Seam Tape: As recommended in writing by wall-covering manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for levelness, wall plumbness, maximum moisture content, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation.
- B. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of wall covering, including dirt, oil, grease, mold, mildew, and incompatible primers.
- C. Prepare substrates to achieve a smooth, dry, clean, structurally sound surface free of flaking, unsound coatings, cracks, and defects.
 - 1. Moisture Content: Maximum of 5 percent on new plaster, concrete, and concrete masonry units when tested with an electronic moisture meter.
 - 2. Gypsum Board: Prime with primer as recommended in writing by primer/sealer manufacturer and wall-covering manufacturer.
 - 3. Painted Surfaces: Treat areas susceptible to pigment bleeding.
- D. Check painted surfaces for pigment bleeding. Sand gloss, semigloss, and eggshell finish with fine sandpaper.
- E. Remove hardware and hardware accessories, electrical plates and covers, light fixture trims, and similar items.
- F. Acclimatize wall-covering materials by removing them from packaging in the installation areas not less than 24 hours before installation.

3.3 WALL-COVERING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with wall-covering manufacturers' written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated.
- B. Cut wall-covering strips in roll number sequence. Change the roll numbers at partition breaks and corners.
- C. Install strips in same order as cut from roll.
 - 1. If recommended by manufacturer, for solid-color, even-texture, or random-match wall coverings, reverse every other strip.
- D. Install wall covering without lifted or curling edges and without visible shrinkage.
- E. Match pattern 72 inches above the finish floor.
- F. Install seams vertical and plumb at least 6 inches from outside corners and 6 inches from inside corners unless a change of pattern or color exists at corner. Horizontal seams are not permitted.
- G. Trim edges and seams for color uniformity, pattern match, and tight closure. Butt seams without overlaps or gaps between strips.
- H. Fully bond wall covering to substrate. Remove air bubbles, wrinkles, blisters, and other defects.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Remove excess adhesive at seams, perimeter edges, and adjacent surfaces.
- B. Use cleaning methods recommended in writing by wall-covering manufacturer.
- C. Replace strips that cannot be cleaned.
- D. Reinstall hardware and hardware accessories, electrical plates and covers, light fixture trims, and similar items.

END OF SECTION 097200

SECTION 097720 – DECORATIVE FIBERGLASS REINFORCED WALL PANELS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY****A. Section Includes:**

1. Prefinished polyester glass reinforced plastic sheets and adhered to unfinished gypsum wallboard.
2. PVC trim.

1.2 REFERENCES**A. American Society for Testing and Materials: Standard Specifications (ASTM)**

1. ASTM D 256 - Izod Impact Strengths (ft #/in)
2. ASTM D 570 - Water Absorption (%)
3. ASTM D 638 - Tensile Strengths (psi) & Tensile Modulus (psi)
4. ASTM D 790 - Flexural Strengths (psi) & Flexural Modulus (psi)
5. ASTM D 2583- Barcol Hardness
6. ASTM D 5319 - Standard Specification for Glass-Fiber Reinforced Polyester Wall and Ceiling Panels.
7. ASTM E 84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

1.3 SUBMITTALS**A. Product Data:** Submit sufficient manufacturer's data to indicate compliance with these specifications, including:

1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
3. Installation methods.

B. Shop Drawings: Submit elevations of each wall showing location of paneling and trim members with respect to all discontinuities in the wall elevation.**C. Selection Samples:** Submit manufacturer's standard color pattern selection samples representing manufacturer's full range of available colors and patterns.**D. Samples for Verification:** Submit appropriate section of panel for each finish selected indicating the color, texture, and pattern required.**E. Submit complete with specified applied finish.**

1. For selected patterns show complete pattern repeat.
2. Exposed Molding and Trim: Provide samples of each type, finish, and color.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**A. Conform to building code requirements for interior finish for smoke and flame spread requirements as tested in accordance with:**

1. ASTM E 84 (Method of test for surface burning characteristics of building Materials)
 - a. Wall Required Rating – Class A.

B. Sanitary Standards: System components and finishes to comply with:

1. United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) requirements for food preparation facilities, incidental contact.
2. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) 1999 Food Code 6-101.11.

C. DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

1. Deliver materials factory packaged on strong pallets.
2. Store panels and trim lying flat, under cover and protected from the elements. Allow panels to acclimate to room temperature (70°) for 48 hours prior to installation.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Building are to be fully enclosed prior to installation with sufficient heat (70°) and ventilation consistent with good working conditions for finish work
- B. During installation and for not less than 48 hours before, maintain an ambient temperature and relative humidity within limits required by type of adhesive used and recommendation of adhesive manufacturer.
 1. Provide ventilation to disperse fumes during application of adhesive as recommended by the adhesive manufacturer.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Furnish one year guarantee against defects in material and workmanship.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURER

- A. Marlite; 202 Harger Street, Dover, OH 44622. 800-377-1221 FAX (330) 343-4668 Email: info@marlite.com www.marlite.com.
 1. Product: Standard FRP

2.2 PANELS

- A. Fiberglass reinforced thermosetting polyester resin panel sheets complying with ASTM D 5319.
 1. Coating: Multi-layer print, primer and finish coats or applied over-layer.
 2. Thickness: 0.090" nominal
 3. Tolerance:
 - a. Length and Width: +/-1/8 "
 - b. Square - Not to exceed 1/8 " for 8 foot panels or 5/32 " for 10 foot panels
 4. Properties: Resistant to rot, corrosion, staining, denting, peeling, and splintering.
 5. Back Surface: Smooth. Imperfections which do not affect functional properties are not cause for rejection.
 6. Front Finish: Smooth.
 7. Color: As selected from manufacturer's standard options.
 8. Fire Rating Class A Fire Rating.
 9. Size: Manufacturer's standard sheet size for the detailed application.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Provide manufacturer's standard base moldings, inside and outside corners, and end caps as required for a complete installation.
- B. Fasteners: Non-staining nylon drive rivets.
 1. Match panel colors.
 2. Length to suit project conditions.
- C. Adhesive: Manufacturer's recommended construction adhesives complying with ASTM C 557.

- D. Sealant: Manufacturer's clear or white silicone sealant.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Examine backup surfaces to determine that corners are plumb and straight, surfaces are smooth, uniform, clean and free from foreign matter, nails countersunk, joints and cracks filled flush and smooth with the adjoining surface.
- B. Repair defects prior to installation.
 - 1. Level wall surfaces to panel manufacturer's requirements. Remove protrusions and fill indentations.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's recommended procedures and installation sequence.
- B. Cut sheets to meet supports allowing 1/8" clearance for every 8 foot of panel.
 - 1. Cut and drill with carbide tipped saw blades or drill bits, or cut with shears.
 - 2. Pre-drill fastener holes 1/8" oversize with high speed drill bit.
 - 3. Space at 8" maximum on center at perimeter, approximately 1" from panel edge.
 - 4. Space in field of panel in rows at 16" on center, with fasteners spaced at 12" maximum on center.
- C. Apply panels to board substrate, above base, vertically oriented with seams plumb and pattern aligned with adjoining panels.
 - 1. Install panels with manufacturer's recommended gap for panel field and corner joints.
 - 2. Adhesive trowel and application method to conform to adhesive manufacturer's recommendations.
 - 3. Drive fasteners for snug fit. Do not over-tighten.
- D. Apply panel moldings to all panel edges using silicone sealant providing for required clearances.
 - 1. All moldings must provide for a minimum 1/8" (3mm) of panel expansion at joints and edges, to insure proper installation.
 - 2. Apply sealant to all moldings, channels and joints between the system and different materials to assure watertight installation.

3.3 CLEANING

- A. Remove excess sealant from panels and moldings. Wipe panel down using a damp cloth and mild soap solution or cleaner.
- B. Refer to manufacturer's specific cleaning recommendations Do not use abrasive cleaners.

END OF SECTION 097720

SECTION 098400 - SOUND-ABSORBING WALL AND CEILING UNITS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Acoustic Wall Panels.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM C423 - Standard Test Method for Sound Absorption and Sound Absorption Coefficients by the Reverberation Room Method; 2009a.
- B. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2016.
- C. ASTM E795 - Standard Practices for Mounting Test Specimens During Sound Absorption Tests; 2016.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit manufacturer's documentation for each type of product under provisions of Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's printed data sheets for products specified.
- C. Shop Drawings: Fabrication and installation details, panel layout.
- D. Selection Samples: Manufacturer's color charts for applicable material, indicating full range of material, colors, and patterns available.
- E. Verification Samples: Fabricated samples of each type of product specified; 6" minimum length and width, showing construction, edge details.
- F. Test Reports: Certified test data from an independent test agency verifying that panels meet specified requirements for acoustical and fire performance.
- G. Maintenance Materials: Furnish maintenance information and recommendations for Owners use.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: All similar products to be obtained from a single manufacturer through one source providing a comprehensive material and installation package.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Utilization of an installer with demonstrated experience and quality in projects of similar size and complexity.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect acoustical units from moisture during shipment, storage, and handling. Deliver in factory-wrapped bundles; do not open bundles until units are needed for installation. Ensure all supplied hardware, material, and components are maintained until product is fully installed.
- B. Store units flat, in dry, well-ventilated space; do not stand on end.
- C. Protect edges from damage.
- D. Acclimatize product for minimum 24 hours at temperature and humidity approximately that of occupancy prior to installation.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install materials until spaces are enclosed from the exterior environment, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is maintaining an ambient temperature at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Field Measurements: Installer to verify field measurements and dimensions as indicated in Design Submittal.
 - 1. Coordinate location of other product and trades with product layout.
- C. Ensure that Design Submittal signoffs and other required information are supplied in time to prevent interruption of construction process. Ensure that products of this section are supplied to affected trades in time to prevent interruptions.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Refer to manufacturer's standard warranty for specific products, terms, and limitations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer: FRASCH; Located at 1425 Avenue R, Grand Prairie, TX 75050; Phone: 682.200.3005; Email: quotes@frasch.co; Web: www.frasch.co
- B. Substitutions: Not permitted.

2.2 SOUND-ABSORBING AND SOUND-DIFFUSING PANELS

- A. Basis of Design: FRASCH; Product: 'STRATAWOOD' <https://frasch.co/stratawood/>
- B. Material Minimum Performance Attributes:
 - 1. Surface Burning Characteristics:
 - a. Flame spread index of 25 or less and smoke developed index of 450 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 - 2. UL Tested ASTM E-84: Class A
 - 3. Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC):
 - a. Tested in accordance with ASTM C423 for mounting, per ASTM E795.
 - b. Avg. apparent NRC > .75
- C. Product Attributes:
 - 1. Panel Size: As indicated in Submittal Drawings and per Architects approval. Standard of 24" x 96" x .87"
 - 2. Panel Thickness: 9mm PET felt substrate
 - 3. Edges: Exposed felt, machined edge.
 - 4. Corners: Square, exposed felt, machined edge.
 - 5. Material: Polyester (PET) felt, 55% pre-consumer recycled
 - 6. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 7. Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range and outlined in Submittal Drawings.
 - 8. Mounting Method:
 - a. Direct adhered or fastened to substrate.

2.3 FABRICATION

- A. General: CNC fabricates panels to sizes, configurations, and patterns on 9 mm PET felt, fold edges and create air cavity with secret trap doors.

- B. Tolerances: Fabricate to finished tolerance of plus or minus 1/16 inch for thickness, overall length and width, and square-ness from corner to corner.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Wall Mounting Accessories: Manufacturer's standard accessories at locations indicated on each acoustical unit, sized appropriately for weight of acoustical unit.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates for conditions detrimental to installation of acoustical units. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install acoustical units in locations indicated, following manufacturer's installation instructions and in accordance with local jurisdiction authorities.
- B. Wall surface to be smooth, cleaned, and dry prior to installation of the product.
- C. Using the tabs, open secret trap doors, fasten to substrate, and close doors.
- D. Align panels accurately, with edges plumb and edges level. Scribe to fit accurately at adjoining work and penetrations.
- E. Install acoustical units to construction tolerances of plus or minus 1/16 inch for the following:
 - 1. Plumb and level.
 - 2. Flatness.
 - 3. Width of joints.

3.3 CLEANING

- A. Clean felt facing upon completion of installation from dust and other foreign materials, following manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Lightly vacuum occasionally to remove any particulate matter and air-borne debris or dust. Compressed air can be used to dust the material in difficult to reach areas or for large assemblies.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Provide protection of installed acoustical panels until completion of the work.
- B. Replace panels that cannot be cleaned and repaired to satisfaction of the Architect.

END OF SECTION 098400

SECTION 099113 - EXTERIOR PAINTING**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on exterior substrates, including but not limited to the following.
 - 1. Concrete.
 - 2. Portland Cement Plaster (Stucco).
 - 3. Clay Masonry
 - 4. Concrete Masonry.
 - 5. Steel.
 - 6. Galvanized metal.
 - 7. Aluminum (not anodized or otherwise coated).
 - 8. Wood.
- B. All primed surfaces shall be painted. General Contractor shall be responsible for finish painting of all items, exposed to view, that are specified as being PRIMED (field, factory or shop primed) in other specification sections, whether specifically listed in this section or not.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for surface preparation and the application of paint systems on interior substrates.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Gloss Level 1: Not more than 5 units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- C. Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and each color and gloss of topcoat.
 - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square.
 - 2. Step coats on Samples to show each coat required for system.
 - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
 - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- D. Product List: For each product indicated, include the following:
 - 1. Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
 - 2. Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
 - 3. VOC content.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Paint: 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
 - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Provide all paint and coating products used in any individual system from the same manufacturer; no exceptions.
- B. Paints:
 - 1. Basis of design: PPG Paints : www.ppgpaints.com. (PPG)
 - 2. Sherwin-Williams Company: www.sherwin-williams.com. (SW)
 - 3. Benjamin Moore: www.benjaminmoore.com (BM)

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. Material Compatibility:
 - 1. Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
 - 2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- B. VOC Content: Provide materials that comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers. Where acceptability of substrate conditions is in question, apply samples and perform in-situ testing to verify compatibility, adhesion, and film integrity of new paint application.
 - 1. Report, in writing, conditions that may affect application, appearance, or performance of paint.

B. Substrate Conditions:

1. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
 - a. Concrete: 12 percent.
 - b. Masonry (Clay and Concrete Masonry Units): 12 percent.
 - c. Portland Cement Plaster: 12 percent.
 - d. Wood: 15 percent.
 - e. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
- C. Exterior Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.
- D. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.
- E. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer but not less than the following:
 1. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- G. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- H. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.
- I. Wood Substrates:
 1. Scrape and clean knots. Before applying primer, apply coat of knot sealer recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for exterior use in paint system indicated.
 2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view, and remove sanding dust.
 3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.

4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.
- J. Plastic Trim Fabrication Substrates: Remove dust, dirt, and other foreign material that might impair bond of paints to substrates.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations.
 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
 2. Paint surfaces behind movable items same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed items with prime coat only.
 3. Paint both sides and edges of exterior doors and entire exposed surface of exterior door frames.
 4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
 5. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. Tint undercoats same color as topcoat, but tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- E. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
 1. Paint the following work where exposed to view:
 - a. Equipment, including panelboards and switch gear.
 - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
 - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
 - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
 - e. Metal conduit.
 - f. Plastic conduit.
 - g. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.
- F. At roof, paint all exposed metal surfaces except prefinished, mill finished aluminum and stainless steel surfaces including exposed surfaces of flashing (unless noted otherwise). Painting includes but is not limited to roof stairs, ladders, railing, roof hatches, automatic heat and smoke vents, plumbing vent stacks through the roof, exposed ductwork on the roof, electrical disconnects and service outlets. Roof mounted mechanical equipment are typically factory finished and will not require field painting unless specifically noted on the drawings to be painted.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.6 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Stucco, Exposed Concrete, and Masonry other than CMU (Elastomeric OR Flat Acrylic Finish):
 - 1. Primer (New) - 1 coat applied at DFT of no less than 1.5 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 4-603 Perma Crete Int/Ext Alkaline Resistant Primer.
 - b. SW: Loxon Masonry Primer A24W300.
 - c. BM: Moore's High Build Acrylic Masonry Primer 068.
 - 2. Finish – Elastomeric: 2 coats applied at total DFT of no less than 12.0 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 4-110 Perma-Crete Pitt-Flex Smooth Elastomeric Coating.
 - b. SW: ConFlex XL Smooth Elastomeric High Build Coating A5-400 Series.
 - c. Benjamin Moore - Super Spec 100% Acrylic Elastomeric Flat 056.
 - 3. Finish – Flat Acrylic: 2 coats applied at total DFT of no less than 6.4 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 4-22 Perma-Crete High Build 100% Acrylic Topcoat
 - b. SW: Loxon Masonry Coating A24W300 series.
 - c. BM: Moore's High-Build Masonry Primer 068.
- B. Concrete Masonry Units (Elastomeric Finish):
 - 1. Block Filler (New) - 1 coat applied at DFT of no less than 9.3 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 4-100 Perma Crete LTC Concrete Block & Masonry Surfacer / Filler.
 - b. SW: Loxon Block Surfacer, A24W00200 Series.
 - c. BM: Moore's High-build Masonry Primer 068
 - 2. Finish - 2 coats applied at total DFT of no less than 12.0 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 4-110 Perma-Crete Pitt-Flex Smooth Elastomeric Coating.
 - b. SW: ConFlex XL Smooth Elastomeric High Build Coating A5-400 Series
 - c. BM: Super Spec 100% Acrylic Elastomeric Flat 056.
- C. Wood (Semi-gloss):
 - 1. Primer - 1 coat applied at DFT of no less than 1.6 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 17-921 Seal Grip Interior Exterior Universal Acrylic Primer.
 - b. SW: PrepRite ProBlock Interior/Exterior Latex Primer/Sealer B51W20 Series.
 - c. BM: Moore's Fresh Start Interior Exterior Acrylic Primer 023.
 - 2. Finish - 2 coats applied at total DFT of no less than 2.0 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 90-1210 Pitt Tech Plus DTM Acrylic Semi Gloss Industrial Enamel.
 - b. SW: Sher-Cryl HPA High Performance Acrylic Semi Gloss, B66-350 Series.
 - c. BM: Super Spec HP DTM Acrylic Semi Gloss P29.
- D. Ferrous Metal and Aluminum (Semi-gloss):
 - 1. Primer (New Painted Metal Doors & Frames and Misc. Metal) - 1 coat applied at DFT of no less than 2.3 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:

- a. PPG: 6-208 Speedhide Int/Ext Rust Inhibitive Steel Primer.
 - b. SW: Kromik Alkyd Metal Primer E41 Series.
 - c. BM: Super Spec HP Alkyd Metal Primer P06 Series.
 - 2. Finish (New Painted Metal Doors & Frames and Misc. Metal) - 2 coats applied at total DFT of no less than 4.0 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 90-1210 Pitt Tech Plus DTM Acrylic Semi Gloss Industrial Enamel.
 - b. SW: Sher-Cryl HPA High Performance Acrylic Semi Gloss, B66-350 Series.
 - c. BM: Super Spec HP DTM Acrylic Semi Gloss P29.
- E. Galvanized Metal (Semi-gloss):
- 1. Primer (New Painted Doors & Frames and Misc. Metal) - 1 coat applied at DFT of no less than 2.0 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 90-712 Pitt-Tech DTM Acrylic Metal Primer Finish.
 - b. SW: DTM Acrylic Primer Finish B66W1 Series.
 - c. BM: Super Spec HP Acrylic Metal Primer P04.
 - 2. Finish (New Painted Metal Doors & Frames and Misc. Metal) - 2 coats applied at total DFT of no less than 4.0 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 90-1210 Pitt Tech Plus DTM Acrylic Semi Gloss Industrial Enamel.
 - b. SW: Sher-Cryl HPA High Performance Acrylic Semi Gloss, B66-350 Series.
 - c. BM: Super Spec HP DTM Acrylic Semi Gloss P29.

END OF SECTION 099113

SECTION 099123 - INTERIOR PAINTING**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on interior substrates, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Concrete Masonry.
 - 2. Concrete.
 - 3. Steel.
 - 4. Galvanized metal.
 - 5. Wood.
 - 6. Gypsum board.
 - 7. Cotton or canvas insulation covering.
 - 8. ASJ insulation covering.
- B. All primed surfaces, exposed to view, shall be painted. General Contractor shall be responsible for finish painting of all items, exposed to view, that are specified as being PRIMED (field, factory or shop primed) in other specification sections, whether specifically listed in this section or not.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 051200 "Structural Steel" for shop priming of metal substrates with primers specified in this Section.
 - 2. Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" for surface preparation and the application of paint systems on exterior substrates.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Gloss Level 1: Not more than 5 units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- C. Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and in each color and gloss of topcoat.
 - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square.
 - 2. Step coats on Samples to show each coat required for system.
 - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
 - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- D. Product List: For each product indicated, include the following:
 - 1. Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
 - 2. VOC content.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Paint: 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
 - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Provide all paint and coating products used in any individual system from the same manufacturer; no exceptions.
- B. Paints:
 - 1. PPG Paints : www.ppgpaints.com. (PPG)
 - 2. Sherwin-Williams Company: www.sherwin-williams.com. (SW)
 - 3. Benjamin Moore: www.benjaminmoore.com (BM)

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. Material Compatibility:
 - 1. Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
 - 2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- B. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers. Where acceptability of substrate conditions is in question, apply samples and perform in-situ testing to verify compatibility, adhesion, and film integrity of new paint application.
 - 1. Report, in writing, conditions that may affect application, appearance, or performance of paint.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:

1. Concrete: 12 percent.
 2. Wood: 15 percent.
 3. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
- C. Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.
- D. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.
- E. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations applicable to substrates indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer, if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer but not less than the following:
1. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- F. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- G. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal fabricated from coil stock by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.
- H. Wood Substrates:
1. Scrape and clean knots, and apply coat of knot sealer before applying primer.
 2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view, and dust off.
 3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
 4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.
- I. Cotton or Canvas Insulation Covering Substrates: Remove dust, dirt, and other foreign material that might impair bond of paints to substrates.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations.
1. Stir contents in accordance with manufacturers recommendations. Do not shake unless specifically allowed by paint manufacturer.

2. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
 3. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
 4. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
 5. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
 6. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- E. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
1. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces, *including exposed items in ceilings where exposed structure is scheduled to be painted*:
 - a. Equipment, including panelboards.
 - b. Uninsulated metal piping. Do not paint sprinkler heads or concealed sprinkler head covers.
 - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
 - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
 - e. Metal conduit.
 - f. Plastic conduit.
 - g. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton, canvas or foil/scrim insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
 2. When possible, delay painting ceilings where exposed structure is scheduled to be painted until completion of all fire suppression, plumbing, HVAC, electrical, communication (voice and data), and electronic safety and security work. Where work of other trades, affects the schedule for application and installation of other room surfaces (walls, floor and base), initial painting may occur with follow-up painting as required. Protect finished surfaces from follow-up painting. Touch-up, repaint, clean as required. Replace finished work that cannot be restored to their original condition.
 - a. Touch-up paint shall have the same color and finish gloss level as the remaining ceiling. Coordinate application methods to eliminate differences in gloss level.
 3. Paint portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets that are visible from occupied spaces.
 4. Paint the inside of all mechanical chases constructed of gypsum board and metal studs, visible from any normal viewing angle (from a seated or standing position) through the air inlet or outlet.
 5. Paint mechanical grilles (supply and return) where associated with painted ductwork at exposed structural ceilings.
 6. Except where mechanical grilles (supply and return) are supplied in the same color as the adjacent wall or ceiling surface where they occur, paint grilles to match the color of the adjacent wall or ceiling surface.
 7. Paint the *inside* of air ducts and mechanical chases constructed of metal stud and gyp. bd. visible from any angle through the grille or louver.
 8. Paint all items exposed to view and specified as “primed” (factory or field) regardless of whether it is specifically mentioned in the painting sections.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
 - 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
 - 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.6 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

A. Concrete Masonry Units (Semi-gloss):

- 1. Block Filler (New) - 1 coat applied at DFT of no less than 7.1 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 6-7 Speedhide Interior Exterior Latex Block Filler.
 - b. SW: Prep-Rite Latex Block Filler B25W25.
 - c. BM: Ultra Spec Hi-Build Masonry Block Filler 571.
- 2. Primer (For surfaces previously painted with epoxy, alkyd, or high gloss finishes) - 1 coat applied at DFT of no less than 1.6 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 17-921 Seal Grip Interior Exterior Universal Acrylic Primer.
 - b. SW: PrepRite ProBlock Interior/Exterior Latex Primer/Sealer B51W20 Series.
 - c. BM: Fresh Start High-Hiding All Purpose Primer 046.
- 3. Finish - 2 coats applied at total DFT of no less than 3.0 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 16-510 Pitt Glaze WB1 Precatalyzed Acrylic Semi Gloss Epoxy.
 - b. SW: Pro Industrial Pre-Catalyzed Waterbased Semi Gloss Epoxy K46-150 Series.
 - c. BM: Corotech Pre-Catalyzed Waterborne Epoxy Semi-Gloss V341.

B. Concrete Masonry Units (Eggshell):

- 1. Block Filler (New) - 1 coat applied at DFT of no less than 7.1 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 6-7 Speedhide Interior Exterior Latex Block Filler.
 - b. SW: Prep-Rite Latex Block Filler B25W25.
 - c. BM: Ultra Spec Hi-Build Masonry Block Filler 571.
- 2. Primer (For surfaces previously painted with epoxy, alkyd, or high gloss finishes) - 1 coat applied at DFT of no less than 1.6 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 17-921 Seal Grip Interior Exterior Universal Acrylic Primer.
 - b. SW: PrepRite ProBlock Interior/Exterior Latex Primer/Sealer B51W20 Series.
 - c. BM: Fresh Start High-Hiding All Purpose Primer 046.
- 3. Finish - 2 coats applied at total DFT of no less than 3.0 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 16-310 Pitt Glaze WB1 Precatalyzed Acrylic Semi Gloss Epoxy.
 - b. SW: Pro Industrial Pre-Catalyzed Waterbased Semi Gloss Epoxy K45-150 Series.

- c. BM: Corotech Pre-Catalyzed Waterborne Epoxy Eggshell V342.
- C. Concrete Masonry Units (Semi-gloss in wet environments):
 - 1. Block Filler (New) - 1 coat applied at DFT of no less than 11.0 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: Amerlock 400BF Epoxy Masonry Block Filler.
 - b. SW: Kem Cati-Coat HS Epoxy Filler/Sealer, B42W00400/B42V00401
 - c. BM: Corotech Waterborne Epoxy Block Filler V163.
 - 2. Finish - 2 coats applied at total DFT of no less than 4.0 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 98-1 Aquapon WB Water-Borne Polyamide Semi Gloss Epoxy.
 - b. SW: Waterbased Tile-Clad Epoxy Finish, B73-100 Series.
 - c. BM: Corotech Waterborne Polyamide Epoxy Gloss V440.
- D. Concrete (Eggshell):
 - 1. Primer - 1 coat applied at DFT of no less than 1.6 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 17-921 Seal Grip Interior Exterior Universal Acrylic Primer.
 - b. SW: PrepRite ProBlock Interior/Exterior Latex Primer/Sealer B51W20 Series.
 - c. BM: Moore's Fresh Start Interior Exterior Acrylic Primer 023
 - 2. Finish - 2 coats applied at total DFT of no less than 3.0 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 6-4310XI Speedhide Zero Interior Zero VOC Latex Eggshell.
 - b. BM: Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Low Sheen N537.
 - c. SW: ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Low Sheen Eg-Shel, B24 2600.
- E. Wood - painted (Semi-gloss):
 - 1. Primer (New and Previously Painted) - 1 coat applied at DFT of no less than 1.6 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 17-921 Seal Grip Interior Exterior Universal Acrylic Primer.
 - b. SW: PrepRite ProBlock Interior/Exterior Latex Primer/Sealer B51W20 Series.
 - c. BM: Moore's Fresh Start Interior Exterior Acrylic Primer 023.
 - 2. Finish - 2 coats applied at total DFT of no less than 3.0 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 90-1210 Pitt Tech Plus DTM Acrylic Semi Gloss Industrial Enamel.
 - b. SW: Sher-Cryl HPA High Performance Acrylic Semi Gloss, B66-350 Series.
 - c. BM: Super Spec HP DTM Acrylic Semi Gloss P29.
- F. Ferrous Metal and Aluminum (Semi-gloss):
 - 1. Primer (New and Previously Painted Doors & Frames and Misc. Metal) - 1 coat applied at DFT of no less than 2.3 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 6-208 Speedhide Int/Ext Rust Inhibitive Steel Primer.
 - b. SW: Kromik Alkyd Metal Primer E41 Series.
 - c. BM: Alkyd Metal Primer P06
 - 2. Primer (New and Previously Painted Metal Handrails) - 1 coat applied at DFT of 4.0 to 7.0 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 95-245 Pitt Guard Rapid-Coat Direct-to-Rust Epoxy Mastic Coating.
 - b. SW: Macropoxy 646 Fast Cure Epoxy, B58W00610 Series.
 - c. BM: Corotech Surface Tolerant Epoxy Mastic Coating V160.
 - 3. Finish (New and Previously Painted Metal Doors & Frames and Misc. Metal) - 2 coats applied at total DFT of no less than 4.0 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 90-1210 Pitt Tech Plus DTM Acrylic Semi Gloss Industrial Enamel.
 - b. SW: Sher-Cryl HPA High Performance Acrylic Semi Gloss, B66-350 Series.
 - c. BM: Super Spec HP DTM Acrylic Semi Gloss P29.

4. Finish – (New and Previously Painted Metal Handrails) - 2 coats applied at total DFT of 4.0 to 10.0 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 95-8800 Pitthane High Build Semi-Gloss Urethane Enamel.
 - b. SW: Acrolon 218 HS Acrylic Semi Gloss Polyurethane B65-650 Series.
 - c. BM: Corotech Aliphatic Acrylic Semi Gloss Urethane Enamel V510.
- G. Galvanized Metal (Semi-gloss):
 1. Primer (New and Previously Painted Doors & Frames and Misc. Metal) - 1 coat applied at DFT of no less than 2.0 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 90-712 Pitt-Tech DTM Acrylic Metal Primer Finish.
 - b. SW: DTM Acrylic Primer Finish B66W1 Series.
 - c. BM: Super Spec HP Acrylic Metal Primer P04.
 2. Primer (New and Previously Painted Metal Handrails) - 1 coat applied at DFT of 4.0 to 7.0 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 95-245 Pitt Guard Rapid-Coat Direct-to-Rust Epoxy Mastic Coating.
 - b. SW: Macropoxy 646 Fast Cure Epoxy, B58W00610 Series
 - c. BM: Corotech Surface Tolerant Epoxy Mastic Coating V160.
 3. Finish (New and Previously Painted Metal Doors & Frames and Misc. Metal) - 2 coats applied at total DFT of no less than 4.0 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 90-1210 Pitt Tech Plus DTM Acrylic Semi Gloss Industrial Enamel.
 - b. SW: Sher-Cryl HPA High Performance Acrylic Semi Gloss, B66-350 Series.
 - c. BM: Super Spec HP DTM Acrylic Semi Gloss P29.
 4. Finish – (New and Previously Painted Metal Handrails) - 2 coats applied at total DFT of 4.0 to 10.0 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 95-8800 Pitthane High Build Semi-Gloss Urethane Enamel.
 - b. SW: Acrolon 218 HS Acrylic Semi Gloss Polyurethane B65-650 Series.
 - c. BM: Corotech Aliphatic Acrylic Semi Gloss Urethane Enamel V510.
- H. Dry-Fog Coating (Flat waterborne acrylic dry fog for exposed ceiling decking, structural steel, and misc. metal piping and conduit):
 1. Primer (New and Previously Painted Ferrous and Galvanized Metal): 1 coat applied at DFT of no less than 2.0 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 90-712 Pitt Tech DTM Acrylic Primer Finish.
 - b. SW: DTM Acrylic Primer Finish B66W1 Series.
 - c. BM: Super Spec HP Acrylic Metal Primer P04.
 2. Finish: 1 coat applied at DFT of no less than 2.2 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 6-725XI Speedhide Super Tech WB Interior Waterborne Flat Dry Fog.
 - b. SW: Waterborne Acrylic Flat Dryfall, B42W1 series.
 - c. BM: Super Spec Sweep Up Spray Latex Flat 153/K153
- I. Gypsum Board (Flat):
 1. Primer (New) - 1 coat applied at DFT of no less than 1.0 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 6-2 Speedhide Interior Latex Drywall Primer/Sealer.
 - b. SW: Prep-Rite 200 Interior Latex Primer B28W200.
 - c. BM: Super Spec Interior Latex Primer 253.
 2. Primer (For surfaces previously painted with epoxy, alkyd, or high gloss finishes) - 1 coat applied at DFT of no less than 1.6 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 17-921 Seal Grip Interior Exterior Universal Acrylic Primer.
 - b. SW: PrepRite ProBlock Interior/Exterior Latex Primer/Sealer B51W20 Series.
 - c. BM: Moore's Fresh Start Interior Exterior Acrylic Primer 023.

3. Finish - 2 coats applied at total DFT of no less than 3.0 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 6-4110XI Speedhide Zero Interior Zero VOC Latex Flat.
 - b. BM: Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Flat N536.
 - c. SW: ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Flat, B30W2651.
- J. Gypsum Board (Eggshell):
1. Primer (New) - 1 coat applied at DFT of no less than 1.0 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 6-2 Speedhide Interior Latex Drywall Primer/Sealer.
 - b. SW: Prep-Rite 200 Interior Latex Primer B28W200.
 - c. BM: Super Spec Interior Latex Primer 253.
 2. Primer (For surfaces previously painted with epoxy, alkyd, or high gloss finishes) - 1 coat applied at DFT of no less than 1.6 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 17-921 Seal Grip Interior Exterior Universal Acrylic Primer.
 - b. SW: PrepRite ProBlock Interior/Exterior Latex Primer/Sealer B51W20 Series.
 - c. BM: Moore's Fresh Start Interior Exterior Acrylic Primer 023
 3. Finish - 2 coats applied at total DFT of no less than 3.0 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 6-4310XI Speedhide Zero Interior Zero VOC Latex Eggshell.
 - b. BM: Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Low Sheen N537.
 - c. SW: ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Low Sheen Eg-Shel, B24 2600
- K. Gypsum Board (Semi Gloss):
1. Primer (New) - 1 coat applied at DFT of no less than 1.0 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 6-2 Speedhide Interior Latex Drywall Primer/Sealer.
 - b. SW: Prep-Rite 200 Interior Latex Primer B28W200.
 - c. BM: Super Spec Interior Latex Primer 253.
 2. Primer (For surfaces previously painted with epoxy, alkyd, or high gloss finishes) - 1 coat applied at DFT of no less than 1.6 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 17-921 Seal Grip Interior Exterior Universal Acrylic Primer.
 - b. SW: PrepRite ProBlock Interior/Exterior Latex Primer/Sealer B51W20 Series.
 - c. BM: Moore's Fresh Start Interior Exterior Acrylic Primer 023.
 3. Finish - 2 coats applied at total DFT of no less than 3.0 mils or as recommended by manufacturer:
 - a. PPG: 6-4510XI Speedhide Zero Interior Zero VOC Latex Semi Gloss.
 - b. BM: Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Semi Gloss N539.
 - c. SW: ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Semi Gloss, B31W02651.
- L. Wood Trim - Staining Woods:
1. Stain Coat:
 - a. PPG: DFT 400 Deft Interior Oil Based Wood Stain.
 - b. SW: Wood Classics Interior Oil Stain A48-200 series.
 - c. BM: Benwood Interior Oil Wood Stain 241.
 2. Sealer Coat:
 - a. PPG: DFT 61 Deft Interior Waterbased Sanding Sealer.
 - b. SW: Wood Classics FD Sanding Sealer B26 series.
 - c. BM: Benwood Quick Drying Sanding Sealer 413.
 3. Finish – (2 coats):
 - a. PPG: DFT 129 (Satin) DFT 127 (Gloss) Deft Interior Polyurethane.
 - b. SW: Wood Classics FD Varnish A66 Series.
 - c. BM: Benwood Interior Satin Varnish C404, Gloss Impervo C440.

END OF SECTION 099123

SECTION 099323 - INTERIOR TRANSPARENT FINISHES**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of transparent finish systems on interior substrates, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Concrete Floor Slabs.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" for surface preparation and the application of paint systems on exterior substrates.
 - 2. Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for surface preparation and the application of paint systems on interior substrates.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. SSPC-SP 1 - Solvent Cleaning
- B. SSPC-SP 2 - Hand Tool Cleaning
- C. SSPC-SP 3 - Power Tool Cleaning
- D. SSPC-SP 13 / NACE No. 6 Surface Preparation for Concrete
- E. ASTM F1869 - Moisture Test by use of Calcium Chloride
- F. ASTM D4258 - Standard Practice for Cleaning Concrete
- G. ASTM D4259 - Standard Practice for Abrading Concrete
- H. ASTM D4260 - Standard Practice for Etching Concrete
- I. ASTM D4263 - Plastic Sheet Method for Checking Moisture in Concrete
- J. ICRI #310.2 - Surface Preparation of Concrete

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 013300, Submittal Procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each paint and coating product should include:
 - 1. Product characteristics
 - 2. Surface preparation instructions and recommendations
 - 3. Primer requirements and finish specification
 - 4. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations
 - 5. Application methods
 - 6. Cleanup information
- C. Selection Samples: Submit a complete set of color chips that represent the full range of manufacturer's color samples available.
- D. Coating Maintenance Manual: upon conclusion of the project, the Contractor or paint manufacturer/supplier shall furnish a coating maintenance manual, such as Sherwin-Williams "Custodian Paint Maintenance Manual" report or equal. Manual shall include an Area Summary with finish schedule, Area Detail designating

where each product/color/finish was used, product data pages, Safety Data Sheets, care and cleaning instructions, touch-up procedures, and color samples of each color and finish used.

1.5 MOCK-UP

- A. Finish surfaces for verification of products, colors, & sheens
- B. Finish area designated by Architect
- C. Provide samples that designate prime & finish coats
- D. Do not proceed with remaining work until the Architect approves the mock-up samples

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery: Deliver manufacturer's unopened containers to the work site. Packaging shall bear the manufacturer's name, label, and the following list of information:
 - 1. Product name, and type (description)
 - 2. Application & use instructions
 - 3. Surface preparation
 - 4. VOC content
 - 5. Environmental handling and SDS
 - 6. Batch date
 - 7. Color number
- B. Storage: Store and dispose of solvent-based materials, and materials used with solvent-based materials, in accordance with requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction. Store materials in an area that is within the acceptable temperature range, per manufacturer's instructions. Protect from freezing.
- C. Handling: Maintain a clean, dry storage area, to prevent contamination or damage to the coatings.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not apply coatings under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-Of-Design Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with specifications, provide products equal to those listed in the Interior Transparent Finish schedule as manufactured by:

The Sherwin-Williams Company
101 Prospect Avenue NW
Cleveland, OH 44115
Tel: (800) 321-8194
www.sherwin-williams.com

- B. Substitutions: Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Section 016000 Product Requirements.
 - 1. When submitting request for substitution, provide complete product data specified above under Submittals, for each substitute product.
- C. Surfaces to Be Coated: Extent of interior transparent Finish is limited to new and existing concrete floor slabs, elevated and slab-on-grade.

2.2 MATERIALS - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Paints and Coatings - General:

1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide factory-mixed coatings. When required, mix coatings to correct consistency in accordance with manufacturer's instructions before application. Do not reduce, thin, or dilute coatings or add materials to coatings unless such procedure is specifically described in manufacturer's product instructions.
2. For opaque finishes, tint each coat including primer coat and intermediate coats, one-half shade lighter than succeeding coat, with final finish coat as base color.

B. Primers:

1. Where the manufacturer offers options on primers for a particular substrate, use primer categorized as "best" by the manufacturer.
2. The execution of backpriming of woodwork is usually specified in the woodwork section, although the materials may be specified here.

2.3 ACCESSORIES:

A. Coating Application Accessories:

1. Provide all primers, sealers, cleaning agents, cleaning cloths, sanding materials, and clean-up materials required, per manufacturer's specifications.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Do not begin application of coatings until substrates have been properly examined and prepared. Notify Architect of unsatisfactory conditions before proceeding.
- B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.
- C. Proceed with work only after conditions have been corrected and approved by all parties, otherwise application of coatings will be considered as an acceptance of surface conditions.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Proper product selection, surface preparation, and application affect coating performance. Coating integrity and service life will be reduced because of improperly prepared surfaces. Selection and implementation of proper surface preparation ensures coating adhesion to the substrate and prolongs the service life of the coating system.
- B. Selection of the proper method of surface preparation depends on the substrate, the environment, and the expected service life of the coating system. Economics, surface contamination, and the effect on the substrate will also influence the selection of surface preparation methods.
- C. The surface must be dry and in sound condition. Remove oil, dust, dirt, loose rust, peeling paint or other contamination to ensure good adhesion. Recognize that any surface preparation short of total removal of the old coating may compromise the service length of the system.
- D. Prior to attempting to remove mildew, it is always recommended to test any cleaner on a small, inconspicuous area prior to use. Bleach and bleaching type cleaners may damage or discolor existing paint films. Bleach alternative cleaning solutions may be advised.
- E. Mildew may be removed before painting by washing with a solution of 1-part liquid bleach and 3- parts water. Apply the solution and scrub the mildewed area. Allow the solution to remain on the surface for 10 minutes. Rinse thoroughly with water and allow the surface to dry before painting. Wear protective eyewear, waterproof gloves, and protective clothing. Quickly wash off any of the mixture that comes in contact with your skin. Do not add detergents or ammonia to the bleach-water solution.
- F. Surface Preparation

1. Existing Concrete: Remove any existing coating, surface contaminants, oils, grease, curing compounds that would affect adhesion to existing concrete surfaces. Etch surfaces that do not comply with surface texture described for new concrete.
2. New Concrete: New concrete must be cured at least 30 days at 75°F. If the concrete feels like 120-grit sandpaper, the pores are open enough for this product to bond properly with the substrate. If the surface does not have this texture, etch the surface (unless acid staining). Rough textured concrete does not need to be etched. Do not etch painted surfaces. Prepared concrete should have a pH between 6 and 9. Not adequately degreasing, etching, or allowing the substrate to dry completely will result in poor adhesion.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Testing: Due to the wide variety of substrates, preparation methods, application methods and environments, one should test the product in an inconspicuous spot for adhesion and compatibility prior to full-scale application.
- B. Apply all coatings and materials with manufacturer's specifications in mind. Mix and thin coatings according to manufacturer's recommendation.
- C. Do not apply to wet or damp surfaces.
 1. Wait at least 30 days before applying to new concrete or follow manufacturer's procedures to apply appropriate coatings prior to 30 days.
 2. Test new concrete for moisture content.
- D. Apply coatings using methods recommended by manufacturer.
- E. Uniformly apply coatings without runs, drips, or sags, without brush marks, and with consistent sheen.
- F. Apply coatings at spreading rate required to achieve the manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness.
- G. Regardless of number of coats specified, apply as many coats as necessary for complete hide and uniform appearance.
- H. Inspection: The coated surface must be inspected and approved by the Architect or Engineer just prior to the application of each coat.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finished coatings from damage until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up damaged coatings after substantial completion, following manufacturer's recommendation for touch up or repair of damaged coatings. Repair any defects that will hinder the performance of the coatings.

3.5 SCHEDULES

- A. Concrete Interior Floors
 1. Acrylic Transparent Finish
 - a. 1st Coat: S-W H&C® CLARISHIELD® Water-Based Wet-Look Concrete Sealer
 - b. 2nd Coat: S-W H&C® CLARISHIELD® Water-Based Wet-Look Concrete Sealer (75-300 sq ft/gal)

END OF SECTION 099323

SECTION 101419 - DIMENSIONAL LETTER SIGNAGE**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Cast dimensional characters.
 - 2. Fabricated channel dimensional characters.
 - 3. Illuminated, fabricated channel dimensional characters.
 - 4. Molded-plastic dimensional characters.
- B. Allowances: See Section 012100 - Allowances for allowance amount for dimensional letter signs.

1.3 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 101423 "Panel Signage" for code mandated interior signage.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For dimensional, illuminated and back lit channel letter signs.
 - 1. Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by others, and accessories.
 - 3. Show message list, typestyles, graphic elements, and layout for each sign at least half size.
 - 4. Show locations of electrical service connections.
 - 5. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sign assembly, exposed component, and exposed finish.
 - 1. Include representative Samples of available typestyles and graphic symbols.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of sign assembly showing all components and with the required finish(es), in manufacturer's standard size unless otherwise indicated and as follows:
 - 1. Dimensional Characters: Full-size Sample of dimensional character.
 - 2. Exposed Accessories: Full-size Sample of each accessory type.
- E. Sign Schedule: Use same designations specified or indicated on Drawings or in a sign schedule.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering.
 - b. Separation or delamination of sheet materials and components.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DIMENSIONAL CHARACTERS

- A. Cast Characters: Characters with uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles, and as follows:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Allen Markings.
 - b. APCO Graphics, Inc.
 - c. ASI Sign Systems, Inc.
 - d. Metal Arts.
 - e. Metallic Arts.
 - f. Seton Identification Products.
 2. Character Material: Cast aluminum.
 3. Character Height: As indicated.
 4. Thickness: As indicated.
 5. Finishes:
 - a. Integral Aluminum Finish: Anodized color as selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities.
 6. Mounting: As indicated.
 7. Typeface: To be selected.
- B. Cutout Characters: Characters with uniform faces; square-cut, smooth edges; precisely formed lines and profiles; and as follows:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Allen Markings.
 - b. APCO Graphics, Inc.
 - c. ASI Sign Systems, Inc.
 - d. Metal Arts.
 - e. Metallic Arts.
 - f. Seton Identification Products.
 2. Character Material: Solid acrylic.
 3. Character Height: As indicated on Drawings.
 4. Thickness: One-inch.
 5. Finishes:
 - a. Integral Acrylic Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors.
- C. Fabricated Channel Characters: Metal face and side returns, formed free from warp and distortion; with uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles; internally braced for stability, to meet structural performance loading without oil-canning or other surface deformation, and for securing fasteners; and as follows:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Allen Industries Architectural Signage.
 - b. APCO Graphics, Inc.
 - c. ASI Sign Systems, Inc.
 - d. Metallic Arts.

2. Illuminated Characters: LED lighting, including transformers, insulators, and other accessories for operability, with provision for servicing and concealing connections to building electrical system. Use tight or sealed joint construction to prevent unintentional light leakage. Space lamps apart from each other and away from character surfaces as needed to illuminate evenly.
 - a. Power: As indicated on electrical Drawings.
 - b. Weeps: Provide weep holes to drain water at lowest part of exterior characters.
3. Illumination Type:
 - a. Backlighting: Backlighting character construction with open backs designed to cast light onto mounting surface.
 - b. Internally Illuminated: Channel characters with 3/16" translucent acrylic faces for forward facing character illumination.
4. Character Material: Sheet or plate aluminum or zinc.
5. Material Thickness: Manufacturer's standard for size and design of character.
6. Character Height: As indicated on Drawings.
7. Character Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
8. Finishes:
 - a. Integral Metal Finish: As selected by Architect from full range of industry finishes.
 - b. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard, in color as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - c. Overcoat: Manufacturer's standard baked-on clear coating.
9. Mounting: As indicated on Drawings.
 - a. Backlighting: Hold characters at distance as selected by Architect from wall surface.
 - b. Internally Illuminated: Individually back mounted as indicated.
10. Typeface: As indicated.

2.2 DIMENSIONAL CHARACTER MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, alloy and temper recommended by sign manufacturer for casting process used and for type of use and finish indicated.
- B. Aluminum Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.
- C. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.
- D. Acrylic Sheet: ASTM D4802, category as standard with manufacturer for each sign, Type UVF (UV filtering).
- E. Paints and Coatings for Sheet Materials: Inks, dyes, and paints that are recommended by manufacturer for optimum adherence to surface and are UV and water resistant for colors and exposure indicated.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of signage, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:
 1. Use concealed fasteners and anchors unless indicated to be exposed.
 2. Sign Mounting Fasteners:
 - a. Concealed Studs: Concealed (blind), threaded studs welded or brazed to back of sign material, screwed into back of sign assembly, or screwed into tapped lugs cast integrally into back of cast sign material, unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Projecting Studs: Threaded studs with sleeve spacer, welded or brazed to back of sign material, screwed into back of sign assembly, or screwed into tapped lugs cast integrally into back of cast sign material, unless otherwise indicated.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard sign assemblies according to requirements indicated.
 - 1. Preassemble signs and assemblies in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs and assemblies only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation; apply markings in locations concealed from view after final assembly.
 - 2. Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Form assemblies and joints exposed to weather to resist water penetration and retention.
 - 3. Comply with AWS for recommended practices in welding and brazing. Provide welds and brazes behind finished surfaces without distorting or discoloring exposed side. Clean exposed welded and brazed connections of flux, and dress exposed and contact surfaces.
 - 4. Conceal connections if possible; otherwise, locate connections where they are inconspicuous.
 - 5. Internally brace signs for stability and for securing fasteners.
 - 6. Provide rebates, lugs, and brackets necessary to assemble components and to attach to existing work. Drill and tap for required fasteners. Use concealed fasteners where possible; use exposed fasteners that match sign finish.
 - 7. Castings: Fabricate castings free of warp, cracks, blowholes, pits, scale, sand holes, and other defects that impair appearance or strength. Grind, wire brush, sandblast, and buff castings to remove seams, gate marks, casting flash, and other casting marks before finishing.

2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Directional Finishes: Run grain with long dimension of each piece and perpendicular to long dimension of finished trim or border surface unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Organic, Anodic, and Chemically Produced Finishes: Apply to formed metal after fabrication but before applying contrasting polished finishes on raised features unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of signage work.
- B. Verify that sign-support surfaces are within tolerances to accommodate signs without gaps or irregularities between backs of signs and support surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Verify that electrical service is correctly sized and located to accommodate signs.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install signs using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Install signs level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of

- distortion and other defects in appearance.
- 2. Before installation, verify that sign surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.
- 3. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of exterior aluminum in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.

B. Mounting Methods:

- 1. Concealed Studs: Using a template, drill holes in substrate aligning with studs on back of sign. Remove loose debris from hole and substrate surface.
 - a. Masonry Substrates: Fill holes with adhesive. Leave recess space in hole for displaced adhesive. Place sign in position and push until flush to surface, embedding studs in holes. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.
 - b. Thin or Hollow Surfaces: Place sign in position and flush to surface, install washers and nuts on studs projecting through opposite side of surface, and tighten.
- 2. Projecting Studs: Using a template, drill holes in substrate aligning with studs on back of sign. Remove loose debris from hole and substrate surface.
 - a. Masonry Substrates: Fill holes with adhesive. Leave recess space in hole for displaced adhesive. Place spacers on studs, place sign in position, and push until spacers are pinched between sign and substrate, embedding the stud ends in holes. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.
 - b. Thin or Hollow Surfaces: Place spacers on studs, place sign in position with spacers pinched between sign and substrate, and install washers and nuts on stud ends projecting through opposite side of surface, and tighten.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed characters and signs that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace characters with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed.
- C. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of signs according to manufacturer's written instructions, and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain signs in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 101419

SECTION 101423 - PANEL SIGNAGE**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Code mandated panel signs including but not limited restroom signage, service room identification.
- B. Allowances: See Section 012100 - Allowances for allowance amount for panel signs.

1.3 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 101419 "Dimensional Letter Signage".
- B. Interior way-finding and vinyl signage to be provided by Owner.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines: U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines."

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for signs.
 - 1. Show sign mounting heights, and accessories.
 - 2. Provide message list, type styles, graphic elements, including tactile characters and Braille, and layout for each sign.
- C. Samples: For each sign type and for each color and texture required.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 PANEL SIGNS**

- A. Interior Panel Signs - General: Provide smooth sign panel surfaces constructed to remain flat under installed conditions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1/16 inch measured diagonally from corner to corner.
- B. Code mandated signage: Allowance shall include material cost for the following code mandated signage. See drawings for extents of each sign required.
 - 1. OCCUPANT LOAD of Worship W101: One at each exit or exit access from the room.
 - 2. Tactile EXIT signage (raised characters and braille) at all exit doors.
 - 3. Restrooms, including single user restrooms (excluding private use restrooms)
 - 4. Signage in the Worship W101 indicating the availability of assistive listening devices. Coordinate number with AVL consultant based on occupant load indicated.
 - 5. Room and operational signage required by plumbing, mechanical and electrical codes.

- C. Interior Panel sign material, finish, copy, and construction detail will be determined from manufacturer's complete line of options within the limits of the lump-sum allowance.
 - 1. Provide panel signage from the same manufacturer as the Dimensional Character signage manufacturer.
 - 2. Tactile and Braille Sign: Manufacturer's standard process for producing text and symbols complying with ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and with ICC/ANSI A117.1. Text shall be accompanied by Grade 2 Braille. Produce precisely formed characters with square-cut edges free from burrs and cut marks; Braille dots with domed or rounded shape.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Anchors and Inserts: Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts for exterior installations and elsewhere as required for corrosion resistance. Use toothed steel or lead expansion-bolt devices for drilled-in-place anchors. Furnish inserts, as required, to be set into concrete or masonry work.

2.3 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard signs of configurations indicated.
 - 1. Conceal fasteners if possible; otherwise, locate fasteners where they will be inconspicuous.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate signs and accessories where indicated, using mounting methods of types described and complying with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Install signs level, plumb, and at heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
 - 2. Interior Wall Signs: Install signs on walls adjacent to latch side of door where applicable. Where not indicated or possible, such as double doors, install signs on nearest adjacent walls. Locate to allow approach within 3 inches of sign without encountering protruding objects or standing within swing of door.
- B. Wall-Mounted Signs: Comply with sign manufacturer's written instructions except where more stringent requirements apply.
 - 1. Two-Face Tape: Mount signs to smooth, nonporous surfaces. Do not use this method for vinyl-covered or rough surfaces.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed signs and signs that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace signs with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed.
- C. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of signs according to manufacturer's written instructions and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain signs in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 101423

SECTION 102113 - PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD TOILET COMPARTMENTS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Plastic-laminate-clad toilet compartments configured as toilet enclosures and urinal screens.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for blocking.
 - 2. Section 102800 "Toilet and Bath Accessories" for toilet tissue dispensers, grab bars, purse shelves, and similar accessories mounted on toilet compartments.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for toilet compartments.
- B. Shop Drawings: For toilet compartments.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachment details.
 - 2. Show locations of cutouts for compartment-mounted toilet accessories.
 - 3. Show locations of centerlines of toilet fixtures.
 - 4. Show locations of floor drains.
- C. Samples: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Each type of material, color, and finish required for toilet compartments, prepared on 6-inch- square Samples of same thickness and material indicated for Work.
 - 2. Each type of hardware and accessory.
- D. Product Schedule: For toilet compartments, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, detailing location and selected colors for toilet compartment material.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For toilet compartments to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of toilet fixtures, walls, columns, ceilings, and other construction contiguous with toilet compartments by field measurements before fabrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame-Spread Index: 200 or less.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

2.2 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD TOILET COMPARTMENTS

- A. Basis of Design: As the basis-of-design provide products as described on the drawings as manufactured by Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc..
 1. Manufacturers Offering Comparable Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering equal products that may be incorporated into the Work:
 - a. Accurate Partitions Corp.; ASI Group.
 - b. Bradley Corporation.
 - c. General Partitions Mfg. Corp.
 - d. Global Partitions; ASI Group.
 - e. Knickerbocker Partition Corporation.
 - f. Metpar Corporation.
 2. Verify availability of plastic-laminate with manufacturers listed and provide products only from manufacturers offering panels in the finishes selected.
- B. Plastic-Laminate Finish: See Finish Schedule for laminate selections.
- C. Toilet-Enclosure Style: Overhead braced.
- D. Urinal-Screen Style: Wall hung.
 1. Depth from wall to leading vertical edge: 24 inches or 6" beyond lip of urinal fixture, whichever is greater.
 2. Starting height above floor: As indicated, but no greater than 12 inches.
 3. Top edge of screen: As indicated, but at minimum 60 inches.
- E. Door, Panel, and Pilaster Construction: One-piece, plastic-laminate facing sheets pressure laminated to core material without splices or joints in facings or cores; with laminate applied to edges before faces to seal edges and prevent laminate from being pried loose. Seal exposed core material at cutouts to protect core from moisture.
 1. Core Material: Particleboard.
 2. Doors and Panels: Finished to not less than 1 inch thick.
 3. Pilasters: Provide construction to comply with the following:
 - a. Finished to not less than 1-1/4 inches thick.
- F. Pilaster Shoes and Sleeves (Caps): Formed from stainless-steel sheet, not less than 0.031-inch nominal thickness and 3 inches high, finished to match hardware.
- G. Brackets (Fittings):
 1. Toilet Enclosures: Stirrup type, ear or U-brackets, chrome-plated zamac.
 2. Urinal-Screen: Heavy-duty, full-height (continuous) type; manufacturer's standard design; stainless steel.

2.3 HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Hardware and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard operating hardware and accessories.
 1. Material: Chrome-plated zamac.
 2. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard paired, self-closing type that can be adjusted to hold doors open at any angle up to 90 degrees, allowing emergency access by lifting door.
 3. Latch and Keeper: Manufacturer's standard recessed or surface-mounted latch unit designed for emergency access and with combination rubber-faced door strike and keeper. Provide units that comply with regulatory requirements for accessibility at compartments designated as accessible.
 4. Coat Hook: Manufacturer's standard combination hook and rubber-tipped bumper, sized to prevent in-

- swinging door from hitting compartment-mounted accessories.
- 5. Door Bumper: Manufacturer's standard rubber-tipped bumper at out-swinging doors.
- 6. Door Pull: Manufacturer's standard unit at out-swinging doors that complies with regulatory requirements for accessibility. Provide pulls on both sides of doors at compartments designated as accessible.
- B. Overhead Bracing: Manufacturer's standard continuous, extruded-aluminum head rail with antigrip profile and in manufacturer's standard finish.
- C. Anchorages and Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard exposed fasteners of stainless steel, finished to match the items they are securing, with theft-resistant-type heads. Provide sex-type bolts for through-bolt applications. For concealed anchors, use stainless-steel, hot-dip galvanized-steel, or other rust-resistant, protective-coated steel anchors compatible with related materials.

2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2 with 45-lb density.
- B. Plastic Laminate: NEMA LD 3, general-purpose HGS grade, 0.048-inch nominal thickness.
- C. Adhesives: Manufacturer's standard product.
- D. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M.
- E. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221.
- F. Brass Castings: ASTM B 584.
- G. Brass Extrusions: ASTM B 455.
- H. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness.
- I. Zamac: ASTM B 86, commercial zinc-alloy die castings.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabrication, General: Fabricate toilet compartment components to sizes indicated. Coordinate requirements and provide cutouts for through-partition toilet accessories where required for attachment of toilet accessories.
- B. Overhead-Braced Units: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant supports, leveling mechanism, and anchors at pilasters to suit floor conditions. Provide shoes at pilasters to conceal supports and leveling mechanism.
- C. Door Size and Swings: Unless otherwise indicated, provide 24-inch- wide in-swinging doors for standard toilet compartments and 36-inch- wide out-swinging doors with a minimum 32-inch- wide clear opening for compartments designated as accessible.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for fastening, support, alignment, operating clearances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Confirm location and adequacy of blocking and supports required for installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions. Install units rigid, straight, level, and plumb. Secure units in position with manufacturer's recommended anchoring devices.
 - 1. Maximum Clearances:

- a. Pilasters and Panels: 1/2 inch.
 - b. Panels and Walls: 1 inch.
- 2. Stirrup Brackets: Secure panels to walls and to pilasters with no fewer than three brackets attached at midpoint and near top and bottom of panel.
 - a. Locate wall brackets so holes for wall anchors occur in masonry or tile joints.
 - b. Align brackets at pilasters with brackets at walls.
- 3. Full-Height (Continuous) Brackets: Secure panels to walls and to pilasters with full-height brackets.
 - a. Locate bracket fasteners so holes for wall anchors occur in masonry or tile joints.
 - b. Align brackets at pilasters with brackets at walls.
- B. Overhead-Braced Units: Secure pilasters to floor and level, plumb, and tighten. Set pilasters with anchors penetrating not less than 1-3/4 inches into structural floor unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written instructions. Secure continuous head rail to each pilaster with no fewer than two fasteners. Hang doors to align tops of doors with tops of panels, and adjust so tops of doors are parallel with overhead brace when doors are in closed position.
- C. Urinal Screens: Attach with anchoring devices to suit supporting structure. Set units level and plumb, rigid, and secured to resist lateral impact.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Hardware Adjustment: Adjust and lubricate hardware according to hardware manufacturer's written instructions for proper operation. Set hinges on in-swinging doors to hold doors open approximately 30 degrees from closed position when unlatched. Set hinges on out-swinging doors to return doors to fully closed position.

END OF SECTION 102113

SECTION 102800 - TOILET AND BATH ACCESSORIES**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Public-use washroom accessories.
 - 2. Underlavatory guards.
 - 3. Custodial accessories.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include the following:
 - 1. Construction details and dimensions.
 - 2. Anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.
 - 3. Material and finish descriptions.
 - 4. Features that will be included for Project.
 - 5. Manufacturer's warranty.
- B. Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required.
 - 1. Identify locations using room designations indicated.
 - 2. Identify products using designations indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For toilet and bath accessories to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: For products listed together in the same Part 2 articles, obtain products from single source from single manufacturer.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.
- B. Deliver inserts and anchoring devices set into concrete or masonry as required to prevent delaying the Work.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Mirror Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace mirrors that develop visible silver spoilage defects and that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304, 0.031-inch minimum nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Designation CS (cold rolled, commercial steel), 0.036-inch minimum nominal thickness.
- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with G60 hot-dip zinc coating.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A 153/A 153M, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- E. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit and tamper-and-theft resistant where exposed, and of galvanized steel where concealed.
- F. Chrome Plating: ASTM B 456, Service Condition Number SC 2 (moderate service).
- G. Mirrors: ASTM C 1503, Mirror Glazing Quality, clear-glass mirrors, nominal 6.0 mm thick.

2.2 PUBLIC-USE WASHROOM ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. American Specialties, Inc.
 2. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 3. Bradley Corporation.
- B. Schedule of Washroom Accessories: See drawing schedules for list of required accessories. Equal products to those scheduled, produced by one of the listed manufacturers are acceptable, subject to compliance with specifications.

2.3 UNDERLAVATORY GUARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering the following products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 1. Plumberex Specialty Products, Inc.; “Handy Shield Maxx” undersink pipe covers
 2. Truebro by IPS Corporation; “Lav Guard® 2” undersink piping covers.
- B. Underlavatory Guard:
 1. Description: Insulating pipe covering for supply and drain piping assemblies that prevent direct contact with and burns from piping; allow service access without removing coverings.
 2. Material and Finish: Antimicrobial, molded plastic, white.

2.4 CUSTODIAL ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. American Specialties, Inc.
 2. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 3. Bradley Corporation.
- B. Schedule of Custodial Accessories: See drawing schedules for list of required accessories. Equal products to those scheduled, produced by the listed manufacturers are acceptable, subject to compliance with specifications.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing

plates.

- B. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and resupplying. Provide minimum of six keys to Owner's representative.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated or as directed by architect.
 - 1. Coordinate mounting locations for all toilet accessories with architect prior to wall rough-in to ensure framing is placed accurately for recessed accessories and blocking is placed to support imposed loads.
- B. Grab Bars: Install to withstand a downward load of at least 250 lbf, when tested according to ASTM F 446.
- C. Underlavatory Guard: Install underlavatory guards at all lavatories with exposed trap and water supplies, not otherwise protected by millwork or accessory skirts specified with the lavatory fixture. Verify configuration of supplies and trap.
 - 1. **Provide underlavatory guards on exposed trap and water supplies where base cabinets at sinks and lavatories are designed with operable front door panels designed to swing clear of the cabinet allowing unobstructed knee clearance for front approach to the fixture.**

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.
- C. Clean and polish exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
- D. Provide minimum of six keys to Owner's representative.

END OF SECTION 102800

SECTION 104413 - FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fire-protection cabinets for the following:
 - a. Portable fire extinguishers.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 104416 "Fire Extinguishers."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Show door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style. Include roughing-in dimensions and details showing recessed-, semirecessed-, or surface-mounting method and relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For fire-protection cabinets to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size of fire-protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire-protection cabinets with wall depths.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 FIRE-PROTECTION CABINET**

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products shown by Larsen's Manufacturing Company, or comparable products by one of the following:
 - 1. J.L. Industries.
 - 2. Potter-Roemer, Inc.
- B. Fire Extinguisher Cabinets: Provide fire extinguisher cabinets where indicated, of suitable size for housing specified fire extinguishers as follows:
 - 1. Cabinets Located in Non-Rated Construction: Semi-Recessed Cabinet Types:
 - a. Models with rolled edge "Vertical Duo" door style with tempered glass and recessed cup handles.
 - 1) Walls 4-7/8" thick: 2409-R4 (Requires 3" rough opening depth; 3-1/2" cabinet projection), with an inside box dimension of 24 inches height, 9.5 inches width and 6 inches depth.
- C. Cabinet Trim Material: Aluminum sheet.
- D. Door Material: Aluminum sheet.

E. Accessories:

1. Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire-protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.

F. Materials:

1. Aluminum: ASTM B 221, with strength and durability characteristics of not less than Alloy 6063-T5 for aluminum sheet. ASTM B 221 for extruded shapes.
 - a. Finish: Powder coat.
 - b. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities.
2. Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Quality q3, 3 mm thick, Class 1 (clear).

2.2 FABRICATION

- A. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub) with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.

1. Weld joints and grind smooth.
2. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.

- B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles.

1. Fabricate door frames with tubular stiles and rails and hollow-metal design, minimum 1/2 inch thick.
2. Miter and weld perimeter door frames.

- C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

2.3 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's AMP 500, "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products," for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire-protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Finish fire-protection cabinets after assembly.
- D. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where semirecessed cabinets will be installed.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare recesses for semirecessed fire-protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire-protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated or, if not indicated, at heights indicated below:
 - 1. Fire-Protection Cabinets: 54 inches above finished floor to top of cabinet.
- B. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.
 - 1. Fasten mounting brackets to inside surface of fire-protection cabinets, square and plumb.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire-protection cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Adjust fire-protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.
- C. On completion of fire-protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Touch up marred finishes, or replace fire-protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket manufacturers.
- E. Replace fire-protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 104413

SECTION 104416 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers and mounting brackets for fire extinguishers.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 104413 "Fire Protection Cabinets."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rating and classification, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire extinguisher and mounting brackets.
- B. Product Schedule: For fire extinguishers. Coordinate final fire-extinguisher schedule with fire-protection cabinet schedule to ensure proper fit and function. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire extinguishers to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate type and capacity of fire extinguishers with fire-protection cabinets to ensure fit and function.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire extinguishers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Failure of hydrostatic test according to NFPA 10.
 - b. Faulty operation of valves or release levers.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Six years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."
- B. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Provide fire extinguishers approved, listed, and labeled by FM Global.

2.2 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Type, size, and capacity for each fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket indicated.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Ansul Incorporated; Tyco International.
 - b. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
 - c. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.
 - d. Kidde Residential and Commercial Division.
 - e. Larsens Manufacturing Company.
 - f. Potter Roemer LLC.
 - 2. Valves: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 3. Handles and Levers: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 4. Instruction Labels: Include pictorial marking system complying with NFPA 10, Appendix B.
- B. Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type in Steel Container: UL-rated 4-A:80-B:C, 10-lb nominal capacity, with monoammonium phosphate-based dry chemical in enameled-steel container.
 - 1. Extents: Provide one (1) extinguisher at each fire extinguisher cabinet shown, plus where indicated to be bracket mounted.

2.3 MOUNTING BRACKETS (Only at locations noted on plan as bracket mounted)

- A. Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to wall or structure, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or red baked-enamel finish.
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain mounting brackets and fire extinguishers from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated by Architect.
 - 1. Identify bracket-mounted fire extinguishers with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER" in red letter decals applied to mounting surface.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.
 - 1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire extinguishers and mounting brackets in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Mounting Brackets: Fasten mounting brackets to surfaces, square and plumb, at locations indicated.
 - 1. Mounting Height: Top of fire extinguisher to be at 42 inches above finished floor.

END OF SECTION 104416

SECTION 105300 - PROTECTIVE COVERS**PART 1 - GENERAL:****1.1 GENERAL:**

- A. This section specifies prefabricated overhead structures as shown on drawings and details. Provide systems engineered to comply with load requirements of local codes (design live loads, wind loads, etc.).
 - 1. **Manufacturer shall be responsible for the design of structural members required to meet job conditions.**
 - 2. Unless noted or detailed otherwise, canopies are to be building supported structures, overhead braced, complete with wall-to-roof flashing, gutter, drainage beams and downspouts located against building face.
- B. Submittals: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
 - 1. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product information, specifications and installation instructions for components and accessories.
 - 2. Shop Drawings: Submit complete erection drawings showing attachment system, column and gutter beam framing, transverse cross sections, covering and trim details, and optional installation details to clearly indicate proper assembly of components, sealed by a State Registered Structural Engineer registered in the state in which the work is being performed.
 - 3. Calculations: Submit complete structural design calculation sealed by State Registered Structural Engineer registered in the state in which the work is being performed.
 - 4. Design and engineering of attachment surfaces are not covered in this specification and scope of work.
 - 5. Samples: Submit color selector of manufacturer's standard choices.
- C. Quality Assurance: Installers shall be company having a minimum of five years' experience installing prefabricated protective covers similar in extent.
 - 1. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - a. AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code--Aluminum."
 - 2. Warranty: Provide manufacturer's warranty against aluminum panels containing manufacturing defects causing peeling, blistering, flaking, splitting, rusting, chipping, or cracking.
 - a. Warranty Period: Five Years.
- D. Field Measurements: Where fabrications are indicated to fit walls and other construction, verify dimensions by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- E. Coordinate installation of anchorages for metal fabrications. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- F. Delivery: Deliver, store and handle canopy components as recommended by manufacturer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 MANUFACTURER:**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with specifications, provide products as manufactured by the following company (or approved equal):
 - 1. American Aluminum Products Inc.
 - 2. Mapes Architectural Canopies, LLC
 - 3. Tennessee Valley Metals.
- B. Supports:

1. Building Protective Covers: Unless noted otherwise, rear anchored to building structure with leading edge supported from columns.

C. Panel Profile: Extruded aluminum deck with integral drainage.

2.2 MATERIALS:

A. Provide aluminum extrusions, sheeting and hardware as follows:

1. Aluminum Extrusions: Alloy 6061-T6, 6063-T6 as called for by profile design.
2. Aluminum-Alloy Rolled Tread Plate: ASTM B 632/B 632M, alloy 6061-T6.
3. Aluminum Sheeting: Roll formed roof panels alloy 3005 H-28. Minimum yield 30,000 KSI or equal.

B. Hardware: Manufacturers standard stainless steel.

C. Sealants, Flashing and other non-structural items: As provided or recommended by manufacturer.

D. Fasteners: Provide Type 304 or 316 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5, where built into exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.

2.3 FINISHES:

A. High-Performance Organic Finish, Two-Coat PVDF: Fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat.

1. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
2. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.4 FABRICATION

A. General: Assemble components in shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field assembly.

B. Welding: In accordance with ANSI/AWS D1.2.

C. Bent Construction: Factory weld beams to columns with neatly mitered corners to form one-piece rigid bents. Make welds smooth and uniform using an inert gas shielded arc. Perform suitable edge preparation to assure 100% penetration. Grind welds only where interfering with adjoining structure to allow for flush connection. Field welding is not permitted. Rigid mechanical joints may be used only if fully welded bents cannot be shipped on local, state, or federal highways without a special permit from the department of transportation.

D. Beams: Provide open-top tubular extrusion, top edges thickened for strength and designed to receive deck members in self-flashing manner. Provide structural ties in tops of all beams.

E. Deck Construction: Fabricate from aluminum extruded shapes into interlocking sections in a self-flashing manner. Positively fasten interlocking joints at 8 inches on center creating a monolithic structural unit capable of developing the full strength of the sections. The fastenings must have minimum shear strength of 350 pounds each. Assemble deck with sufficient camber to offset dead load deflection.

F. Fascia: Manufacturer's standard shape with integral drainage provisions. Provide fascia splices where continuous runs of fascia are jointed. Locate splices to be in line with bents and fasten in place on hidden or non-vertical surfaces.

1. Downspouts: Provide downspouts from integral gutters and tie into new or existing storm drainage as indicated on drawings. Coordinate tie-in with downspout design.

G. Where lighting is shown surface mounted to underside of deck, provide manufacturer's standard framing required to support fixture and conceal electrical rough-in, without compromising the integrity of the canopy deck. Coordinate location and type of fixtures and rough-in requirements with electrical drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION:

3.1 INSPECTION:

- A. Prior to start of work, verify that surrounding conditions are acceptable for installation of protective cover.
- B. Contractor shall field confirm dimensions and elevations as shown on architectural drawings prior to fabrication.

3.2 INSTALLATION:

- A. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing metal fabrications to in-place construction. Include threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through-bolts, lag bolts, wood screws, and other connectors.
 - 1. All surfaces abutting the exterior walls shall be properly flashed to prevent passage of water between the canopy and building.
 - 2. Set reglets or other counterflashing receivers in exterior wall construction as the work progresses. Contractor shall coordinate with other trades required anchorage requirements and sequence of construction.
- B. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- C. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- D. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- E. Installation: Install prefabricated protective covers with fasteners connectors, and sealants in strict accordance with structure manufacturer's instructions and approved shop drawings.

END OF SECTION 105300

SECTION 108050 – KEY SAFES**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes key safe for recessed mounting.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
 - 1. Include written approval of selected product by local fire code official.
- B. Operation and maintenance data.
- C. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.4 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace key safe that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- B. Warranty Period: five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 KEY SAFE**

- A. The key safe shall be of an approved type listed in accordance with UL 1037, and shall contain keys to gain necessary access as required by the fire code official. Contractor shall contact local fire official or other authority having jurisdiction to confirm type of fire safe required and approved location for mounting.
- B. Manufacturer: Provide Knox-Box hinged door model, by Knox Company, 1601 West Deer Valley Road, Phoenix, AZ 85027. (800) 552-5669.
 - 1. From the website, <https://www.knoxbox.com/Products/Commercial-KnoxBoxes>, select the “How to Buy” link to verify the product(s) listed below are approved for the project location by the fire code official.
 - 2. Note that features for purchasing and verifying acceptable products work only when the manufacturer’s list of approved web browsers are used. The “How to Buy” link list the latest approved web browsers.
- C. Product: Unless an alternate product is required by the local fire code official, provide the following:
 - 1. Recessed Mount: 3270 black recess mount key safe without tamper switch.
 - a. Provide 3290 recess mounting kit
 - 2. Extent: Provide one recessed key safe mounted as indicated on drawings or as directed by Architect.
- D. Mounting Hardware: In addition to recess mounting kits where required, provide all necessary attachment hardware as required by the manufacturer for a complete and operational key safe.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Examine wall surface where key safe is to be installed. Provide backup materials as recommended by manufacturer for surface and recess mounting. Coordinate rough-opening requirements for recess mounting kit where applicable.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's instructions.

END OF SECTION 10805

SECTION 108200 - LOUVERED ROOF TOP EQUIPMENT SCREENS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY****A. Section Includes:**

1. Pre-formed painted metal panel for enclosing roof top mechanical equipment.
2. Aluminum assembly framing for direct attachment of screening panels to mechanical equipment; no base or curb required unless shown otherwise on drawings.
3. Sliding panels to permit easy access to mechanical equipment for servicing.

B. Products Not Installed or Furnished in This Section:

1. Touch-up painting required for scratches and screw heads.
2. Field painting of prime painted screens

1.2 REFERENCES**A. American Society for Testing and Materials: Standard Specifications for**

1. ASTM B 221-96 - Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire Profiles, and Tubes.

B. The Aluminum Association, Inc.

1. AA ADM-1516166 (1994) - Aluminum Design Manual

C. American Society of Civil Engineers.

1. ASCE 7-95 - Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures.

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**A. Design Criteria:**

1. Manufacturer is responsible for the structural design of all materials, assembly and attachments to resist snow, wind, suction and uplift loading at any point without damage or permanent set.
2. Framing shall be designed in accordance with the Aluminum Design Manual to resist the following loading:
 - a. ASCE 7-95 - Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures; American Society of Civil Engineers.

1.4 SUBMITTALS**A. Product Data:** Submit manufacturer's catalog data, detail sheets, specification and other data sufficient to indicate compliance with these specifications.**B. Shop Drawings:** Indicate layouts heights, component connection details, and details of interface with adjacent construction. Mark data to indicate:

1. Roof top mechanical equipment to be enclosed.
2. As-built site conditions and dimensions and indicate unit size and adjacent construction clearly on shop drawings.
3. Indicate mechanical access location and access doors as coordinated with mechanical equipment manufacturer.

C. Samples:

1. Samples of Materials: painted solid and perforated metal
2. Color Selection: Submit paint chart with full range of colors available for Architect's selection.

D. Certification: Manufacturer's Certificate of Compliance certifying that thermoplastic panels supplied meet or exceed requirements specified.

- E. Closeout Submittals: Warranty documents, issued and executed by manufacturer, countersigned by Contractor.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements of building authorities having jurisdiction in Project location.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Minimum five (5) years documented experience producing systems specified in this section.
- C. Pre-Installation Meeting:
 - 1. Convene at job site seven (7) calendar days prior to scheduled beginning of construction activities of this section to review requirements of this section.
 - 2. Require attendance by representatives of the installing subcontractor, (who will represent the system manufacturer) and other entities directly affected by construction activities of this section.
 - 3. Notify Architect four (4) calendar days in advance of scheduled meeting date.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery: Deliver materials to site in manufacturer's original, unopened containers and packaging, with labels clearly indicating manufacturer and material.
- B. Storage and Handling: Protect materials and finishes during handling and installation to prevent damage.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Take measurements of actual roof top unit for fit without gaps. Indicate measurements on shop drawings fully documenting any field condition that may interfere with the screen system installation.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Installer for work under this Section shall be responsible for coordination of panel and framing sizes and required options with the Contractor's requirements.
 - 1. Request information on sizes and options required from the Contractor.
- B. Submit shop drawings to the Contractor and obtain written approval of shop drawing from the Contractor prior to fabrication.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. If any part of the rooftop equipment screen fails because of a manufacturing defect within one year from the date of substantial completion, the manufacturer will furnish without charge the required replacement part(s). Any local transportation, related service labor or diagnostic call charges are not included.
- B. This warranty does not cover failure of your rooftop equipment screen if it is damaged by the Owner, or if the failure is caused by improper installation. In no event shall Warrantor be liable for incidental or consequential damages.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Products: Envisor Screening System by CityScapes Incorporated, 4200 Lyman Ct. Hilliard, OH 43026. 1-877-727-3367 www.cityscapesinc.com
- B. Substitutions: Submit in accordance with Section 012500.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Painted Metal Panels: Fabricated from rigid aluminum panels in multiple thicknesses.

1. Minimum thickness: 0.063
- B. Perforated Metal Panels: Fabricated from rigid aluminum panels in multiple thicknesses.
 1. Minimum thickness: 0.063
- C. Framing: Aluminum Plate, Shapes and Bar: ASTM B 221, alloy 6061-T5 or 6063-T5.
- D. Threaded Fasteners: All screws, bolts, nut and washers shall be Stainless steel.
 1. Corner assembly fasteners shall be #10-16 x stainless steel TEK screws. Length as required to develop full holding capacity of screw when fastened to Mechanical Equipment.
 2. Provide lock washer or other locking device at all bolted connections.

2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Provide factory-formed panel systems with continuous interlocking panel connections and indicated or necessary components: Form all components true to shape, accurate in size, square and free from distortion or defects. Cut panels to precise lengths indicated on approved shop drawings.
- B. Fabricate all panels to slide horizontally to allow access to unit access panels behind.
- C. Panel Design, Style, Trim:
 1. Panel Style: Horizontal.
 2. Panel Design: Metal Series – Vented Louver
 3. Decorative Top Trim Profile: Lineal Band
- D. Trim and Closures: Fabricated from 24 gage metal, and finished with the manufacturers standard coating system, unless shown otherwise on drawings.
- E. Framing: Fabricate and assemble components in largest practical sizes, for delivery to the site.
 1. Construct corner assemblies to required shape with joints tightly fitted.
 2. Supply components required for anchorage of framing. Fabricate anchors and related components of material and finish as required, or as specifically noted.
- F. Vertical and horizontal support members shall be an adjustable, telescoping design to allow:
 1. Adjustment due to sloping roofs.
 2. Unobstructed pathways for service personnel, minimum 48" wide, around the perimeter of the mechanical equipment, or as specified.
- G. Attachment bracket to the mechanical equipment shall not allow penetration of the walls or flat roof of the equipment. Attachment shall only penetrate the roof overhang, base rails, or other corner members that do not compromise the weatherproof cabinet.
- H. The screening system shall extend flush to the top of the mechanical equipment.
- I. The screening system shall extend to the bottom of the mechanical equipment, or to a predetermined point below that level.

2.4 FINISHES

- A. Aluminum Framing: Mill finish.
- B. Panel Coating: Manufacturer's standard powder coating system, factory applied.
 1. Color: Selected from full range of manufacturer's standard colors.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Installer's Examination: Examine conditions under which construction activities of this section are to be performed.

1. Submit written notification to Architect and Screen manufacturer if such conditions are unacceptable.
2. Beginning erection constitutes installer's acceptance of conditions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and approved shop drawings. Keep perimeter lines straight, plumb, and level. Provide brackets, anchors, and accessories necessary for a complete installation.
- B. Fasten structural supports to HVAC units without damaging operation of the unit.
 1. Provide corner and mid-span assemblies as required by approved shop drawings so that the panels are supported uniformly.
 2. Fastening bottom rail using bolts to permit ease of access to HVAC units.
- C. Insert thermoplastic panels into structural supports, except where fixed attachment points are indicated. Butt thermoplastic panels to adjacent panels for uniform fit. Fasten fixed panels in accordance with the shop drawings.
- D. Metal Separation: Where aluminum materials would contact dissimilar materials, insert rubber grommets at attachment points, thus eliminating where dissimilar metals would otherwise be in contact.
- E. Do not cut or abrade finishes which cannot be restored. Return items with such finishes to shop for required alterations.

3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum misalignment from true position: $\frac{1}{4}$ inch.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove all protective masking from material immediately after installation.
- B. Protection:
 1. Ensure that finishes and structure of installed systems are not damaged by subsequent construction activities.
 2. If minor damage to finishes occurs, repair damage in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations; provide replacement components if repaired finishes are unacceptable to Architect.
- C. Prior to Substantial Completion: Remove dust or other foreign matter from component surfaces; clean finishes in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
 1. Clean units in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

END OF SECTION 108200

SECTION 113100 - RESIDENTIAL APPLIANCES**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY****A. Section Includes:**

1. Installation of owner provided residential appliances.

1.2 COORDINATION**A. Coordinate with owner prior to beginning construction the complete list of residential appliances required for the project to ensure electrical, plumbing, gas and mechanical (exhaust) services are included in the construction documents.**

1. Coordinate with the millwork drawings shown and provide size requirements for built-in and recessed appliances for inclusion in the millwork shop drawings.
2. Include the following in the coordination documents:
 - a. Operational clearances and ventilation space required around each appliance if applicable.
 - b. Rough-in dimensions for utilities.
 - c. Configuration, voltage and wattage required at each electrical connection.
 - d. Configuration and capacity requirements for water, gas and mechanical connections.

B. Document Discrepancies: Where construction documents fail to indicate the required services at locations indicated to receive owner furnished appliances or otherwise conflict with the actual requirements of each appliance shown, the contract amount shall be adjusted by change order per the requirements of section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures".

1. Additional cost, including but not limited to removal and replacement of work in place, resulting from the contractor's failure to obtain information from the owner on residential appliances and to coordinate the requirements listed above with the applicable subcontractor prior to commencing work, will be the responsibility of the General Contractor.
2. Where information provided by the Owner to the Contractor is inaccurate or is modified during the course of the work resulting in a change to the utilities, ventilation clearances and millwork already in place, the contract amount shall be adjusted by change order per the requirements of section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures".

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)**PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL****A. Built-in Equipment: Securely anchor units to supporting cabinets or countertops with concealed fasteners. Verify that clearances are adequate for proper functioning and that rough openings are completely concealed.**

1. Where appliances are required to be anchored or supported by vertical framing, provide fire retardant treated wood blocking as recommended by the appliance manufacturer.

B. Freestanding Equipment: Place units in final locations after finishes have been completed in each area. Verify that clearances are adequate to properly operate equipment.**C. Utilities: See plumbing and electrical documents for utility requirements.**

1. Coordinate connection requirements of appliances, both in the contract and those provided by the owner, to ensure proper configuration of electrical receptacles, water and waste pipe fittings, and vent piping.
2. Coordinate voltage and amperage of electrical service to each appliance, before roughing in electrical to appliance locations.
3. Coordinate water demands and drainage requirements of appliances requiring plumbing connection.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Leak Test: After installation, test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- B. Operational Test: After installation, start units to confirm proper operation.
 - 1. Test and adjust controls. Notify owner of damaged and malfunctioning controls and components.

END OF SECTION 113100

SECTION 123623 - PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD COUNTERTOPS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes
 - 1. Plastic-laminate countertops.
 - 2. Wire management grommets.
 - 3. Metal countertop brackets.
 - a. See Part 3 - Execution section for support requirements in full height and partial height walls, including heavier base metal thickness for studs, wood blocking and miscellaneous steel supports.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel tube reinforcement for partial height (pony) walls used for anchoring concealed metal brackets use for countertop support.
 - 2. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing cabinets and concealed within other construction before cabinet installation.\
 - 3. Section 064116 "Plastic-Laminate-Faced Architectural Cabinets."
 - 4. Section 123662 "Quartz Agglomerate Countertops"

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including high-pressure decorative laminate and adhesive for bonding plastic laminate.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show location of each item, dimensioned plans and elevations, large-scale details, attachment devices, and other components.
 - 1. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for plumbing fixtures faucets soap dispensers electrical switches and outlets and other items installed in plastic-laminate countertops.
 - 2. Apply AWI Quality Certification Program label to Shop Drawings.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection:
 - 1. Plastic laminates.
 - 2. PVC Edging

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL AND REPLACEMENT STOCK

- A. Wire-Management Grommets: In addition to the grommets required by drawings and specifications, provide a quantity of five additional grommets with matching caps of each size and type specified. Deliver to the owner in the original packaging at the close of the project.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver countertops until painting and similar operations that could damage countertops have been completed in installation areas. If countertops must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install countertops until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Field Measurements: Where countertops are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Established Dimensions: Where countertops are indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where countertops are to fit. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PLASTIC-LAMINATE COUNTERTOPS

- A. Grade: Custom.
- B. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, Grade HGS.
- C. Manufacturers, Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products as noted on drawing details and schedules.
- D. Edge Treatment: 3.0-mm PVC edging in color and patterns to match the color of the decorative laminate.
- E. Core Material: Particleboard or medium-density fiberboard.
- F. Core Material at Sinks: Particleboard made with exterior glue medium-density fiberboard made with exterior glue or exterior-grade plywood.
- G. Core Thickness: 3/4 inch.
 - 1. Build up countertop thickness to 1-1/2 inches at front, back, and ends with additional layers of core material laminated to top.

2.2 WOOD MATERIALS

- A. Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Wood Moisture Content: 5 to 10 percent.
- B. Composite Wood and Agrifiber Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of woodwork and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Medium-Density Fiberboard: ANSI A208.2, Grade 130.
 - 2. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2.
 - 3. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Wire-Management Grommets: Circular, metal or molded-plastic grommets and matching caps with slot for wire passage.
 - 1. See Finish Schedule for manufacturer, size (outside diameter) and material.
 - 2. Color: As scheduled or as selected from manufacturers available color options.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Metal Countertop Brackets: Provide brackets as manufactured by the following, or approved equal:
 - 1. A & M Hardware, Inc., 1165 Strickler Rd., Mount Joy, PA 17552; 1-888-647-0200; info@aandmhardware.com.

2. Surface Mounted, Exposed Angle Brackets: 1/8" steel brackets with return legs punched for attachment to wall and underside of counters, as indicated on drawings. Brackets fabricated with 45 degree rear notch at corner to allow for wall cleat and wire management.
 - a. Standard-of-Design Angle Bracket: A&M Hardware, Inc. "Standard Workstation Bracket", size as noted on drawings.
 - b. Color: Primed for field painting.
3. Concealed Flat-Bar Metal Countertop Brackets: Provide steel brackets with concealed vertical angle mounted to face of stud within wall construction with projecting 1/2-inch thick flat bar steel counter support.
 - a. Standard-of-Design Bracket: Where noted on drawings, provide concealed countertop brackets by A&M Hardware, Inc.
 - 1) Countertops mounted to full height walls: "ECFLAT" series (2.0), with vertical angle leg (8-inch above projecting support) concealed within wall, full welded to 2-inch-wide x 1/2-inch thick, projecting support. See drawings for support length.
 - 2) Countertops mounted to partial height walls: "CFLAT" series (2.0), with vertical angle leg concealed within wall below 2-inch-wide x 1/2-inch thick, projecting support. See drawings for support length.
 - b. Finish: Primed for field painting.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate countertops to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated. Provide front and end overhang of 1 inch over base cabinets. Ease edges to radius indicated for the following:
 1. Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members: 1/16 inch unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Complete fabrication, including assembly, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition countertops to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas.
- B. Before installing countertops, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing and backpriming.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Grade: Install countertops to comply with same grade as item to be installed.
- B. Assemble countertops and complete fabrication at Project site to the extent that it was not completed in the shop.
 1. Provide cutouts for appliances, plumbing fixtures, electrical work, and similar items.
 2. Seal edges of cutouts by saturating with varnish.
- C. Field Jointing: Where possible, make in the same manner as shop jointing, using dowels, splines, adhesives, and fasteners recommended by manufacturer. Prepare edges to be joined in shop so Project-site processing of top and edge surfaces is not required. Locate field joints where shown on Shop Drawings.
 1. Secure field joints in plastic-laminate countertops with concealed clamping devices located within 6 inches of front and back edges and at intervals not exceeding 24 inches. Tighten according to manufacturer's written instructions to exert a constant, heavy-clamping pressure at joints.
- D. Install countertops level, plumb, true, and straight. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and

plumb to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches.

- E. Scribe and cut countertops to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
- F. Countertops: Anchor securely by screwing through corner blocks of base cabinets or other supports into underside of countertop.
 - 1. Install countertops with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
 - 2. Secure backsplashes to tops with concealed metal brackets at 16 inches o.c. and to walls with adhesive.
 - 3. Seal junctures of tops, splashes, and walls with mildew-resistant silicone sealant or another permanently elastic sealing compound recommended by countertop material manufacturer.
- G. Metal Countertop Brackets: Install countertop brackets per manufacturer's recommendations securely attached to wall framing or supplemental supports as required. Unless countertop loads exceed the manufacturer's listed capacities for pairs of brackets or unless noted otherwise, provide brackets at 32" o.c. (36" maximum). Install brackets level within industry tolerances allowed for each type of countertop supported.
 - 1. At full height partitions where studs are securely anchored to the floor and braced at the top of the wall as required to resist deflection, provide minimum 18 ga. metal stud at each bracket location with continuous vertical wood blocking, nested within metal stud framing to receive bracket anchors. Provide fire retardant treated wood blocking where required by building code and local authorities having jurisdiction.
 - a. At the contractor's option, the provisions for supporting concealed brackets in partial height (pony) walls (steel tubes or prefabricated post) may be used in full height partitions in lieu of heavier gage studs and wood blocking.
 - 2. At partial height (pony) walls provide tube steel post as shown on drawings or prefabricated steel supports equal to ClarkDietrich "Pony Wall Heavy" (PW series in heights required for partial height walls detailed).
 - 3. For concealed brackets, mount vertical support angle alongside wood blocking and metal studs at full height partitions and alongside the steel support post in partial height walls.
 - 4. At standard (exposed) brackets attach through mounting flange of bracket into drywall and into the wood blocking and metal studs at full height partitions and into the face of the steel support post in partial height walls.
 - 5. Install drywall trim around projecting horizontal support bar with 1/4" gap between bar and drywall edge. Caulk between bracket and wall.
- H. Grommet Installation: Unless noted otherwise, provide one grommet directly above each electrical outlet (power, data, and telephone) shown on the electrical drawings, including existing electrical outlets located below new countertops. Coordinate with electrical drawings.
 - 1. Do not install grommets where electrical outlets serve equipment located below the countertops and connection is not anticipated from above.
 - 2. Provide additional grommets where shown on drawings regardless of electrical service below.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair damaged and defective countertops, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects; where not possible to repair, replace woodwork. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean countertops on exposed and semiexposed surfaces. Touch up shop-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

END OF SECTION 123623

SECTION 123661 – SOLID SURFACING MATERIAL**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Solid-surface-material is limited to its use as a shower partial height wall cap and curb in the Pastor's restroom.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing cabinets and concealed within other construction before cabinet installation.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For solid surfacing materials.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show materials, finishes, edge and backsplash profiles, methods of joining, and cutouts for plumbing fixtures.
- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
 - 1. Solid surfacing material, 6 inches square.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver materials until painting and similar operations that could damage solid surfacing have been completed in installation areas. If solid surfacing must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Project Conditions" Article.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install solid surfacing until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Established Dimensions: Establish dimensions where solid surfacing is indicated to fit to other construction. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 SOLID-SURFACE-MATERIAL**

- A. Fabrication: 1/2-inch-thick, solid surface material fabricated in one piece with shop-applied edges unless otherwise indicated. Comply with solid-surface-material manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Adhesives: Adhesives shall not contain urea formaldehyde.
- B. Solid Surface Material: Homogeneous solid sheets of filled plastic resin complying with ANSI SS1.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products as specified on the FINISH SCHEDULES.
2. Type: As indicated on FINISH SCHEDULE.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates to receive solid surface material and conditions under which it will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 8 feet, 1/4 inch maximum. Do not exceed 1/64-inch difference between planes of adjacent units.
- B. Secure to substrate with adhesive according to solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match solid surfacing, form seams to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- C. Bond joints with adhesive and draw tight as solid surfacing is set. Mask areas of solid surfacing adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
 1. Clamp units to temporary bracing, supports, or each other to ensure that solid surfacing is properly aligned and joints are of specified width.
- D. Complete cutouts not finished in shop. Mask areas adjacent to cutouts to prevent damage while cutting. Make cutouts to accurately fit items to be installed, and at right angles to finished surfaces unless beveling is required for clearance. Ease edges slightly to prevent snipping.
- E. Apply sealant to gaps at walls; comply with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair damaged and defective surfaces, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects; where not possible to repair, replace. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean exposed and semiexposed surfaces. Touch up shop-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

END OF SECTION 123661

SECTION 123662 - QUARTZ AGGLOMERATE COUNTERTOPS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY**A. Section Includes:**

1. Quartz agglomerate countertops.
2. Quartz agglomerate backsplashes.
3. Quartz agglomerate end splashes.
4. Quartz agglomerate apron fronts.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing cabinets and concealed within other construction before cabinet installation.
2. Section 064116 "Plastic-Laminate-Faced Architectural Cabinets."
3. Section 123623 "Plastic-Laminate-Clad Countertops".
4. Section 123661 "Solid Surfacing Countertops".

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**A. Product Data:** For countertop materials.**B. Shop Drawings:** For countertops. Show materials, finishes, edge and backsplash profiles, methods of joining, and cutouts for plumbing fixtures.

1. Show locations and details of joints.
2. Show direction of directional pattern, if any.

C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:

1. Countertop material, 6 inches square.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**A. Qualification Data:** For fabricator.**1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Maintenance Data: For quartz agglomerate countertops to include in maintenance manuals. Include Product Data for care products used or recommended by Installer and names, addresses, and telephone numbers of local sources for products.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate countertops similar to that required for this Project, and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of countertops.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions of countertops by field measurements after base cabinets are installed but before countertop fabrication is complete.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate locations of utilities that will penetrate countertops or backsplashes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 QUARTZ AGGLOMERATE COUNTERTOP MATERIALS

- A. Quartz Agglomerate: Solid sheets consisting of quartz aggregates bound together with a matrix of filled plastic resin and complying with ICPA SS-1, except for composition.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products as specified on the FINISH SCHEDULES.
 - 2. Colors and Patterns: As indicated on drawings and Finish Schedule.
- B. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2-Exterior Glue.
- C. Plywood: Exterior softwood plywood complying with DOC PS 1, Grade C-C Plugged, touch sanded.

2.2 COUNTERTOP FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate countertops according to quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions and the AWI/AWMAC/WT's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."
 - 1. Grade: Premium.
- B. Configuration:
 - 1. Front: Straight, slightly eased at top.
 - a. See drawing elevations/details for counters with waterfall edge.
 - 2. Backsplash: Straight, slightly eased at corner.
 - 3. End Splash: Matching backsplash.
- C. Countertops: 3/4-inch- thick, quartz agglomerate with front edge built up with same material.
- D. Backsplashes: 3/4-inch- thick, quartz agglomerate.
- E. Fabricate tops with shop-applied edges unless otherwise indicated. Comply with quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.
 - 1. Fabricate with loose backsplashes for field assembly.
- F. Joints: Fabricate countertops in sections for joining in field.
 - 1. Joint Locations: Not within 18 inches of a sink or cooktop and not where a countertop section less than 36 inches long would result, unless unavoidable.
 - 2. Joint Type: Bonded, 1/32 inch or less in width.
 - 3. Splined Joints: Accurately cut kerfs in edges at joints for insertion of metal splines to maintain alignment of surfaces at joints. Make width of cuts slightly more than thickness of splines to provide snug fit. Provide at least three splines in each joint.
- G. Cutouts and Holes:
 - 1. Undercounter Plumbing Fixtures: Make cutouts for fixtures using template or pattern furnished by fixture manufacturer. Form cutouts to smooth, even curves.
 - a. Provide vertical edges, slightly eased at juncture of cutout edges with top and bottom surfaces of countertop and projecting 3/16 inch into fixture opening.

2. Counter-Mounted Plumbing Fixtures: Prepare countertops in shop for field cutting openings for counter-mounted fixtures. Mark tops for cutouts and drill holes at corners of cutout locations. Make corner holes of largest radius practical.

2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Adhesive: Product recommended by quartz agglomerate manufacturer.
- B. Sealant for Countertops: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates to receive quartz agglomerate countertops and conditions under which countertops will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of countertops.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install countertops level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 8 feet, 1/4 inch maximum. Do not exceed 1/64-inch difference between planes of adjacent units.
- B. Secure countertops to subtops or cabinet frame with adhesive according to quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- C. Bond joints with adhesive and draw tight as countertops are set. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
 1. Install metal splines in kerfs in countertop edges at joints. Fill kerfs with adhesive before inserting splines and remove excess immediately after adjoining units are drawn into position.
 2. Clamp units to temporary bracing, supports, or each other to ensure that countertops are properly aligned and joints are of specified width.
- D. Install backsplashes and end splashes by adhering to wall and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
- E. Install aprons to backing and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears. Fasten by screwing through backing. Predrill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer.
- F. Complete cutouts not finished in shop. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to cutouts to prevent damage while cutting. Make cutouts to accurately fit items to be installed, and at right angles to finished surfaces unless beveling is required for clearance. Ease edges slightly to prevent snipping.
 1. Seal edges of cutouts in particleboard subtops by saturating with varnish.
- G. Apply sealant to gaps at walls; comply with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

END OF SECTION 123662

SECTION 142100 - ELECTRIC TRACTION ELEVATORS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This section specifies electric traction elevators.
- B. Work Required
 - 1. The work required under this section consists of all labor, materials and services required for the complete installation (including operational verification) of all the equipment required for the elevator(s) as herein specified.
 - 2. All work shall be performed in a first class, safe and workmanlike manner.
 - 3. In all cases where a device or part of the equipment is herein referred to in the singular, it is intended that such reference shall apply to as many of such devices or parts as are required to make complete installation.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. The following sections contain requirements that relate to this section and are performed by trades other than the elevator manufacturer/installer.
 - 1. Section 015000 - Temporary Facilities and Controls: protection of floor openings and personnel barriers; temporary power and lighting.
 - 2. Section 033000 - Cast-In-Place Concrete: elevator pit and elevator machine foundation.
 - 3. Section 042200 - Concrete Unit Masonry: masonry hoistway enclosure, building-in and grouting hoistway doorframes, and grouting of sills.
 - 4. Section 055000 - Metal Fabrications: pit ladder, divider beams, supports for entrances and rails, and hoisting beam at top of elevator hoistway.
 - 5. Section 071326 - Self-Adhering Sheet Waterproofing: waterproofing of elevator pit.
 - 6. Division 23 sections for ventilation and temperature control of elevator equipment areas.
 - 7. Division 26 sections for electrical:
 - a. Main disconnects for each elevator.
 - b. Electrical power for elevator installation and testing.
 - c. Disconnecting device to elevator equipment prior to activation of sprinkler system.
 - d. The installation of dedicated GFCI receptacles in the pit and overhead.
 - e. Lighting in controller area, machine area and pit.
 - f. Wiring for telephone service to controller (if applicable).
 - 8. Section 283100 - Fire Alarm Systems: fire and smoke detectors at required locations and interconnecting devices; fire alarm signal lines to contacts in the machine area.
 - 9. Civil Drawings and specifications for elevator pit excavation.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. Comply with applicable building and elevator codes at the project site, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. ASME A17.1/CSA B44, Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators.
 - 2. ASME A17.7/CSA B44, Performance-Based Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators.
 - 3. ADAAG, American Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines.
 - 4. ANSI A117.1, Building and Facilities, Providing Accessibility and Usability for Physically Handicapped People.
 - 5. ANSI/NFPA 70, (NEC) National Electrical Code.
 - 6. CAN/CSA C22.1, (CEC) Canadian Electrical Code.
 - 7. ANSI/UL 10B, Standard for Fire Test of Door Assemblies.
 - 8. CAN/ULC-S104-10, Standard Method for Fire Test of Door Assemblies.
 - 9. ANSI/NFPA 80, Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives.
 - 10. Building Codes IBC or NBCC.
 - 11. All Local Jurisdictional applicable codes.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Equipment Description: Gen3 Core™ gearless machineroom less elevator where all components fit inside the hoistway.
- B. Equipment Control: Elevonic® Control System.
- C. IoT Connectivity: Elevator connected to Otis ONE IoT Platform
- D. Drive: Regenerative
- E. Quantity of Elevators: Two
- F. Elevator Stop Designations: 1, 2
- G. Stops: 2
- H. Openings: Front Only
- I. Travel: 14'-0" (4267 mm)
- J. Pit Depth: 4'
- K. Rated Capacity: 2100 lb (953 kg)
- L. Rated Speed: 150 fpm (.76 m/s)
- M. Laminate Cab Clear Inside Dimensions: 5'-8 5/16" Width x 4'-3 9/16" Depth (1735 mm Width x 1309 mm Depth)
- N. Cab Height: 7'-9" (2362 mm)
- O. Clear Cab Height: 7'-8 1/8" (2340 mm) with 1 1/4" (32 mm) Floor Recess and 4 LED Ceiling
- P. Entrance Type and Width: Single-Speed Side Opening Door - 36" (914 mm)
- Q. Entrance Height: 7'-0" (2134 mm)
- R. Main Power Supply: 480 volts $\pm$ 5% of normal, three-phase, with a separate equipment grounding conductor.
- S. Car Lighting Power Supply: 120 volts, single-phase, 15 amps, 60 Hz.
- T. Machine Location: Rail-mounted at the top of the hoistway.
- U. Signal Fixtures: Manufacturer's standard with metal button targets (excluding CA).
- V. Controller Location: Machine Roomless controller(s) must be jamb-mounted on the same side as the counterweight, located at the top landing.
- W. Performance:
 - 1. Car Speed: $\pm$ 3 % of contract speed under any loading condition or direction of travel.
 - 2. Car Capacity: Safely lower, stop and hold up to 120% of rated load (code required).
 - 3. Ride Quality:
 - a. Vertical Vibration (maximum): 20 milli-g
 - b. Horizontal Vibration (maximum): 12 milli-g
 - c. Vertical Jerk (maximum): 4.59 ± 1.0 ft./ sec³ (1.4 ± 0.3 m/ sec³)
 - d. Acceleration/Deceleration (maximum): 2.62 ft./ sec² (0.8 m/ sec²)
 - e. In Car Noise: 55 - 60 dB(A)
 - f. Stopping Accuracy: ± 0.375 in. (± 10 mm) max, ± 0.25 in. (± 6 mm) Typical
 - g. Re-leveling Distance: ± 0.5 in. (± 12 mm)
- X. Operation: Simplex Collective Operation: Using a microprocessor-based controller, operation shall be automatic by means of the car and hall buttons. If all calls in the system have been answered, the car shall park at the last landing served.
- Y. Operation Features - Standard

1. Full Collective Operation
2. Anti-nuisance.
3. Fan and Light Protection.
4. Load Weighing Bypass.
5. Independent Service.
6. Firefighters' Service Phase I and Phase II (USA only).
7. Top of Car Inspection.
8. Zoned Access at Bottom Landing.
9. Zoned Access at Top Landing

Z. Door Control Features:

1. Door control to open doors automatically when car arrives at a landing in response to a normal hall or car call.
2. Elevator doors shall be provided with a reopening device that will stop and reopen the car door(s) and hoistway door(s) automatically should the door(s) become obstructed by an object or person.
3. Door protection shall consist of a two-dimensional or a code required, three-dimensional, multi-beam array projecting across the car door opening.
4. Door nudging operation to occur if doors are prevented from closing for an adjustable period of time.

AA. Provide equipment for seismic conditions: No

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data for each system proposed for use. Include the following:
1. Signal and operating fixtures, operating panels and indicators.
 2. Cab design, dimensions and layout.
 3. Hoistway-door and frame details.
 4. Electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
 5. Expected heat dissipation of elevator equipment in hoistway (BTU).
 6. Color selection chart for Cab and Entrances.
- B. Shop Drawings: Submit approval layout drawings. Include the following:
1. Car, guide rails, buffers, and other components in hoistway.
 2. Maximum rail bracket spacing.
 3. Maximum loads imposed on guide rails requiring load transfer to building structure.
 4. Clearances and travel of car.
 5. Clear inside hoistway and pit dimensions.
 6. Location and sizes of access doors, hoistway entrances and frames.
- C. Operations and Maintenance Manuals: Provide manufacturer's standard operations and maintenance manual.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer: Elevator manufacturer shall be ISO 9001 certified.
- B. Manufacturer shall have a minimum of fifteen years of experience in the fabrication, installation and service of elevators.
- C. Installer: Elevators shall be installed by the manufacturer.
- D. Permits, Inspections and Certificates: The Elevator Contractor shall obtain and pay for necessary Municipal or State Inspection and permit as required by the elevator inspection authority, and make such tests as are called for by the regulations of such authorities. These tests shall be made in the presence of such authorities or their authorized representatives.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Should the building or the site not be prepared to receive the elevator equipment at the agreed upon date, the General Contractor will be responsible to provide a proper and suitable storage area on or off the premises.
- B. Should the storage area be off-site, and the equipment not yet delivered, then the elevator contractor, upon notification from the General Contractor, will divert the elevator equipment to the storage area. If the

equipment has already been delivered to the site, then the General Contractor shall transport the elevator equipment to the storage area. The cost of elevator equipment taken to storage by either party, storage, and redeliver to the job site shall not be at the expense of the elevator contractor.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. The elevator contractor's acceptance is conditional on the understanding that their warranty covers defective material and workmanship. The warranty period shall not extend longer than one (1) year from the date of completion or acceptance thereof by beneficial use, whichever is earlier, of each elevator. The warranty excludes: ordinary wear and tear, improper use, vandalism, abuse, misuse, or neglect or any other causes beyond the control of the elevator contractor and this express warranty is in lieu of all other warranties, express or implied, including any warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose.

1.9 MAINTENANCE AND SERVICE

- A. Maintenance service consisting of regular examinations and adjustments of the elevator equipment shall be provided by the elevator contractor for a period of 12 Months after the elevator has been turned over for the customer's use. This service shall not be subcontracted but shall be performed by the elevator contractor. All work shall be performed by competent employees during regular working hours of regular working days. This service shall not cover adjustments, repairs, or replacement of parts due to negligence, misuse, abuse or accidents caused by persons other than the elevator contractor. Only genuine parts and supplies as used in the manufacture and installation of the original equipment shall be provided.
- B. The periodic lubrication of elevator components shall not be required, including Sheaves, Rails, Belts, Ropes, Car and Counterweight guides, etc.
- C. The elevator control system must:
 - 1. Provide in the controller the necessary devices to run the elevator on inspection operation.
 - 2. Provide on top of the car the necessary devices to run the elevator in inspection operation.
 - 3. Provide in the controller an emergency stop switch. This emergency stop switch when opened disconnects power from the brake and prevents the motor from running.
 - 4. Provide in the event of a power outage, means from the controller to electrically lift and control the elevator brake to safely bring the elevator to the nearest available landing.
 - 5. Provide the means from the controller to reset the governor over speed switch and also trip the governor.
 - 6. Provide the means from the controller to reset the emergency brake when set because of an unintended car movement or ascending car over speed.
 - 7. (Optional) Provide the means from the controller to reset elevator earthquake operation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. Manufacturer: Design based upon Otis Elevator's Gen3 Core™ machine room-less elevator system.

2.2 DESIGN AND SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Provide Gen3™ Core traction passenger elevators from Otis Elevator Company. The control system and car design based on materials and systems manufactured by Otis Elevator Company. Specifically, the system shall consist of the following components:
 - 1. Controller located entirely inside the hoistway.
 - 2. An AC gearless machine using embedded permanent magnets mounted at the top of the hoistway.
 - 3. Polyurethane Coated-Steel Belts for elevator hoisting purposes.
 - 4. Regenerative drive that captures normally wasted energy and feeds clean power back into the building's power grid.
 - 5. LED lighting standard in ceiling lights and elevator fixtures.
 - 6. Sleep mode operation for LED ceiling lights and car fan.
- B. Approved Installer: Otis Elevator Company

2.3 EQUIPMENT: CONTROLLER COMPONENTS

- A. Controller: A microcomputer-based control system shall be provided to perform all of the functions of safe elevator operation. The system shall also perform car and group operational control.
 - 1. All high voltage (110V or above) contact points inside the controller shall be protected from accidental contact when the controller doors are open.
 - 2. Controller shall be separated into two distinct halves: Motor Drive side and Control side. High voltage motor power conductors shall be routed so as to be physically segregated from the rest of the controller.
 - 3. Field conductor terminations points shall be segregated; high voltage (>30 volts DC and 110 VAC,) and low voltage (< 30 volts DC)
 - 4. Controllers shall be designed and tested for Electromagnetic Interference (EMI) immunity according to the EN 12016 (May 1998): "EMC Product Family Standards for lifts, escalators, and passenger conveyors Part 2 - immunity"
 - 5. Controller shall be located inside the wall next to the top landing entrance frame. Emergency access shall be provided through an access panel in the entrance frame secured by a key lock.
 - 6. A separate control room, space or closet is an option.
- B. Drive: A Variable Voltage Variable Frequency AC drive system shall be provided. The drive shall be set up for regeneration of AC power back to the building grid.

2.4 EQUIPMENT: HOISTWAY COMPONENTS

- A. Machine: AC gearless machine, with a synchronous permanent-magnet motor, dual solenoid service and emergency disc brakes, mounted at the top of the hoistway.
- B. Governor: The governor shall be a tension type car-mounted governor.
- C. Buffers, Car, and Counterweight: Polyurethane type buffers shall be used for speeds of 150 and 200 feet per minute.
- D. Hoistway Operating Devices:
 - 1. Emergency stop switch in the pit.
 - 2. Terminal stopping switches.
- E. Positioning System: Consists of an encoder, reader box, and door zone vanes.
- F. Guide Rails and Attachments: Guide rails shall be Tee-section steel rails with brackets and fasteners. Side counterweight arrangements shall have a dual-purpose bracket that combines both counterweight guide rails, and one of the car guide rails to building fastening.
- G. Coated-Steel Belts: Polyurethane coated belts with high-tensile-grade, zinc-plated steel cords and a flat profile on the running surface and the backside of the belt. The belts shall have an FT-1 rating as referenced by NFPA 13. All driving sheaves and deflector sheaves should have a crowned profile to ensure center tracking of the belts. A continuous 24/7 monitoring system using resistance-based technology has to be installed to continuously monitor the integrity of the coated steel belts and provide advanced notice of belt wear.
- H. Governor Rope: Shall be steel and shall consist of at least eight strands wound about a sisal core center.
- I. Fascia: Galvanized sheet steel shall be provided in accordance with code requirements.
- J. Hoistway Entrances:
 - 1. Frames: Entrance frames shall be of bolted construction for complete one-piece unit assembly. All frames shall be securely fastened to fixing angles mounted in the hoistway and shall be of UL fire rated steel. The entrance profile (jamb face) shall be a width of 2 7/8" (73 mm).
 - 2. Sills shall be extruded aluminum.
 - 3. Doors: Entrance doors shall be of metal construction with vertical channel reinforcements.
 - 4. Fire Rating: Entrance and doors shall be UL fire rated for 1-½ hour
 - 5. Entrance Finish: Brushed Stainless Steel
 - 6. Entrance Marking Plates: Entrance jambs shall be marked with 4" x 4" (102 mm x 102 mm) plates having raised floor markings with Braille located adjacent to the floor marking. Marking plates shall be provided on both sides of the entrance.
 - 7. Sight Guards: Sight guards will be furnished with all doors painted to match with painted doors, painted black for stainless steel doors.

2.5 EQUIPMENT: CAR COMPONENTS

- A. Car Frame and Safety: A car frame fabricated from formed or structural steel members shall be provided with adequate bracing to support the platform and car enclosures. The car safety shall be integral to the car frame and shall be Type "B", flexible guide clamp type.
- B. Cab: Laminate Cab with vertical high-pressure laminate wall panels; laminated woodgrains, patterns and solid selections available from the manufacturer's standard selection chart.
- C. Car Front Finish: Brushed Stainless Steel
- D. Car Door Finish: Brushed Stainless Steel
- E. Flush Ceiling with 4 LED Lights
- F. Ceiling Finish: Brushed Stainless Steel
- G. Emergency Car Lighting: An emergency power unit employing a 6-volt sealed rechargeable battery and totally static circuits shall be provided to illuminate the elevator car in the event of building power failure.
- H. Fan: A one-speed 120 VAC fan will be mounted to the ceiling to facilitate in-car air circulation, meeting A17.1 code requirements. The fan shall be rubber mounted to prevent the transmission of structural vibration and will include a baffle to diffuse audible noise. A switch shall be provided in the car-operating panel to control the fan.
- I. Handrails: Provided on the side and rear walls of the car enclosure. They shall be, Flat Bar Handrail s with a Brushed Steel Finish.
- J. Threshold: Extruded Aluminum
- K. Emergency Exit Contact: An electrical contact shall be provided on the car-top exit.
- L. Guides: The car shall have 3" diameter roller guides at top and bottom and the counterweight shall have slide type guides at the top and the bottom. Optional counterweight guides available.
- M. Platform: The car platform shall be constructed of metal. Load weighing device shall be mounted on the belts at the top of the hoistway.
- N. The LED ceiling lights, and the fan should automatically shut off when the system is not in use and be powered back up after a passenger calls the elevator and pushes a hall button.
- O. Certificate frame: Provide a Certificate frame with a satin stainless steel finish.
- P. Elevator Cab Pads.

2.6 EQUIPMENT: SIGNAL DEVICES AND FIXTURES

- A. Car Operating Panel: A Standard Otis ONE™ Pro flat applied car operating panel with a surrounding injected molded bezel shall be provided which contains all push buttons, key switches, and message indicators for elevator operation. The car operating panel shall have a brushed stainless steel finish and include a service cabinet. (A second COP is available)
 - 1. The car operating panel shall contain a bank of round stainless steel, mechanical LED illuminated buttons. Flush mounted to the panel and marked to correspond to the landings served. All buttons to have raised numerals and Braille markings with:
 - 2. Flush Mounted brushed stainless steel buttons with white LED illuminating halos.
 - a. The car operating panel shall be equipped with the following features:
 - b. Raised markings and Braille to the left-hand side of each push-button.
 - c. Car Position Indicator at the top of and integral to the car operating panel.
 - d. Door open and door close buttons.
 - e. Inspection key-switch.
 - f. Elevator Data Plate marked with elevator capacity and car number.
 - g. Help Button: The help button shall initiate two-way communication between the car and a location inside the building, switching over to another location if the call is unanswered, where personnel are available who can take the appropriate action. Visual indicators are provided for call initiation and call acknowledgement.

- h. Display Screen: Include display screen located near the top of the COP. The display screen shall display the car position indicator, travel direction arrows, elevator status jewels, and provide emergency text communication.
 - i. Camera: Include camera located above display screen for emergency video communication. This camera is for emergency communication only.
 - j. Landing Passing Signal: A chime bell shall sound in the car to signal that the car is either stopping at or passing a floor served by the elevator.
 - k. In car stop switch (toggle or key unless local code prohibits use)
 - l. Firefighter's hat (standard USA)
 - m. Firefighter's Phase II Key-switch (standard USA)
 - n. Call Cancel Button (standard USA)
 - o. Firefighter's Phase II Emergency In-Car Operating Instructions: worded according to A17.1 2000, Article 2.27.7.2.
- B. Car Position Indicator: A digital, LED car position indicator shall be integral to the car operating panel.
- C. Hall Fixtures: no hall fixtures

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Take field dimensions and examine conditions of substrates, supports, and other conditions under which this work is to be performed. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Installation of all elevator components except as specifically provided for elsewhere by others.

3.3 DEMONSTRATION

- A. The elevator contractor shall make a final check of each elevator operation with the Owner or Owner's representative present prior to turning each elevator over for use. The elevator contractor shall determine that control systems and operating devices are functioning properly.

3.4 END OF SECTION 142100

SECTION 210100 - GENERAL FIRE PROTECTION REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Sections included under Division 21

- 1. 210100 – GENERAL FIRE PROTECTION REQUIREMENTS
- 2. 210517 – Sleeves and Seals for Fire Suppression Piping
- 3. 210518 – Escutcheons for Fire Suppression Piping
- 4. 210523 – General Duty Valves for Water Based Fire Suppression Piping
- 5. 210529 – Hangers and Supports for Fire Suppression Piping and Equipment
- 6. 210553 – Identification for Fire Suppression Piping and Equipment
- 7. 211313 – Wet Pipe Sprinkler Systems

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Contractor – Fire Protection subcontractor, or contractor engaged to perform work specified under Division 21 Fire Protection Work.
- B. Furnish – supply and deliver to specific location and or another division.
- C. Furnished by others – receive equipment or materials, delivered to the job site, or where called for and installed by this division.
- D. Provide – to furnish and install complete, fully coordinated, and ready for operation/use.

1.4 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. Provisions of this Section apply to all Division 21, Fire Protection work.
- B. Include provisions of General Conditions as part of this section
- C. Provide all labor, tools, materials, equipment, accessories, parts, transportation, storage, fees, taxes, permits and any related items essential for the competition of all Fire Protection work shown, specified or implied, complete, and ready for operation/use.

1.5 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate Fire Protection work with all other trades; provide approved submittals to appropriate trades to coordinate the installation of systems required for the actual equipment to be installed and operate.
- B. Protect Fire Protection equipment (especially sprinkler heads) from damage during construction. When installation is complete clean equipment and remove protective covers. Field modifying damaged sprinkler heads is prohibited. Sprinkler heads that are damaged shall be replaced at no additional cost.
- C. Field painting of sprinkler heads, sprinkler cover plates for concealed sprinklers, or any part of a sprinkler is strictly prohibited.
- D. Install all equipment to provide normal service access to all components, install in accordance with manufacturers instruction. If manufacturers instructions conflict with contract documents, obtain engineer of records decision before proceeding.
- E. All work shall conform to the contract documents and all codes, standards and requirements listed below in section REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS.
- F. Cooperate with all other crafts, trades. Perform work in a timely manner. Do not interfere with the work of other trades.
- G. The routing of mechanical systems (*ductwork*) due to size along with drain waste & vent piping (*e.g. sanitary and storm*) due to its reliance on gravity, takes precedence over the routing of sprinkler piping. Fire protection mains, branches, run-outs, drops etc., shall be coordinated, routed and installed with deference to the mechanical and gravity drainage systems. This includes any necessary modifications to existing fire protection piping to facilitate the installation of new mechanical or drainage designs.
- H. If systems interfere or conflict, the Architect shall decide which system to relocate regardless of which was installed first.
- I. The contractor shall be responsible for fire stopping penetrations at fire rated walls or floors. Fire stopping shall be performed immediately after the work is installed. Do not leave penetrations unprotected overnight.
- J. Refer to Architectural drawings for all dimensions.
- K. Fire protection design and hydraulic calculations are a **delegated design**. The Fire Protection contractor shall generate all shop drawings and hydraulic calculations under the direct supervision of an engineer licensed in the state of Georgia.
- L. Contractor shall provide coordination drawings verifying clearances, routing, and tie-ins on piping prior to fabrication and installation of new work.

1.6 DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Fire Protection drawings and specifications are intended to be worked together as a set by the contractor. Drawings are not standalone.

- B. Fire Protection drawings are diagrammatic and are subject to requirements of the Architectural drawings and conditions existing in the field. Fire Protection drawings indicate generally the location of components and are not intended to show all fittings or all details of the work. Fire Protection drawings are intended to show size, capacity, approximate location, direction, and general relationship of the work, but not exact detail or arrangement. The actual fire protection design, pipe routing and coordination with other trades is the responsibility of the contractor as it is a delegated design.
- C. Coordinate dimensions with all project drawings, and field conditions. Do not scale Fire Protection drawings for locations of system components. Coordinate location of air devices, piping, ductwork, lighting, ceiling grids, sprinkler piping, sprinkler heads, structure, general construction, supports, equipment and equipment pads with Architectural, Structural and Electrical drawings as well as conditions existing in the field and lay out work to fit in wall cavities, ceiling spaces and below slab.
- D. Make minor adjustments in the field as required to provide optimum results and to facilitate ease of service, efficient operation, and best appearance. Minor adjustments are those that do not alter the design intent, scope of the work or operation of the Fire Protection systems.
- E. Make no changes that alter the intent or scope of the work without written instructions from the Architect. In case of doubt, submit a formal request for information (RFI) to the Architect and obtain architects response before proceeding with work. Where doubt arises as to the meaning of the Fire Protection Drawings and specifications, obtain the Architects written interpretation before proceeding. Failure to follow this instruction shall make the contractor liable for damage to other work, and responsible for removing and repairing defective or mis-located work in a proper manner.
- F. All fire protection piping, including mains, branches, return bends etc, shall be fully coordinated with other trades systems including but not limited to duct work, cable trays, piping systems, equipment located above ceilings along with any operational clearances. There shall be no change orders permitted for any conflicts discovered while creating shop drawings or during construction while installing systems due to the contractor's lack of coordination between different trades

1.7 REFERENCES

- A. ADA: Americans with Disabilities Act
- B. AGCA: American General Contractors of America, Inc
- C. AGA: American Gas Association
- D. AIA: American Institute of Architects
- E. ANSI: American National Standards Institute, Inc.
- F. ASME: American Society of Mechanical Engineers
- G. ASPE: American Society of Plumbing Engineers
- H. ASSE: American Society of Sanitary Engineering
- I. ASTM: American Society for Testing Materials

- J. AWS: American Welding Society Code
- K. AWWA: American Water Works Association
- L. CISPI: Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute
- M. FM: Factory Mutual
- N. ICC: International Code Council
- O. NAIMA: North American Insulation Manufacturers Association
- P. NEC: National Electric Code
- Q. NEMA: National Electrical Manufacturers Association.
- R. NFPA: National Fire Protection Association
- S. NICET: National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.
- T. NSF: National Sanitation Foundation
- U. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fitting Industry
- V. PDI: Plumbing Drainage Institute
- W. UL: Underwriters Laboratories, Inc
- X. OSHA: Occupational Safety and Health Administration

1.8 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Materials shall conform to UL and FM Global requirements and standards.
- B. Fire Protection system shall conform to NFPA 13, State of Georgia Fire Marshall requirements, City of Ackworth Fire and Rescue Department requirements and the Georgia State Building Commission requirements.
- C. Comply with the current editions, unless otherwise noted, of the following codes and standards.
 - 1. ICC 2018 Edition with Georgia Amendments
 - a. International Building Code, IBC
 - b. International Energy Conservation Code, IECC
 - c. International Fire Protection Code, IFC
 - d. International Fuel Gas Code, IFGC
 - e. International Mechanical Code, IMC
 - f. International Plumbing Code, IPC
 - 2. ADA – Americans with Disabilities Act
 - 3. ASME B31.9 – Building Services Piping
 - 4. AWWA Manual M14 – Backflow Prevention and Cross Connection Control
 - 5. NFPA 13 – Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler systems

6. NFPA 25 – Standard for the Inspection, Testing and Maintenance of Water Based Fire Protection Systems
 7. NFPA 54 – National Fuel Gas Code
 8. NFPA 70 – National Electric Code
 9. NFPA 96 – Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations
 10. NFPA 101 – Life Safety Code
 11. NFPA 291 – Recommended Practice for Fire Flow Testing and Marking of Hydrants.
 12. Local Health Department
- D. Permits, Licenses, Inspections and Fees
1. Contractor shall give required notices, file drawings, obtain and pay for permits, deposits and fees necessary for the installation of the Division 21 Fire Protection Work
 2. Contractor shall obtain and pay for inspections required by laws, ordinances, rules, regulations, or public authority having jurisdiction.
 3. Contractor shall obtain and pay for certificates of such inspections and file such certificates with the owner.
 4. Contractor shall be licensed through the State of Georgia Fire Marshal's office.

1.9 QUALIFICATION OF THE CONTRACTOR AND SUB-CONTRACTORS

- A. The Fire Protection contractor shall have been in business as a licensed contractor for a minimum of 3 years prior to the date of opening bids and shall have been pre-qualified as a bidder by the owner.
- B. The Fire Protection contractor shall have a satisfactory experience record with fire protection installations of character and scope comparable with this project, within the last 3 years prior to the date of opening bids.
- C. The contractor shall have an established service department capable of providing service inspection or full maintenance contracts.
- D. If the Fire Protection contractor, with the Architect or Engineers approval, uses a sub-contractor to provide another discipline that the Fire Protection contractor does not normally furnish, that sub-contractor shall meet the same qualifications.

1.10 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide new, standard, first-grade materials throughout.
- B. Multiple items of similar equipment shall be the product of the same manufacturer.
- C. All fire protection equipment, devices and materials shall be listed for their intended use with Factory Mutual (FM) and Underwriters Laboratory (UL).
- D. Substitutions:
 1. Comply with the provisions of Division 01, for product requirements, substitutions and alternates, and the following.
 2. When several manufacturers are named in the specifications, the corresponding products and models made by the specified manufacturers will be accepted and Contractor may base their bid

on any one of those products. However, if the Contractor's bid is based on products other than the scheduled or specified **basis of design**, it shall be understood that there will be no extra cost involved whatsoever, and the effect on other trades has been included in the Contractor's proposal. Coordination with other trades for substituted equipment or use of products other than the named basis of design shall be the responsibility of the Contractor furnishing the equipment.

3. The basis of design manufacturer's equipment has been used to determine space requirements. Should another approved manufacturer's equipment be used in preparing proposals, Contractor shall be responsible for determining that said equipment will fit space allocated. Submission of shop drawings or product data on such equipment shall be considered as indicating that the Contractor has reviewed the space requirements and the submitted equipment will fit the space allocated with due consideration given to access required for maintenance and code purposes.
4. The basis of design manufacturer's equipment and scheduled Fire Protection equipment electrical requirements have been used to coordinate the electrical requirements of the fire protection equipment with the electrical systems serving that equipment.
 - a. Contractor shall coordinate the electrical requirements of the equipment actually furnished on this project and provide the electrical systems required by that equipment at no additional cost to the Owner.
 - b. Equipment of higher or lower electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified at no additional cost to the Owner.
 - c. Prior to approval of submittals of fire protection equipment with electrical requirements that are greater or lower than those shown on the Drawings, Contractor shall submit letter verifying that required changes to the electrical system, serving the specific piece of equipment in question, have been coordinated with the electrical contractor. Letter to be included with the associated equipment submittal, addressed to the Architect with a copy to the electrical engineer.
 - d. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with specified requirements.
5. Each bidder may submit to the Architect a list of any substitutes which is proposed to use in lieu of the equipment or material named in the specifications with a request for the approval of proposed substitutes. To be considered, such requests must be delivered to the office of the Architect not later than 10 days prior to bid due date. The submittal shall include the following:
 - a. Specific equipment or material proposed for substitution giving manufacturer, catalog, and model number.
 - b. All performance and dimensional data necessary for comparison of the proposed substitute with the equipment or material specified.
 - c. A statement setting forth any changes in other materials, equipment, or other Work that incorporation of the substitute may require.
6. The Burden of proof of the merit of the proposed substitute is upon the proposer. The Architect's decision of approval or disapproval of a proposed substitution is final.
7. All bidders will be advised by addenda of proposed substitutes which are found to be acceptable. Do not rely upon approvals made in any other manner.

E. Extra Materials

1. Provide a metal storage cabinet with extra sprinkler heads in accordance with NFPA 13.
2. Provide suitable wrenches and tools for each type of sprinkler head.
3. Quantities of spare sprinkler heads shall be in accordance with NFPA 13.

1.11 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Division 1 and Division 21 sections for submittals and submittal procedures.
- B. Electronic Submittals: Prepare submittals as a PDF package, incorporating complete information into each PDF file, separated by section. Name each PDF file with section number for the product data contained within.
 - 1. Submittals that are missing information or are otherwise incomplete shall be returned “**REVISE and RESUBMIT**”
 - 2. Recommended naming convention for a PDF:
 - a. 21####-Section Title.pdf
 - b. Example for this section: **210100-Gen FP Requirements.pdf**
 - 1) Note: abbreviating long words is acceptable.
 - 2) Refer to paragraph 1.2 “RELATED SECTIONS” for an index of section numbers and titles.
 - c. Other information that is relevant to the General Contractor and their sub-contractors is acceptable in the file name, so long as the section number and title appear.
- C. Submittals shall include product information for all equipment and components specified or shown on the plans, hydraulic calculations and contractor shop drawings that provide details, dimensions and coordination of the work with all other disciplines.
- D. For each type of product, equipment, material, and services specified in Division 21 specification sections provide product data that is clearly marked indicating compliance with the Fire Protection drawing and specifications. Submittals shall be provided with specified shop drawings. Provide to the architect or prime consultant, a complete submittal fully marked to identify exactly what shall be provided including the following minimal information:
 - 1. All submittals shall be provided in electronic pdf format and shall be organized in accordance with the Division 21 specification numbering system.
 - 2. All submittals shall be completely marked with manufacturer’s names, model number, dimensions, weights, performance ratings, efficiencies, features, and accessories to be provided.
 - 3. Capacities, dimensions, weights, etc. shall be in the terms specified inch-pound system.
 - 4. Call attention to and clearly identify deviations from specified equipment and components regarding operation and physical dimensions, capacities, and performance.
 - 5. Performance curves for equipment such as pumps shall be included and shall be clearly marked with operating points, and efficiency.
 - 6. All shop drawings shall be sealed and signed by a Professional Engineer licensed in the state of **[Insert State]**.
 - 7. Hydraulic calculation cover pages shall be sealed and signed by a Professional Engineer licensed in the state of **[Insert State]**.
- E. The contractor shall obtain reviewed submittals from the Engineer that have been returned and marked as follows:
 - 1. **APPROVED** – Contractor approved to order equipment and proceed with the work.
 - 2. **APPROVED AS NOTED** – Contractor approved to order equipment and proceed with the work after making corrections noted by the engineer and coordinating corrections with all disciplines. Corrected submittal shall be re-submitted for record purposes to the General Contractor, and A/E team.
 - 3. **REVISE AND RESUBMIT** – Contractor to correct submittal and resubmit to the A/E team for approval. Re-submittal shall be clearly marked as such.

- F. Final equipment or material orders shall not be placed until submittals have been returned marked either “**APPROVED**” or “**APPROVED AS NOTED**” without exception.
- G. The installation of fire protection systems shall not begin until submittals have been returned marked either “**APPROVED**” or “**APPROVED AS NOTED**”. The installation of any portion of the sprinkler system, in the absence of approved submittals, shall make the contractor responsible to make any necessary changes to the fire protection work already completed at the contractor’s expense. No change orders will be allowed for correcting work already completed.
- H. Refer to paragraph 1.10 Product Requirements, bullet D for substitutions and equipment/products that are different from basis of design that affect other disciplines.
- I. Shop Drawings shall be provided for all areas of the building and include the following:
 - 1. Before starting any work submit and obtain approved shop drawings from the Engineer of Record.
 - 2. No work shall begin, and no equipment shall be ordered until shop drawings have been marked by the engineer of record as “**APPROVED**” or “**APPROVED AS NOTED**”. Failure to submit shop drawings will make the Contractor responsible for changes required to facilitate installation of Fire Protection work and other affected disciplines.
 - 3. Shop drawings shall fully detail all fire protection work to be performed. Shop drawings shall be submitted in electronic pdf format and shall comply with the following:
 - a. All shop drawings shall be drawn to 1/4” = 1’-0” scale. 1/8” – 1’-0” scale may be used when approved by the engineer of record.
 - 4. Fire Protection shop drawing shall meet the requirements set forth in NFPA 13 and include the following at a minimum:
 - a. A Professional Engineers seal and signature
 - b. Project Address or Location.
 - c. Bottom of pipe elevations.
 - d. Dimensions from columns lines.
 - e. Pipe sizes and schedules
 - f. Fluid type.
 - g. Pipe support locations.
 - h. Pipe support details.
 - i. Location of automatic valves and system isolation valves.
 - j. Equipment connection details.
 - k. Node points for corresponding hydraulic calculations
 - l. For multi-story buildings, submit detailed floor penetration sleeve layout drawings.
 - 5. Hydraulic Calculations shall include the following at a minimum:
 - a. A Professional Engineers seal and signature located on the cover page for each remote area calculated.
 - b. Current flow test information of the Municipal infrastructure.
 - c. Node points with nomenclature that matches the fire protection shop drawings.
 - d. Pressure calculations
 - e. Flow calculations
 - f. Pipe sizes and lengths
 - g. Pipe fittings
 - h. Pipe and sprinkler elevations
 - i. Sprinkler head k-factors
 - j. Hydraulic graph of system.

1.12 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. General:
 - 1. Within 60 days of Notice to Proceed, provide Coordination Drawings for the project.
 - 2. Do not base Coordination Drawings on a reproduction of the Contract Documents or standard printed data.
 - 3. Submitted Coordination Drawings are for information only and typically will not be returned to the Contractor. Architect will not take any action, but may define coordination conflicts or problems and inform the Contractor of such conflicts or problems.
- B. Content:
 - 1. Project specific information, drawn accurately to scale.
 - 2. Show sequencing and spatial relationship of separate units of work that must function in a restricted manner to fit in the space provided, or function as indicated.
 - 3. Indicate dimensions on Contract Drawings and make specific note of dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternate sketches to Architect for resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.
- C. Format:
 - 1. Coordination shop drawings shall be drawn to a scale of not smaller than 1/4" = 1'-0".
 - 2. Provide drawings on electronic media in AutoCAD (*.dwg) or REVIT (*.rvt) format.
 - 3. Provide layering system separate from wall outline and unique to each discipline.
 - 4. In addition to plan view, provide sections as required to clarify congested situations and verify vertical clearances.
 - 5. Base drawing and building sections in .dwg format will be provided by Architect.
- D. HVAC Shop Drawings: Database to begin as HVAC shop drawings, produced by HVAC subcontractor, indicating all ductwork, piping, equipment, and location of mechanical room floor drains and electrical connections to motors. Indicate elevations and sizes of all ductwork piping.
 - 1. Upon completion of HVAC shop drawings, HVAC subcontractor shall transmit electronic database to plumbing subcontractor.
- E. Plumbing Shop Drawings: Plumbing subcontractor shall add all plumbing piping, valves, gauges, access panels and fixtures to database:
 - 1. Upon completion of Plumbing shop drawings, transmit electronic database to fire protection subcontractor.
- F. Fire Protection Shop Drawings: Fire Protection subcontractor shall add all fire protection equipment, sensors, valves, piping, sprinkler heads and other elements to database.
 - 1. Upon completion of Fire Protection shop drawings, transmit electronic database to Electrical subcontractor.
- G. Electrical Shop Drawings: Electrical subcontractor shall add all electrical fixtures, conduit, and equipment.
 - 1. Upon completion of Electrical shop drawings, transmit electrical database to General Contractor for final coordination.
- H. General Contractor's Final Coordination: General Contractor shall thoroughly review shop drawings, adding additional building elements where appropriate, and shall resolve conflicts, coordinating with the Architect, and the various subcontractors.

- I. Submit Coordination Shop Drawings: Upon completion of final coordination, General Contractor shall approve coordination shop drawings and transmit 3 sets of hard copies and electronic files on CD's to Architect.
- J. The Architect will not process sheet metal or fire protection shop drawings until such time as the coordination drawings have been sufficiently completed and conflicts resolved. This may be done on a floor-by-floor basis as a minimum.

1.13 ONLINE CONSTRUCTION MANAGEMENT SOFTWARE

- A. The Engineers' use of online construction management software (e.g. ProCore, Trimble, Plangrid) for Submittals, RFI's etc, is done so for the convenience of the General Contractor and shall not unduly burden the Engineering team.
- B. It is the responsibility of the General Contractor to ensure that notifications, due dates and the dissemination of information (submittals, RFI's etc) is done appropriately, correctly and in-line with standard industry practices and the requirements of this section.
- C. Any issues or delays arising from the use of the online construction management software shall be corrected by the General Contractor. Any delays caused by software issues, outages or unavailability of the online construction management software shall extend any associated review time of Submittals and RFI's accordingly.
- D. Delays that are caused by the General Contractor's misuse of the software shall not inconvenience the Architectural or Engineering team.
- E. General guidelines and expectations:
 - 1. A minimum of 10 business (*not calendar*) days, from the Engineers receipt of the submittal, are allowed for the engineers review.
 - a. Multiple submittals uploaded simultaneously may incur additional review time.
 - b. When multiple submittals are uploaded simultaneously, it is the responsibility of the General Contractor to notify the Architectural and Engineering team of any items that may require prioritization. Otherwise, submittals will be reviewed on a "first in - first out" basis.
 - 2. A minimum of 5 business (*not calendar*) days, from the Engineers receipt of the RFI, are allowed for review and response.
 - 3. Expedited Submittal and RFI review and response.
 - a. Expedited submittal and RFI review, when available, can be requested by the contractor. If requested, it can be provided based on the workload and schedule of the engineering team.
 - b. Expedited submittal review time shall be no less than 5 business (*not calendar*) days from the Engineers receipt of the submittal.
 - c. Expedited RFI review and response time shall be no less than 2 business (*not calendar*) days from the Engineers receipt of the RFI.
 - 4. National holidays that occur during a review period does not subtract from the response time for Submittal, RFI etc.
 - 5. Submittals that are in PDF format shall be named and assembled per paragraph 1.11 in this section.

6. Notifications from the online construction management software shall identify the Section Number and name as well as match the actual file name of the PDF of the submittal being submitted for review.
 7. No more than one submittal per specification section shall be submitted. Multiple submittals per specification section shall be marked 'REVISE and RESUBMIT'.
 8. Notifications regarding submittals being ready for review shall come from the General Contractor, not their sub-contractors. It is the responsibility of the General Contractor to review and confirm that their sub-contractors' submittals have been named correctly and are organized in accordance with this specification section. The engineer shall only be notified when a submittal or RFI is placed in their court for review or response.
 9. If there are any problems with access, links or files generated by the online construction management software to retrieve submittals, RFIs or other information, it becomes the responsibility of the General Contractor to email the information to the Architectural and Engineering Team when requested.
- F. Any costs for the Engineers' access and use of the online construction management software shall be paid for by the General Contractor.

1.14 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

- A. Visiting Site: Visit site before and during construction to become familiar with installed work that may affect Fire Protection work. No additional allowance will be granted because of lack of knowledge of such conditions.
- B. Cause as little interference or interruption of existing services as possible. Schedule work which will cause interference or interruption in advance with Owner, authorities having jurisdiction, and all affected trades.
- C. Determine size, location, and elevation of existing and new utilities at the project site.
- D. Renovations to Existing Facilities – Conflicts with active systems: Where existing, active piping or equipment conflicts with new Architectural features, the contractor shall make provisions to modify, re-route or relocate the existing piping or equipment to accommodate the Architectural design and then return the existing piping or equipment to operable status. Returning the existing piping or equipment to operable status includes using like materials and sizes, pressure testing, leak testing, insulating, connecting power etc.
- E. Renovations to Existing Facilities – Conflicts with abandoned systems: Where existing abandoned piping or equipment conflicts with new Architectural features, the contractor shall make provisions to remove the abandoned piping or equipment to accommodate the Architectural design.
- F. **[Critical Areas – Certain areas of the facility have been deemed 'critical areas' by the owner and their continual operation is 'necessary' for normal business operation. Any work that, can, will or otherwise has the potential to interrupt the normal operation of these areas must first be coordinated with the Architect and Owner prior to work beginning. No work is to commence prior to Architect and owner authorization. Specific areas that are noted as being critical are as follows:]**
 - a. **[Identify Area]**

1.15 PROJECT CLOSE-OUT

- A. Submit project close out documents after the final inspection and all punch list items are complete.
- B. Furnish the Owner with a hard, printed copy of NFPA 25, Standard for the Inspection, testing, and Maintenance of Water Based Fire Protection Systems.
- C. Record (AS-BUILT) Drawings shall include the following:
 - 1. Record drawings shall be an accurate record of corrections, variations, and deviations, including those required by change orders to the contract documents.
 - 2. Record changes daily on a set of plans kept at the job site.
 - 3. Submit record drawing marked as noted above to Architect for review prior to request for final payment.
 - 4. Marked record drawings will be returned to Contractor for use in preparing final record drawings.
 - 5. Final Record Drawings: Provide one complete set of prints, and one electronic copy in AutoCAD or Revit format indicating the actual completed installation of the work.
- D. Prior to the issuance of a certificate for final payment, submit to Architect and obtain their approval of the following:
 - 1. Record drawings – As noted above.
 - 2. Flow test (Electronic pdf).
 - 3. Equipment Submittal Data (Electronic pdf).
 - 4. Equipment operating and maintenance manuals (Electronic pdf and 2 hard copies).
 - 5. Equipment warranty dates and guarantees (Electronic pdf and 2 hard copies).
 - 6. List of Owner's Personnel who have received operating and maintenance instructions.
 - 7. Letter certifying and signed by Owner or his representative that the Owner or his representative has received the extra materials specified for each system
- E. Submit factory start-up/field reports for all equipment and systems specified. (See Specifications)
 - 1. Backflow preventers
 - 2. Alarm Valves

1.16 TEMPORARY USE OF FIRE PROTECTION EQUIPMENT

- A. Use of new installed fire protection equipment to provide fire protection services during construction will be permitted subject to compliance with the requirements of Division 01, Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls", Article "Temporary Utility Installation", and the following:
 - 1. Fire pumps, and other equipment specified to have factory supervised start-up shall have had such start-up.
 - 2. Units shall be properly lubricated, balanced, and aligned. Vibrations must be eliminated.
 - 3. Fire Protection equipment must be operated as a complete system and be fully maintained by operating personnel.
- B. Prior to final inspection, the equipment or parts used which show wear and tear beyond normal, shall be replaced with identical replacements, at no additional cost to the Owner. Operation of the equipment on a temporary basis during construction does not constitute substantial completion or beneficial use by the owner.
- C. This paragraph shall not reduce the requirements of the specification sections.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS – NOT USED

PART 3 - EXECUTION – NOT USED

END OF SECTION 230100

SECTION 210517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves without waterstop.
2. Sleeves with waterstop.
3. Grout.
4. Silicone sealants.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For sealants, indicating VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports: For sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES WITHOUT WATERSTOP

- A. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves:** Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends.
- B. Steel Pipe Sleeves:** ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, hot-dip galvanized, with plain ends.
- C. Steel Sheet Sleeves:** ASTM A653/A653M, 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; hot-dip galvanized, round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- D. PVC Pipe Sleeves:** ASTM D1785, Schedule 40.
- E. Molded-PVC Sleeves:** With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves:** Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.2 SLEEVES WITH WATERSTOP

- A. Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Advance Products & Systems, LLC.
 2. CALPICO, Inc.
 3. GPT; a division of EnPRO Industries.

4. Metraflex Company (The).

- B. Description: Manufactured steel, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall.

2.3 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000 psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.4 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.
 - b. Permathane; a Holcim brand.
 - c. Polymeric Systems, Inc.
 - d. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
 - e. Sika Corporation.
 - f. The Dow Chemical Company.
 - g. Tremco Incorporated.
 2. Standard: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
 3. Verify sealant has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
 4. Verify sealant complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Silicone, S, P, T, NT: Single-component, 100/50, pourable, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Pecora Corporation.
 - b. Sika Corporation.
 - c. The Dow Chemical Company.
 - d. Tremco Incorporated.
 2. Standard: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.
 3. Verify sealant has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
 4. Verify sealant complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of

Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES - GENERAL

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide **1-inch** annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
 - 3. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES WITH WATERSTOP

- A. Install sleeve with waterstop as new walls and slabs are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal space around outside of sleeves.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 SLEEVE SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
 - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above and below Grade:
 - a. Sleeves with waterstops.
 - 2. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - a. Sleeves with waterstops.
 - 3. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
 - a. Sleeves with waterstops.
 - 4. Interior Walls and Partitions:
 - a. Sleeves without waterstops.

END OF SECTION 210517

SECTION 210518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Escutcheons.
 - 2. Floor plates.
- B. This section pertains to escutcheon plates associated with piping penetrations at vertical and horizontal surfaces only and DOES NOT include information for escutcheon plates associated with sprinkler heads installed in ceiling systems or side walls.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing Piping to Remain: Existing piping that is not to be removed and that is not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. BrassCraft Manufacturing Co.; a Masco company.
 - 2. Dearborn Brass.
 - 3. Jones Stephens Corp.
 - 4. Keeney Manufacturing Company (The).
 - 5. Mid-America Fittings, LLC; A Midland Industries Company.

2.2 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Stainless-Steel Type: With polished stainless-steel finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- D. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped **steel** with polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish; exposed-rivet hinge; and spring-clip fasteners.

2.3 FLOOR PLATES

- A. Split Floor Plates: Steel with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece steel or split-plate steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - 2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping to Remain:
 - a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping: One-piece, floor plate.

2. Existing Piping: Split floor plate.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

END OF SECTION 210518

SECTION 210523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR WATER-BASED FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Two-piece ball valves with indicators.
2. Bronze butterfly valves with indicators.
3. Iron butterfly valves with indicators.
4. Check valves.
5. Bronze OS&Y gate valves.
6. Iron OS&Y gate valves.
7. NRS gate valves.
8. Indicator posts.
9. Trim and drain valves.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- B. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- C. SBR: Styrene-butadiene rubber.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, and weld ends.
3. Set valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:

1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.

- D. Protect flanges and specialties from moisture and dirt.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain each type of valve from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. UL Listed: Valves shall be listed in UL's "Online Certifications Directory" under the headings listed below and shall bear UL mark:
 - 1. Fire Main Equipment: HAMV - Main Level.
 - a. Indicator Posts, Gate Valve: HCBZ - Level 1.
 - b. Ball Valves, System Control: HLUG - Level 3.
 - c. Butterfly Valves: HLXS - Level 3.
 - d. Check Valves: HMER - Level 3.
 - e. Gate Valves: HMRZ - Level 3.
 - 2. Sprinkler System and Water Spray System Devices: VDGT - Main Level.
 - a. Valves, Trim and Drain: VQGU - Level 1.
- B. FM Global Approved: Valves shall be listed in its "Approval Guide," under the headings listed below:
 - 1. Automated Sprinkler Systems:
 - a. Indicator posts.
 - b. Valves.
 - 1) Gate valves.
 - 2) Check valves
 - 3) Miscellaneous valves.
- C. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
 - 2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
 - 3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- D. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.
- E. NFPA Compliance for valves:
 - 1. Comply with NFPA 13.
- F. Valve Pressure Ratings: Not less than the minimum pressure rating indicated or higher, as required by system pressures.
- G. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Valve Actuator Types:
 - 1. Worm-gear actuator with handwheel for quarter-turn valves, except for trim and drain valves.

2. Handwheel: For other than quarter-turn trim and drain valves.
3. Handlever: For quarter-turn trim and drain valves NPS 2 and smaller.

2.3 TWO-PIECE BALL VALVES WITH INDICATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Ames Fire & Waterworks; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 2. NIBCO INC.
 3. Victaulic Company.
- B. Description:
1. UL 1091, except with ball instead of disc and FM Global approved for indicating valves (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 1112.
 2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
 3. Body Design: Two piece.
 4. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
 5. Port Size: Full or standard.
 6. Seats: PTFE.
 7. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
 8. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 9. Actuator: Worm gear
 10. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
 11. End Connections for Valves NPS 1 through NPS 2: Threaded ends.
 12. End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2: Grooved ends.

2.4 IRON BUTTERFLY VALVES WITH INDICATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. ALEUM USA.
 2. Anvil; an ASC Engineered Solution.
 3. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
 4. Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
 5. NIBCO INC.
 6. Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.
 7. Victaulic Company.
 8. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- B. Description:
1. Standard: UL 1091 and FM Global standard for indicating valves, (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 112.
 2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
 3. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron with nylon, EPDM, epoxy, or polyamide coating.
 4. Seat Material: EPDM.
 5. Stem: Stainless steel.

6. Disc: Ductile iron, and EPDM or SBR coated.
7. Actuator: Worm gear.
8. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
9. Body Design: **Grooved-end connections.**

2.5 CHECK VALVES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. ALEUM USA.
2. Ames Fire & Waterworks; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
3. Anvil; an ASC Engineered Solution.
4. FEBCO; A WATTS Brand.
5. Fire Protection Products Inc (FPPI); a brand of Anvil International and Smith-Cooper International.
6. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
7. Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
8. Matco-Norca.
9. Mueller Co. LLC; Mueller Water Products, Inc.
10. NIBCO INC.
11. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
12. Shurjoint; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
13. Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.
14. United Brass Works, Inc.
15. Venus Fire Protection Ltd.
16. Victaulic Company.
17. Viking Group Inc.
18. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
19. Wilson & Cousins Inc.
20. Zurn Industries, LLC.

B. Description:

1. Standard: UL 312 and FM Global standard for swing check valves, Class Number 1210.
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
3. Type: Single swing check.
4. Body Material: Cast iron, ductile iron, or bronze.
5. Clapper: Bronze, ductile iron, or stainless steel with elastomeric seal.
6. Clapper Seat: Brass, bronze, or stainless steel.
7. Hinge Shaft: Bronze or stainless steel.
8. Hinge Spring: Stainless steel.
9. End Connections: Flanged, grooved, or threaded.

2.6 IRON OS&Y GATE VALVES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. American Cast Iron Pipe Company.

2. Clow Valve Company; a subsidiary of McWane, Inc.
3. FNW; Ferguson Enterprises, Inc.
4. Hammond Valve.
5. Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
6. Mueller Co. LLC; Mueller Water Products, Inc.
7. NIBCO INC.
8. Victaulic Company.
9. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
10. Zurn Industries, LLC.

B. Description:

1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
3. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze with elastomeric coating.
5. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze with elastomeric coating.
6. Stem: Brass or bronze.
7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
8. Supervisory Switch: External.
9. End Connections: Flanged.

2.7 TRIM AND DRAIN VALVES

A. Ball Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
 - b. Croker; a Division of Morris Group International.
 - c. Fire Protection Products Inc (FPPI); a brand of Anvil International and Smith-Cooper International.
 - d. Flowserve Corporation.
 - e. Jomar Valve.
 - f. KITZ Corporation.
 - g. Metso Automation USA Inc.
 - h. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - i. NIBCO INC.
 - j. Potter Roemer LLC; a Division of Morris Group International.
 - k. Red-White Valve Corp.
 - l. Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.
 - m. Victaulic Company.
 - n. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - o. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Description:
 - a. Pressure Rating: **175 psig.**
 - b. Body Design: Two piece.
 - c. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
 - d. Port size: Full or standard.

- e. Seats: PTFE.
- f. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
- g. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- h. Actuator: Handlever.
- i. End Connections for Valves NPS 1 through NPS 2-1/2: Threaded ends.
- j. End Connections for Valves NPS 1-1/4 and NPS 2-1/2: Grooved ends.

B. Angle Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Fire Protection Products Inc (FPPI); a brand of Anvil International and Smith-Cooper International.
 - b. NIBCO INC.
 - c. United Brass Works, Inc.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Pressure Rating: **175 psig**.
 - b. Body Material: Brass or bronze.
 - c. Ends: Threaded.
 - d. Stem: Bronze.
 - e. Disc: Bronze.
 - f. Packing: Asbestos free.
 - g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with requirements in the following Sections for specific valve-installation requirements and applications:
 - 1. Section 211313 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for application of valves in wet-pipe, fire-suppression sprinkler systems.

- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply, except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs, indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Double-check valve assembly for fire-protection water-supply connection is existing.
- D. Install valves having threaded connections with unions at each piece of equipment arranged to allow easy access, service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown. Provide separate support where necessary.
- E. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above the pipe center.
- F. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- G. All valves installed in the sprinkler system that isolate the entire system or portions thereof shall be provided with tamper switches.
 - 1. EXCEPTON: Drain valves are not required to have tamper switches.
- H. Control wiring and low voltage wiring between the tamper switch (or flow switch) and the Fire Alarm Panel (FAP) shall be installed in a conduit.
- I. No isolation valves shall be installed in the piping between the fire department connection and the connection to the system.
- J. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 210553 "Identification for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules and signs on surfaces concealing valves; and the NFPA standard applying to the piping system in which valves are installed. Install permanent identification signs indicating the portion of system controlled by each valve.

END OF SECTION 210523

SECTION 210529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
 - 2. Fastener systems.
 - 3. Equipment supports.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural-Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to 2015 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. NFPA Compliance: Comply with **NFPA 13**.
- B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 203.

2.2 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Description: Factory-fabricated components, NFPA approved, UL listed, or FM approved for fire-suppression piping support.
 - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot-dip galvanized.
 - 3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

2.3 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hilti, Inc.
 - b. ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
 - c. MKT Fastening, LLC.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved, insert-wedge-type anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
 - b. Empire Industries, Inc.
 - c. Hilti, Inc.
 - d. ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
 - e. MKT Fastening, LLC.
 - 2. Indoor Applications: Zinc-coated or Stainless steel.
 - 3. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.

2.4 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved, welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support, made from structural-carbon-steel shapes.

2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: ASTM B221.
- B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A1011/A1011M.
- C. Structural Steel: ASTM A36/A36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M.
- E. Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout, suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 - 1. Properties: Non-staining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation, for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components, so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus **200 lb**

3.2 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with installation requirements of approvals and listings. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- B. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- C. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- D. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- E. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- F. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, **NPS 2-1/2** and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms, and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- G. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports, so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- H. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment, and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup:
 - 1. Clean field welds and abraded, shop-painted areas. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as those used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - a. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

Retain Subparagraph below if Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" or Section 099123 "Interior Painting" is in Project Manual. Revise reference if Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings" applies instead.

- 2. Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded, shop-painted areas on miscellaneous metal are specified in "Exterior Painting." "Interior Painting." "High-Performance Coatings."
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with NFPA requirements for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finishes.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Comply with NFPA requirements. Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of non-insulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 2. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.

3. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of non-insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 4. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of non-insulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
 5. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of non-insulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
 6. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 7. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
 8. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
 9. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
- G. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- H. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Comply with NFPA requirements.
- I. Building Attachments: Comply with NFPA requirements. Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable-Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 3. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
- J. Saddles and Shields: Comply with NFPA requirements. Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
- K. Comply with NFPA requirements for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- L. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 210529

SECTION 210553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY****A. Section Includes:**

1. Equipment labels.
2. Warning signs and labels.
3. Pipe labels.
4. Warning tags.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment-Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled and the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve-numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: Provide for fire-suppression piping system. Include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS****A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:**

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - c. Champion America.
 - d. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
 - e. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
 - f. LEM Products Inc.
 - g. Marking Services Inc.
 - h. Pipemarker.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.
 - i. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
2. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
3. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures of up to 160 deg F.

5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances of up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
 7. Fasteners: Stainless steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Brady Corporation.
 2. Carlton Industries, LP.
 3. Champion America.
 4. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
 5. LEM Products Inc.
 6. Marking Services Inc.
 7. National Marker Company.
 8. Pipemarker.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.
 9. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
 10. Stranco, Inc.
- B. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- C. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures of up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances of up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

- I. Arc-Flash Warning Signs: Provide arc-flash warning signs in locations and with content in accordance with requirements of OSHA and NFPA 70E, and other applicable codes and standards.
- J. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

Retain this article if labeling devices identify some or all piping. Identification of piping by color-coded painting is covered in "Installation of Pipe Labels" Article.

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Actioncraft Products, Inc.; a division of Industrial Test Equipment Co., Inc.
 - 2. Brady Corporation.
 - 3. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - 4. Champion America.
 - 5. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
 - 6. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
 - 7. LEM Products Inc.
 - 8. Marking Services Inc.
 - 9. Pipemarker.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.
 - 10. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
- B. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color coded, with lettering indicating service and showing flow direction in accordance with ASME A13.1.
- C. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
- D. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- E. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- F. Pipe-Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings. Also include the following:
 - 1. Pipe size.
 - 2. Flow-Direction Arrows: Include flow-direction arrows on main distribution piping. Arrows may be either integral with label or applied separately.
 - 3. Lettering Size: Size letters in accordance with ASME A13.1 for piping .

2.4 WARNING TAGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Brady Corporation.

2. Champion America.
 3. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
 4. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
 5. LEM Products Inc.
 6. Marking Services Inc.
 7. Pipemarker.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.
 8. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
- B. Description: Preprinted **or** partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
1. Size: Approximately 4 by 7 inches .
 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire Reinforced grommet and wire or string.
 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption, such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
 4. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants, as well as dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and other substances that could impair bond of identification devices.

3.2 INSTALLATION GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be installed.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- D. Locate identifying devices so that they are readily visible from the point of normal approach.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT LABELS, WARNING SIGNS, AND LABELS

- A. Permanently fasten labels on each item of fire-suppression equipment.
- B. Sign and Label Colors:
1. White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-red background
- C. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.
- D. Arc-Flash Warning Signs: Provide arc-flash warning signs on electrical disconnects and other equipment where arc-flash hazard exists, as indicated on Drawings, and in accordance with requirements of OSHA and NFPA 70E, and other applicable codes and standards.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF PIPE LABELS

- A. Piping Color Coding: Painting of piping is specified in "Interior Painting." 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."
1. Coordinate with the Architect and Owner the painting of any exposed piping that is routed through finished or public spaces. E.G. Halls, Corridors, Stair towers, Rooms (excluding mechanical spaces).
- B. Install pipe labels showing service and flow direction with permanent adhesive on pipes.
- C. Pipe-Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
1. Within 3 ft. of each valve and control device.
 2. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit a view of concealed piping.
 3. Within 3 ft. of equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 4. Spaced at maximum intervals of **25 ft.** along each run. Reduce intervals to **10 ft.** in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 5. Pipe labels shall be coordinated and aligned with other systems (Mechanical, Plumbing, etc) pipe labels.
- D. Flow- Direction Arrows: Provide arrows to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
- E. Fire-Suppression Pipe Label Color Schedule (ASME A13.1):
1. Fire-Suppression Pipe Labels:

PIPING SYSTEM <i>(text on pipe label)</i>	BACKGROUND COLOR	LETTER COLOR
FIRE PROTECTION	Red	White
MAIN DRAIN	Red	White

3.5 INSTALLATION OF WARNING TAGS

- A. Warning Tag Color: Black letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-yellow background.
- B. Attach warning tags, with proper message, to equipment and other items where indicated on Drawings.

END OF SECTION 210553

SECTION 211313 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Steel pipe and fittings.
2. Specialty valves.
3. Air vent.
4. Sprinkler piping specialties.
5. Sprinklers.
6. Alarm devices.
7. Pressure gauges.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. High-Pressure Sprinkler Piping:** Wet-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure higher than standard 175 psig, but not higher than 250 psig.
- B. Standard-Pressure Sprinkler Piping:** Wet-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure of 175-psig maximum.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For sealants, indicating VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports: For sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

C. Shop Drawings: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

D. Delegated Design Submittals: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data, signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation, prepared by NICET Level III or IV-certified technician, "Water-Based Systems Layout." NICET certified-technician submittals are to include the following information on each drawing title block: technician's name, NICET certification number, and NICET certification specialty area and level.

1. **NOTE:** a NICET certified technician **does NOT** supersede the requirement to have the plans and corresponding hydraulic calculations signed and sealed by a licensed engineer.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Sprinkler system plans and sections, or Building Information Model (BIM), drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer, professional engineer and NICET certified technician.
- C. Design Data: Approved sprinkler piping working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, including documented approval by authorities having jurisdiction, and including hydraulic calculations if applicable.
- D. Welding certificates.
- E. Field Test Reports:
 - 1. Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."
 - 2. Fire-hydrant flow test report.
- F. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems and specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounted, steel cabinet with hinged cover, and with space for minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench. Include number of sprinklers required by NFPA 13 and sprinkler wrench. Include separate cabinet with sprinklers and wrench for each type of sprinkler used on Project.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
 - 1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.
 - a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by qualified professional engineer. NICET Level III or IV-certified technician, "Water-Based Systems Layout."

- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Sprinkler Service: Do not interrupt sprinkler service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary sprinkler service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Architect no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sprinkler service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of sprinkler service without Architect's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing to comply with NFPA 13.
- C. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig minimum working pressure.
- D. High-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 250-psig minimum working pressure.
- E. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design wet-pipe sprinkler systems.
 - 1. Available fire-hydrant flow test records is indicated on drawing FP0.01 "FIRE PROTECTION LEGEND, SCHEDULES AND NOTES"
 - 2. This information is provided for reference only. It is the responsibility of this contractor to coordinate an up-to-date flow test with the local authority having jurisdiction and pay any associated fee's.
 - 3. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 10 percent, including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.
 - 4. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications:
 - a. Churches: Light Hazard.
 - b. Educational: Light Hazard.
 - c. Electrical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
 - d. Elevator Machine Room and Hoistway: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
 - e. General Storage Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
 - f. Laundries: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
 - g. Libraries, except Large Stack Rooms: Light Hazard.
 - h. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
 - i. Offices, including Data Processing: Light Hazard
 - 5. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:
 - a. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm/sq. ft. over 1500 sq. ft area.
 - b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm/sq. ft. over 1500 sq. ft area.

- c. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.20 gpm/sq. ft. over 1500 sq. ft. area.
- d. Special Occupancy Hazard: As determined by authorities having jurisdiction.
- 6. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler:
 - a. Office Spaces: 225 sq. ft.
 - b. Storage Areas: 130 sq. ft.
 - c. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft.
 - d. Electrical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft.
 - e. Other Areas: According to NFPA 13 recommendations unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Obtain documented approval of sprinkler system design from authorities having jurisdiction.

2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Standard-Weight (schedule 40) Steel Pipe: black-steel pipe, ASTM A53/A53M, Type E , Grade B. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- B. Schedule 10, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A135/A135M or ASTM A795/A795M, Schedule 10 in NPS 5 and smaller; and NFPA 13-specified wall thickness in NPS 6 to NPS 10, plain end.
- C. Nonstandard OD, Thin wall, Hybrid, Schedule 5, or any Black steel piping with a wall thickness less than Schedule 10: **NOT ALLOWED**.
- D. Steel Pipe Nipples: black steel, ASTM A733, made of ASTM A53/A53M, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
- E. Steel Couplings: Galvanized and uncoated steel, ASTM A865/A865M, threaded.

Fittings in "Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings" Paragraph below are generally available in NPS 1/4 to NPS 12 (DN 8 to DN 300).

- F. Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: Galvanized and uncoated gray-iron threaded fittings, ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- G. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.
- H. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125.
- I. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.
 - 1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free or EPDM rubber gasket.
 - a. Class 125 and Class 250, Cast-Iron, Flat-Face Flanges: Full-face gaskets.
 - b. Class 150 and Class 300, Ductile-Iron or -Steel, Raised-Face Flanges: Ring-type gaskets.
 - 2. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A234/A234M and ASME B16.9.
 - 1. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

K. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Anvil; an ASC Engineered Solution.
 - b. CPS Products, Inc.
 - c. Shurjoint; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
 - d. Smith-Cooper International.
 - e. Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.
 - f. Victaulic Company.
2. Pressure Rating: **175-psig** minimum.
3. Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: Painted grooved-end fittings, ASTM A47/A47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A536, ductile-iron casting, with dimensions matching steel pipe.
4. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213 rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.

2.3 SPECIALTY VALVES

A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."

B. Pressure Rating:

1. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 175-psig minimum.
2. High-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 250-psig minimum

C. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.

D. Size: Same as connected piping.

E. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

F. Alarm Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
 - b. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
 - c. Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.
 - d. Venus Fire Protection Ltd.
 - e. Victaulic Company.
 - f. Viking Group Inc.
2. Standard: UL 193.
3. Design: For horizontal or vertical installation.
4. Include trim sets for bypass, drain, electrical sprinkler alarm switch, pressure gauges, retarding chamber, and fill-line attachment with strainer.
5. Drip cup assembly pipe drain without valves and separate from main drain piping] [with check valve to main drain piping.

6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

G. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
 - b. Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.
2. Standard: UL 1726.
3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
4. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
5. Size: NPS 3/4.
6. End Connections: Threaded.

2.4 AIR VENT

A. Manual Air Vent/Valve:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AGF Manufacturing, Inc.
 - b. National Fittings, Inc.
 - c. Shurjoint; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
 - d. Victaulic Company.
2. Description: Ball valve that requires human intervention to vent air.
3. Body: Forged brass.
4. Ends: Threaded.
5. Minimize Size: 1/2 inch.
6. Minimum Water Working Pressure Rating: 300 psig.

B. Automatic Air Vent:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AGF Manufacturing, Inc.
 - b. CLA-VAL.
 - c. Engineered Corrosion Solutions.
 - d. Metraflex Company (The).
 - e. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
 - f. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
2. Description: Automatic air vent that automatically vents trapped air without human intervention.
3. Standard: UL listed or FM Global approved for use in wet-pipe fire sprinkler systems.
4. Vents oxygen continuously from system.
5. Float valve to prevent water discharge.
6. Minimum Water Working Pressure Rating: 175 psig.

C. Automatic Air Vent Assembly:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AGF Manufacturing, Inc.
 - b. Engineered Corrosion Solutions.
 - c. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
 - d. South-Tek Systems, LLC.
2. Description: Automatic air vent assembly that automatically vents trapped air without human intervention, including Y-strainer and ball valve in a pre-piped assembly.
3. Standard: UL listed or FM Global approved for use in wet-pipe fire sprinkler system.
4. Vents oxygen continuously from system.
5. Float valve to prevent water discharge.
6. Minimum Water Working Pressure Rating: 175 psig.

2.5 SPRINKLER PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AGF Manufacturing, Inc.
 - b. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
 - c. Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.
 - d. Victaulic Company.
2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded or grooved.

B. Branch Line Testers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AGF Manufacturing, Inc.
 - b. Croker; a Division of Morris Group International.
 - c. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Co., Inc.
 - d. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
 - e. Potter Roemer LLC; a Division of Morris Group International.
2. Standard: UL 199.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
4. Body Material: Brass.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet: Threaded.
7. Drain Outlet: Threaded and capped.
8. Branch Outlet: Threaded, for sprinkler.

C. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AGF Manufacturing, Inc.
 - b. Triple R Specialty.
 - c. Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.
 - d. Victaulic Company.
 - e. Viking Group Inc.
2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

D. Adjustable Drop Nipples:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Aegis Technologies, Inc.
 - b. CECA, LLC.
 - c. CPS Products, Inc.
 - d. Merit Manufacturing.
2. Standard: UL 1474.
3. Pressure Rating: 250-psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Steel pipe with EPDM-rubber O-ring seals.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Length: Adjustable.
7. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

E. Flexible Sprinkler Hose Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ALEUM USA.
 - b. Flexhead; an ASC Engineered Solution.
 - c. Gateway Tubing, Inc.
 - d. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
 - e. Victaulic Company.
2. Standard: UL 1474.
3. Type: Flexible hose for connection to sprinkler, and with bracket for connection to ceiling grid.
4. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum
5. Size: Same as connected piping, for sprinkler.

2.6 SPRINKLERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
2. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).

3. Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.
 4. Venus Fire Protection Ltd.
 5. Victaulic Company.
 6. Viking Group Inc.
- B. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- C. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175-psig minimum.
- D. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:
1. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199
 2. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application.
- E. Sprinkler Finishes: bronze and factory painted.
- F. Special Coatings: corrosion-resistant paint.
- G. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications. Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.
1. Ceiling Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat
 2. Sidewall Mounting: Chrome-plated steel one piece, flat.
 3. Concealed Cover plates: Factory painted to match surrounding surfaces
- H. Sprinkler Guards:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
 - b. Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.
 - c. Victaulic Company.
 - d. Viking Group Inc.
 2. Standard: UL 199.
 3. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.
- 2.7 ALARM DEVICES
- A. Alarm-device types to match piping and equipment connections.
- B. Water-Motor-Operated Alarm:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
- b. Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.
- c. Victaulic Company.
- d. Viking Group Inc.
2. Standard: UL 753.
3. Type: Mechanically operated, with Pelton wheel.
4. Alarm Gong: Cast aluminum with red-enamel factory finish.
5. Size: 8-1/2-inches diameter.
6. Components: Shaft length, bearings, and sleeve to suit wall construction.
7. Inlet: NPS 3/4.
8. Outlet: NPS 1 drain connection.

C. Electrically Operated Notification Appliances:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Fire-Lite Alarms; Honeywell International, Inc.
 - b. Notifier; Honeywell International, Inc.
 - c. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
2. Electric Bell:
 - a. Standard: UL 464.
 - b. Type: Vibrating, metal alarm bell.
 - c. Size: 8-inch minimum diameter.
 - d. Voltage: 120 V ac, 60 Hz, 1 phase
 - e. Finish: Red-enamel or polyester powder-coat factory finish, suitable for outdoor use with approved and listed weatherproof backbox.
3. Strobe/Horn:
 - a. Standard: UL 464.
 - b. Tone: Selectable, steady, Temporal-3 (T-3) in accordance with ISO 8201 and ANSI/ASA S3.41, 2400 Hz, electromechanical, broadband.
 - c. Voltage: 120 V ac, 60 Hz.
 - d. Effective Intensity: 110 cd.
 - e. Finish: Red, suitable for outdoor use with approved and listed weatherproof backbox. White letters on housing identifying device as for "Fire."
 - f. Sign, Integrated: Mount between backbox and strobe/horn with text visible on both sides, above and below strobe/horn. Housing to be shaped to cover surface-mounted weatherproof backbox. Sign is to consist of white lettering on red plastic identifying it as a "Sprinkler Fire Alarm" and instructing viewers to call 911, police, or fire department.

D. Water-Flow Indicators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ADT Security Services, Inc.
 - b. ITT McDonnell & Miller.
 - c. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
 - d. System Sensor; Honeywell International, Inc.
 - e. Viking Group Inc.
 - f. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.

2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Water-Flow Detector: Electrically supervised.
4. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.
5. Type: Paddle operated.
6. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
7. Design Installation: Horizontal or vertical.

E. Pressure Switches:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Barksdale, Inc.
 - b. Detroit Switch, Inc.
 - c. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
 - d. System Sensor; Honeywell International, Inc.
 - e. Tyco Fire Products; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.
 - f. United Electric Controls Co.
 - g. Viking Group Inc.
2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Type: Electrically supervised water-flow switch with retard feature.
4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
5. Design Operation: Rising pressure signals water flow.

F. Valve Supervisory Switches:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Fire-Lite Alarms; Honeywell International, Inc.
 - b. Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - c. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
 - d. System Sensor; Honeywell International, Inc.
2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Type: Electrically supervised.
4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
5. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.
6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.8 PRESSURE GAUGES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. AGF Manufacturing, Inc.
2. AMETEK, Inc.
3. Ashcroft Inc.

4. Brecco Corporation.
 5. WIKA Instrument Corporation.
- B. Standard: UL 393.
- C. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.
- D. Pressure Gauge Range: 0- to 250-psig minimum.
- E. Label: Include "WATER" label on dial face.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

3.2 SERVICE-ENTRANCE PIPING

- A. Connect sprinkler piping to the existing fire-service piping for service to the addition.
- B. Install shutoff valve, check valve, pressure gauge, and drain at connection to water service.
- C. Install riser check valve, pressure gauges, and main drain at connection to fire service.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF PIPING

- A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated on approved working plans.
1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
 2. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.
- B. Piping Standard: Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for installation of sprinkler piping.
- C. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.
- D. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- E. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- F. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.

- G. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.
 - 1. Where positive drainage back to the service entrance is not possible due to low points, vertical offsets, etc, a ball valve with hose thread connection shall be provided at each low point in the piping system.
- H. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection, to drain piping between fire-department connection and check valve. Install drain piping to and spill over floor drain or to outside building.
- I. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
 - 1. The existing fire service is equipped with a water motor gong. It is this contractors choice whether to reuse the water motor gong or provide an electric bell or strobe. If reusing the water motor gong, it is the responsibility of this contractor to modify its installation to operate when either sprinkler zone is activated. Coordinate notification method with the AHJ.
- J. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements for hanger materials in NFPA 13.
- K. Install pressure gauges on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gauges with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft-metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gauge and valve. Install gauges to permit removal, and install where they are not subject to freezing.
- L. Fill sprinkler system piping with water.
- M. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for fire Suppression Piping"
- N. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for fire Suppression Piping."
- O. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 210518 "Escutcheons for Fire Suppression Piping."

3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.

- D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- H. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
 - 1. Shop weld pipe joints where welded piping is indicated. Do not use welded joints for galvanized-steel pipe.
- I. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.
- J. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
- K. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F2014. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.
- L. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

- A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- D. Specialty Valves:

1. Install valves in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
2. Install alarm valves with bypass check valve and retarding chamber drain-line connection.
3. Install deluge valves in vertical position, in proper direction of flow, and in main supply to deluge system. Install trim sets for drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball drip valves, pressure gauges, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.

E. Air Vent:

1. Provide at least one air vent at high point in each wet-pipe sprinkler system in accordance with NFPA 13 requirements. Connect vent into top of fire sprinkler piping.
2. Provide dielectric union for dissimilar metals, ball valve, and strainer upstream of automatic air vent.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF SPRINKLERS

- A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of narrow dimension of acoustical ceiling panels.
- B. Install dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.
- C. Install sprinklers into flexible, sprinkler hose fittings, and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.
 1. It is at the contractor's option to utilize flexible drop hose fittings in-lieu of hard piped return bends.
 2. Hydraulic calculations must account for and verify adequate pressure for the use of flexible drop hose fittings.
 3. If it becomes necessary during construction to provide flexible drop hose fittings (for any reason) and **AFTER** the hydraulic calculations have been performed, submitted, reviewed and approved, the hydraulic calculations will be required to be redone to account for the use of flexible hose fittings and confirm all pressure losses and flows are still adequate for an operational sprinkler system and meet the requirements of NPFA 13 at no additional cost. The updated calculations shall be sealed and signed by a licensed engineer.
- D. Do not remove the factory applied protective covers from sprinkler heads installed in areas that are under construction. The protective covers can be removed only after the ceiling and wall finishes are completed. Any sprinkler heads that have their protective covers removed and are subsequently contaminated by paint, mastic, or any other construction debris, shall be replaced in their entirety at no additional cost.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.

- B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 210553 "Identification for Fire Suppression Piping and Equipment."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 - 3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
 - 4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
 - 5. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
 - 6. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire department equipment.
- B. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.9 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.
- B. Only sprinklers with their original factory finish are acceptable. Remove and replace any sprinklers that are painted or have any other finish than their original factory finish.

3.10 DEMONSTRATION

- A. **Train** Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specialty valves.

3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Piping between Fire Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with threaded ends, cast-iron threaded fittings, and threaded joints.
- B. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.
- C. Standard-Pressure, Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller, to Be One of the Following:
 - 1. Standard-weight Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
- D. Standard-Pressure, Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100), to Be One of the Following:

1. Standard-weight Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
2. Standard-weight Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
3. Schedule 10 black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.

3.12 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:

1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers
2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Concealed sprinklers
3. Wall Mounting: Sidewall sprinklers.

B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.

1. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with factory-painted white cover plate.
2. Flush Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with painted white escutcheon.
3. Recessed Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with bright chrome escutcheon.
4. Residential Sprinklers: Dull chrome.
5. Upright, Pendent, and Sidewall Sprinklers: Chrome plated in finished spaces exposed to view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view; wax coated where exposed to acids, chemicals, or other corrosive fumes.

END OF SECTION 211313

SECTION 220100 - GENERAL PLUMBING REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Sections included under Division 22
 - 1. 220100 – General Plumbing Requirements
 - 2. 220517 – Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping
 - 3. 220518 – Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping
 - 4. 220519 – Meters and Gauges for Plumbing Piping
 - 5. 220523.12 – Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping
 - 6. 220523.14 – Check Valves for Plumbing Piping
 - 7. 220529 – Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
 - 8. 220553 – Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
 - 9. 220719 – Plumbing Piping Insulation
 - 10. 221114 – Natural Gas Piping
 - 11. 221116 – Domestic Water Piping
 - 12. 221119 – Domestic Water Piping Specialties
 - 13. 221123.21 – Inline, Domestic Water Pumps
 - 14. 221316 – Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping
 - 15. 221319 – Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties
 - 16. 221319.13 – Sanitary Drains
 - 17. 221323 – Sanitary Waste Interceptors
 - 18. 221414 – Storm Drainage Piping
 - 19. 221423 – Storm Drainage Piping Specialties
 - 20. 221429 – Sump Pumps
 - 21. 223400 – Fuel Fired, Domestic Water Heaters
 - 22. 224200 – Commercial Plumbing Fixtures

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Contractor – plumbing subcontractor, or contractor engaged to perform work specified under Division 22 Plumbing Work.
- B. Furnish – supply and deliver to specific location and or another division.
- C. Furnished by others – receive equipment or materials, delivered to the job site, or where called for and installed by this division.
- D. Provide – to furnish and install complete, fully coordinated, and ready for operation/use.

1.4 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. Provisions of this Section apply to all Division 22, Plumbing work.
- B. Include provisions of General Conditions as part of this section
- C. Provide all labor, tools, materials, equipment, accessories, parts, transportation, storage, fees, taxes, permits and any related items essential for the competition of all Plumbing work shown, specified or implied, complete, and ready for operation/use.
- D. Equipment furnished by Others:
 - 1. Provide rough-in to all equipment furnished by others that require plumbing connections.
 - 2. Provide piping, isolation valves, backflow preventers, water hammer arrestors, unions, traps, flexible connections, etc. required for a complete installation.
 - 3. Equipment furnished by others:
 - a. Ice Maker, Ice Machine
 - b. Refrigerators
 - c. Coffee Makers
 - d. Dishwasher
 - e. Kitchen Equipment
 - f. Laundry Equipment
 - 4. Make all final plumbing connections to all equipment furnished by others unless noted otherwise.

1.5 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate Plumbing work with all other trades; provide approved submittals to appropriate trades to coordinate the installation of systems required for the actual equipment to be installed and operate.
- B. Protect Plumbing equipment from damage during construction. When installation is complete clean equipment and touch up paint.
- C. Install all equipment to provide normal service access to all components, install in accordance with manufacturers instruction. If manufacturer's instructions conflict with contract documents, obtain engineer of records decision before proceeding.
- D. All work shall conform to the contract documents and all codes, standards and requirements listed below in section REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS.
- E. Cooperate with all other crafts and trades. Perform work in a timely manner. Do not interfere with the work of other trades.
- F. If systems interfere or conflict, the Architect shall decide which system to relocate regardless of which was installed first.
- G. The contractor shall be responsible for fire stopping penetrations at fire rated walls or floors. Fire stopping shall be performed immediately after the work is installed. Do not leave penetrations unprotected overnight.
- H. Refer to Architectural drawings for all dimensions.

- I. **Certain areas of the facility are “sound critical” and require special attention during installation.**
 - 1. **Refer to Architectural drawings for areas that are sound critical.**
 - 2. **Refer to Specification section 220719 PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION for insulation requirements in sound critical spaces.**
 - 3. **Refer to Specification section 221116 DOMESTIC WATER PIPING and 221316 SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING for piping requirements in sound critical spaces.**
- J. This facility does not have return air plenums, therefore the requirements of ASTM E84 do not apply

1.6 DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Plumbing drawings and specifications are intended to be worked together as a set by the contractor. Drawings are not standalone.
- B. Plumbing drawings are diagrammatic and are subject to requirements of the Architectural drawings and conditions existing in the field. Plumbing drawings indicate generally the location of components and are not intended to show all fittings or all details of the work. Plumbing drawings are intended to show size, capacity, approximate location, direction, and general relationship of the work, but not exact detail or arrangement.
- C. Coordinate dimensions with all project drawings, and field conditions. Do not scale Plumbing drawings for locations of system components. Coordinate location of air devices, piping, ductwork, lighting, ceiling grids, sprinkler piping, sprinkler heads, structure, general construction, supports, equipment and equipment pads with Architectural, Structural and Electrical drawings as well as conditions existing in the field and lay out work to fit in wall cavities, ceiling spaces and below slab.
- D. Make minor adjustments in the field as required to provide optimum results and to facilitate ease of service, efficient operation, and best appearance. Minor adjustments are those that do not alter the design intent, scope of the work or operation of the Plumbing systems.
- E. Make no changes that alter the intent or scope of the work without written instructions from the Architect. In case of doubt, submit a formal request for information (RFI) to the Architect and obtain architects response before proceeding with work. Where doubt arises as to the meaning of the Plumbing Drawings and specifications, obtain the Architects written interpretation before proceeding. Failure to follow this instruction shall make the contractor liable for damage to other work, and responsible for removing and repairing defective or mis-located work in a proper manner.
- F. All Plumbing piping shall be fully coordinated with other trades systems including but not limited to duct work, cable trays, piping systems, equipment located above ceilings along with any operational clearances. There shall be no change orders permitted for any conflicts discovered while creating shop drawings or during construction while installing systems due to the contractor’s lack of coordination between different trades

1.7 REFERENCES

Edit the list below to identify appropriate standards

- A. ADA: Americans with Disabilities Act
- B. AGCA: American General Contractors of America, Inc
- C. AGA: American Gas Association
- D. AIA: American Institute of Architects
- E. ANSI: American National Standards Institute, Inc.
- F. ASME: American Society of Mechanical Engineers
- G. ASPE: American Society of Plumbing Engineers
- H. ASSE: American Society of Sanitary Engineering
- I. ASTM: American Society for Testing Materials
- J. AWS: American Welding Society Code
- K. AWWA: American Water Works Association
- L. CISPI: Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute
- M. FM: Factory Mutual
- N. ICC: International Code Council
- O. NAIMA: North American Insulation Manufacturers Association
- P. NEC: National Electric Code
- Q. NEMA: National Electrical Manufacturers Association.
- R. NFPA: National Fire Protection Association
- S. NSF: National Sanitation Foundation
- T. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fitting Industry
- U. PDI: Plumbing Drainage Institute
- V. UL: Underwriters Laboratories, Inc
- W. OSHA: Occupational Safety and Health Administration

1.8 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with the current editions, unless otherwise noted, of the following codes and standards.
 - 1. ICC 2018 Edition with Georgia Amendments
 - a. International Building Code, IBC

- b. International Energy Conservation Code, IECC
 - c. International Fire Protection Code, IFC
 - d. International Fuel Gas Code, IFGC
 - e. International Mechanical Code, IMC
 - f. International Plumbing Code, IPC
 2. ADA – Americans with Disabilities Act
 3. ASME B31.9 – Building Services Piping
 4. ASME – Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code
 5. Alabama Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code
 6. AWWA Manual M14 – Backflow Prevention and Cross Connection Control
 7. NFPA 13 – Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler systems
 8. NFPA 54 – National Fuel Gas Code
 9. NFPA 70 – National Electric Code
 10. NFPA 96 – Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations
 11. NFPA 101 – Life Safety Code
 12. NFPA 291 – Recommended Practice for Fire Flow Testing and Marking of Hydrants
 13. Local Health Department
- B. Permits, Licenses, Inspections and Fees
1. Contractor shall give required notices, file drawings, obtain and pay for permits, deposits and fees necessary for the installation of the Division 22 Plumbing Work
 2. Contractor shall obtain and pay for inspections required by laws, ordinances, rules, regulations, or public authority having jurisdiction.
 3. Contractor shall obtain and pay for certificates of such inspections and file such certificates with the owner.

1.9 QUALIFICATION OF THE CONTRACTOR AND SUB-CONTRACTORS

- A. The Plumbing contractor shall have been in business as a licensed Plumber for a minimum of 3 years prior to the date of opening bids and shall have been pre-qualified as a bidder by the owner.
- B. The Plumbing contractor shall have a satisfactory experience record with plumbing installations of character and scope comparable with this project, within the last 3 years prior to the date of opening bids.
- C. The contractor shall have an established service department capable of providing service inspection or full maintenance contracts.
- D. If the Plumbing contractor, with the Architect or Engineers approval, uses a sub-contractor to provide another discipline that the plumbing contractor does not normally furnish, that sub-contractor shall meet the same qualifications.
- E. The Plumbing contractor shall have a current Master Plumbing Certificate and Master Gas Certificate issued by the State, County and City in which the work occurs.

1.10 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide new, standard, first-grade materials throughout.

- B. Multiple items of similar equipment shall be the product of the same manufacturer.
- C. Substitutions:
1. Comply with the provisions of Division 01, for product requirements, substitutions and alternates, and the following.
 2. When several manufacturers are named in the specifications, the corresponding products and models made by the specified manufacturers will be accepted and Contractor may base their bid on any one of those products. However, if the Contractor's bid is based on products other than the scheduled or specified **basis of design**, it shall be understood that there will be no extra cost involved whatsoever, and the effect on other trades has been included in the Contractor's proposal. Coordination with other trades for substituted equipment or use of products other than the named basis of design shall be the responsibility of the Contractor furnishing the equipment.
 3. The basis of design manufacturer's equipment has been used to determine space requirements. Should another approved manufacturer's equipment be used in preparing proposals, Contractor shall be responsible for determining that said equipment will fit space allocated. Submission of shop drawings or product data on such equipment shall be considered as indicating that the Contractor has reviewed the space requirements and the submitted equipment will fit the space allocated with due consideration given to access required for maintenance and code purposes.
 4. The basis of design manufacturer's equipment and scheduled Plumbing equipment electrical requirements have been used to coordinate the electrical requirements of the plumbing equipment with the electrical systems serving that equipment.
 - a. Contractor shall coordinate the electrical requirements of the equipment actually furnished on this project and provide the electrical systems required by that equipment at no additional cost to the Owner.
 - b. Equipment of higher or lower electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified at no additional cost to the Owner.
 - c. Prior to approval of submittals of plumbing equipment with electrical requirements that are greater or lower than those shown on the Drawings, Contractor shall submit letter verifying that required changes to the electrical system, serving the specific piece of equipment in question, have been coordinated with the electrical contractor. Letter to be included with the associated equipment submittal, addressed to the Architect with a copy to the electrical engineer.
 - d. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with specified requirements.
 5. Each bidder may submit to the Architect a list of any substitutes which is proposed to use in lieu of the equipment or material named in the specifications with a request for the approval of proposed substitutes. To be considered, such requests must be delivered to the office of the Architect not later than 10 days prior to bid due date. The submittal shall include the following:
 - a. Specific equipment or material proposed for substitution giving manufacturer, catalog, and model number.
 - b. All performance and dimensional data necessary for comparison of the proposed substitute with the equipment or material specified.
 - c. A statement setting forth any changes in other materials, equipment, or other Work that incorporation of the substitute may require.
 6. The Burden of proof of the merit of the proposed substitute is upon the proposer. The Architect's decision of approval or disapproval of a proposed substitution is final.
 7. All bidders will be advised by addenda of proposed substitutes which are found to be acceptable. Do not rely upon approvals made in any other manner.

1.11 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Division 1 and Division 22 sections for submittals and submittal procedures.
- B. Electronic Submittals: Prepare submittals as a PDF package, incorporating complete information into each PDF file, separated by section. Name each PDF file with section number for the product data contained within.
 - 1. Submittals that are missing information or are otherwise incomplete shall be returned “**REVISE and RESUBMIT**”
 - 2. Recommended naming convention for a PDF:
 - a. 22####-Section Title.pdf
 - b. Example for this section: **220100-Gen PLBG Requirements.pdf**
 - 1) Note: abbreviating long words is acceptable
 - 2) Refer to paragraph 1.2 “RELATED SECTIONS” for an index of section numbers and titles.
 - c. Other information that is relevant to the General Contractor and their sub-contractors is acceptable in the file name, so long as the section number and title appear.
- C. Submittals shall include product information for all equipment and components specified or shown on the plans, and contractor shop drawings that provide details, dimensions and coordination of the work with all other disciplines.
- D. For each type of product, equipment, material, and services specified in Division 22 specification sections provide product data that is clearly marked indicating compliance with the Plumbing drawing and specifications. Submittals shall be provided with specified shop drawings. Provide to the architect or prime consultant, a complete submittal fully marked to identify exactly what shall be provided including the following minimal information:
 - 1. All submittals shall be provided in electronic pdf format and shall be organized in accordance with the Plumbing specification numbering system.
 - 2. All submittals shall be completely marked with manufacturer’s names, model number, dimensions, weights, performance ratings, efficiencies, features, and accessories to be provided.
 - 3. Capacities, dimensions, weights, etc. shall be in the terms specified inch-pound system.
 - 4. Call attention to and clearly identify deviations from specified equipment and components regarding operation and physical dimensions, capacities, and performance.
 - 5. Performance curves for equipment such as pumps shall be included and shall be clearly marked with operating points, and efficiency.
- E. The contractor shall obtain reviewed submittals from the Engineer that have been returned and marked as follows:
 - 1. **APPROVED** – Contractor approved to order equipment and proceed with the work.
 - 2. **APPROVED AS NOTED** – Contractor approved to order equipment and proceed with the work after making corrections noted by the engineer and coordinating corrections with all disciplines. Corrected submittal shall be re-submitted for record purposes to the General Contractor, and A/E team.
 - 3. **REVISE AND RESUBMIT** – Contractor to correct submittal and resubmit to the A/E team for approval. Re-submittal shall be clearly marked as such.
- F. Final equipment or material orders shall not be placed until submittals have been returned marked either “**APPROVED**” OR “**APPROVED AS NOTED**” without exception.

- G. The installation of plumbing systems shall not begin until submittals have been returned marked either **“APPROVED”** or **“APPROVED AS NOTED”**. The installation of any portion of the plumbing system, in the absence of approved submittals, shall make the contractor responsible to make any necessary changes to the plumbing work already completed at the contractor’s expense. No change orders will be allowed for correcting work already completed.
- H. Refer to paragraph 1.9 Product Requirements, bullet C for substitutions and equipment/products that are different from basis of design that affect other disciplines.
- I. Shop Drawings shall be provided for all areas of the building and include the following:
 - 1. Before starting any work submit and obtain approved shop drawings from the Engineer of Record.
 - 2. No work shall begin, and no equipment shall be ordered until shop drawings have been marked by the engineer of record as **“APPROVED”** or **“APPROVED AS NOTED”**. Failure to submit shop drawings will make the Contractor responsible for changes required to facilitate installation of Plumbing work and other affected disciplines.
 - 3. Shop drawings shall fully detail all plumbing work to be performed. Shop drawings shall be submitted in electronic pdf format and shall comply with the following:
 - 4. All shop drawings shall be drawn to 1/4” = 1’-0” scale. 1/8” – 1’-0” scale may be used when approved by the engineer of record.
 - 5. Plumbing shop drawing shall include the following at a minimum:
 - a. Bottom of pipe elevations.
 - b. Dimensions from columns lines.
 - c. Pipe sizes and schedules (including insulation)
 - d. Insulation thickness.
 - e. Fluid type.
 - f. Pipe support locations.
 - g. Pipe support details.
 - h. Location of automatic valves and system isolation valves.
 - i. Equipment connection details
 - j. For multi-story buildings, submit detailed floor penetration sleeve layout drawings.

1.12 ONLINE CONSTRUCTION MANAGEMENT SOFTWARE

- A. The Engineers’ use of online construction management software (e.g. ProCore, Trimble, Plangrid) for Submittals, RFI’s etc, is done so for the convenience of the General Contractor and shall not unduly burden the Engineering team.
- B. It is the responsibility of the General Contractor to ensure that notifications, due dates and the dissemination of information (submittals, RFI’s etc) is done appropriately, correctly and in-line with standard industry practices and the requirements of this section.
- C. Any issues or delays arising from the use of the online construction management software shall be corrected by the General Contractor. Any delays caused by software issues, outages or unavailability of the online construction management software shall extend any associated review time of Submittals and RFI’s accordingly.
- D. Delays that are caused by the General Contractor’s misuse of the software shall not inconvenience the Architectural or Engineering team.

- E. General guidelines and expectations:
1. A minimum of 10 business (*not calendar*) days, from the Engineers receipt of the submittal, are allowed for the engineers review.
 - a. Multiple submittals uploaded simultaneously may incur additional review time.
 - b. When multiple submittals are uploaded simultaneously, it is the responsibility of the General Contractor to notify the Architectural and Engineering team of any items that may require prioritization. Otherwise, submittals will be reviewed on a “first in - first out” basis.
 2. A minimum of 5 business (*not calendar*) days, from the Engineers receipt of the RFI, are allowed for review and response.
 3. Expedited Submittal and RFI review and response.
 - a. Expedited submittal and RFI review, when available, can be requested by the contractor. If requested, it can be provided based on the workload and schedule of the engineering team.
 - b. Expedited submittal review time shall be no less than 5 business (*not calendar*) days from the Engineers receipt of the submittal.
 - c. Expedited RFI review and response time shall be no less than 2 business (*not calendar*) days from the Engineers receipt of the RFI.
 4. National holidays that occur during a review period do not subtract from the response time for Submittal, RFI etc.
 5. Submittals that are in PDF format shall be named and assembled per paragraph 1.11 in this section.
 6. Notifications from the online construction management software shall identify the Section Number and name as well as match the actual file name of the PDF of the submittal being submitted for review.
 7. No more than one submittal per specification section shall be submitted. Multiple submittals per specification section shall be marked ‘**REVISE and RESUBMIT**’.
 8. Notifications regarding submittals being ready for review shall come from the General Contractor, not their sub-contractors. It is the responsibility of the General Contractor to review and confirm that their sub-contractors’ submittals have been named correctly and are organized in accordance with this specification section. The engineer shall only be notified when a submittal or RFI is placed in their court for review or response.
 9. If there are any problems with access, links or files generated by the online construction management software to retrieve submittals, RFIs or other information, it becomes the responsibility of the General Contractor to email the information to the Architectural and Engineering Team when requested.
- F. Any costs for the Engineers’ access and use of the online construction management software shall be paid for by the General Contractor.

1.13 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

- A. Visiting Site: Visit site before and during construction to become familiar with installed work that may affect Plumbing work. No additional allowance will be granted because of lack of knowledge of such conditions.
- B. Cause as little interference or interruption of existing services as possible. Schedule work which will cause interference or interruption in advance with Owner, authorities having jurisdiction, and all affected trades.

- C. Determine size, location, and elevation of existing and new utilities at the project site.
- D. Renovations to Existing Facilities – Conflicts with active systems: Where existing, active piping or equipment conflicts with new Architectural features, the contractor shall make provisions to modify, re-route or relocate the existing piping or equipment to accommodate the Architectural design and then return the existing piping or equipment to operable status. Returning the existing piping or equipment to operable status includes using like materials and sizes, pressure testing, leak testing, insulating, connecting power etc.
- E. Renovations to Existing Facilities – Conflicts with abandoned systems: Where existing abandoned piping or equipment conflicts with new Architectural features, the contractor shall make provisions to remove the abandoned piping or equipment to accommodate the Architectural design.
- F. **[Critical Areas – Certain areas of the facility have been deemed ‘Critical Areas’ by the Owner and their continual operation is ‘necessary’ for normal business operation. Any work that, can, will or otherwise has the potential to interrupt the normal operation of these areas must first be coordinated with the Architect and Owner prior to work beginning. No work is to commence prior to Architect and Owner authorization. Specific Areas that are noted as being critical are as follows:]**
 - a. **[Identify Area]**

1.14 PROJECT CLOSE-OUT

- A. Submit project close out documents after the final inspection and all punch list items are complete.
- B. Record (AS-BUILT) Drawings shall include the following:
 - 1. Record drawings shall be an accurate record of corrections, variations, and deviations, including those required by change orders to the contract documents.
 - 2. Record changes daily on a set of plans kept at the job site.
 - 3. Submit record drawing marked as noted above to Architect for review prior to request for final payment.
 - 4. Marked record drawings will be returned to Contractor for use in preparing final record drawings.
 - 5. Final Record Drawings: Provide one complete set of prints, and one electronic copy in AutoCAD or Revit format indicating the actual completed installation of the work.
- C. Prior to the issuance of a certificate for final payment, submit to Architect and obtain his approval of the following:
 - 1. Record drawings – As noted above.
 - 2. Water balance report (Electronic pdf).
 - 3. Equipment Submittal Data (Electronic pdf).
 - 4. Equipment operating and maintenance manuals (Electronic pdf and 2 hard copies).
 - 5. Equipment warranty dates and guarantees (Electronic pdf and 2 hard copies).
 - 6. Pressure vessel certificates (Electronic pdf).
 - 7. List of Owner's Personnel who have received operating and maintenance instructions.
 - 8. Certificate that all domestic water systems have been disinfected in accordance with the Specifications.
 - 9. Letter certifying and signed by Owner or his representative that the Owner or his representative has received the extra materials specified for each system

- D. Submit factory start-up/field reports for all equipment and systems specified. (See Specifications)
 - 1. Domestic Water Heaters
 - 2. Recirculation Pumps
 - 3. Backflow preventers

1.15 TEMPORARY USE OF PLUMBING EQUIPMENT

- A. Use of new installed plumbing equipment to provide plumbing services during construction will be permitted subject to compliance with the requirements of Division 01, Section “Temporary Facilities and Controls”, Article “Temporary Utility Installation”, and the following:
 - 1. Domestic water heaters, domestic booster pumps, and other equipment specified to have factory supervised start-up shall have had such start-up.
 - 2. Units shall be properly lubricated, balanced, and aligned. Vibrations must be eliminated.
 - 3. Plumbing equipment must be operated as a complete system and be fully maintained by operating personnel.
- B. Prior to final inspection, the equipment or parts used which show wear and tear beyond normal, shall be replaced with identical replacements, at no additional cost to the Owner. Operation of the equipment on a temporary basis during construction does not constitute substantial completion or beneficial use by the owner.
- C. This paragraph shall not reduce the requirements of the mechanical specification sections.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS – NOT USED

PART 3 - EXECUTION – NOT USED

END OF SECTION 220100

SECTION 220517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves without waterstop.
2. Sleeves with waterstop.
3. Stack-sleeve fittings.
4. Grout.
5. Silicone sealants.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For sealants, indicating VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports: For sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES WITHOUT WATERSTOP

- A. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves:** Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends.
- B. Steel Pipe Sleeves:** ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, hot-dip galvanized, with plain ends.
- C. Steel Sheet Sleeves:** ASTM A653/A653M, 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; hot-dip galvanized, round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

2.2 SLEEVES WITH WATERSTOP

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Advance Products & Systems, LLC.
 2. CALPICO, Inc.
 3. GPT; a division of EnPRO Industries.
 4. Metraflex Company (The).
- B. Description: Manufactured stainless steel sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall.

2.3 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Jay R. Smith Mfg Co; a division of Morris Group International.
 2. Wade; a subsidiary of McWane Inc.
 3. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- B. Description: Manufactured, Dura-coated or Duco-coated cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange for use in waterproof floors and roofs. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.4 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000 psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.

- b. Permathane; a Holcim brand.
 - c. Polymeric Systems, Inc.
 - d. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
 - e. Sika Corporation.
 - f. The Dow Chemical Company.
 - g. Tremco Incorporated.
 2. Standard: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
 3. Verify sealant has a VOC content of **250** g/L or less.
 4. Verify sealant complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Silicone, S, P, T, NT: Single-component, 100/50, pourable, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Pecora Corporation.
 - b. Sika Corporation.
 - c. The Dow Chemical Company.
 - d. Tremco Incorporated.
 2. Standard: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.
 3. Verify sealant has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
 4. Verify sealant complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. Silicone Foam: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Smooth-On.
 2. Verify sealant has a VOC content of **250** g/L or less.
 3. Verify sealant complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES - GENERAL

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide **1-inch** annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.

1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas **2 inches** above finished floor level.
 3. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES WITH WATERSTOP

- A. Install sleeve with waterstop as new walls and slabs are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal the space around outside of sleeves.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
 1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
 3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.

4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
5. Using waterproof silicone sealant, seal space between top hub of stack-sleeve fitting and pipe.

- B. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 2. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 SLEEVE SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
1. Exterior Concrete Walls above and below Grade:
 - a. Sleeves with waterstops.
 2. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - a. Sleeves with waterstops.
 3. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
 - a. Sleeves with waterstops or stack-sleeve fittings.
 4. Interior Partitions:
 - a. Sleeves without waterstops.

END OF SECTION 220517

SECTION 220518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Escutcheons.
 - 2. Floor plates.
 - 3. Roof Pipe Boot

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing Piping to Remain: Existing piping that is not to be removed and that is not otherwise indicated to be removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. BrassCraft Manufacturing Co.; a Masco company.
 - 2. Dearborn Brass.
 - 3. Jones Stephens Corp.
 - 4. Keeney Manufacturing Company (The).
 - 5. Mid-America Fittings, LLC; A Midland Industries Company.

2.2 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.

- B. One-Piece, Stainless-Steel Type: With polished stainless-steel finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- D. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped steel with polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish; exposed-rivet hinge; and spring-clip fasteners.

2.3 FLOOR PLATES

- A. Split Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

2.4 ROOF PIPE BOOT

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. IPS Roofing Products
 - 2. Oatey.
- B. Gabled Roofing Systems for roof pitch up to 45 degrees: Flashing plate made of 25 mil aluminum, base with multi-sized or fitted elastomer collar. Coordinate base color with architect.
- C. Flat Roofing Systems: Aluminum base ring with weatherproof EPDM rubber and multi-sized elastomer collar.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.

- f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - 2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping to Remain:
 - a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish
 - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

Subparagraphs below apply to both bare and insulated piping.

- 1. New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping: One-piece, floor plate.
 - 2. Existing Piping: Split floor plate.
 - E. Provide roof boot for all piping penetrations through the finished roofing system.
 - 1. Do not use petroleum based mastics, sealing compounds or paints on roof boot.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

END OF SECTION 220518

SECTION 220519 - METERS AND GAUGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Thermometers, liquid in glass, lead free.
2. Thermowells, lead free.
3. Pressure gauges, dial type, lead free.
4. Gauge attachments, lead free.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for water meters.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Thermometers, liquid in glass, lead free.
2. Pressure gauges, dial type, lead free.
3. Gauge attachments, lead free.

B. Product Data Submittals: For each type of product.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gauges to include in operation and maintenance manuals.**

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. All items in this Section in contact with water for human consumption, are to comply with the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act, with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, and with NSF 61 and NSF 372, or be certified in compliance with NSF 61 and NSF 372 by an ANSI-accredited third-party certification body, in that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.**

2.2 THERMOMETERS, LIQUID IN GLASS, LEAD FREE

A. Thermometers, Liquid in Glass, Lead Free - Metal Case, Compact Style:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Miljoco Corporation.
 - b. Terice, H. O. Co.
2. Source Limitations: Provide liquid-in-glass, lead-free, metal-case, compact-style thermometers by single manufacturer.
3. Standard: ASME B40.200.
4. Case: Cast aluminum 6-inch nominal size.
5. Case Form: Back angle unless otherwise indicated.
6. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid, mercury-free.
7. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanent scale markings graduated in deg F.
8. Window: Glass or plastic.
9. Stem: Aluminum or lead-free brass and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
10. Connector: 3/4 inch, with ASME B1.1 or ASME B1.20.1 screw threads to fit thermowell.
11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of span or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of span.

2.3 THERMOWELLS, LEAD FREE

A. Thermowells, Lead Free:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: Lead-free copper
4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: Type 316 stainless steel.
5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, or as required to match threaded opening in pipe.
7. Internal Threads: Size and thread type as required to match thermometer mounting threads.
8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
9. Insertion Length: Length to extend to center of pipe.
10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing. Extension is to be of sufficient length to extend beyond the finished insulation surface.
11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.
12. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

2.4 PRESSURE GAUGES, DIAL TYPE, LEAD FREE

A. Pressure Gauges, Dial Type, Lead Free - Direct Mounted, Metal Case:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ametek U.S. Gauge.
 - b. Ashcroft Inc.
 - c. Blue Ribbon Corp.
 - d. Ernst Flow Industries.
 - e. Flo Fab Inc.
 - f. Marsh Bellofram.
 - g. Miljoco Corporation.
 - h. Noshok.
 - i. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
 - j. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
 - k. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
 - l. Terice, H. O. Co.
 - m. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - n. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - o. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.
 - p. WIKA Instrument Corporation.
 - q. Winters Instruments - U.S.
2. Source Limitations: Provide dial-type, lead-free, direct-mounted, metal-case pressure gauges from single manufacturer.
3. Standard: ASME B40.100.
4. Case: Sealed type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel ; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
5. Pressure-Element Assembly: Lead-free bourdon tube.
6. Pressure Connection: Lead-free brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
7. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
8. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanent scale markings graduated in psi.
9. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
10. Window: safety glass.
11. Ring: Brass.
12. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of span.

2.5 GAUGE ATTACHMENTS, LEAD FREE

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, lead-free brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Valves: Lead-free brass or stainless steel needle, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermometer with thermowell at each required thermometer location.
- B. Install thermowells in vertical position in piping tees.

- C. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- D. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- E. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- F. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- G. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks.
- H. Install direct-mounted pressure gauges in piping tees with pressure gauge located on pipe at the most readable position.
- I. Install remote-mounted pressure gauges on panel.
- J. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gauge for fluids.
- K. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- L. Install thermometers in the following locations:
 - 1. Inlet and outlet of each water heater.
 - 2. Each main hot-water-recirculating line return pipe.
- M. Install pressure gauges in the following locations:
 - 1. Building water service entrance into building.
 - 2. Inlet and outlet of each pressure-reducing valve.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gauges adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gauges, machines, and equipment.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Adjust faces of meters and gauges to proper angle for best visibility.

3.4 THERMOMETER, LEAD FREE, SCHEDULE

Retain this article if more than one type of thermometer is required; delete if all thermometers are the same type.

3.5 THERMOMETER, LEAD FREE, SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping:

1. 0 to 100 deg F

B. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping:

1. 0 to 250 deg F.

3.6 PRESSURE-GAUGE SCHEDULE

A. Pressure gauges at discharge of each water service into building are to be the following:

1. Sealed, direct mounted, metal case.

B. Pressure gauges at inlet and outlet of each water pressure-reducing valve are to be the following:

1. Sealed, direct mounted, metal case.

3.7 PRESSURE-GAUGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Water Service Piping:

1. 0 to 160 psi.

B. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping:

1. 0 to 100 psi.

END OF SECTION 220519

SECTION 220523.12 - BALL VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Brass ball valves.
2. Bronze ball valves.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP:** Cold working pressure.
- B. RPTFE:** Reinforced polytetrafluoroethylene.
- C. WOG:** Water, oil, gas.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Brass ball valves.
2. Bronze ball valves.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, and soldered ends.
3. Set ball valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:

1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Standards:

- 1. Domestic water valves intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption must comply with the SDWA, requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, and NSF 61 and NSF 372, or must be certified to be in compliance with NSF 61 and NSF 372 (by an ANSI-accredited third-party certification body) that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.

- B. ASME Compliance:

- 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
 - 2. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 - 3. ASME B16.18 for cast copper solder-joint connections.
 - 4. ASME B16.22 for wrought copper and copper alloy solder-joint connections.
 - 5. ASME B16.34 for flanged and threaded end connections
 - 6. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

- C. Provide bronze valves made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.

- D. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

- E. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

- F. Valve Actuator Type:

- 1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 4 and larger.
 - 2. Hand Lever: For quarter-turn valves smaller than NPS 4.

- G. Valves in Insulated Piping:

- 1. Provide 2-inch extended neck stems.
 - 2. Extended operating handles with nonthermal-conductive covering material and protective sleeves that allow operation of valves without breaking vapor seals or disturbing insulation.
 - 3. Memory stops that are fully adjustable after insulation is applied.

2.3 BRASS BALL VALVES

A. Brass Ball Valves, Two Piece with Full Port and Stainless Steel Trim, Threaded or Soldered Ends:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
 - b. American Valve, Inc.
 - c. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
 - d. Hammond Valve.
 - e. Jenkins Valves; a Crane Co. brand.
 - f. Jomar Valve.
 - g. KITZ Corporation.
 - h. Lance Valves.
 - i. Marwin Valve; Richards Industries.
 - j. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - k. Red-White Valve Corp.
 - l. Stockham; a Crane Co. brand.
 - m. Viega LLC.
 - n. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
2. Standard: MSS SP-110; MSS SP-145.
3. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
4. Body Design: Two piece.
5. Body Material: Forged brass.
6. Ends: Threaded or soldered.
7. Seats: PTFE.
8. Stem: Stainless steel.
9. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
10. Port: Full.

B. Brass Ball Valves, Two Piece with Full Port and Stainless Steel Trim, Press Ends:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Valve, Inc.
 - b. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
 - c. Center Line; a Crane Co. brand.
 - d. Hammond Valve.
 - e. Jomar Valve.
 - f. Lance Valves.
 - g. Legend Valve & Fitting, Inc.
 - h. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - i. NIBCO INC.
 - j. Red-White Valve Corp.
 - k. Stockham; a Crane Co. brand.
 - l. Viega LLC.
 - m. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
2. Standard: MSS SP-110; MSS SP-145; IAPMO/ANSI Z1157.
3. CWP Rating: Minimum 200 psig.

4. Body Design: Two piece.
5. Body Material: Forged brass.
6. Ends: Press.
7. Press-End Connections Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
8. Seats: PTFE or RPTFE.
9. Stem: Stainless steel.
10. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
11. Port: Full.
12. O-Ring Seal: Buna-N or EPDM.

2.4 BRONZE BALL VALVES

- A. Bronze Ball Valves, Two Piece with Full Port and Stainless Steel Trim, Threaded or Soldered Ends:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
 - b. Center Line; a Crane Co. brand.
 - c. DynaQuip Controls.
 - d. Hammond Valve.
 - e. Jenkins Valves; a Crane Co. brand.
 - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - g. NIBCO INC.
 - h. Red-White Valve Corp.
 - i. Stockham; a Crane Co. brand.
 - j. Viega LLC.
 - k. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
2. Standard: MSS SP-110; MSS SP-145.
3. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
4. Body Design: Two piece.
5. Body Material: Bronze.
6. Ends: Threaded or soldered.
7. Seats: PTFE.
8. Stem: Stainless steel.
9. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
10. Port: Full.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.

- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves. Remove defective valves from site.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF VALVES

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow space for service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Provide support to piping adjacent to valves such that no force is imposed upon valves.
- C. Locate valves for easy access.
- D. For valves in horizontal piping, install valves with stem at or above center of pipe.
- E. Install valves in position to allow full valve actuation movement.
- F. Valves are required at the following locations:
 - 1. The main water service, where the domestic water supply enters the building.
 - 2. Each piece of equipment requires regular maintenance.
 - a. E.G. Water Heater, Pumps, Water meters, Pressure regulators etc.
 - 3. At each floor level of a multi-story building, where the floors main supply piping begins and/or returns to.
 - 4. All branch lines serving individual fixtures or groups of fixtures.
 - a. Stop valves located at or below an individual fixture are not an equal to the valves specified in this section.
 - 5. Building service fixtures (mop basins, service sinks, clinical sinks) shall be provided with their own dedicated branch piping and valves.
- G. Where valves are installed in a location that will become inaccessible (e.g. above hard drywall ceilings, in chases, in masonry walls) a lockable access panel shall be provided. The finish and color of the access panel shall be coordinated with the Architect prior to installation.
- H. Adhere to manufacturer's written installation instructions. When soldering or brazing valves, do not heat valves above maximum permitted temperature. Do not use solder with melting point temperature above valve manufacturer's recommended maximum.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service, but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves exhibiting leakage.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, provide the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings.
- B. Select valves with the following end connections:
 - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 3 (DN 76) and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option or press-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 - 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.

3.5 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 3 (DN 76) and Smaller:
 - 1. Brass ball valve, one piece. Provide with threaded solder or press-connection-joint ends.
 - 2. Bronze ball valve, one piece with stainless steel trim. Provide with threaded, solder or press-connection-joint ends.
 - 3. Brass ball valves, two piece with full port, and stainless steel trim. Provide with threaded, solder or press-connection-joint ends.
 - 4. Bronze ball valves, two piece with full port, and stainless steel trim. Provide with threaded, solder or press-connection-joint ends.
- B. Note about Press connections: It is the intent that Press Connections are for connections and installations into EXISTING piping and systems only. All new water distribution piping is to be soldered or threaded.

END OF SECTION 220523.12

SECTION 220523.14 - CHECK VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Bronze, swing check valves.
2. Bronze, swing check valves, press ends.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP:** Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM:** Ethylene propylene-diene terpolymer.
- C. NBR:** Nitrile butadiene rubber (also known as Buna-N).

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Bronze, swing check valves.
2. Bronze, swing check valves, press ends.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, press connections, and weld ends.
3. Set check valves in either closed or open position.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:

1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use stems or other components as lifting or rigging points unless specifically indicated for this purpose in manufacturer's instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Standards:

- 1. Domestic water piping check valves intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act (SDWA), requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, and NSF 61/NSF 372, or to be certified in compliance with NSF 61/NSF 372 by an American National Standards Institute (ANSI)-accredited third-party certification body that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.

- B. ASME Compliance:

- 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
 - 2. ASME B16.18 for cast-copper solder joint.
 - 3. ASME B16.22 for wrought copper solder joint.
 - 4. ASME B16.51 for press joint.
 - 5. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

- C. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for groove-end connections.

- D. Provide bronze valves made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are unacceptable.

- E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

- F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

- G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.3 BRONZE, SWING CHECK VALVES

- A. Bronze, Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc, Class 125:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Alberts Integrated Piping Systems.
 - b. Crane Fluid Systems; Crane Co.
 - c. Jenkins Valves; a Crane Co. brand.
 - d. Jomar Valve.
 - e. Keckley Company.
 - f. Lance Valves.
 - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.

- h. NIBCO INC.
- i. Red-White Valve Corp.
- j. Shurjoint; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
- k. Stockham; a Crane Co. brand.
- l. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
- m. Victaulic Company.
2. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
3. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
4. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
5. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze.
6. Ends: Threaded or soldered. See valve schedule articles.
7. Disc: Bronze.

B. Bronze, Swing Check Valves, Press Ends:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Alberts Integrated Piping Systems.
 - b. Crane Fluid Systems; Crane Co.
 - c. Elkhart Products Corporation; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
 - d. Hammond Valve.
 - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - f. NIBCO INC.
2. Standard: MSS SP-80 and MSS SP-139.
3. CWP Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
4. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
5. Body Material: ASTM B584, bronze.
6. Ends: Press.
7. Press Ends Connection Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
8. Disc: Brass or bronze.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Examine press fittings to verify they have been properly pressed.

- F. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace them with new valves.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF VALVES

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Provide support of piping adjacent to valves such that no force is imposed upon valves.
- C. Locate valves for easy access and where not blocked by equipment, other piping, or building components.
- D. Install valves so that stems are horizontal or slope upward from centerline of pipe.
- E. Install valves in position that does not project into aisles or block access to other equipment.
- F. Install valves in position to allow full stem and manual operator movement.
- G. Verify that joints of each valve have been properly installed and sealed to assure there is no leakage or damage.
- H. Install check valves in piping where direction of flow is required to be maintained in a single direction.
- I. Check Valves: Install check valves for proper direction of flow.
 - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin up (on top) and level.
 - a. Swing check valves may only be installed vertically, when the direction of flow is up.
- J. Adhere to manufacturer's installation instructions. When soldering or brazing valves, do not heat valves above maximum permitted temperature. Do not use solder with melting point temperature above valve manufacturer's recommended maximum.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
 - 1. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
 - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze, swing check valves with **bronze** disc.
- B. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. End Connections:

1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded, soldered, or press-end connections.

3.5 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 3 (DN 76) and Smaller:

1. Bronze, swing check valves with bronze disc, Class 125, with soldered or threaded end connections.
2. Bronze, swing check valves with press-end connections.

B. Note about Press connections: It is the intent that Press Connections are for connections and installations into EXISTING piping and systems only. All new water distribution piping is to be soldered or threaded.

END OF SECTION 220523.14

SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Metal framing systems.
3. Thermal hanger-shield inserts.
4. Fastener systems.
5. Pipe-positioning systems.
6. Equipment supports.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For recycled content, indicating postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content and cost.
2. Product Certificates: For indigenous materials, indicating location of material manufacturer and point of extraction, harvest, or recovery for each raw material. Include distance to Project, means of transportation, and cost for each indigenous material.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Structural-Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to 2015 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized, hot-dip galvanized, or electro-galvanized.
3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coated or epoxy powder coated.
4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

B. Stainless Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel

C. Copper Pipe and Tube Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

2.2 THERMAL HANGER-SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Buckaroos, Inc.
 2. CADDY; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
 3. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
 4. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
 5. Pipe Shields Inc.
 6. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
 7. Rilco Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 8. Value Engineered Products, Inc.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- C. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: ASTM C552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig minimum compressive strength.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.3 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hilti, Inc.
 - b. ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
 - c. MKT Fastening, LLC.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
 - b. Empire Industries, Inc.
 - c. Hilti, Inc.
 - d. ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
 - e. MKT Fastening, LLC.
 - 2. Indoor Applications: stainless steel.
 - 3. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.
- C. All Steel Ceiling Plate: UL-Listed, pre-galvanized steel plate designed for attaching all thread rod to wooden construction, ceilings or walls. Attaches to wood with 1/4" flat head machine screws or wood screws. Mating port for all thread rod. Port can accommodate all thread rod sizes between 3/8 and 16. (Tolco figure 78.)
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eaton
 - b. Tolco
 - c. Nibco
 - 2. Indoor Applications: carbon steel

2.4 PIPE-POSITIONING SYSTEMS

- A. Description: IAPMO PS 42 positioning system composed of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

2.5 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural-carbon-steel shapes.

2.6 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: ASTM B221.
- B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A1011/A1011M.
- C. Structural Steel: ASTM A36/A36M carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M.
- E. Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation, for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components, so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- B. Thermal Hanger-Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- C. Fastener System Installation:
 - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
 - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 3. Install steel ceiling plate into wood construction with wood screws per manufacturers written instructions.
- D. Pipe Stand Installation:

1. Pipe Stand Types, except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
 2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- E. Pipe-Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.
- F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- G. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- H. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- I. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms, and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- J. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports, so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- K. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- L. Insulated Piping:
1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating Above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating Below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal hanger-shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
 2. MSS SP-58, Type 39: Install protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal hanger-shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 3. MSS SP-58, Type 40: Install protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal hanger-shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - b. NPS 4 (DN 100): 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150): 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14 (DN 200 to DN 350): 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.

- e. NPS 16 to NPS 24 (DN 400 to DN 600): 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
- 5. Pipes NPS 8 (DN 200) and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
- 6. Thermal Hanger Shields: Install with insulation of same thickness as piping insulation.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment, and make bearing surface smooth.
- B. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to **1-1/2 inches**.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup:
 - 1. Clean field welds and abraded, shop-painted areas. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as those used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - a. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
 - 2. Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded, shop-painted areas on miscellaneous metal are specified in "Exterior Painting." "Interior Painting." "High-Performance Coatings."
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-58 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finishes.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.

- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless steel pipe hangers and stainless steel or corrosion-resistant attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Use thermal hanger-shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
 - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
 - 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
 - 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
 - 6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
 - 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
 - 11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
 - 12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
 - 14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
 - 15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
 - 16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
 - 17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs.

18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs.
 19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs but vertical adjustment is unnecessary.
 20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction occurs and vertical adjustment is unnecessary.
 21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation, in addition to expansion and contraction, is required.
- K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment of up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
 3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11 split pipe rings.
 4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable-Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.

11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal Hanger-Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
 2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41 roll hanger with springs.
 4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
 5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load, and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
 6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load, and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
 7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load, and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
 8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
 - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
 - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
 - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- P. Comply with MSS SP-58 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

- Q. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- R. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- S. Use pipe-positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

3.7 HANGER SPACING SCHEDULE

PIPING MATERIAL	MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL SPACING (FEET)	MAXIMUM VERTICAL SPACING (FEET)
Copper or Copper-alloy pipe	12	10
Copper or Copper-alloy tubing NPS 1-1/4 and smaller	6	10
Copper or Copper-alloy tubing NPS 1-1/2 and larger	10	10
Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) pipe	4	10 ^a
Steel pipe	12	15

- a. For sizes NPS 2 and smaller, a guide shall be installed midway between required vertical supports. Such guides shall prevent pipe movement in a direction perpendicular to the axis of the pipe.

END OF SECTION 220529

SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Equipment labels.
2. Warning signs and labels.
3. Pipe labels.
4. Warning tags.
5. Ceiling Markers

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment-Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - c. Champion America.
 - d. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
 - e. emedco.
 - f. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
 - g. LEM Products Inc.
 - h. Marking Services Inc.
 - i. Pipemarket.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.
 - j. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
2. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, **1/16 inch** thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
3. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.

4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures of up to 160 deg F.
 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances of up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
 7. Fasteners: Stainless steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Brady Corporation.
 2. Carlton Industries, LP.
 3. Champion America.
 4. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
 5. emedco.
 6. LEM Products Inc.
 7. Marking Services Inc.
 8. National Marker Company.
 9. Pipemarker.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.
 10. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
 11. Stranco, Inc.
- B. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- C. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures of up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances of up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

- I. Arc-Flash Warning Signs: Provide arc-flash warning signs in locations and with content in accordance with requirements of OSHA and NFPA 70E, and other applicable codes and standards.
- J. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Actioncraft Products, Inc.; a division of Industrial Test Equipment Co., Inc.
 - 2. Brady Corporation.
 - 3. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - 4. Champion America.
 - 5. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
 - 6. emedco.
 - 7. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
 - 8. LEM Products Inc.
 - 9. Marking Services Inc.
 - 10. Pipemarket.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.
 - 11. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
- B. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color coded, with lettering indicating service and showing flow direction in accordance with ASME A13.1.
- C. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
- D. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- E. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- F. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings. Also include:
 - 1. Pipe size.
 - 2. Flow-Direction Arrows: Include flow-direction arrows on main distribution piping. Arrows may be either integral with label or applied separately.
 - 3. Lettering Size: Size letters in accordance with ASME A13.1 for piping

2.4 WARNING TAGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Brady Corporation.
 - 2. Champion America.

3. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
4. emedco.
5. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
6. LEM Products Inc.
7. Marking Services Inc.
8. Pipemarker.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.
9. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.

- B. Description: Preprinted **or** partially preprinted accident-prevention tags of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.

1. Size: **[3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum] [Approximately 4 by 7 inches] <Insert size>**.
2. Fasteners: **[Brass grommet and wire] [Reinforced grommet and wire or string]**.
3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption, such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
4. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.

2.5 CEILING MARKERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Brady Corporation.
2. Carlton Industries, LP.
3. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
4. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
5. LEM Products Inc.
6. Marking Services Inc.
7. Pipemarker.com; Brimar Industries, Inc.
8. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.

- B. General Requirements for Ceiling Markers: 3/4" diameter, adhesive backing, color coded in accordance with ASME A13.1.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants, as well as dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and other substances that could impair bond of identification devices.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.

- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- D. Locate identifying devices so that they are readily visible from the point of normal approach.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT LABELS, WARNING SIGNS, AND LABELS

- A. Permanently fasten labels on each item of plumbing equipment.
- B. Sign and Label Colors.
 - 1. White letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-green background.
- C. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.
- D. Arc-Flash Warning Signs: Provide arc-flash warning signs on electrical disconnects and other equipment where are-flash hazard exists, as indicated on Drawings, and in accordance with requirements of OSHA and NFPA 70E, and other applicable codes and standards.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF PIPE LABELS

- A. Install pipe labels showing service and flow direction with permanent adhesive on pipes.
- B. Pipe-Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 - 1. Within 3 ft. of each valve and control device.
 - 2. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 - 3. Within 3 ft. of equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 - 4. Spaced at maximum intervals of 25 ft. along each run. Reduce intervals to 10 ft. in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 - 5. Pipe labels shall be coordinated and aligned with other systems (Mechanical, Plumbing, etc) pipe labels.
- C. Do not apply plastic pipe labels or plastic tapes directly to bare pipes conveying fluids at temperatures of 125 deg F or higher. Where these pipes are to remain uninsulated, use a short section of insulation or use stenciled labels.
- D. Flow-Direction Flow Arrows: Use arrows, in compliance with ASME A13.1, to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
- E. Pipe-Label Color Schedule (ASME A13.1):

PIPING SYSTEM <i>(text on pipe label)</i>	BACKGROUND COLOR	LETTER COLOR
DOMESTIC COLD WATER	Green	White

DOMESTIC HOT WATER	Green	White
DOMESTIC HOT WATER RETURN	Green	White
NON-POTABLE WATER	Purple	White
NATURAL GAS (LOW PRESSURE)	Yellow	Black
NATURAL GAS (2 PSI)	Yellow	Black
SANITARY	White	Black
WASTE	White	Black
VENT	White	Black
STORM	White	Black

3.5 INSTALLATION OF WARNING TAGS

- A. Warning Tag Color: Black letters on an ANSI Z535.1 safety-yellow background.
- B. Attach warning tags, with proper message, to equipment and other items where indicated on Drawings.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF CEILING MARKERS

- A. Install ceiling markers on acoustical ceiling grid t-bar below valves that are located above the ceiling grid.
- B. Color of ceiling marker to match 'BACKGROUND COLOR' noted above in the pipe label schedule for the corresponding valve and its service.

END OF SECTION 220553

SECTION 220719 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
 - 1. Domestic cold-water piping.
 - 2. Domestic hot-water piping.
 - 3. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.
 - 4. Roof drains and rainwater leaders.
 - 5. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- 1. ASJ: All Service Jacket
- 2. ASJ-SSL: All Service Jacket with Self Sealing Lap
- 3. FRK: Foil Reinforced Kraft
- 4. FSK: Foil Scrim Kraft
- 5. PSK: Polypropylene Scrim Kraft

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data: For recycled content, indicating postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content and cost.
 - 2. Product Data: For adhesives, mastics, and sealants, indicating VOC content.
 - 3. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, mastics, and sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
 - 1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation system materials are to be delivered to the Project site in unopened containers. The packaging is to include name of the manufacturer, fabricator, type, description, and size, as well as ASTM standard designation and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials are applied.
- B. Products do not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

- C. Products that come into contact with stainless steel have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested in accordance with ASTM C871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel are qualified as acceptable in accordance with ASTM C795.
- E. Glass-Fiber, Preformed Pipe: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin; suitable for maximum use temperature up to 850 deg F in accordance with ASTM C411. Comply with ASTM C547.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
 - b. Knauf Insulation.
 - c. Manson Insulation Inc.
 - d. Owens Corning.
 - 2. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type I, Grade A with factory-applied ASJ-SSL.
 - 3. Fabricated shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
 - 4. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Glass-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller.
 - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Adhesive: As recommended by mineral fiber manufacturer and with a VOC content of **80** g/L or less.
 - 3. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. ASJ Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A, for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller.
 - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Verify adhesives have a VOC content of **80** g/L or less.
 - 3. Verify adhesives and sealants comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and

Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.3 SEALANTS

- A. Materials are as recommended by the insulation manufacturer and are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- B. Joint Sealants:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller.
 - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
 - d. Owens Corning.
 - 2. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: **Minus 58 to plus 176 deg F.**
 - 4. Color: White or gray.
 - 5. Verify sealant has a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
 - 6. Verify sealant complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. ASJ Flashing Sealants and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
 - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller.
 - 2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 - 4. Color: White.
 - 5. Verify sealant has a VOC content of **420** g/L or less.
 - 6. Verify sealant complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.4 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 - 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
 - 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.

3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.
4. ASJ+: Aluminum foil reinforced with glass scrim bonded to a kraft paper interleaving with an outer film leaving no paper exposed; complying with ASTM C1136 Types I, II, III, IV, and VII.
5. PSK Jacket: Aluminum foil fiberglass reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing, complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.

2.5 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets comply with ASTM C1136, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Airex Manufacturing Inc.
 - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
 - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.
 - d. Proto Corporation.
 - e. Speedline Corporation.
 2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 3. Color: White.
 4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
 - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

2.6 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. 3M Industrial Adhesives and Tapes Division.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division.
 - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
 - d. Knauf Insulation.
 2. Width: **3 inches**.
 3. Thickness: **11.5 mils**.
 4. Adhesion: **90 ounces force/inch** in width.
 5. Elongation: **2** percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

- B. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. 3M Industrial Adhesives and Tapes Division.
 - b. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
 - 2. Width: 2 inches.
 - 3. Thickness: 6 mils.
 - 4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 5. Elongation: 500 percent.
 - 6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

2.7 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

- A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers,:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Buckaroos, Inc.
 - b. McGuire Manufacturing.
 - c. MVG Molded Products.
 - d. Oatey Co.
 - e. Plumberex Specialty Products, Inc.
 - f. ProFlo; a Ferguson Enterprises, Inc. brand.
 - g. Truebro; IPS Corporation.
 - h. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - 2. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

- B. Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range of between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
 - 2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature of between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the tradesman installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping, including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and of thicknesses required for each item of pipe system, as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, compress, or otherwise damage insulation or jacket.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom (12 o'clock and 6 o'clock positions) of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during storage, application, and finishing. Replace insulation materials that get wet during storage or in the installation process before being properly covered and sealed in accordance with Contract Documents, unless otherwise approved by the engineer-of-record.
- H. Coordinate the application of insulation to piping, equipment and fixtures with the construction of the exterior envelope and roofing of the building. Insulation that has been installed and becomes damaged due to inclement weather because the building envelope was not sealed or completed shall be replaced at no additional cost to the owner.
- I. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

- K. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends attached to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- L. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- M. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth, but not to the extent of creating wrinkles or areas of compression in the insulation.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward-clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, in accordance with insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- N. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation.
- O. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- P. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least **4 inches** beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches in similar fashion to butt joints.
- Q. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
 - 1. Vibration-control devices.
 - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 - 3. Nameplates and data plates.
 - 4. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials, except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles below.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, Mechanical Couplings, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, mechanical couplings, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.

2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation made from same material and density as that of adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece is butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation of same material and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation of same material, density, and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers, so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
 6. Insulate flanges, mechanical couplings, and unions, using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union" matching size and color of pipe labels.
 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket, except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing, using PVC tape.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation conforms to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as that of adjoining pipe insulation.
 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union at least 2 times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
 3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.

4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF GLASS-FIBER

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install prefabricated pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with glass-fiber or mineral-wool blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install prefabricated sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When prefabricated insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install prefabricated sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When prefabricated sections are not available, install fabricated sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
 - 1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
 - 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- thick coats of lagging adhesive.
 - 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 - 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- C. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.8 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
 - 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

3.9 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
 - 1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
 - 2. Underground piping.
 - 3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.10 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Domestic Cold Water:

1. **NPS 1-1/4** and Smaller: Insulation is the following:
 - a. Glass-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: **1/2 inch** thick.
 2. **NPS 1-1/2** and Larger: Insulation is the following:
 - a. Glass-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: **1 inch** thick.
- B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:
1. **NPS 1-1/4** and Smaller: Insulation is the following:
 - a. Glass-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: **1 inch** thick.
 2. **NPS 1-1/2** and Larger: Insulation is the following:
 - a. Glass-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: **1-1/2 inch** thick.
- C. Roof Drain and Overflow Drain Bodies and associated horizontal piping:
1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation is the following:
 - a. Glass-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: **1 inch** thick.
 2. Storm piping is required to be insulated up to the vertical conductor.
- D. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing Fixtures for People with Disabilities:
1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation is **one of** the following:
 - a. Glass-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: **1/2 inch** thick.
- E. Floor Drains, Traps, and Sanitary Drain Piping within **10 Feet** of Drain Receiving Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:
1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation is the following:
 - a. Glass-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: **1 inch** thick.

END OF SECTION 220719

SECTION 221114 - NATURAL-GAS PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
2. Piping specialties.
3. Joining materials.
4. Manual gas shutoff valves.
5. Pressure regulators.
6. Dielectric fittings.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. WOG: Water Oil Gas
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. An example includes rooftop locations.
- D. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- E. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspace, and tunnels.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Piping specialties.
2. Valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
3. Pressure regulators. Indicate pressure ratings and capacities.
4. Dielectric fittings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pressure regulators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators in accordance with the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and dispose of liquids from existing natural-gas piping in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- C. Store and handle pipes and tubes having factory-applied protective coatings to avoid damaging coating, and protect from direct sunlight.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Perform site survey, research public utility records, and verify existing utility locations. Contact utility-locating service for area where Project is located.
- B. Interruption of Existing Natural-Gas Service: Do not interrupt natural-gas service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions, and then only after arranging to provide purging and startup of natural-gas supply in accordance with requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Architect no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of natural-gas service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of natural-gas service without Architect's written permission.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for valves installed and concealed behind finished surfaces. Comply with requirements in "Access Doors and Frames."
- B. Coordinate requirements for piping identification for natural-gas piping. Comply with requirements in Section 220553 "Identification of Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain each product type from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code.
- B. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:
 - 1. Piping and Valves: **100 psig** minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Natural-Gas System Pressure within Buildings:
 - 1. Two pressure ranges. Primary pressure is 2 psig, but not more than 5 psig, and is reduced to secondary pressure of more than 0.5 psig, but not more than 2 psig.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
 - 1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
 - 2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A234/A234M for butt welding and socket welding.
 - 3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
 - 4. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
 - a. Material Group: 1.1.
 - b. End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
 - c. Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.
 - d. Gasket Materials: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum O-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
 - e. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel aboveground and stainless steel underground.
 - 5. Protective Coating for Underground Piping: Factory-applied, three-layer coating of epoxy, adhesive, and PE.
 - a. Joint Cover Kits: Epoxy paint, adhesive, and heat-shrink PE sleeves.

2.4 PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

B. Weatherproof Vent Cap:

1. Cast- or malleable-iron increaser fitting with corrosion-resistant wire (insect) screen, with free area at least equal to cross-sectional area of connecting pipe and threaded-end connection.

2.5 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.
- B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

2.6 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

- A. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.
1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
 2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
 3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
 4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground, Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground, Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" articles.
 5. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.
 6. Service Mark: Valves NPS 1-1/4 to NPS 2 having initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.
- B. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Comply with ASME B16.38.
1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
 2. Flanged Ends: Comply with ASME B16.5 for steel flanges.
 3. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground, Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground, Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" articles.
 4. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.
- C. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
 - b. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
 - c. BrassCraft Manufacturing Co.; a Masco company.
 - d. Perfection Corporation.
 - e. R.W. Lyall; brand of Hubbell Utility Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B584.
3. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
4. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
5. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
6. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground, Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground, Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" articles.
8. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller are to be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

D. Bronze Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
 - b. Lee Brass Company.
2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B584.
3. Plug: Bronze.
4. Ends: Threaded, socket, or flanged as indicated in "Underground, Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground, Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" articles.
5. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
6. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
7. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller are to be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
8. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

2.7 PRESSURE REGULATORS

A. General Requirements:

1. Single stage and suitable for natural gas.
2. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
3. Elevation compensator.
4. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for regulators NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

B. Line Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80A.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Actaris: a brand of ITT Controls.

- b. American Meter Company.
 - c. Dormont; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - d. Eclipse Innovative Thermal Technologies.
 - e. Fischer; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
 - f. Itron Inc.
 - g. Maxitrol Company.
 - h. Richards Industrials.
 - i. Schneider Electric USA, Inc.
2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
5. Seat Disc: NBR; resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
6. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
7. Seal Plug: UV-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
8. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to regulator.
9. Pressure regulator is to maintain discharge pressure setting downstream and is to not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
10. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
11. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
12. Maximum Inlet Pressure: **2 psig**.

C. Appliance Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.18.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Canadian Meter Company, LLC; a Honeywell Company.
 - b. Dormont; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - c. Eaton.
 - d. Harper Wyman Co.
 - e. Maxitrol Company.
 - f. SCP, Inc.
2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Die-cast aluminum.
3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
5. Seat Disc: NBR.
6. Seal Plug: UV-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
7. Factory-Applied Finish: Minimum three-layer polyester and polyurethane paint finish.
8. Regulator may include vent limiting device, instead of vent connection, if approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
9. Maximum Inlet Pressure: **2 psig**.

2.8 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
 - b. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - c. GF Piping Systems: Georg Fischer LLC.
 - d. HART Industrial Unions, LLC.
 - e. Jomar Valve.
 - f. Matco-Norca.
 - g. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - h. Wilkins.
 - i. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
 - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

C. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. GF Piping Systems: Georg Fischer LLC.
 - c. Matco-Norca.
 - d. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - e. Wilkins.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - b. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 - c. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
 - d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

2.9 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Label and identify gas piping and pressure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for natural-gas piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off natural gas to premises or piping section.
- B. Inspect natural-gas piping in accordance with NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code to determine that natural-gas utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.
- C. Comply with NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code requirements for preventing accidental ignition.
- D. For existing facilities with an existing gas service, it is the responsibility of this contractor to coordinate the changes in natural gas demand and supply pressure, whether they be increases or decreases, with the local utility provider. Coordinate modifications (if required) to the gas service entrance, and pay all fees associated with any work involved.

3.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF OUTDOOR PIPING

- A. Comply with NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- C. All metal piping installed outdoors shall be cleaned free of rust, primed and painted. Coordinate color with architect.
- D. All natural gas piping routed across the roof shall be securely supported and be elevated not less than 3-1/2 inches above the roof surface.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF INDOOR PIPING

- A. Comply with NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- D. Do not install piping in concealed locations unless sleeved with the sleeve open at both ends.

- E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- F. Where installing piping above accessible ceilings, allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- G. Locate valves for easy access. Do not locate valves within return air plenums.
- H. Install natural-gas piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.
- I. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- K. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- L. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.
- M. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.
 - 1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.
- N. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
- O. Concealed Location Installations: Except as specified below, install concealed natural-gas piping and piping installed under the building in containment conduit constructed of steel pipe with welded joints as described in Part 2. Install a vent pipe from containment conduit to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
 - 1. Above Accessible Ceilings: Natural-gas piping, fittings, valves, and regulators may be installed in accessible spaces without containment conduit..
 - 2. In Walls or Partitions: Protect tubing installed inside partitions or hollow walls from physical damage using steel striker barriers at rigid supports.
 - a. Exception: Tubing passing through partitions or walls does not require striker barriers.
 - 3. Prohibited Locations:
 - a. Do not install natural-gas piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
 - b. Do not install natural-gas piping in solid walls or partitions.
 - c. Do not install natural gas piping below floor slabs.

- P. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
- Q. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
- R. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.
- S. Do not use natural-gas piping as grounding electrode.
- T. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.
- U. Install pressure gauge upstream and downstream from each line regulator. Pressure gauges are specified in Section 220519 "Meters and Gauges for Plumbing Piping."
- V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.6 INSTALLATION OF VALVES

- A. All isolation valves installed in natural gas piping (ball, plug etc) shall be FULL PORT.
- B. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance.
- C. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.
- D. Do not install valves in return-air plenums.

3.7 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints:
 - 1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
 - 2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
 - 3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.

4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

D. Welded Joints:

1. Construct joints in accordance with AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.

E. Flanged Joints: Install gasket material, size, type, and thickness appropriate for natural-gas service. Install gasket concentrically positioned.

F. Flared Joints: Cut tubing with roll cutting tool. Flare tube end with tool to result in flare dimensions complying with SAE J513. Tighten finger tight, and then use wrench. Do not overtighten.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for hangers, supports, and anchor devices.
- B. Install hangers for steel piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- C. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches of each fitting.
- D. Support vertical runs of steel piping to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- E. Piping routed across the roof shall be supported a minimum of 3-1/2" above the roof.

3.9 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect to local utility providers gas service according to utility's procedures and requirements.
- B. Install natural-gas piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas-appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance in accordance with NFPA 70.
- C. Where installing piping adjacent to appliances, allow space for service and maintenance of appliances.
- D. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches (unless otherwise indicated) of each gas-fired appliance and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.

- E. Where indicated pipe sizes on the plans are larger than the actual connection to a specific piece of equipment, the gas piping shall be reduced in size AT THE CONNECTION TO THE EQUIPMENT.

3.10 LABELING AND IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for piping and valve identification.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Test, inspect, and purge natural gas in accordance with NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Natural-gas piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.12 OUTDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Aboveground natural-gas piping is to be one of the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
 - 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
 - 3. All piping located above ground and outdoors is required to be cleaned free of rust, primed and painted.

3.13 ABOVEGROUND, MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller at service meter are to be one of the following:
 - 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
 - 2. Bronze plug valve.
- B. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger at service meter are to be one of the following:
 - 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
 - 2. Bronze plug valve.
- C. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller are to be one of the following:
 - 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
 - 2. Bronze plug valve.
- D. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger are to be one of the following:
 - 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.

2. Bronze plug valve.
- E. Valves in branch piping for single appliance are to be one of the following:
1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
 2. Bronze plug valve.

END OF SECTION 221114

SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Copper tube and fittings - domestic water.
2. Piping joining materials - domestic water.
3. Encasement for piping.
4. Transition fittings - domestic water.
5. Dielectric fittings - domestic water.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Copper tube and fittings - domestic water.
2. Piping joining materials - domestic water.
3. Encasement for piping.
4. Transition fittings - domestic water.
5. Dielectric fittings - domestic water.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
3. Environmental Product Declaration: For each product.
4. Health Product Declaration: For each product.
5. Sourcing of Raw Materials: Corporate sustainability report for each manufacturer.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings:** Piping layout, or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. System purging and disinfecting activities report.**
- C. Field quality-control reports.**

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Installers of pressure-sealed joints are to be certified by pressure-seal joint manufacturer as having been trained and qualified to join piping with pressure-seal pipe couplings and fittings.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service in accordance with requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Architect no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
 - 2. Do not interrupt water service without Architect's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Domestic water piping, tubing, fittings, joints, and appurtenances intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act, with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, and with NSF 61 and NSF 372, or be certified in compliance with NSF 61 and NSF 372 by an ANSI-accredited third-party certification body, in that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Potable-water piping and components are to comply with NSF 14, NSF 61, and NSF 372. Include marking "NSF-pw" on piping.

2.3 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS - DOMESTIC WATER

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tube: ASTM B88, Type L.
- B. Annealed-Temper Copper Tube: ASTM B88, Type L.
- C. Cast-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings. Do not use solder joints on pipe sizes greater than NPS 4.
- D. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, pressure fittings. Do not use solder joints on pipe sizes greater than NPS 4.
- E. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends. Do not use solder joints on pipe sizes greater than NPS 4.

- F. Cast Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces and solder-joint or threaded ends. Do not use solder joints on pipe sizes greater than NPS 4.
- G. Wrought Copper Unions: ASME B16.22. Do not use solder joints on pipe sizes greater than NPS 4.
- H. Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings, Copper or Bronze - Domestic Water:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
 - b. Conex Banninger - USA.
 - c. Copper Press Brand; Merit Brass Company.
 - d. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Co., Inc.
 - e. FNW; Ferguson Enterprises, Inc.
 - f. Mueller Streamline Co.; a company of Mueller Industries.
 - g. NIBCO INC.
 - h. Viega LLC.
 - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain pressure-seal-joint fittings, copper or bronze, from single manufacturer.
 - 3. Housing: Copper.
 - 4. O-Rings and Pipe Stops: EPDM.
 - 5. Tools: Manufacturer's special tools.
 - 6. Minimum 200 psig working-pressure rating at 250 deg F.

2.4 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS - DOMESTIC WATER

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:
 - 1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B32, lead-free alloys.
- D. Flux: ASTM B813, water flushable.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8M/A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Verify solvent cement has a VOC content of 490 g/L or less.
 - 2. Verify adhesive complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.5 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- B. Form: Sheet or tube.
- C. Color: Black or natural.

2.6 TRANSITION FITTINGS - DOMESTIC WATER

- A. General Requirements:
 - 1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
 - 2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
 - 3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
- C. Sleeve-Type Transition Couplings - Domestic Water: AWWA C219.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - b. Dresser Pipeline Solutions.
 - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The).
 - d. Jay R. Smith Mfg Co; a division of Morris Group International.
 - e. JCM Industries, Inc.
 - f. Romac Industries, Inc.
 - g. Smith-Blair, a Xylem brand.
 - h. Viking Johnson.
 - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain sleeve-type transition couplings from single manufacturer.

2.7 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS - DOMESTIC WATER

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions - Domestic Water:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
 - b. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
 - c. HART Industrial Unions, LLC.
 - d. Jomar Valve.
 - e. Matco-Norca.
 - f. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - g. Zurn Industries, LLC.

2. Source Limitations: Obtain dielectric unions from single manufacturer.
3. Standard: ASSE 1079.
4. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
5. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

C. Dielectric Flanges - Domestic Water:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. GF Piping Systems: Georg Fischer LLC.
 - c. Matco-Norca.
 - d. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Source Limitations: Obtain dielectric flanges from single manufacturer.
3. Standard: ASSE 1079.
4. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
5. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
6. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits - Domestic Water:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, LLC.
 - b. CALPICO, Inc.
 - c. GPT; a division of EnPRO Industries.
2. Source Limitations: Obtain dielectric-flange insulating kits from single manufacturer.
3. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
4. Pressure Rating: **150 psig**.
5. Gasket: Phenolic, Temperature Rating: **225 deg F**.
6. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
7. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

E. Dielectric Nipples - Domestic Water:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Anvil; an ASC Engineered Solution.
 - b. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
 - c. Matco-Norca.
 - d. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - e. Victaulic Company.
2. Source Limitations: Obtain dielectric nipples from single manufacturer.
3. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
4. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F1545.
5. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
6. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
7. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 4 (DN 50) and smaller is to be the following:
 - 1. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; cast- or wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
 - 2. Drawn-temper copper tube, ASTM B88, Type L; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
- D. Note about Press connections: It is the intent that Press Connections are for connections and installations into EXISTING piping and systems only. All new water distribution piping is to be soldered or threaded.

3.2 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Pipes made of plastics shall be supported to prevent sagging and bending while stored on site.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF PIPING

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab in accordance with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install underground copper tube in PE encasement in accordance with ASTM A674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- D. Install valves in accordance with the following:
 - 1. Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."

2. Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 3. Section 220523.14 "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements for pressure-reducing valves in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- F. Install domestic water piping level and plumb.
- G. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- H. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- I. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- J. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- K. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- M. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- N. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- O. Install pressure gauges on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump. Comply with requirements for pressure gauges in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- P. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements for thermostats in Section 221123.21 "Inline, Domestic Water Pumps."
- Q. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements for thermometers in Section 220519 "Meters and Gauges for Plumbing piping."
- R. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- S. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- T. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.5 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads in accordance with ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- D. Brazed Joints for Copper Tubing: Comply with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" chapter.
- E. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings in accordance with ASTM B828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- F. Pressure-Sealed Joints for Copper Tubing: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools and procedure recommended by pressure-seal-fitting manufacturer. Leave insertion marks on pipe after assembly.
- G. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts in accordance with ASME B31.9.
- H. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
- B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
 - 1. Fittings for NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
 - 2. Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.
- C. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition fittings or unions.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Use dielectric couplings or nipples.

- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Use dielectric flanges.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for hangers, supports, and anchor devices in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install hangers for copper tube and pipe, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- C. Support horizontal piping within **12 inches** of each fitting.
- D. Support vertical runs of copper tube and pipe to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

3.9 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
 - 1. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
 - 2. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.
 - 3. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3.10 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.11 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:

1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Fill and isolate system in accordance with either of the following:
 - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
 - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
 - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
 - d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
 - e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:

1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
2. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.

C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

3.12 ADJUSTING

A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:

1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
 - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
 - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Piping Inspections:

- a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
 - 1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after installation and before setting fixtures.
 - 2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Piping Tests:

- a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
- b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
- c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
- d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
- e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
- f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.

B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 221116

SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. General Requirements
2. Vacuum breakers.
3. Backflow preventers.
4. Water pressure-reducing valves.
5. Balancing valves.
6. Temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
7. Strainers for domestic water piping.
8. Drain valves.
9. Water-hammer arresters.
10. Flexible connectors.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping" for water meters.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A.** AMI: Advanced Metering Infrastructure.
- B.** AMR: Automatic Meter Reading.
- C.** FKM: A family of fluoro-elastomer materials defined by ASTM D1418.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A.** Product Data: For each type of product.
- B.** Shop Drawings: For domestic water piping specialties.
1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A.** Test and inspection reports.
- B.** Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Domestic water piping specialties intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the SDWA, requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, and NSF 61 and NSF 372, or to be certified in compliance with NSF 61 and NSF 372 by an American National Standards Institute (ANSI)-accredited third-party certification body that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 VACUUM BREAKERS

- A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
 - b. Cash Acme Plumbing Products; an RWC brand.
 - c. FEBCO; A WATTS Brand.
 - d. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1001.
 - 3. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3, as required to match connected piping.
 - 4. Body: Bronze.
 - 5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
 - 6. Finish: Chrome plated
- B. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
 - b. Cash Acme Plumbing Products; an RWC brand.
 - c. Champion-Arrowhead.
 - d. Jay R. Smith Mfg Co; a division of Morris Group International.
 - e. MIFAB, Inc.
 - f. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.

- g. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
- h. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- 2. Standard: ASSE 1011.
- 3. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
- 4. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
- 5. Finish: Chrome or nickel plate.

2.4 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. Intermediate Atmospheric-Vent Backflow Preventers:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
 - b. Caleffi North America.
 - c. Cash Acme Plumbing Products; an RWC brand.
 - d. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- 2. Standard: ASSE 1012.
- 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
- 4. Size: See plans.
- 5. Body: Bronze.
- 6. End Connections: Union, solder joint.
- 7. Finish: Rough bronze.

B. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - b. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
 - c. Caleffi North America.
 - d. FEBCO; A WATTS Brand.
 - e. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - f. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- 2. Standard: ASSE 1013.
- 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
- 4. Pressure Loss: **12 psig** maximum, through middle third of flow range.
- 5. Size: See plans.
- 6. Body: Bronze or stainless steel for NPS 2 and smaller; ductile or cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved or [stainless steel for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- 7. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- 8. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.
- 9. Accessories:
 - a. Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet.
 - b. Valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
 - c. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.

C. Double-Check, Backflow-Prevention Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - b. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
 - c. FEBCO; A WATTS Brand.
 - d. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASSE 1015.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications unless otherwise indicated.
4. Pressure Loss: **5 psig** maximum, through middle third of flow range.
5. Size: See plans
6. Body: Bronze or stainless steel for NPS 2 and smaller; ductile or cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved or stainless steel for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
7. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
8. Configuration: Designed for [horizontal, straight-through flow.
9. Accessories:
 - a. Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet.
 - b. Valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.

D. Dual-Check-Valve Backflow Preventers :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
 - b. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
 - c. Cash Acme Plumbing Products; an RWC brand.
 - d. Flomatic Valves; Flomatic Corporation.
 - e. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - f. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASSE 1024.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Size: see plans.
5. Body: Bronze with union inlet.

E. Hose-Connection Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
 - b. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - c. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASSE 1052.
3. Operation: Up to 10-foot head of water back pressure.
4. Inlet Size: NPS 3/4.
5. Outlet Size: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.

6. Capacity: At least 3-gpm flow.

2.5 WATER PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES

A. Water Regulators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
 - b. Caleffi North America.
 - c. Cash Acme Plumbing Products; an RWC brand.
 - d. IMI Hydronic Engineering Inc.
 - e. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - f. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASSE 1003.
3. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig.
4. Size: See Plans
5. Design Flow Rate: See plans
6. Design Inlet Pressure: 80 PSIG +
7. Design Outlet Pressure Setting: 65 PSIG
8. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; **bronze** for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.
9. Valves for Booster Heater Water Supply: Include integral bypass.
10. End Connections: Threaded or solder for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged or solder for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.

2.6 BALANCING VALVES

A. Copper-Alloy Calibrated Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
 - b. IMI Hydronic Engineering Inc.
 - c. Nexus Valve, Inc.; Aalberts Hydronic Flow Control.
 - d. NIBCO INC.
 - e. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
2. Type: Ball or Y-pattern globe valve with two readout ports and memory-setting indicator.
3. Body: Brass or bronze.
4. Size: Same as connected piping, but not larger than NPS 2.
5. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

B. Memory-Stop Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
 - b. Caleffi North America.
 - c. Crane Fluid Systems; Crane Co.
 - d. Hammond Valve.

- e. Jenkins Valves; a Crane Co. brand.
- f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- g. NIBCO INC.
- h. Red-White Valve Corp.
- i. Stockham; a Crane Co. brand.
2. Standard: MSS SP-110 for two-piece, copper-alloy ball valves.
3. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
4. Size: NPS 2 or smaller.
5. Body: Copper alloy.
6. Port: Standard or full port.
7. Ball: Chrome-plated brass or stainless steel.
8. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
9. End Connections: Solder joint or threaded.
10. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel with memory-setting device.

C. Automatic Flow Control Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Acorn Controls; a Division of Morris Group International.
 - b. Caleffi North America.
 - c. IMI Hydronic Engineering Inc.
 - d. ThermOmegaTech.
2. Flow Regulation: Plus or minus 5 percent over 95 percent of the working range.
3. Pressure Rating: 200 psig.
4. Size: NPS 2 or smaller.
5. Body: Stainless steel or brass.
6. Flow Cartridge: Stainless steel or antiscaling polymer.
7. End Connections: Threaded or solder joint.

2.7 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED, WATER MIXING VALVES

A. Water-Temperature Limiting Devices:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Acorn Controls; a Division of Morris Group International.
 - b. Acorn Engineering Company; a Division of Morris Group International.
 - c. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
 - d. Cash Acme Plumbing Products; an RWC brand.
 - e. POWERS; A WATTS Brand.
 - f. Symmons Industries, Inc.
 - g. Taco Comfort Solutions.
 - h. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - i. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASSE 1070.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Type: Thermostatically controlled, water mixing valve.
5. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
6. Connections: Threaded inlets and outlet.

7. Accessories: Check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
8. Tempered-Water Setting: 109 deg F.
9. Tempered-Water Design Flow Rate: 0.5 gpm.
10. Valve Finish: Chrome plated.

B. Individual-Fixture, Water Tempering Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Acorn Controls; a Division of Morris Group International.
 - b. Acorn Engineering Company; a Division of Morris Group International.
 - c. Caleffi North America.
 - d. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - e. POWERS; A WATTS Brand.
 - f. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASSE 1016, thermostatically controlled, water tempering valve.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
4. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
5. Temperature Control: Adjustable.
6. Connections: Threaded inlets and outlet.
7. Finish: Chrome plated.
8. Tempered-Water Setting: 120 deg F.
9. Tempered-Water Design Flow Rate: 2.5 gpm.

2.8 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Caleffi North America.
 - b. Keckley Company.
 - c. Titan Flow Control, Inc.
 - d. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
3. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved, epoxy coated and for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
4. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
5. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations unless otherwise indicated.
6. Perforation Size:
 - a. Strainers NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: 0.020 inch.
 - b. Strainers NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): 0.045 inch.
 - c. Strainers NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: 0.125 inch.
7. Drain: Pipe plug.

2.9 DRAIN VALVES

A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

2.10 WATER-HAMMER ARRESTERS

A. Water-Hammer Arresters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AMTROL, Inc.
 - b. Jay R. Smith Mfg Co; a division of Morris Group International.
 - c. Josam Company.
 - d. MIFAB, Inc.
 - e. Precision Plumbing Products.
 - f. ProFlo; a Ferguson Enterprises, Inc. brand.
 - g. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - h. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - i. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
3. Type: Metal bellows, Piston, or Diaphragm.
4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F, or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

2.11 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
2. Mason Industries, Inc.
3. Metraflex Company (The).

B. Bronze-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.

1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
2. End Connections NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.

3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.
- C. Stainless Steel-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-stainless steel tubing with stainless steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.
 1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
 2. End Connections NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded steel-pipe nipple.
 3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Backflow Preventers: Install in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
 2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe-to-floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are unacceptable for this application.
 3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- B. Water Regulators: Install with inlet and outlet shutoff valves. Install pressure gauges on inlet and outlet.
- C. Balancing Valves: Install in locations where they can easily be adjusted. Set at indicated design flow rates.
- D. Temperature-Actuated, Water Mixing Valves: Install with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
- E. Y-Pattern Strainers: For water, install on supply side of each water pressure-reducing valve and pump.
- F. Water-Hammer Arresters: Install in water piping in accordance with PDI-WH 201.

3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping specialties adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.

3.3 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

3.4 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect control wiring in accordance with "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Plastic Labels for Equipment: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
 - 1. Vacuum breakers.
 - 2. Backflow preventers.
 - 3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
 - 4. Balancing valves.
 - 5. Temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.
- B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.
- C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
- D. Adjust each pressure vacuum breaker, reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer, double-check, backflow-prevention assembly and double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions, authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: **Engage** a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
 - 1. Test each pressure vacuum breaker, reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer, double-check, backflow-prevention assembly and double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventer according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.
 - 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm unit operation.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Domestic water piping specialties will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 221119

SECTION 221123.21 - INLINE, DOMESTIC-WATER PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data Submittals: For each product. Include construction materials, rated capacities, certified performance curves with operating points plotted on curves, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For pump controls.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Detail pumps and adjacent equipment. Show support locations, type of support, weight on each support, required clearances, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Structural members to which pumps will be attached.
2. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.

- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For inline, domestic-water pumps to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
- B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
- C. Comply with pump manufacturer's written instructions for handling.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency.
- B. UL Compliance: UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps, certified to CSA Standard C22.2, No. 108-01
- C. Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects and Drinking Water System Components - Lead Content Compliance: NSF 61 and NSF 372.

2.2 HORIZONTALLY MOUNTED, IN-LINE, CLOSE-COUPLED CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS, WET ROTOR / DRY ROTOR TYPE.

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Armstrong – Astro 2 or E Series
 - 2. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
 - 3. MEPCO, LLC.
 - 4. Pentair Aurora; Pentair Pump Group.
 - 5. Taco Comfort Solutions.
 - 6. Thrush Co. Inc.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps designed for installation with pump and motor shaft mounted horizontal.
- C. Capacities and Characteristics: See Pump Schedule on drawing P0.2 – Schedules – Plumbing.
- D. Pump Construction:
 - 1. Casing:
 - a. Radially split lead free bronze or stainless steel with threaded companion-flange connections for pumps with NPS 2 pipe connections and flanged connections for pumps with NPS 2-1/2 pipe connections.
 - b. Built to permit servicing of pump internals without disturbing the casing or the suction and discharge piping.
 - 2. Impeller: Noryl, and keyed to shaft.
 - 3. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft with deflector, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
 - 4. Seal: Mechanical, with carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and rubber bellows and gasket.
 - 5. Bearings: Ceramic, system lubricated.
 - 6. Minimum Working Pressure: 150 psig
 - 7. Continuous Operating Temperature: 230 deg F
- E. Motor: multi speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings; rigidly mounted to pump casing.

2.3 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."

1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

2.4 CONTROLS

- A. Timers: Electric, for control of hot-water circulation pump.
 1. Type: Programmable, seven-day clock with manual override on-off switch.
 2. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1, suitable for wall mounting.
 3. Operation of Pump: On or off.
 4. Transformer: Provide if required.
 5. Power Requirement: 120 V ac.
 6. Programmable Sequence of Operation: Up to two on-off cycles each day for seven days
- B. Time-Delay Relays: Electric, for control of hot-water circulation pump between water heater and connected hot-water storage tank.
 1. Type: Adjustable time-delay relay.
 2. Range: Up to five minutes.
 3. Setting: Five minutes.
 4. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
 5. Operation of Pump: On or off.
 6. Transformer: Provide if required.
 7. Power Requirement: 120 V ac.
 8. Programmable Sequence of Operation: Limit pump operation to periods of burner operation, plus maximum five minutes after the burner stops.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for domestic-water-piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF PUMPS

- A. Comply with HI 1.4.
- B. Mount pumps in orientation complying with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and vibration isolation of size required to support pump weight.
 1. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- D. Install timers on wall adjacent to pump.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to inline, domestic-water pumps, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic-water piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or greater than size of pump nozzles.
- D. Install shutoff valve and strainer on suction side of each pump, and check, shutoff, and throttling valves on discharge side of each pump. Install valves same size as connected piping. Comply with requirements for strainers specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties." Comply with requirements for valves specified in the following:
 - 1. Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 - 2. Section 220523.14 "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping."

3.4 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring between temperature controllers and devices.
- C. Interlock pump between water heater and hot-water storage tank with water heater burner and time-delay relay.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification of pumps.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency:
 - 1. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

- E. Inline, domestic-water pump will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Check piping connections for tightness.
 - 3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
 - 4. Set timers and time-delay relays for automatic starting and stopping operation of pumps.
 - 5. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
 - a. Verify bearing lubrication.
 - b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
 - c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
 - 6. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
 - 7. Start motor.
 - 8. Open discharge valve slowly.
 - 9. Adjust temperature settings on thermostats.
 - 10. Adjust timer settings.

3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust inline, domestic-water pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

END OF SECTION 22 11 23.21

SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Copper tube and fittings.
2. ABS pipe and fittings.
3. PVC pipe and fittings.
4. Specialty pipe fittings.
5. Encasement for underground metal piping.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Copper tube and fittings.
2. ABS pipe and fittings.
3. PVC pipe and fittings.
4. Specialty pipe fittings.
5. Encasement for underground metal piping.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

C. Shop Drawings: For hubless, single-stack drainage system. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans and elevations, or Building Information Model (BIM) drawn to scale, showing items described in this Section and coordinated with all building trades.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Waste Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service in accordance with requirements indicated:

1. Notify Architect no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sanitary waste service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of sanitary waste service without Architect's written permission.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Listed manufacturers to provide labeling and warranty of their respective products.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation are capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: **10 ft. head of water.**
- B. Components and installation are capable of withstanding the following maximum working waste stream temperatures unless otherwise indicated:

<u>Piping Material</u>	<u>Maximum Allowable Temperature</u>
DWV Copper	150°F
Acrylonitrile Butadiene Styrene (ABS)	160°F
Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) - Schedule 40	120°F
Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) - Schedule 80	200°F

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Piping materials to bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.3 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Apollo Valves; a part of Alberts Integrated Piping Systems.

2. Cambridge-Lee Industries, LLC.
 3. Cerro Flow Products, LLC.
 4. Wieland Copper Products, LLC.
- B. Copper Type DWV Tube: ASTM B306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
- C. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.
- D. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B88, Type M, water tube, drawn temper.
- E. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B88, Type M, water tube, annealed temper.
- F. Solder: ASTM B32, lead free with ASTM B813, water-flushable flux.

2.4 ABS PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
 2. JM Eagle.
 3. Royal Building Products, a Westlake Company.
- B. NSF Marking: Comply with NSF 14 for plastic piping components. Include "NSF-dwv" marking for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.
- C. Solid-Wall ABS Pipe: ASTM D2661, Schedule 40.
- D. Cellular-Core ABS Pipe: **NOT ALLOWED.**
- E. ABS Socket Fittings: ASTM D2661, made in accordance with ASTM D3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns.
- F. Solvent Cement: ASTM D2235.
1. Verify solvent cement has a VOC content of 325 g/L or less.
 2. Verify solvent cement complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.5 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Apollo Valves; a part of Alberts Integrated Piping Systems.
 2. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
 3. GF Piping Systems.

4. JM Eagle.
 5. National Pipe and Plastic, Inc.
 6. North America Pipe Corporation.
 7. Rocky Mountain Colby Pipe Company.
 8. Silver-line Plastics.
- B. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic piping components. Include "NSF-dwv" marking for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" marking for plastic sewer piping.
- C. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D2665 drain, waste, and vent.
- D. Cellular-Core PVC Pipe: **NOT ALLOWED**.
- E. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D2665, made in accordance with ASTM D3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
- F. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F656.
1. Verify adhesive primer has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less.
 2. Verify adhesive primer complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- G. Solvent Cement: ASTM D2564.
1. Verify solvent cement has a VOC content of 510 g/L or less.

2.6 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Transition Couplings:
1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in ODs or of different materials. Include end connections of same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
 2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
 3. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
 - 2) Fernco Inc.
 - 3) Mission Rubber Company, LLC; a division of MCP Industries.
 - 4) Plastic Oddities.
 - b. Standard: ASTM C1173.
 - c. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - d. End Connections: Same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
 - e. Sleeve Materials:

- 1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C564, rubber.
 - 2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D5926 PVC.
 - 3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D5926 PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
4. Shielded, Non-pressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - 2) Mission Rubber Company, LLC; a division of MCP Industries.
 - b. Standard: ASTM C1460.
 - c. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - d. End Connections: Same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
5. Pressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
 - 2) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - 3) EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.
 - 4) Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The).
 - 5) JCM Industries, Inc.
 - 6) Romac Industries, Inc.
 - b. Standard: AWWA C219.
 - c. Description: Metal sleeve-type same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to, and ends compatible with, pipes to be joined.
 - d. Center-Sleeve Material: **Stainless steel**.
 - e. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
 - f. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3.2 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Pipes and fittings made of plastics such as Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC), Acrylonitrile Butadiene Styrene (ABS) etc shall be protected from exposure to direct sunlight.
- C. Pipes made of plastics shall be supported to prevent sagging and bending while stored on site.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF PIPING

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems.
 - 1. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations.
 - 2. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends.
 - 1. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical.
 - 2. Use long-turn, double Y-branch, and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe.
 - a. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines.
 - 3. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees.
 - 4. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected.
 - a. Reducing size of waste piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- K. Lay buried building waste piping beginning at low point of each system.
 - 1. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream.
 - 2. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
 - 3. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.

- L. Install soil and waste and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Building Sanitary Waste: 2% downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 2-1/2 and smaller; 1% downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and larger.
 - 2. Horizontal Sanitary Waste Piping: 2% downward in direction of flow.
 - 3. Vent Piping: 1% down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- M. Install aboveground copper tubing in accordance with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- N. Install aboveground ABS piping in accordance with ASTM D2661.
- O. Install aboveground PVC piping in accordance with ASTM D2665.
- P. Install underground ABS and PVC piping in accordance with ASTM D2321.
- Q. Install engineered soil and waste and vent piping systems as follows:
 - 1. Combination Waste and Vent: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Hubless, Single-Stack Drainage System: Comply with ASME B16.45 and hubless, single-stack aerator fitting manufacturer's written installation instructions.
 - 3. Reduced-Size Venting: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
- R. Plumbing Specialties:
 - 1. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping.
 - a. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage force-main piping.
 - b. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
 - 2. Install drains in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping.
 - a. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
- S. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- T. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
 - 1. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- U. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
 - 1. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- V. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

1. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."

3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints in accordance with ASTM B828. Use ASTM B813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B32, lead-free-alloy solder.
- B. Plastic, Non-pressure-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings in accordance with the following:
 1. Comply with ASTM F402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 2. ABS Piping: Join in accordance with ASTM D2235 and ASTM D2661 appendixes.
 3. PVC Piping: Join in accordance with ASTM D2855 and ASTM D2665 appendixes.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Transition Couplings:
 1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in ODs.
 2. In Waste Drainage Piping: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
 3. In Aboveground Force Main Piping: Fitting-type transition couplings.
 4. In Underground Force Main Piping:
 - a. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Fitting-type transition couplings.
 - b. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: Pressure transition couplings.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment"
 1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
 2. Install **carbon-steel** pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
 3. Install stainless steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
 4. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42 clamps.
 5. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
 - a. 100 Ft. (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Ft. (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Ft. (30 m) if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 6. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Ft. (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44 pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 7. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52 spring hangers.

- C. Install hangers for ABS and PVC piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- D. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting and coupling.
- E. Support vertical runs of ABS and PVC piping to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect waste and vent piping to the following:
 - 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect waste piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 - 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect waste and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 - 4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
 - 5. Comply with requirements for cleanouts and drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
 - 6. Equipment: Connect waste piping as indicated.
 - a. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection.
 - b. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
- E. Make connections in accordance with the following unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping.
- B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
 - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary waste and vent piping in accordance with procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
 - 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired.
 - a. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced waste and vent piping until it has been tested and approved.
 - a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 - 3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test waste and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in.
 - a. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10 ft. head of water.
 - b. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop.
 - c. Inspect joints for leaks.
 - 4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight.
 - a. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1 inch wg.
 - b. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure.
 - c. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection.
 - d. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
 - 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 - 6. Using compressed air to pressure test any portion of the sanitary, waste, drain and vent system that is PVC or any other plastic/polymer material **IS STRICTLY PROHIBITED BY THE INTERNATIONAL PLUMBING CODE** and the Manufacturer.
 - a. Any PVC or any other plastic/polymer piping tested with compressed air SHALL BE completely removed and replaced at NO ADDITIONAL COST to the owner.
 - 7. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.10 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect sanitary waste and vent piping during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.
- D. Exposed Plastic Piping: Protect ABS or PVC plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based latex paint.
- E. Repair damage to adjacent materials caused by waste and vent piping installation.

3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller are to be the following:
 - 1. Copper Type DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
 - 2. Solid-wall ABS pipe, ABS socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 3. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 4. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, non-pressure transition couplings.
 - 5. The use of Foam Core / Cellular Core is **NOT ALLOWED!**
- C. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping are to be the following:
 - 1. Solid-wall ABS pipe, ABS socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 2. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, non-pressure transition couplings.
 - 4. The use of Foam Core / Cellular Core is **NOT ALLOWED!**
- D. Equipment drain piping shall be according to the following schedule:
 - 1. P&T relief piping, drain piping for equipment generating hot water:
 - a. Copper Type M, hard temper, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints
 - 2. Equipment generating condensate from refrigeration:
 - a. Copper Type M, hard temper, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints
 - 3. Equipment generating condensate from combustion process/flue gasses:
 - a. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 4. Backflow preventer relief piping
 - a. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.

END OF SECTION 221316

SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Cleanouts.
 - 2. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties" for trench drains for storm water, channel drainage systems for storm water, roof drains, and catch basins.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene.
- B. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Show fabrication and installation details for frost-resistant vent terminals.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sanitary waste piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTIONS

- A. Sanitary waste piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic sanitary waste piping specialty components.

2.2 CLEANOUTS

A. Plastic Exposed Cleanouts:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Charlotte Pipe.
 - b. Oatey.
 - c. Nibco.
 - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M.
- 3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
- 4. Body Material: PVC as required to match connected piping.
- 5. Closure: Raised-head, threaded plastic plug.
- 6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.

B. Plastic Wall Cleanouts:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Charlotte Pipe.
 - b. Oatey.
 - c. Nibco.
 - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
- 3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
- 4. Body: PVC pipe tee as required to match connected piping.
- 5. Closure Plug:
 - a. PVC
 - b. Raised head, threaded to match ferrule.
 - c. Drilled and threaded for cover attachment screw.
 - d. Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
- 6. Wall Access, Cover Plate: Round, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless steel cover plate with screw.
- 7. Wall Access, Frame and Cover: Round, nickel-bronze, copper-alloy, or stainless steel wall-installation frame and cover.

C. Plastic Floor Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Endura; a brand of IPEX.
 - b. IPS Corporation.
 - c. NDS Inc.
 - d. Plastic Oddities.
 - e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - f. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Size: Same as connected branch.
3. Body: PVC.
4. Closure Plug: PVC.
5. Riser: Drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as drainage piping.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Open (Hub) Drains:

1. Description: Shop or field fabricate from ASTM D2665 solid wall PVC Piping, ASTM D3311 PVC DWV-pipe fittings. Include deep seal trap, PVC riser section; and where required, increaser fitting. All joints prepared with ASTM F656 primer and adhesive.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping with increaser fitting of size indicated.

B. Open (Hub) Drains:

1. Description: Shop or field fabricate from, schedule 40, PVC or ABS. Include P-trap, riser section; and where required, increaser fitting.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping with increaser fitting of size indicated.

C. Deep-Seal Traps:

1. Description: PVC, with inlet and outlet matching connected piping and cleanout trap-seal primer valve connection.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.
 - a. NPS 2: 4-inch- minimum water seal.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: 5-inch- minimum water seal

D. Floor-Drain, Inline Trap Seal:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Green Drain, Inc.
 - b. Jay R. Smith Mfg Co; a division of Morris Group International.
 - c. Josam Company.
 - d. MIFAB, Inc.
 - e. RectorSeal Plumbing; A CSW Industrials Company.
 - f. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Description: Inline floor drain trap seal, forming a physical barrier to slow trap evaporation while not impeding flow from drain.
3. Material: Polymer.

4. Standard: Tested and certified in accordance with ASSE 1072.
5. Listing: ICC-ES or IAPMO listed.
6. Size: Same as floor drain outlet or strainer throat.

E. Air-Gap Fittings

1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.

F. Sleeve Flashing Device:

1. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron fitting, with clamping device that forms sleeve for pipe floor penetrations of floor membrane. Include galvanized-steel pipe extension in top of fitting that will extend **2 inches** above finished floor and galvanized-steel pipe extension in bottom of fitting that will extend through floor slab.
2. Size: As required for close fit to riser or stack piping.

G. Stack Flashing Fittings:

1. Description: Counterflashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.
2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

H. Vent Caps:

1. Description: Cast-iron body with threaded or hub inlet and vandal-proof design. Include vented hood and setscrews to secure to vent pipe.
2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
 3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.

- B. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- C. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- D. Assemble open drain fittings and install with top of hub **2 inches** above floor.
- E. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets, if indicated.
- F. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.
- G. Install sleeve and sleeve seals with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- H. Install vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof.
- I. Install wood-blocking reinforcement for wall-mounting-type specialties.
- J. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.

3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment, to allow service and maintenance.

3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit.
 - 1. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221319

SECTION 221319.13 - SANITARY DRAINS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Floor drains.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene styrene.
- B. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- C. HDPE: High-density polyethylene.
- D. PE: Polyethylene.
- E. PP: Polypropylene.
- F. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DRAIN ASSEMBLIES

- A. Sanitary drains shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic sanitary piping specialty components.

2.2 FLOOR DRAINS

- A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains :

1. Refer to drawing P0.01 "PLUMBING LEGEND, NOTES AND SCHEDULES" for basis of design floor drains.
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Commercial Enameling Company.
 - b. Jay R. Smith Mfg Co; a division of Morris Group International.
 - c. Josam Company.
 - d. MIFAB, Inc.
 - e. Prier Products, Inc.
 - f. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - g. Wade; a subsidiary of McWane Inc.
 - h. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - i. Whitehall Manufacturing; a division of Morris Group International.
 - j. Zurn Industries, LLC.
3. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
4. Pattern: Floor drain.
5. Body Material: Gray iron.
6. Seepage Flange: Not required .
7. Anchor Flange: Not required .
8. Clamping Device: Not required.
9. Outlet: Bottom .
10. Backwater Valve: Not required.
11. Coating on Interior and Exposed Exterior Surfaces: **Not required.**
12. Sediment Bucket: Not required on general duty floor drains. Provide sediment bucket on floor drains located in mechanical spaces.
13. Top or Strainer Material: Gray iron for mechanical floor drains, Nickel bronze for general duty floor drains.
14. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: same as strainer material noted above.
15. Top Shape: Round.
16. Top Loading Classification: Light Duty.
17. Funnel: Not required, unless general duty floor drain is receiving condensate. Not required on mechanical floor drains.
18. Inlet Fitting: Not required.
19. Trap Material: PVC or ABS.
20. Trap Pattern: Deep-seal P-trap.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
 2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage.
 3. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
 - a. Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression.
 - b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.

- c. Radius, 60 Inches or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch total depression.
- 4. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Install open drain fittings with top of hub 2 inches above floor.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties" for backwater valves, air admittance devices and miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
- C. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

3.5 FINAL TURN OVER

- A. Prior to final turnover, all drains, their strainers and associated traps shall be cleaned of any accumulated construction debris. If strainers are damaged (gouged, excessively worn or displaying wear) this contractor shall replace the strainer at no additional cost to the owner.
- B. Confirm that all drains are set level and flush with the surrounding floor surfaces.
- C. Confirm that all set screws are installed in the strainer and that none are missing.
- D. Confirm that all drains have been provided with trap seal protection.

END OF SECTION 221319.13

SECTION 221323 - SANITARY WASTE INTERCEPTORS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Oil interceptors for Hydraulic Elevator Pump discharge.
 - 2. Precast-concrete manhole risers.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- B. PP: Polypropylene.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of plastic interceptor. Include materials of fabrication, dimensions, rated capacities, retention capacities, operating characteristics, size and location of each pipe connection, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type and size of precast-concrete interceptor indicated.
 - 1. Include materials of construction, dimensions, rated capacities, retention capacities, location and size of each pipe connection, furnished specialties, and accessories.

1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sanitary waste interceptors to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 OIL INTERCEPTORS FOR HYDRAULIC ELEVATOR PUMP DISCHARGE

- A. Steel Oil Interceptors: Factory fabricated; with removable sediment bucket or strainer, baffles, vents, and flow-control fitting on inlet.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg Co; a division of Morris Group International.
 - b. Josam Company.
 - c. MIFAB, Inc.
 - d. Rockford Sanitary Systems, Inc.
 - e. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - f. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - 2. Inlet, Outlet, Vent, and Waste-Oil-Outlet Piping Connections: flanged or threaded unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Capacities and Characteristics:
 - a. Storage Capacity: 100 gal. (minimum)
 - b. Flow Rate: 50 GPM.
 - c. Inlet and Outlet Pipe Size: NPS 2
 - d. End Connections: Flanged, Hub, or Threaded.
 - e. Waste-Oil-Outlet Pipe Size: NPS 2
 - f. Trapped Outlet Required: No.

- g. Cleanout: Integral or field installed on outlet
 - h. Vent Pipe Size: NPS 2
 - i. Mounting: Above floor.
 - j. Flow-Control Fitting: Not required.
- B. Plastic Oil Interceptors: Removable sediment bucket or strainer, baffles, vents, and flow-control fitting on inlet.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Green Turtle Zurn.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Park USA
 - d. Striem.
 - e. Town & Country Plastics, Inc.
 - f. Xerxes by Shawcor Ltd.
 - 2. Inlet, Outlet, Vent, and Waste-Oil Outlet Piping Connections: flanged or threaded, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Capacities and Characteristics:
 - a. Storage Capacity: 100 gal. (minimum)
 - b. Flow Rate: 50 GPM.
 - c. Inlet and Outlet Pipe Size: NPS 2
 - d. End Connections: Flanged, Hub, or Threaded.
 - e. Waste-Oil-Outlet Pipe Size: NPS 2
 - f. Trapped Outlet Required: No.
 - g. Cleanout: Integral or field installed on outlet
 - h. Vent Pipe Size: NPS 2
 - i. Mounting: Above floor.
- C. Flow-Control Fitting: Not required

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Set interceptors level and plumb.
- C. Set metal and plastic interceptors level and plumb.
- D. Install oil interceptors, including trapping, venting, and flow-control fitting, according to authorities having jurisdiction and with clear space for servicing.

3.03 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping." and Section 221414 "Storm Drainage Piping" Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Make piping connections between interceptors and piping systems.

3.04 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identification materials and installation are specified in "Earth Moving."
 - 1. Arrange for installation of green warning tapes directly over piping and at outside edges of underground interceptors.
 - 2. Use warning tapes or detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
 - 3. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.
- B. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
 - 1. Oil interceptors.

3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Protect sanitary waste interceptors from damage during construction period.
- B. Repair damage to adjacent materials caused by sanitary waste interceptor installation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 221414 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Hubless cast iron soil pipe and fittings
 - 2. Copper tube and fittings.
 - 3. PVC pipe and fittings.
 - 4. Specialty pipe fittings.
 - 5. Encasement for underground metal piping.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping"
 - 2. Section 220523.14 "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping"
 - 3. Section 221323 "Sanitary Waste Interceptors"
 - 4. Section 221429 "Sump Pumps" for storm drainage pumps.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Hubless cast iron soil pipe and fittings
 - 2. Copper tube and fittings.
 - 3. PVC pipe and fittings.
 - 4. Specialty pipe fittings.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
 - 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field Quality-Control Reports: Inspection reports signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Provide materials bearing label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

1.05 WARRANTY

- A. Listed manufacturers to provide labeling and warranty of their respective products

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation are to be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Storm Drainage Piping: 10-foot head of water.
 - 2. Storm Drainage, Force-Main Piping: 50 psig.

2.02 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Piping materials to bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.03 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. AB & I Foundry; a part of the McWane family of companies.
 - 2. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
 - 3. Tyler Pipe; a part of McWane family of companies.
- B. Pipe and Fittings:
 - 1. Marked with CISPI collective trademark and NSF certification mark.
 - 2. Standards: ASTM A888 and CISPI 301.
- C. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ANACO-Husky.
 - b. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
 - c. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
 - d. Fernco Inc.
 - e. Ideal Tridon Group.
 - f. Matco-Norca.
 - g. MIFAB, Inc.
 - h. Mission Rubber Company, LLC; a division of MCP Industries.
 - 2. Standard: ASTM C1277 or ASTM C1540.
 - 3. Description: Stainless steel shield with stainless steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

2.04 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Tube:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cambridge-Lee Industries, LLC.
 - b. Cerro Flow Products, LLC.
 - c. Wieland Copper Products, LLC.
 - 2. Copper Tube, Drawn Temper: ASTM B88, Type L.
 - 3. Copper Tube, Annealed Temper: ASTM B88, Type L.
- B. Copper Fittings:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. NIBCO INC.
 - 2. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.
 - 3. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
 - 4. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
 - 5. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.
 - a. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - b. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Solder: ASTM B32, lead free with ASTM B813, water-flushable flux.

2.05 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. PVC Pipe:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
 - b. JM Eagle.
 - c. National Pipe and Plastic, Inc.
 - d. North America Pipe Corporation.
 - e. Silver-line Plastics.
2. NSF Marking: Comply with NSF 14 for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic storm drain and "NSF-sewer" for plastic storm sewer piping.
3. Solid-Wall schedule 40 PVC Pipe: ASTM D2665 drain, waste, and vent.
4. Cellular-Core PVC Pipe: NOT ALLOWED

B. PVC Socket Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
 - b. NIBCO INC.
 - c. North America Pipe Corporation.
2. Standard: ASTM D2665, made in accordance with ASTM D3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
3. NSF Marking: Comply with NSF 14 for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic storm drain and "NSF-sewer" for plastic storm sewer piping.

C. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F656.

1. Verify adhesive primer has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less.
2. Verify adhesive primer complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

D. Solvent Cement: ASTM D2564.

1. Verify solvent cement has a VOC content of 510 g/L or less.

2.06 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

A. Transition Couplings:

1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in ODs or of different materials. Include end connections of same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified-piping-system fitting.
3. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
 - 2) Fernco Inc.
 - 3) Mission Rubber Company, LLC; a division of MCP Industries.
 - b. Standard: ASTM C1173.

- c. Description: Elastomeric sleeve, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - d. Sleeve Materials:
 - 1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C564 rubber.
 - 2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D5926 PVC.
 - 3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D5926 PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
- 4. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
 - 2) Fernco Inc.
 - 3) Mission Rubber Company, LLC; a division of MCP Industries.
 - b. Standard: ASTM C1460.
 - c. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - d. End Connections: Same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
- 5. Pressure Transition Couplings:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - 2) EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.
 - 3) Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The).
 - 4) JCM Industries, Inc.
 - 5) Romac Industries, Inc.
 - b. Standard: AWWA C219.
 - c. Description: Metal, sleeve-type couplings same size as pipes to be joined, and with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with pipes to be joined.
 - d. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.
 - e. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
 - f. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.
- B. Dielectric Fittings:
 - 1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
 - 2. Dielectric Unions:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
 - 2) HART Industrial Unions, LLC.
 - 3) Jomar Valve.
 - 4) Matco-Norca.
 - 5) WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - 6) Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - b. Description:
 - 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.

- 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
 - 3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
3. Dielectric Flanges:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - 1) WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - b. Description:
 - 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 2) Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 - 3) Pressure Rating: 150 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
 - 4) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
4. Dielectric Nipples:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Anvil; an ASC Engineered Solution.
 - 2) Matco-Norca.
 - 3) Precision Plumbing Products.
 - b. Description: Electroplated steel nipple.
 - c. Standards: ASTM F492, ASME B1.20.1.
 - d. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
 - e. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
 - f. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

2.07 ENCASEMENT FOR UNDERGROUND METAL PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.
- B. Material: High-density, crosslaminated polyethylene film of 0.004-inch minimum thickness.
- C. Form: Sheet or tube.
- D. Color: Black or natural.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in "Earth Moving."

3.02 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Pipes and fittings made of plastics such as Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) etc shall be protected from exposure to direct sunlight.
- C. Pipes made of plastics shall be supported to prevent sagging and bending while stored on site.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF PIPING

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems.
- B. Install piping as indicated unless deviations from layout are approved on coordination drawings.

- C. Install piping in concealed locations.
 - 1. Piping installed in equipment rooms, service areas, and where indicated may be exposed.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Make changes in direction for piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends.
 - 1. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees.
 - 2. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected.
 - a. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- L. Lay buried building piping beginning at low point of each system.
 - 1. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream.
 - 2. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
 - 3. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- M. Install piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Building Storm Drain 1/8 inch per foot (1%) downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
 - 2. Horizontal Storm Drainage Piping: 1/8 inch per foot (1%) downward in direction of flow.
- N. Install cast-iron soil piping in accordance with CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Ch IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
- O. Install aboveground copper tubing in accordance with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- P. Aboveground PVC piping is not allowed..
- Q. Install underground PVC piping in accordance with ASTM D2321.
- R. Install force mains at elevations indicated.
- S. Plumbing Specialties:
 - 1. Install cleanouts in storm drainage gravity-flow piping in accessible locations.
 - a. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in storm drainage force-main piping.
 - b. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
 - 2. Install drains in storm drainage gravity-flow piping.
 - a. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
- T. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- U. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

1. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- V. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
 1. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- W. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
 1. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.04 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Hubless, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Coupled Joints: Join in accordance with CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.
- B. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads in accordance with ASME B1.20.1.
 1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
 2. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry-seal threading is specified.
 - b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
 - c. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- C. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints in accordance with ASTM B828. Use ASTM B813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B32, lead-free-alloy solder.
- D. Plastic, Non-pressure-Piping, Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings in accordance with the following:
 1. Comply with ASTM F402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 2. PVC Piping: Join in accordance with ASTM D2855 and ASTM D2665 appendices.
- E. Joint Restraints and Sway Bracing:
 1. Provide joint restraints and sway bracing for storm drainage piping joints to comply with the following conditions:
 - a. Provide axial restraint for pipe and fittings 5 inches and larger, upstream and downstream of all changes in direction, branches, and changes in diameter greater than two pipe sizes.
 - b. Provide rigid sway bracing for pipe and fittings 4 inches and larger, upstream and downstream of all changes in direction 45 degrees and greater.
 - c. Provide rigid sway bracing for pipe and fittings 5 inches and larger, upstream and downstream of all changes in direction and branch openings.

3.05 INSTALLATION OF SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Transition Couplings:
 1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in ODs.
 2. In Drainage Piping: Shielded, non-pressure transition couplings.
 3. In Aboveground Force-Main Piping: Fitting-type transition couplings.
- B. Dielectric Fittings:
 1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
 2. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.

3.06 INSTALLATION OF VALVES.

- A. General valve installation requirements for general-duty valve installations are specified in the following Sections:
 - 1. Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 - 2. Section 220523.14 "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- B. Shutoff Valves:
 - 1. Install shutoff valve on each sump pump discharge.
 - 2. Install full port ball valve for piping NS 3 and smaller.
- C. Check Valves: Install swing-check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sump pump discharge.

3.07 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for hangers, supports, and anchor devices specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
 - 1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
 - 2. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
 - 3. Install stainless steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
 - 4. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
 - 5. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 - 6. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 - 7. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- B. Install hangers for cast iron and copper soil tubing and piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- C. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting, valve, and coupling.
- D. Support vertical cast iron and copper tubing and piping to comply with MSS SP-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent, but as a minimum at base and at each floor.

3.08 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect interior storm drainage piping to exterior storm drainage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect storm drainage piping to roof drains and storm drainage specialties.
 - 1. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
 - 2. Comply with requirements for cleanouts and drains specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
- E. Make connections in accordance with the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

3.09 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed storm drainage piping.
- B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in.
 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test storm drainage piping in accordance with procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired.
 - a. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced storm drainage piping until it has been tested and approved.
 - a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 3. Test Procedure:
 - a. Test storm drainage piping, except outside leaders, on completion of roughing-in.
 - b. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water.
 - c. From 15 minutes before inspection starts until completion of inspection, water level must not drop.
 - d. Inspect joints for leaks.
 4. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 5. Using compressed air to pressure test any portion of the sanitary, waste, drain and vent system that is ABS, PVC or any other plastic/polymer material IS STRICTLY PROHIBITED BY THE INTERNATIONAL PLUMBING CODE and the Manufacturer.
 - a. Any ABS, PVC or any other plastic/polymer piping tested with compressed air SHALL BE completely removed and replaced at NO ADDITIONAL COST to the owner.
 6. Prepare reports for tests and require corrective action.
- E. Test force-main piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:

1. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved.
 - a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
2. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials.
 - a. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
3. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
4. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.11 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

3.12 PROTECTION

- A. Protect piping and drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.
- C. Repair damage to adjacent materials caused by storm drainage piping installation.

3.13 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground storm drainage piping is to be the following:
 1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty, hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, non-pressure transition couplings.
- C. Underground storm drainage piping shall be the following:
 1. Solid-wall, schedule 40 PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, non-pressure transition couplings.
- D. Aboveground storm drainage force mains is to be the following:
 1. Hard copper tube, Type L copper pressure fittings, and soldered joints.

3.14 INSULATION

- A. Refer to section 220719 "PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION" for insulation requirements.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 221423
STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. General-purpose roof drains.
 - 2. Miscellaneous storm drainage piping specialties.
 - 3. Cleanouts.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. General-purpose roof drains.
 - 2. Miscellaneous storm drainage piping specialties.
 - 3. Cleanouts.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Provide drainage piping specialties are to bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL-PURPOSE ROOF DRAINS

- A. Cast-Iron Roof Drains:
 - 1. Cast-Iron, General-Purpose Roof Drains:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Eric'sons Dura Trench.
 - 2) Jay R. Smith Mfg Co; a division of Morris Group International.
 - 3) Josam Company.
 - 4) Marathon Roofing Products.
 - 5) MIFAB, Inc.
 - 6) Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - 7) Wade; a subsidiary of McWane Inc.
 - 8) WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - 9) Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - b. Standard: ASME A112.6.4.
 - c. Body Material: Cast iron.
 - d. Dimension of Body: Nominal 14-to 16-inch diameter.
 - e. Dome Material: Aluminum.
 - f. Combination flashing ring and gravel stop.
 - g. Outlet: Bottom.
 - h. Outlet Type: No-hub.
- B. Emergency Roof Drains:
 - 1. Cast iron General-Purpose Roof Drains:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) LSP Products Group.
 - 2) Marathon Roofing Products.

- 3) Plastic Oddities.
- 4) Portals Plus; Duravent Group.
- 5) Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
- 6) Town & Country Plastics, Inc.
- 7) Zurn Industries, LLC.
- b. Standard: ASME A112.6.4.
- c. Body Material: Cast iron
- d. Dome Material: Aluminum.
- e. Outlet: Bottom.
- f. Outlet Type: no hub
- g. Options:
 - 1) Combination flashing ring and gravel stop.
 - 2) Extension collars.
 - 3) Underdeck clamp.
 - 4) Expansion joint.
 - 5) Sump receiver plate.
 - 6) Vandal-proof dome.
 - 7) Internal standpipe or external water dam that is set a minimum 2-inches above the finished roof surface.
 - 8) 2" internal stand pipe or water dam.

2.02 MISCELLANEOUS STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Metal Downspout Nozzles:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg Co; a division of Morris Group International.
 - b. Josam Company.
 - c. Wade; a subsidiary of McWane Inc.
 - d. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- 2. Description: Nozzle with wall flange and mounting holes to cover rough opening and serve as anchor.
- 3. Size: Same as connected downspout.
- 4. Material: Cast bronze or nickel bronze nozzle and flange.
- 5. Piping Connection Type: No-hub.
- 6. Opening Protection: Birdscreen.

2.03 CLEANOUTS

- 1. Cast-Iron Exposed Cleanouts:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Jay R. Smith Mfg Co; a division of Morris Group International.
 - 2) Josam Company.
 - 3) MIFAB, Inc.
 - 4) Wade; a subsidiary of McWane Inc.
 - 5) WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - 6) Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - b. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M.

- c. Size: Same as connected branch.
 - d. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch (horizontal) or No-hub, cast-iron soil pipe test tee (vertical) as required to match connected piping.
 - e. Closure: Countersunk or raised-head , brass plug.
- 2. Closure Plug Size: Same as, or not more than, one size smaller than cleanout size.
- B. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg Co; a division of Morris Group International.
 - b. Josam Company.
 - c. MIFAB, Inc.
 - d. Wade; a subsidiary of McWane Inc.
 - e. WATTS; A Watts Water Technologies Company.
 - f. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
 - 3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
 - 4. Body: No-hub, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
 - 5. Closure Plug:
 - a. Material: Brass .
 - b. Head: Countersunk or raised.
 - c. Drilled and threaded for cover attachment screw.
 - d. Size: Same as, or not more than, one size smaller than cleanout size.
 - 6. Wall-Access Cover Plate: Round, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless steel cover plate with screw.
 - 7. Wall-Access Frame and Cover: Round, [nickel-bronze, copper-alloy, or stainless steel] wall-installation frame and cover.
- C. Plastic Floor Cleanouts:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Endura; a brand of IPEX.
 - b. IPS Corporation.
 - c. NDS Inc.
 - d. Plastic Oddities.
 - e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - f. Zurn Industries, LLC.
 - 2. Size: Same as connected branch.
 - 3. Body: PVC.
 - 4. Closure Plug: PVC.
 - 5. Riser: Drainage pipe fitting and riser to clean out of same material as drainage piping.
 - 6. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install roof drains in accordance with roof membrane manufacturer's written installation instructions at low points of roof areas.
 - 1. Install flashing collar or flange of roof drain to maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.

2. Install expansion joints, if indicated, in roof drain outlets.
3. Position roof drains for easy access and maintenance.
- B. Install downspout adapters on outlet of back-outlet parapet roof drains and connect to sheet metal downspouts.
- C. Install downspout nozzles at exposed bottom of conductors where they spill onto grade.
- D. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping in accordance with the following instructions unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Use cleanouts the same size as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
 2. Locate cleanouts at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
 3. Locate cleanouts at minimum intervals of 50 ft. for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 ft. for larger piping.
 4. Locate cleanouts at base of each vertical storm piping conductor.
- E. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- F. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- G. Install test tees in vertical conductors and near floor.
- H. Install wall cleanouts in vertical conductors. Install access door in wall if indicated.
- I. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies for penetrations of fire- and smoke-rated assemblies.
 1. Comply with requirements in "Penetration Firestopping."

3.02 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221414 "Storm Drainage Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF FLASHING

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece of metal unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.

3.04 CLEANING

- A. Clean piping specialties during installation and remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Protect piping specialties during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day and when work stops.

3.06 FINAL TURN OVER

- A. Prior to final turnover, all floor cleanouts and their cover plates shall be cleaned of any accumulated construction debris. If covers are damaged (gouged, excessively worn or displaying wear) this contractor shall replace the cover at no additional cost to the owner.

- B. Prior to final turnover, all Roof, Area, Deck, Terrace etc drains shall be cleaned of any accumulated construction debris. If dome strainers or inlet grates are damaged (gouged, excessively worn or displaying wear) this contractor shall replace them at no additional cost to the owner
- C. Confirm that all roof drains are set level and flush with the surrounding roof surfaces.
- D. Confirm that all secondary roof drains are set a minimum 2 inches above the surrounding roof surface.
- E. Confirm that all set screws are installed in the dome strainers or inlet grates and that none are missing.
- F. Confirm that all downspout nozzles associated with storm overflow system are secured to the façade and have been provided with bird screens.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 14 29 - SUMP PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Packaged drainage-pump units - submersible.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Packaged drainage-pump units - submersible.
- B. Product Data Submittals: For each product.
 - 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles.
 - 2. Rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- C. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting attachment details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps and controls.
 - 1. Indicate actual installed items by marking submittals with an arrow or box.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
- B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
- C. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace sump pumps that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Faulty operation of on-off sensing mechanism
 - b. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
 - c. Oil separator not removing hydrocarbons from the waste stream
 - 2. Warranty Period: 1 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain each type of sump pump from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

2.3 PACKAGED DRAINAGE-PUMP UNITS - SUBMERSIBLE

- A. Packaged Drainage-Pump Units - Submersible:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
 - b. Liberty Pumps.
 - c. Little Giant; a brand of Franklin Electric Co., Inc.
 - d. Park USA, a Northwest Pipe Company
 - e. Pentair Aurora; Pentair Pump Group.
 - f. Zoeller Company.
 - 2. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, automatic-operation, sump-mounted, sump-pump unit.
 - 3. Pump Type: Submersible, end-suction, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pump as defined in HI 14.1-14.2 and HI 14.3.
 - 4. Casing: Metal
 - 5. Impeller: Brass.
 - 6. Pump Seal: Mechanical.
 - 7. Motor: Hermetically sealed, capacitor-start type, with built-in overload protection.
 - 8. Power Cord: Three-conductor waterproof cable of length required, but not less than 72 inches, with grounding plug and cable-sealing assembly for connection at pump.
 - 9. Pump Discharge Piping: Field-fabricated, Type L Copper.
 - 10. Control Panel: Located in Janitors Closet with oil-separator.
 - 11. Control-Interface Features:
 - a. Remote Alarm Contacts: For remote alarm interface.
 - b. Building Automation System Interface: Auxiliary contacts in pump controls for interface to building automation system and capable of providing the following:
 - 1) On-off status of pump.
 - 2) Alarm status.
 - 12. Basin: Concrete, formed in place in the elevator pit
 - 13. Capacities and Characteristics: See "PUMP SCHEDULE" on drawing "P-001-LEGENDS, NOTES & SCHEDULES - PLUMBING"
 - 14. Oil-water separator:
 - a. Free standing
 - b. Minimum 50 GPM flow through capacity.
 - c. Oil storage capacity of 100 gallons

- d. NPS 2 vent connection to atmosphere
- e. Oil separator discharges indirectly to the sanitary or storm system.

2.4 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 220513 "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."
 - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough that driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
- B. Motors for submersible pumps are to be hermetically sealed.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for plumbing piping to verify actual locations of storm drainage piping connections before sump-pump installation.
- B. Coordinate sump location with structural foundation and elevator manufacturer.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Pump Installation Standards: Comply with HI 14.4 for installation of sump pumps.
- B. Wiring Method: Comply with requirements in "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221414 "Storm Drainage Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Sump pump discharge piping shall have a full-open valve and check valve. The valves shall be located as close as possible to the sump and shall be accessible.

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust control set points.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test, inspect, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Tests and inspections:
 - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection.

2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
5. Pumps and controls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain controls and pumps.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 223400 - FUEL-FIRED, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Commercial, gas-fired, high-efficiency, storage, domestic-water heaters.
 - 2. Domestic-water heater accessories.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Water Heaters: Product Data for water heater compliance with ASHRAE's "Advanced Energy Design Guides."
- C. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Equipment room drawing or BIM model, drawn to scale, on which the items described in this Section are shown and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of commercial, gas-fired, domestic-water heater.
- C. Domestic-Water Heater Labeling: Certified and labeled by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Source quality-control reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- B. For floor mounted, tank style water heaters, the concrete housekeeping pad shall be a minimum 4" larger than the water heater footprint and a minimum 4" in thickness (height). Chamfer edges of housekeeping pad.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.

- b. Faulty operation of controls.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
- 2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.
 - a. Commercial, Gas-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1) Storage Tank: Five years.
 - 2) Controls and Other Components: One year(s).

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Fabricate and label fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters to comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- C. ASME Compliance: Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, domestic-water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1
- D. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372.

2.2 COMMERCIAL, GAS-FIRED, HIGH-EFFICIENCY, STORAGE, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
 - b. American Water Heaters.
 - c. Bradford White Corporation.
 - d. Lochinvar
 - e. PVI; A WATTS Brand.
 - f. Raypak; a Rheem brand.
 - g. Rheem Manufacturing Company.
- 2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
- 3. Standard: ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3.
- 4. Description: Manufacturer's proprietary design to provide at least 92-95 percent combustion efficiency at optimum operating conditions.
- 5. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code steel with 150-psig minimum working-pressure rating.
 - a. Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
 - 1) NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends in accordance with ASME B1.20.1.
 - 2) NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged ends in accordance with ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless steel flanges and in accordance with ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.

- b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
- c. Lining: Glass complying with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.
- 6. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
 - b. Dip Tube: Required unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
 - c. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal with hose-end connection.
 - d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
 - e. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
 - f. Burner or Heat Exchanger: Comply with UL 795 or approved testing agency requirements for gas-fired, high-efficiency, domestic-water heaters and natural-gas fuel.
 - g. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
 - h. Safety Controls: Automatic, high-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
 - i. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
- B. For Capacity and Characteristics, see “GAS WATER HEATER SCHEDULE” on drawing P001 – LEGENDS, NOTES AND SCHEDULES – PLUMBING.

2.3 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

- A. Domestic-Water Expansion Tanks:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
 - b. AMTROL, Inc.
 - c. Elbi
 - d. Honeywell International Inc.
 - e. ProFlo; a Ferguson Enterprises, Inc. brand.
 - f. Watts.
 - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 3. Description: Steel, pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed, butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air pre-charge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
 - 4. Construction:

- a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
- c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.
- 5. Capacity and Characteristics:
 - a. see "EXPANSION TANK SCHEDULE" on drawing P001 – LEGENDS, NOTES AND SCHEDULES – PLUMBING
 - b. Air Pre-charge Pressure: 65 psig.
- B. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Include dimensions not less than base of domestic-water heater, and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4 with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
- C. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement in accordance with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- D. Heat-Trap Fittings: ASHRAE 90.2.
- E. Comply with requirements for ball-shutoff valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping,".
 - 1. Comply with requirements for balancing valves specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- F. Gas Shutoff Valves: ANSI Z21.15/CSA 9.1, manually operated. Furnish for installation in piping.
- G. Gas Pressure Regulators: ANSI Z21.18/CSA 6.3, appliance type. Include 2-psig pressure rating as required to match gas supply.
- H. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
 - 1. Gas-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4.
- I. Pressure Relief Valves: Include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater.
 - 1. Gas-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4.
- J. Vacuum Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4.
- K. Domestic-Water Heater Stands: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel stand for floor mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water. Provide dimension that will support bottom of domestic-water heater minimum of 18 inches above the floor.
- L. Domestic-Water Heater Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's factory-fabricated steel bracket for wall mounting, capable of supporting domestic-water heater and water.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect assembled domestic-water heaters and storage tanks specified to be ASME-code construction, in accordance with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- B. Hydrostatically test commercial domestic-water heaters and storage tanks to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating before shipment.
- C. Domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

- A. Commercial, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install commercial domestic-water heaters on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
1. Exception: Omit concrete bases for commercial domestic-water heaters if installation on stand, bracket, suspended platform, or directly on floor is indicated.
 2. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
 3. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
 4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
 5. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 6. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 7. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 8. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- B. Install domestic-water heaters level and plumb, in accordance with layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping,".
 2. Install check valve on domestic water supply piping to domestic water heaters and on domestic hot water return piping. Comply with requirements for check valves specified in Section 220523.14 "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping"
- C. Install gas-fired, domestic-water heaters in accordance with NFPA 54.
1. Install gas shutoff valves on gas supply piping to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters without shutoff valves.
 2. Install gas pressure regulators on gas supplies to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters without gas pressure regulators if gas pressure regulators are required to reduce gas pressure at burner.
 3. Install automatic gas valves on gas supplies to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters if required for operation of safety control.
 4. Comply with requirements for gas shutoff valves, gas pressure regulators, and automatic gas valves specified in Section 221114 "Natural-Gas Piping."
- D. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend domestic-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- E. Install combination temperature-and-pressure (P&T) relief valves in water piping for domestic-water heaters without storage. Extend domestic-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping

same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain or sanitary receptor.

1. Do not pipe the P&T relief piping to the water heater drain pan.
 2. P&T relief piping shall be hard drawn copper, Type-M. Do not use PVC, CPVC or any other plastic, polymer material as the relief piping.
- F. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for domestic-water heaters that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- G. Install thermometer on outlet piping of domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- H. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of domestic-water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.
- I. Fill domestic-water heaters with water.
- J. Charge domestic-water expansion tanks with air to required system pressure.
- K. Install dielectric fittings in all locations where piping of dissimilar metals is to be joined. The wetted surface of the dielectric fitting contacted by potable water shall contain less than 0.25 percent of lead by weight.

3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for domestic-water piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- B. Comply with requirements for gas piping specified in Section 221114 "Natural-Gas Piping."
- C. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain commercial, gas-fired, storage, domestic-water heaters. Training shall be a minimum of one hour(s).

END OF SECTION

SECTION 224200 - COMMERCIAL PLUMBING FIXTURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes
 1. Water Closets
 2. Urinals
 3. Lavatories
 4. Sinks
 5. Water Coolers
 6. Mop Basin

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Effective Flush Volume: Average of two reduced flushes and one full flush per fixture.
- B. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- C. PMMA: Polymethyl methacrylate, also known as "acrylic."
- D. Remote Water Closet: Located more than 30 feet from other drain line connections or fixture and where less than 1.5 drainage fixture units are upstream of the drain line connection.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 1. Water closets: Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 2. Urinals: Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 3. Lavatories: Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 4. Sinks: Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 5. Water Coolers: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 6. Mop Basins: Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes

7. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data:
 1. For flushometer valves and electronic sensors to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
- B. Servicing and adjustments for automatic faucets.
- C. Maintenance Data: For pressure water coolers and bottle filling stations to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Water Closet Flushometer-Valve Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one of each type.
 2. Urinal Flushometer-Valve Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one of each type
 3. Lavatory Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
 4. Lavatory Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
 5. Water Cooler Filter Cartridges: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each type and size indicated, but no fewer than 1 of each.
 6. Service Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
 7. Service Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 Refer to drawing **P0.01 PLUMBING LEGEND, NOTES AND SCHEDULES** for basis of design fixture specifications and alternate manufacturers.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Lavatory
 1. Lavatory faucets intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act (SDWA), requirements of the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ), and with NSF 61/NSF 372, or be certified in compliance with NSF 61/NSF 372 by an American National Standards Institute (ANSI) accredited third-

party certification body, that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.

B. Water Cooler

1. Pressure water coolers and bottle filling stations intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act (SDWA), requirements of the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ), and with NSF 61 or NSF 372, or be certified in compliance with NSF 61 or NSF 372 by an ANSI-accredited third-party certification body, that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.
2. Comply with ASHRAE 34 for water coolers. Provide HFC 134a (tetrafluoroethane) refrigerant unless otherwise indicated.
3. Comply with UL 399.
4. Comply with ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.
5. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
6. Comply with NSF 42 and NSF 53 for water filters for water coolers and bottle filling stations.
7. Comply with ICC A117.1 for accessible water coolers and bottle filling stations.

2.3 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Non-shrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000 psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before water-closet, urinal, lavatory, sink, water cooler, and[mop basin] installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where water-closet, urinal, lavatory, sink, water cooler, and[mop basin] will be installed.
- C. Examine walls and counters for suitable conditions where lavatories and sinks will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Water-Closet Installation:

- a. Install level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
 - b. Install floor-mounted water closets on bowl-to-drain connecting fitting attachments to piping or building substrate.
 - c. Install accessible, wall-mounted water closets at mounting height for handicapped/elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
2. Flushometer-Valve Installation:
- a. Install flushometer-valve, water-supply fitting on each supply to each water closet.
 - b. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
 - c. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible water closets with handle mounted on open side of water closet.
 - d. Install actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.
 - e. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.
 - f. Provide YJ Bracket on flush valve top spud.
3. Install toilet seats on water closets.
4. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:
- a. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork.
 - b. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
 - c. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
5. Joint Sealing:
- a. Seal joints between water closets and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
 - b. Match sealant color to water-closet color.
 - c. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

B. Urinal Installation:

- a. Install urinals level and plumb according to rough-in drawings.
 - b. Install wall-hung, back-outlet urinals onto waste fitting seals and attached to supports.
 - c. Install wall-hung, bottom-outlet urinals with tubular waste piping attached to supports.
 - d. Install accessible, wall-mounted urinals at mounting height for the handicapped/elderly, according to ICC A117.1.
2. Support Installation:
- a. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung urinals.
 - b. Use off-floor carriers with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet urinals.
 - c. Use carriers without waste fitting for urinals with tubular waste piping.
 - d. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible urinals.
3. Flushometer-Valve Installation:
- a. Install flushometer-valve water-supply fitting on each supply to each urinal.
 - b. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
 - c. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible urinals with handle mounted on open side of compartment.
 - d. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.
4. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:

- a. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations.
 - b. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
 - c. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
 5. Joint Sealing:
 - a. Seal joints between urinals and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
 - b. Match sealant color to urinal color.
 - c. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- C. Lavatory Installation
 1. Install lavatories level and plumb in accordance with roughing-in drawings.
 2. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted lavatories.
 3. Install accessible wall-mounted lavatories at handicapped/elderly mounting height for people with disabilities or the elderly, in accordance with ICC A117.1.
 4. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
 5. Seal joints between lavatories, counters, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
 6. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible lavatories. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."
 7. Provide thermostatic protection at all lavatories. Thermostatic mixing valve shall conform to ASSE 1070. Set outlet temperature to 105 degrees Fahrenheit.
- D. Sink Installation
 1. Install sinks level and plumb in accordance with rough-in drawings.
 2. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung sinks.
 3. Install wall-mounted sinks at accessible mounting height in accordance with ICC A117.1.
 4. Set floor-mounted sinks in leveling bed of cement grout.
 5. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each sink faucet.
 - a. Exception: Use ball valves if supply stops are not specified with sink. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523 "Valves for Plumbing Piping".
 - b. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
 6. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
 7. Seal joints between sinks and counters, floors, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
 8. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible sinks. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."
- E. Water Cooler Installation

1. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings. For fixtures indicated for children, install at height required by authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Set freestanding, pressure water coolers on floor.
3. Install off-the-floor carrier supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted fixtures.
4. Install mounting frames, affixed to building construction, and attach recessed, pressure water coolers, and bottle filling stations to mounting frames.
5. Install water-supply piping with shutoff valve on supply to each fixture to be connected to domestic-water distribution piping. Use ball valve. Install valves in locations where they can be easily reached for operation. Valves are specified in Section 220523 "Valves for Plumbing Piping"
6. Install trap and waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be connected to sanitary drainage system.
7. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons where required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
8. Seal joints between fixtures and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant, silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

F. Mop Basin Installation

1. Install mop basin level and plumb in accordance with rough-in drawings.
2. Set floor-mounted sinks in leveling bed of cement grout.
3. Use ball valves with mop basin service faucet. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping".
4. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
5. Seal joints between mop basin and floors and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- B. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- C. Connect water closets with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match water closets.
- D. Connect urinals with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match urinals.
- E. Where installing piping adjacent to water closets, allow space for service and maintenance.
- F. Where installing piping adjacent to urinals, allow space for service and maintenance.

- G. Install shutoff valve on water supply to each fixture. Install valve upstream from filter for water cooler. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523 "Valves for Plumbing Piping".
- H. Connect lavatories with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- I. Connect sinks with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- J. Connect water coolers with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- K. Connect mop basin with water supplies, ball valves, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.

3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust water closets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning water closets, fittings, and controls.
- B. Operate and adjust urinals and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning urinals, fittings, and controls.
- C. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.
- D. Operate and adjust lavatory and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning lavatory, fittings, and controls.
- E. Operate and adjust sinks and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning sinks, fittings, and controls.
- F. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.
- G. Adjust fixture flow regulators for proper flow and stream height.
- H. Adjust pressure water-cooler temperature settings.
- I. Operate and adjust service faucet with mop basin. Replace if damaged or malfunctioning.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Water Closets
 - 1. Clean water closets and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
 - 2. Install protective covering for installed water closets and fittings.
 - 3. Do not allow use of water closets for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.
- B. Urinals
 - 1. Clean urinals and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
 - 2. Install protective covering for installed urinals and fittings.
 - 3. Do not allow use of urinals for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.
- C. Lavatories
 - 1. After completing installation of lavatories, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
 - 2. Clean lavatories, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
 - 3. Provide protective covering for installed lavatories and fittings.
 - 4. Do not allow use of lavatories for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.
- D. Sinks
 - 1. After completing installation of sinks, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
 - 2. Clean sinks, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
 - 3. Provide protective covering for installed sinks and fittings.
 - 4. Do not allow use of sinks for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.
- E. Water Coolers
 - 1. After installing fixture, inspect unit. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.
 - 2. Clean fixtures, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 3. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures.
 - 4. Do not allow use of fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.
- F. Mop Bains
 - 1. After completing installation of mop basin, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
 - 2. Clean mop basin, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
 - 3. Provide protective covering for installed mop basin and service faucet.
 - 4. Do not allow use of mop basin for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224200

SECTION 230100 - GENERAL HVAC REQUIREMENTS**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Provide – To furnish and install, complete, fully coordinated, and ready of operation.
- B. Contractor – mechanical subcontractor, or contractor engaged to perform work specified under Division 23.

1.2 SCOPE OF WORK:

- A. The provisions of this Section apply to all Division 23 work.
- B. Include provisions of General Conditions as part of this section.
- C. Provide all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary for the completion of all Mechanical work shown, specified or implied, complete, and ready for operation.

1.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate HVAC work with all other trades; provide approved submittals to appropriate trades to coordinate installation of requirements the actual equipment to be installed.
- B. Protect mechanical equipment from damage during construction, when installation is complete clean equipment and touch up paint.
- C. Install all equipment to provide normal service access to all components, install in accordance with manufacturer's instruction. If manufacturer's instructions conflict with contract documents obtain engineer of records decision before proceeding.
- D. All work shall conform to the contract documents and all codes, standards and requirements listed below in the Regulatory Requirements section.
- E. Cooperate with all other crafts/trades. Perform work in a timely manner. Do not interfere with the work of other trades.
- F. Contractor shall provide shop drawings verifying clearances routings and tie-ins on piping and ductwork prior to fabrication and installation of new work.
- G. If systems interfere or conflict the Architect shall decide which equipment to relocate regardless of which was installed first.
- H. The contractor shall be responsible for fire stopping wall penetrations at fire rated walls where ductwork, control conduit, wiring, or piping are installed. Fire stopping shall be performed immediately after the work is installed. Do not leave penetrations unprotected overnight.

1.4 DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS

- A. HVAC drawings and specifications are intended to be worked together as a set by the contractor, drawings are not standalone.
- B. HVAC drawings are diagrammatic and subject to requirements of the architectural drawings and conditions existing in the field. Mechanical drawings indicate generally the location of components and are not intended to show all fittings or all details of the work. Mechanical drawings are intended to show size, capacity, approximate location, direction, and general

relationship of the work, but not exact detail or arrangement.

- C. Coordinate dimensions with all project drawings and field conditions. Do not scale HVAC drawings for locations of system components. Coordinate location of air devices, pipe, ductwork, lighting, ceiling grids, sprinkler piping, sprinkler heads, equipment and equipment pads and supports with architectural, structural, and electrical drawings as well as conditions existing in the field and layout work to fit in ceiling grids, lighting, and other parts.
- D. Make no changes that alter the intent or scope of the work without written instructions from the architect. In case of doubt, submit a formal request for information (RFI) to the architect and obtain the architect's response before proceeding with work. Where doubt arises as to the meaning of the HVAC drawings and specifications, obtain the Architect's written interpretation before proceeding. Failure to follow this instruction shall make the contractor liable for damage to other work, and responsible for removing and repairing defective or mis-located work in proper manner.
- E. Make minor adjustments in the field as required to provide optimum results and to facilitate ease of service, efficient operation, and best appearance. Minor adjustments are those that do not alter design intent, scope of the work or operation of HVAC systems.

1.5 REFERENCES

- A. AGA: American Gas Association.
- B. ANSI: American National Standards Institute, Inc.
- C. AMCA: Air Movement & Control Association.
- D. ARI: American Refrigeration Institute.
- E. ASHRAE: American Society of Heating, Refrigeration and Air Conditioning Engineers.
- F. ASME: American Society for Mechanical Engineers.
- G. ASSE: American Society of Sanitary Engineers.
- H. ASTM: American Society of Testing and Materials.
- I. AWWA: American Water Works Association.
- J. CISPI: Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute.
- K. FM: Factory Mutual.
- L. NAIMA: North American Insulation Manufacturers Association.
- M. NEMA: National Electrical Manufacturer's Association.
- N. NFPA: National Fire Protection Association.
- O. NSF: National Sanitation Foundation.
- P. MSS: Manufacturer's Standardization Society of the Valve and Fitting Industry.
- Q. PDI: Plumbing and Drainage Institute.
- R. SMACNA: Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractor's National Association.
- S. UL: Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.

1.6 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with the current edition, unless otherwise noted, of the following codes and standards.
 - 1. 2021 Arkansas State Codes –Building, Plumbing, Fire Protection, Fuel Gas, and Mechanical Codes.
 - 2. ADA - American's with Disabilities Act

3. ASHRAE 15 - Safety Code for Mechanical Refrigeration
4. ASHRAE 62 - Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality
5. ASME - Boiler and Pressure Code
6. NFPA 13 - Installation of Sprinkler Systems
7. NFPA 70 – 2020 National Electrical Code with Amendments.
8. NFPA 90A - Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems
9. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code
10. SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible -Current Edition.
11. SMACNA HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual -Current Edition
12. SMACNA Guidelines for Roof Mounted Outdoor Air Conditioner Installation -Current Edition
13. SMACNA Fire Smoke and radiation Damper Installation Guide for HVAC -Current Edition

B. Permits, Licenses, Inspections and Fees.

1. Contractor shall give required notices, file drawings, obtain and pay for permits, deposits, and fees necessary for the installation of the Division 23 HVAC work.
2. Contractor shall obtain and pay for inspections required by laws, ordinances, rules, regulations, or public authority having jurisdiction.
3. Contractor shall obtain and pay for certificates of such inspections and file such certificates with the Owner.

1.7 QUALIFICATION OF THE CONTRACTOR AND SUBCONTRACTORS

- A. The mechanical contractor shall have been in business as a licensed HVAC contractor for a minimum of 3 years prior to the date of opening bids and shall have been pre-qualified as a bidder by the owner.
- B. He shall have a satisfactory experience record with air conditioning installations of character and scope comparable with this project, within the last 3 years prior to the date of opening bids.
- C. He shall have had an established service department capable of providing service inspection or full maintenance contracts.
- D. If the HVAC contractor with the Engineer's approval, uses a sub-contractor to provide another discipline that the contractor does not normally furnish, that sub-subcontractor shall meet the same qualifications.

1.8 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide new standard, first-grade materials throughout.
- B. Multiple items of similar equipment shall be the product of the same manufacturer.
- C. Substitutions:
 1. Comply with the provisions of Division 1 for product requirements, substitutions and alternates, and the following.
 2. When several manufacturers are named in the specifications, the corresponding products and models made by the specified manufacturers will be accepted and Contractor may base his bid on any one of those products. However, if the Contractor's bid is based on products other than the scheduled or specified basis of design, it shall be understood that there will be no extra cost involved whatsoever, and the effect on other trades has been included in

the Contractor's proposal. Coordination with other trades for substituted equipment or use of products other than the named basis of design shall be the responsibility of the Contractor furnishing the equipment.

3. The basis of design manufacturer's equipment has been used to determine space requirements. Should another approved manufacturer's equipment be used in preparing proposals, Contractor shall be responsible for determining that said equipment will fit space allocated. Submission of shop drawings or product data on such equipment shall be considered as indicating that the Contractor has reviewed the space requirements and the submitted equipment will fit the space allocated with due consideration given to access required for maintenance and code purposes.
4. Each bidder may submit to the Architect a list of any substitutes which he proposes to use in lieu of the equipment or material named in the specifications with a request for the approval of proposed substitutes. To be considered, such requests must be delivered to the office of the Architect not later than 10 days prior to the bid due date. The submittal shall include the following:
 - a. Specific equipment or material proposed for substitution giving manufacturer, catalog, and model number.
 - b. All performance and dimensional data necessary for comparison of the proposed substitute with the equipment or material specified.
 - c. A statement setting forth any changes in other materials, equipment, or other Work that incorporation of the substitute may require.
5. The burden of proof of the merit of the proposed substitute is upon the proposer. The Architect's decision of approval or disapproval of a proposed substitution is final.
6. All bidders will be advised by addenda of proposed substitutes which are found to be acceptable. Do not rely upon approvals made in any other manner.

1.9 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Division 1 and Division 23 sections for submittals and submittal procedures.
- B. Submittals shall include product information for all equipment and components specified or shown on the plans, and contractor shop drawings that provide details, dimensions and coordination of the work with all other disciplines.
- C. For each type of product, equipment, material, and services specified in Division 23 specification sections provide product data that is clearly marked indicating compliance with the HVAC drawing and specifications. Submittals shall be provided with specified shop drawings. Provide to the architect or prime consultant, a complete submittal fully marked to identify exactly what shall be provided including the following minimal information:
 1. All submittals shall be provided in electronic pdf format and shall be organized in accordance with the HVAC specification numbering system.
 2. All submittals shall be completely marked with manufacturer's names, model number, dimensions, weights, performance ratings, efficiencies, features, and accessories to be provided.
 3. Capacities, dimensions, weights, etc. shall be in the terms specified in the inch-pound system.

4. Call attention to and clearly identify deviations from specified equipment and components regarding operation and physical dimensions, capacities, and performance.
 5. Performance curves for equipment such as fans and pumps shall be included and shall be clearly marked with operating points, and efficiency.
- D. The contractor shall obtain reviewed submittals from the Engineer that have been returned and marked as follows:
1. APPROVED – Contractor approved to order equipment and proceed with the work.
 2. APPROVED AS NOTED – Contractor approved to order equipment and proceed with the work after making corrections noted by the engineer and coordinating corrections with all disciplines. Corrected submittal shall be re-submitted for record purposes to the General Contractor, and A/E team.
 3. REVISE AND RESUBMIT – Contractor to correct submittal and resubmit to the A/E team for approval. Re-submittal shall be clearly marked as such.
- E. Final equipment or material orders shall not be placed until submittals have been returned marked either “APPROVED” OR “APPROVED AS NOTED” without exception.
- F. Shop Drawings shall be provided for all areas of the building and include the following:
1. Before starting any work submit and obtain approved shop drawings from the Engineer of Record.
 2. No work shall begin and not equipment shall be ordered until shop drawings have been marked by the engineer of record as “APPROVED” or “APPROVED AS NOTED”. Failure to submit shop drawings will make the Contractor responsible for changes required to facilitate installation of mechanical work and other affected disciplines.
 3. Shop drawings shall fully detail all mechanical work to be performed. Shop drawings shall be submitted in electronic pdf format and shall comply with the following:
 4. All shop drawings shall be drawn to 1/4" = 1'-0" scale. 1/8" – 1'-0" scale may be used when approved by the engineer of record.
 5. Ductwork shop drawing shall include the following at a minimum:
 - a. Bottom of duct elevations.
 - b. Dimensions from columns lines.
 - c. Duct sizes (including insulation)
 - d. Insulation thickness.
 - e. Sheet metal gauges.
 - f. Ductwork pressure classes.
 - g. Ductwork seal class.
 - h. Locations of turning vanes, manual dampers, remote damper operators, control dampers and control devices.
 - i. Ductwork construction details.
 - j. Ductwork support details and support locations.

1.10 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

- A. Visiting Site: Visit site before and during construction to become familiar with installed work that may affect HVAC work. No additional allowance will be granted because of lack of knowledge of such conditions.
- B. Cause as little interference or interruption of existing services as possible. Schedule work which will cause interference or interruption in advance with Owner, authorities having jurisdiction, and all affected trades.

1.11 PROJECT CLOSE-OUTS

- A. Submit project close out documents after the final inspection and all punch list items are complete.
- B. Record Drawings shall include ductwork, piping and control system record drawings shall be provided and shall include the following:
 - 1. Record drawings shall be an accurate record of corrections, variations, and deviations, including those required by change orders to the contract documents.
 - 2. Record changes daily on a set of plans kept at the job site.
 - 3. Submit record drawing marked as noted above to Architect for review prior to request for final payment.
 - 4. Marked record drawings will be returned to Contractor for use in preparing final record drawings.
 - 5. Final Record Drawings: Provide one complete set of prints, and one electronic copy in AutoCAD or Revit format indicating the actual completed installation of the work.
- C. Prior to the issuance of a certificate for final payment, submit to Architect and obtain his approval of the following:
 - 1. Record drawings – As noted above.
 - 2. Air balance report (Electronic PDF).
 - 3. Equipment Submittal Data (Electronic PDF).
 - 4. Equipment operating and maintenance manuals (Electronic PDF and 2 hard copies).
 - 5. Equipment warranty dates and guarantees (Electronic PDF and 2 hard copies).
 - 6. List of Owner's Personnel who have received operating and maintenance instructions.
 - 7. Letter certifying and signed by Owner or his representative that the Owner or his representative has received the extra materials specified for each system.

1.12 TEMPORARY USE OF HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEMS DURING CONSTRUCTION

- A. Use of newly installed mechanical equipment to provide heating, air conditioning, and ventilation during construction will be permitted subject to compliance with the following provisions:
 - 1. The HVAC/Control contractor shall provide written procedures detailing parties responsible for operating the equipment and the manner in which the equipment will be operated and controlled during temporary use.
 - 2. Equipment specified to have factory supervised start-up shall have had such start-up and factory start-up reports shall have been submitted and certified by the contractor to contain no deficiencies.

3. All safeties, and interlocks shall be installed and functionally tested.
4. All smoke detectors and fire alarm system interlocks shall have been installed and functionally tested.
5. Automatic temperature control systems for preheat coils shall function properly and all safety controls shall function to prevent coil freeze-up damage.
6. Specified air filters shall be installed. Filters shall be changed when deemed dirty by the architect until acceptance of the systems by the owner. Clean filters shall be provided prior to test, adjust and balance of the HVAC systems.
7. All return air and outside air openings shall have temporary filter media installed over inlet side of opening and secured airtight there to.
8. Prior to final inspection, the equipment or parts used which show wear and tear beyond normal, shall be replaced with identical replacements, at no additional cost to the Owner.
9. Warranty dates shall start at Date of Substantial Completion of the entire project, operation of the equipment on a temporary basis during construction does not constitute substantial completion or beneficial use by the owner.
10. The contractor shall maintain all equipment during temporary use, including routine maintenance, and repairs of any component failures.

B. This paragraph shall not reduce the requirements of the mechanical specification sections.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS - Not Used

PART 3 - EXECUTION - Not Used

END OF SECTION 230100

SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Equipment labels.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Brady Corporation.
 - b. Brimar Industries, Inc.
 - c. Carlton Industries, LP.
 - d. Champion America.
 - e. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
 - f. Emedco.
 - g. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
 - h. LEM Products Inc.
 - i. Marking Services, Inc.
 - j. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
 - 2. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
 - 3. Letter Color: White.
 - 4. Background Color: Black.
 - 5. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

6. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
 7. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
 8. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
 9. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

END OF SECTION 230553

SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Air Systems.
 - 2. Testing, adjusting, and balancing of equipment.
 - 3. HVAC-control system verification.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- E. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.
- F. TDH: Total dynamic head.
- G. UFAD: Underfloor air distribution.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report, as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures, as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. System Readiness Checklists: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit system readiness checklists, as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- E. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in "Examination" Article.
- F. Certified TAB reports.

- G. Sample report forms.
- H. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
 - 1. Instrument type and make.
 - 2. Serial number.
 - 3. Application.
 - 4. Dates of use.
 - 5. Dates of calibration.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Specialists Qualifications, Certified by AABC:
 - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.
 - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.
- B. TAB Specialists Qualifications, Certified by NEBB:
 - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by NEBB.
 - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by NEBB.
- C. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."
- D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."
- E. Code and AHJ Compliance: TAB is required to comply with governing codes and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.
- B. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.

- B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gauge cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data, including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for HVAC to verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas and sealed.
- F. Examine equipment performance data, including fan and pump curves.
 - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
 - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- K. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- L. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- M. Examine control dampers for proper installation for their intended function of isolating, throttling, diverting, or mixing air flows.
- N. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:
 - 1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
 - 2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.

3. Instrumentation to be used.
 4. Sample forms with specific identification for all equipment.
- B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
1. Airside:
 - a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
 - b. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.
 - c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
 - d. Clean filters are installed.
 - e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
 - f. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
 - g. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
 - h. Ceilings are installed.
 - i. Windows and doors are installed.
 - j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system in accordance with the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance" or NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment casings for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
 1. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
 2. Where holes for probes are required in piping or hydronic equipment, install pressure and temperature test plugs to seal systems.
 3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish in accordance with Section 230713 "Duct Insulation," Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation," and Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

3.4 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC EQUIPMENT

- A. Test, adjust, and balance HVAC equipment indicated on Drawings, including, but not limited to, the following:
 1. Motors.
 2. Fans and ventilators.
 3. Unit heaters.

4. Rooftop air-conditioning units.
5. Split-system air conditioners.
6. Coils.

3.5 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Cross check the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' Record drawings duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.

3.6 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 1. Measure total airflow.
 - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
 - b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by main Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses close to the fan and prior to any outlets, to obtain total airflow.
 - c. Where duct conditions are unsuitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
 - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
 - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.

- c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
 - d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
 3. Review Contractor-prepared shop drawings and Record drawings to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
 4. Obtain approval from Owner for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
 5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.
1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
 2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
 3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.
1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
 2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
 3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
 4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.
- D. Verify final system conditions.
1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to design if necessary.
 2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
 3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, speed, volts, amps, and static profile.
 4. Mark all final settings.
 5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
 6. Measure and record all operating data.
 7. Record final fan-performance data.

3.7 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
 2. Motor horsepower rating.
 3. Motor rpm.
 4. Phase and hertz.
 5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.

6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
7. Starter size and thermal-protection-element rating.
8. Service factor and frame size.

- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test manual bypass of controller to prove proper operation.

3.8 PROCEDURES FOR AIR-COOLED CONDENSING UNITS

- A. Verify proper rotation of fan(s).
- B. Measure and record entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
- C. Measure and record entering and leaving refrigerant pressures.
- D. Measure and record operating data of compressor(s), fan(s), and motors.

3.9 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

- A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:
 1. Nameplate data.
 2. Airflow.
 3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
 4. Air pressure drop.
 5. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load.
 6. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
 7. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.
- B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:
 1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 3. Airflow.
 4. Air pressure drop.
 5. Entering and leaving refrigerant pressure and temperatures.

3.10 HVAC CONTROLS VERIFICATION

- A. In conjunction with system balancing, perform the following:
 1. Verify HVAC control system is operating within the design limitations.
 2. Confirm that the sequences of operation are in compliance with Contract Documents.
 3. Verify that controllers are calibrated and function as intended.
 4. Verify that controller set points are as indicated.
 5. Verify the operation of lockout or interlock systems.
 6. Verify the operation of damper actuators.
 7. Verify that controlled devices are properly installed and connected to correct controller.
 8. Verify that controlled devices travel freely and are in position indicated by controller: open, closed, or modulating.

9. Verify location and installation of sensors to ensure that they sense only intended temperature, humidity, or pressure.

- B. Reporting: Include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and variations from indicated conditions.

3.11 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:

1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent. If design value is less than 100 cfm, within 10 cfm.
2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent. If design value is less than 100 cfm, within 10 cfm.

- B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

3.12 PROGRESS REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for system-balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to system-balancing devices, to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance-measuring and -balancing devices.

- B. Status Reports: Prepare biweekly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

3.13 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.

1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.

- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:

1. Fan curves.
2. Manufacturers' test data.
3. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
4. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.

- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:

1. Title page.
 2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
 3. Project name.
 4. Project location.
 5. Architect's name and address.
 6. Engineer's name and address.
 7. Contractor's name and address.
 8. Report date.
 9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
 10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
 11. Summary of contents, including the following:
 - a. Indicated versus final performance.
 - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
 - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
 12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
 13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
 14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
 15. Test conditions for fans performance forms, including the following:
 - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
 - b. Conditions of filters.
 - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
 - d. Heating coil, dry-bulb conditions.
 - e. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
 - f. Fan drive settings, including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
 - g. Variable-frequency controller settings for variable-air-volume systems.
 - h. Settings for pressure controller(s).
 - i. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
 2. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
 3. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
 - a. Unit identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and unit size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Unit arrangement and class.
 - g. Discharge arrangement.

- h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - j. Number, make, and size of belts.
 - k. Number, type, and size of filters.
 - 2. Motor Data:
 - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and speed.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
 - c. Fan speed.
 - d. Inlet and discharge static pressure in inches wg.
 - e. For each filter bank, filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - i. List for each internal component with pressure-drop, static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - j. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
 - k. Return airflow in cfm.
 - l. Outdoor-air damper position.
 - m. Return-air damper position.
- F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:
 - 1. Coil Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Coil type.
 - d. Number of rows.
 - e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
 - f. Make and model number.
 - g. Face area in sq. ft..
 - h. Tube size in NPS.
 - i. Tube and fin materials.
 - j. Circuiting arrangement.
 - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Average face velocity in fpm.
 - c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.

- d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- h. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
- i. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
- j. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.
- k. Inlet steam pressure in psig.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
- c. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
- d. Air temperature differential in deg F.
- e. Entering-air static pressure in inches wg.
- f. Leaving-air static pressure in inches wg.
- g. Air static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- h. Low-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
- i. High-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
- j. Manifold pressure in psig.
- k. High-temperature-limit setting in deg F.
- l. Operating set point in Btu/h.
- m. Motor voltage at each connection.
- n. Motor amperage for each phase.
- o. Heating value of fuel in Btu/h.

G. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:

1. Fan Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Make and type.
- d. Model number and size.
- e. Manufacturer's serial number.
- f. Arrangement and class.
- g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.

2. Motor Data:

- a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
- b. Horsepower and speed.
- c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
- d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
- e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
- f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
- g. Number, make, and size of belts.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
 - c. Fan speed.
 - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
 - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.
- H. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
 1. Report Data:
 - a. System fan and air-handling-unit number.
 - b. Location and zone.
 - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
 - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
 - e. Duct size in inches.
 - f. Duct area in sq. ft..
 - g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
 - h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
 - i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
 - j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
 - k. Barometric pressure in psig.

3.14 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

- A. The TAB specialist's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Commissioning Authority.
- B. Commissioning Authority shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to the lesser of either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
- C. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- D. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the TAB shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
- E. If recheck measurements find the number of failed measurements noncompliant with requirements indicated, proceed as follows:
 1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection. All changes shall be tracked to show changes made to previous report.
 2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may pursue others Contract options to complete TAB work.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.15 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 230593

SECTION 230713 - DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Duct insulation.
- B. Duct Liner.
- C. Insulation jackets.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 09 90 00 - Painting and Coating: Painting insulation jackets.
- B. Section 22 05 53 - Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment.
- C. Section 23 05 53 - Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM B 209 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate; 2007.
- B. ASTM B 209M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate Metric; 2007.
- C. ASTM C 518 - Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus; 2004.
- D. ASTM C 553 - Specification for Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Commercial and Industrial Applications; 2002.
- E. ASTM C 612 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation; 2004.
- F. ASTM C 916 - Standard Specification for Adhesives for Duct Thermal Insulation; 1985 (Reapproved 2007).
- G. ASTM C 1071 - Standard Specification for Fibrous Glass Duct Lining Insulation (Thermal and Sound Absorbing Material); 2005.
- H. ASTM C 1338 - Standard Test Method for Determining Fungi Resistance of Insulation Materials and Facings; 2000.
- I. ASTM E 84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2010.
- J. ASTM E 96/E 96M - Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials; 2005.

- K. ASTM G 21 - Standard Practice for Determining Resistance of Synthetic Polymeric Materials to Fungi; 1996 (Reapproved 2002).
- L. NFPA 255 - Standard Method of Test of Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; National Fire Protection Association; 2006.
- M. SMACNA (DCS) - HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible; Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association; 2005.
- N. UL 723 - Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide product description, thermal characteristics, list of materials and thickness for each service.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products of the type specified in this section with not less than three years of documented experience.
- B. Applicator Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the type of work specified in this section, with minimum 3 years of experience and approved by manufacturer.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Accept materials on site in original factory packaging, labelled with manufacturer's identification, including product density and thickness.
- B. Protect insulation from weather and construction traffic, dirt, water, chemical, and mechanical damage, by storing in original wrapping.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures and conditions required by manufacturers of adhesives, mastics, and insulation cements.
- B. Maintain temperature during and after installation for minimum period of 24 hours.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL PRODUCTS OF THIS SECTION

- A. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread/Smoke developed index of 25/50, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84, NFPA 255, or UL 723.

2.2 GLASS FIBER, FLEXIBLE

- A. Manufacturer:
 - 1. Knauf Insulation: www.knaufusa.com.
 - 2. Johns Manville Corporation: www.jm.com.
 - 3. Owens Corning Corp: www.owenscorning.com.
 - 4. CertainTeed Corporation: www.certainteed.com.
- B. Insulation: ASTM C 553; flexible, noncombustible blanket.
 - 1. 'K' value: 0.26 at 75 degrees F, when tested in accordance with ASTM C 518.
 - 2. Maximum Service Temperature: 250 degrees F.
 - 3. Maximum Water Vapor Sorption: 5.0 percent by weight.
- C. Vapor Barrier Jacket:
 - 1. Kraft paper with glass fiber yarn and bonded to aluminized film.
 - 2. Moisture Vapor Permeability: 0.02 perm inch, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 96/E 96M.
 - 3. Secure with pressure sensitive tape.
- D. Tie Wire: Annealed steel, 16 gage.

2.3 JACKETS

- A. Exterior exposed ductwork: Flexible weather-proof covering equal to Polyguard Alumaguard.

2.4 DUCT LINER

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Knauf Insulation: www.knaufusa.com.
 - 2. Johns Manville Corporation: www.jm.com.
 - 3. Owens Corning Corp: www.owenscorning.com.
 - 4. CertainTeed Corporation: www.certainteed.com.
- B. Insulation: Non-corrosive, incombustible glass fiber complying with ASTM C 1071; flexible blanket, rigid board, and preformed round liner board; impregnated surface and edges coated with poly vinyl acetate polymer.
 - 1. Apparent Thermal Conductivity: Maximum of 0.31 at 75 degrees F.
 - 2. Service Temperature: Up to 250 degrees F.
 - 3. Rated Velocity on Coated Air Side for Air Erosion: 5,000 fpm, minimum.
 - 4. Minimum Noise Reduction Coefficients:
 - a. 1 inch Thickness: 0.45.
 - b. 1-1/2 inches Thickness: 0.60.
 - c. 2 inch Thickness: 0.70.
- C. Adhesive: Waterproof, fire-retardant type, ASTM C 916.
- D. Liner Fasteners: Galvanized steel, impact applied or welded with integral, or press-on head.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that ducts have been tested before applying insulation materials.
- B. Verify that surfaces are clean, foreign material removed, and dry.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install in accordance with NAIMA National Insulation Standards.
- C. Insulated ducts conveying air below ambient temperature:
 - 1. Provide insulation with vapor barrier jackets.
 - 2. Finish with tape and vapor barrier jacket.
 - 3. Continue insulation through walls, sleeves, hangers, and other duct penetrations.
 - 4. Insulate entire system including fittings, joints, flanges, fire dampers, flexible connections, and expansion joints.
- D. Insulated ducts conveying air above ambient temperature:
 - 1. Provide with or without standard vapor barrier jacket.
 - 2. Insulate fittings and joints. Where service access is required, bevel and seal ends of insulation.
- E. Exterior Applications: Provide Polyguard Alumaguard on the outside of the ductwork. Jacket edges shall overlap and peel and stick to secure jacket around duct. The Polyguard wrap is in addition to interior duct liner.
- F. External Duct Insulation Application:
 - 1. Secure insulation with vapor barrier with wires and seal jacket joints with vapor barrier adhesive or tape to match jacket.
 - 2. Secure insulation without vapor barrier with staples, tape, or wires.
 - 3. Install without sag on underside of duct. Use adhesive or mechanical fasteners where necessary to prevent sagging. Lift duct off trapeze hangers and insert spacers.
 - 4. Seal vapor barrier penetrations by mechanical fasteners with vapor barrier adhesive.
 - 5. Stop and point insulation around access doors and damper operators to allow operation without disturbing wrapping.
- H. Duct and Plenum Liner Application:
 - 1. Adhere insulation with adhesive for 90 percent coverage.
 - 2. Secure insulation with mechanical liner fasteners. Refer to SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible for spacing.
 - 3. Seal and smooth joints. Seal and coat transverse joints.
 - 4. Seal liner surface penetrations with adhesive.
 - 5. Duct dimensions indicated are net inside dimensions required for air flow. Increase duct size to allow for insulation thickness.

3.3 SCHEDULES

- A. Exposed Rectangular Supply and Return Air Ducts: Duct Liner, 1" Thick – 1.5 PCF density.
- B. Concealed Supply Air Ducts: Flexible Glass Fiber Insulation, 2" Thick.
- C. Concealed Return Air Ducts: Duct Liner, 1" Thick – 1.5 PCF density.
- C. Exhaust Ducts Within 10 feet of Exterior Openings: Duct Liner, 1" thick – 1.5 PCF density.

END OF SECTION 230713

SECTION 230719 - HVAC PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Piping insulation.
- B. Jackets and accessories.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 01 61 16 - Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Content Restrictions.
- B. Section 07 84 00 - Firestopping.
- C. Section 09 90 00 - Painting and Coating: Painting insulation jacket.
- D. Section 23 21 13 - Hydronic Piping: Placement of hangers and hanger inserts.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM B 209 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate; 2007.
- B. ASTM B 209M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate [Metric]; 2007.
- C. ASTM C 177 - Standard Test Method for Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Guarded Hot Plate Apparatus; 2004.
- D. ASTM C 195 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Thermal Insulating Cement; 2007.
- E. ASTM C 449 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Hydraulic-Setting Thermal Insulating and Finishing Cement; 2007.
- F. ASTM C 534/C 534M - Standard Specification for Preformed Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Thermal Insulation in Sheet and Tubular Form; 2008.
- G. ASTM C 547 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Pipe Insulation; 2007.
- H. ASTM C 552 - Standard Specification for Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation; 2007.
- I. ASTM D 1056 - Standard Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials--Sponge or Expanded Rubber; 2007.
- J. ASTM D 2842 - Standard Test Method for Water Absorption of Rigid Cellular Plastics; 2006.
- K. ASTM E 84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2010.

- L. ASTM E 96/E 96M - Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials; 2005.
- M. NFPA 255 - Standard Method of Test of Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; National Fire Protection Association; 2006.
- N. UL 723 - Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide product description, thermal characteristics, list of materials and thickness for each service, and locations.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate installation procedures that ensure acceptable workmanship and installation standards will be achieved.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with not less than three years of documented experience.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Accept materials on site, labeled with manufacturer's identification, product density, and thickness.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL PRODUCTS OF THIS SECTION

- A. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread/Smoke developed index of 25/50, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84, NFPA 255, or UL 723.

2.2 GLASS FIBER

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Knauf Insulation: www.knaufusa.com.
 - 2. Johns Manville Corporation: www.jm.com.
 - 3. Owens Corning Corp: www.owenscorning.com.
 - 4. CertainTeed Corporation: www.certainteed.com.
 - 5. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
- B. Insulation: ASTM C 547 and ASTM C 795; rigid molded, noncombustible.
 - 1. 'K' value: ASTM C 177, 0.24 at 75 degrees F.
 - 2. Maximum service temperature: 850 degrees F.
 - 3. Maximum moisture absorption: 0.2 percent by volume.
- C. Insulation: ASTM C 547 and ASTM C 795; semi-rigid, noncombustible, end grain adhered to jacket.
 - 1. 'K' value: ASTM C 177, 0.24 at 75 degrees F.

2. Maximum service temperature: 650 degrees F.
3. Maximum moisture absorption: 0.2 percent by volume.
- D. Vapor Barrier Jacket: White kraft paper with glass fiber yarn, bonded to aluminized film; moisture vapor transmission when tested in accordance with ASTM E 96/E 96M of 0.02 perm-inches.
- E. Tie Wire: 0.048 inch stainless steel with twisted ends on maximum 12 inch centers.
- F. Vapor Barrier Lap Adhesive:
 1. Compatible with insulation.
- G. Insulating Cement/Mastic:
 1. ASTM C 195; hydraulic setting on mineral wool.
- H. Fibrous Glass Fabric:
 1. Cloth: Untreated; 9 oz/sq yd weight.
 2. Blanket: 1.0 lb/cu ft density.
 3. Weave: 5x5.
- I. Indoor Vapor Barrier Finish:
 1. Cloth: Untreated; 9 oz/sq yd weight.
 2. Vinyl emulsion type acrylic, compatible with insulation, black color.
- J. Outdoor Vapor Barrier Mastic:
 1. Vinyl emulsion type acrylic or mastic, compatible with insulation, black color.
- K. Outdoor Breather Mastic:
 1. Vinyl emulsion type acrylic or mastic, compatible with insulation, black color.
- L. Insulating Cement:
 1. ASTM C 449/C 449M.

2.3 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC CELLULAR INSULATION

- A. Manufacturer:
 1. Armacell International: www.armacell.com.
- B. Insulation: Preformed flexible elastomeric cellular rubber insulation complying with ASTM C 534 Grade 3; use molded tubular material wherever possible.
 1. Minimum Service Temperature: -40 degrees F.
 2. Maximum Service Temperature: 220 degrees F.
 3. Connection: Waterproof vapor barrier adhesive.
- C. Elastomeric Foam Adhesive: Air dried, contact adhesive, compatible with insulation.

2.4 JACKETS

- A. PVC Plastic.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Johns Manville Corporation: www.jm.com.
 2. Jacket: One piece molded type fitting covers and sheet material, off-white color.

- a. Minimum Service Temperature: 0 degrees F.
 - b. Maximum Service Temperature: 150 degrees F.
 - c. Moisture Vapor Permeability: 0.002 perm inch, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 96/E 96M.
 - d. Thickness: 10 mil.
 - e. Connections: Brush on welding adhesive.
3. Covering Adhesive Mastic:
 - a. Compatible with insulation.
- B. ABS Plastic:
 1. Jacket: One piece molded type fitting covers and sheet material, off-white color.
 - a. Minimum Service Temperature: -40 degrees F.
 - b. Maximum Service Temperature of 180 degrees F.
 - c. Moisture Vapor Permeability: 0.012 perm inch, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 96/E 96M.
 - d. Thickness: 30 mil.
 - e. Connections: Brush on welding adhesive.
- C. Canvas Jacket: UL listed 6 oz/sq yd plain weave cotton fabric treated with dilute fire retardant lagging adhesive.
 1. Lagging Adhesive:
 - a. Compatible with insulation.
- D. Aluminum Jacket: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M) formed aluminum sheet.
 1. Thickness: 0.016 inch sheet.
 2. Finish: Smooth.
 3. Joining: Longitudinal slip joints and 2 inch laps.
 4. Fittings: 0.016 inch thick die shaped fitting covers with factory attached protective liner.
 5. Metal Jacket Bands: 3/8 inch wide; 0.010 inch thick stainless steel.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that piping has been tested before applying insulation materials.
- B. Verify that surfaces are clean and dry, with foreign material removed.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install in accordance with NAIMA National Insulation Standards.
- C. Exposed Piping: Locate insulation and cover seams in least visible locations.
- D. Insulated pipes conveying fluids below ambient temperature: Insulate entire system including fittings, valves, unions, flanges, strainers, flexible connections, pump bodies, and expansion joints.
- E. Glass fiber insulated pipes conveying fluids below ambient temperature:
 1. Provide vapor barrier jackets, factory-applied or field-applied. Secure with self-sealing

- longitudinal laps and butt strips with pressure sensitive adhesive. Secure with outward clinch expanding staples and vapor barrier mastic.
 - 2. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with molded insulation of like material and thickness as adjacent pipe. Finish with glass cloth and vapor barrier adhesive or PVC fitting covers.
- F. Glass fiber insulated pipes conveying fluids above ambient temperature:
- 1. Provide standard jackets, with or without vapor barrier, factory-applied or field-applied. Secure with self-sealing longitudinal laps and butt strips with pressure sensitive adhesive. Secure with outward clinch expanding staples.
 - 2. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with insulation of like material and thickness as adjoining pipe. Finish with glass cloth and adhesive or PVC fitting covers.
- G. Inserts and Shields:
- 1. Application: Piping 1-1/2 inches diameter or larger.
 - 2. Shields: Galvanized steel between pipe hangers or pipe hanger rolls and inserts.
 - 3. Insert location: Between support shield and piping and under the finish jacket.
 - 4. Insert configuration: Minimum 6 inches long, of same thickness and contour as adjoining insulation; may be factory fabricated.
 - 5. Insert material: Hydrous calcium silicate insulation or other heavy density insulating material suitable for the planned temperature range.
- H. Continue insulation through walls, sleeves, pipe hangers, and other pipe penetrations. Finish at supports, protrusions, and interruptions. At fire separations, refer to Section 07 84 00.
- I. Pipe Exposed in Mechanical Equipment Rooms or Finished Spaces (less than 10 feet above finished floor): Finish with canvas jacket sized for finish painting.
- J. Exterior Applications: Provide vapor barrier jacket. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with insulation of like material and thickness as adjoining pipe, and finish with glass mesh reinforced vapor barrier cement. Cover with aluminum jacket with seams located on bottom side of horizontal piping.
- K. Heat Traced Piping: Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with insulation of like material, thickness, and finish as adjoining pipe. Size large enough to enclose pipe and heat tracer. Cover with aluminum jacket with seams located on bottom side of horizontal piping.

3.3 SCHEDULE

- A. HVAC Piping:
- 1. AC Unit Drain Lines Indoors: Foamed Plastic Pipe Insulation. 1/2 inch thick.
 - 2. Refrigerant Suction Indoors Above Grade: Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Insulation. 1/2" thick.
 - 3. Refrigerant Suction Outdoors Above Grade: Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Insulation. 3/4" thick with Aluminum Jacket.

END OF SECTION 230719

SECTION 232300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Piping.
- B. Refrigerant.
- C. Moisture and liquid indicators.
- D. Valves.
- E. Strainers.
- F. Filter-driers.
- G. Expansion valves.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 08 31 00 - Access Doors and Panels.
- B. Section 09 90 00 - Painting and Coating.
- C. Section 23 07 16 - HVAC Equipment Insulation.
- D. Section 23 07 19 - HVAC Piping Insulation.
- E. Section 26 27 17 - Equipment Wiring: Electrical characteristics and wiring connections.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ARI 495 - Refrigerant Liquid Receivers; Air-Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute; 2005.
- B. ARI 710 - Performance Rating of Liquid-Line Dryers; Air-Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute; 2009.
- C. ASHRAE Std 15 - Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems; American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc.; 2007.
- D. ASME (BPV IX) - Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX - Welding and Brazing Qualifications; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2007.
- E. ASME B16.22 - Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2001 (R2005).
- F. ASME B16.26 - Cast Copper Alloy Fittings For Flared Copper Tubes; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2006.

- G. ASME B31.5 - Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2006.
- H. ASME B31.9 - Building Services Piping; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2008 (ANSI/ASME B31.9).
- I. ASTM B 88 - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube; 2003.
- J. ASTM B 88M - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube (Metric); 2005.
- K. ASTM B 280 - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service; 2003.
- L. AWS A5.8/A5.8M - Specification for Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding; American Welding Society; 2004 and errata.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Where more than one piping system material is specified ensure system components are compatible and joined to ensure the integrity of the system is not jeopardized. Provide necessary joining fittings. Ensure flanges, union, and couplings for servicing are consistently provided.
- B. Provide pipe hangers and supports in accordance with ASME B31.5 unless indicated otherwise.
- C. Liquid Indicators:
 - 1. Use line size liquid indicators in main liquid line leaving condenser.
 - 2. If receiver is provided, install in liquid line leaving receiver.
 - 3. Use line size on leaving side of liquid solenoid valves.
- D. Valves:
 - 1. Use service valves on suction and discharge of compressors.
 - 2. Use gage taps at compressor inlet and outlet.
- E. Refrigerant Charging (Packed Angle) Valve: Use in liquid line between receiver shut-off valve and expansion valve.
- F. Strainers:
 - 1. Use line size strainer upstream of each automatic valve.
 - 2. Where multiple expansion valves with integral strainers are used, use single main liquid line strainer.
- G. Filter-Driers:
 - 1. Use a filter-drier immediately ahead of liquid-line controls, such as thermostatic expansion valves, solenoid valves, and moisture indicators.
- H. Receivers:
 - 1. Use on systems with long piping runs.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide general assembly of specialties, including manufacturers catalogue information. Provide manufacturers catalog data including load capacity.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate schematic layout of system, including equipment, critical dimensions, and sizes.
- D. Design Data: Submit design data indicating pipe sizing. Indicate load carrying capacity of trapeze, multiple pipe, and riser support hangers.
- E. Test Reports: Indicate results of leak test, acid test.
- F. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate support, connection requirements, and isolation for servicing.
- G. Project Record Documents: Record exact locations of equipment and refrigeration accessories on record drawings.
- H. Maintenance Data: Include instructions for changing cartridges, assembly views, spare parts lists.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the type of work specified in this section, with minimum 3 years of documented experience.

1.7 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to ASME B31.9 for installation of piping system.
- B. Welding Materials and Procedures: Conform to ASME (BPV IX) and applicable state labor regulations.
- C. Products Requiring Electrical Connection: Listed and classified by UL, as suitable for the purpose indicated.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store piping and specialties in shipping containers with labeling in place.
- B. Protect piping and specialties from entry of contaminating material by leaving end caps and plugs in place until installation.
- C. Dehydrate and charge components such as piping and receivers, seal prior to shipment, until connected into system.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 280, H58 hard drawn or O60 soft annealed.
 - 1. Fittings: ASME B16.22 wrought copper.
 - 2. Joints: Braze, AWS A5.8 BCuP silver/phosphorus/copper alloy.
- B. Copper Tube to 7/8 inch OD: ASTM B 88 (ASTM B 88M), Type K (A), annealed.
 - 1. Fittings: ASME B16.26 cast copper.
 - 2. Joints: Flared.
- C. Pipe Supports and Anchors:
 - 1. Conform to ASME B31.5.
 - 2. Hangers for Pipe Sizes 1/2 to 1-1/2 Inch: Malleable iron adjustable swivel, split ring.
 - 3. Hangers for Pipe Sizes 2 Inches and Over: Carbon steel, adjustable, clevis.
 - 4. Multiple or Trapeze Hangers: Steel channels with welded spacers and hanger rods.
 - 5. Wall Support for Pipe Sizes to 3 Inches: Cast iron hook.
 - 6. Wall Support for Pipe Sizes 4 Inches and Over: Welded steel bracket and wrought steel clamp.
 - 7. Vertical Support: Steel riser clamp.
 - 8. Copper Pipe Support: Carbon steel ring, adjustable, copper plated.
 - 9. Hanger Rods: Mild steel threaded both ends, threaded one end, or continuous threaded.
 - 10. Inserts: Malleable iron case of galvanized steel shell and expander plug for threaded connection with lateral adjustment, top slot for reinforcing rods, lugs for attaching to forms; size inserts to suit threaded hanger rods.

2.2 REFRIGERANT

- A. Refrigerant: R-454B or R-32 as defined in ASHRAE Standard 34.

2.3 MOISTURE AND LIQUID INDICATORS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Henry Technologies: www.henrytech.com.
 - 2. Parker Hannifin/Refrigeration and Air Conditioning: www.parker.com.
 - 3. Sporlan Valve Company: www.sporlan.com.
- B. Indicators: Single port type, UL listed, with copper or brass body, flared or solder ends, sight glass, color coded paper moisture indicator with removable element cartridge and plastic cap; for maximum temperature of 200 degrees F and maximum working pressure of 500 psi.

2.4 VALVES

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Hansen Technologies Corporation: www.hantech.com.
 - 2. Henry Technologies: www.henrytech.com.
 - 3. Danfoss Flomatic: www.flomatic.com.
- B. Diaphragm Packless Valves:
 - 1. UL listed, globe or angle pattern, forged brass body and bonnet, phosphor bronze and

stainless steel diaphragms, rising stem and handwheel, stainless steel spring, nylon seat disc, solder or flared ends, with positive backseating; for maximum working pressure of 500 psi and maximum temperature of 275 degrees F.

C. Ball Valves:

1. Two piece bolted forged brass body with teflon ball seals and copper tube extensions, brass bonnet and seal cap, chrome plated ball, stem with neoprene ring stem seals; for maximum working pressure of 500 psi and maximum temperature of 300 degrees F.

D. Service Valves:

1. Forged brass body with copper stubs, brass caps, removable valve core, integral ball check valve, flared or solder ends, for maximum pressure of 500 psi.

2.5 STRAINERS

A. Straight Line or Angle Line Type:

1. Brass or steel shell, steel cap and flange, and replaceable cartridge, with screen of stainless steel wire or monel reinforced with brass; for maximum working pressure of 430 psi.

2.6 CHECK VALVES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Hansen Technologies Corporation: www.hantech.com.
2. Parker Hannifin/Refrigeration and Air Conditioning: www.parker.com.
3. Sporlan Valve Company: www.sporlan.com.

B. Globe Type:

1. Cast bronze or forged brass body, forged brass cap with neoprene seal, brass guide and disc holder, phosphor-bronze or stainless steel spring, teflon seat disc; for maximum temperature of 300 degrees F and maximum working pressure of 425 psi.

C. Straight Through Type:

1. Brass body and disc, phosphor-bronze or stainless steel spring, neoprene seat; for maximum working pressure of 500 psi and maximum temperature of 200 degrees F.

2.7 FILTER-DRIERS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Flow Controls Division of Emerson Electric: www.emersonflowcontrols.com.
2. Parker Hannifin/Refrigeration and Air Conditioning: www.parker.com.
3. Sporlan Valve Company: www.sporlan.com.

B. Performance:

1. Flow Capacity - Liquid Line: As indicated in schedule, minimum, rated in accordance with ARI 710.
2. Pressure Drop: 2 psi, maximum, when operating at full connected evaporator capacity.
3. Design Working Pressure: 350 psi, minimum.

C. Cores: Molded or loose-fill molecular sieve desiccant compatible with refrigerant, activated alumina, activated charcoal, and filtration to 40 microns, with secondary filtration to 20

microns; of construction that will not pass into refrigerant lines.

- D. Construction: UL listed.
 - 1. Replaceable Core Type: Steel shell with removable cap.
 - 2. Connections: As specified for applicable pipe type.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Ream pipe and tube ends. Remove burrs. Bevel plain end ferrous pipe.
- B. Remove scale and dirt on inside and outside before assembly.
- C. Prepare piping connections to equipment with flanges or unions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install refrigeration specialties in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Route piping in orderly manner, with plumbing parallel to building structure, and maintain gradient.
- C. Install piping to conserve building space and avoid interference with use of space.
- D. Group piping whenever practical at common elevations and locations. Slope piping one percent in direction of oil return.
- E. Install piping to allow for expansion and contraction without stressing pipe, joints, or connected equipment.
- F. Inserts:
 - 1. Provide inserts for placement in concrete formwork.
 - 2. Provide inserts for suspending hangers from reinforced concrete slabs and sides of reinforced concrete beams.
 - 3. Provide hooked rod to concrete reinforcement section for inserts carrying pipe over 4 inches.
 - 4. Where concrete slabs form finished ceiling, locate inserts flush with slab surface.
 - 5. Where inserts are omitted, drill through concrete slab from below and provide through-bolt with recessed square steel plate and nut above slab.
- G. Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Install in accordance with ASME B31.5.
 - 2. Support horizontal piping as scheduled.
 - 3. Install hangers to provide minimum 1/2 inch space between finished covering and adjacent work.
 - 4. Place hangers within 12 inches of each horizontal elbow.
- H. Arrange piping to return oil to compressor. Provide traps and loops in piping, and provide double risers as required. Slope horizontal piping 0.40 percent in direction of flow.

- I. Provide clearance for installation of insulation and access to valves and fittings.
- J. Provide access to concealed valves and fittings. Coordinate size and location of access doors with Section 08 31 00.
- K. Flood piping system with nitrogen when brazing.
- L. Where pipe support members are welded to structural building frame, brush clean, and apply one coat of zinc rich primer to welding.
- M. Prepare unfinished pipe, fittings, supports, and accessories ready for finish painting. Refer to Section 09 90 00.
- N. Insulate piping and equipment; refer to Section 23 07 19 and Section 23 07 16.
- O. Follow ASHRAE Std 15 procedures for charging and purging of systems and for disposal of refrigerant.
- P. Install flexible connectors at right angles to axial movement of compressor, parallel to crankshaft.
- Q. Fully charge completed system with refrigerant after testing.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test refrigeration system in accordance with ASME B31.5.
- B. Pressure test system with dry nitrogen to 200 psi. Perform final tests at 27 inches vacuum and 200 psi using halide torch. Test to no leakage.

3.4 SCHEDULES

- A. Hanger Spacing for Copper Tubing.
 - 1. 1/2 inch, 5/8 inch, and 7/8 inch OD: Maximum span, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 - 2. 1-1/8 inch OD: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 - 3. 1-3/8 inch OD: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 4. 1-5/8 inch OD: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 5. 2-1/8 inch OD: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.

END OF SECTION 232300

SECTION 233100 - METAL HVAC DUCTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Metal ductwork.
- B. Nonmetal ductwork.
- C. Duct cleaning.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 09 9000 - Painting and Coating: Weld priming, weather resistant, paint or coating.
- B. Section 11 4000 - Foodservice Equipment: Supply of kitchen range hoods for placement by this Section.
- C. Section 23 1030.51 - HVAC Air Duct Cleaning: Cleaning ducts after completion of installation.
- D. Section 23 0713 - Duct Insulation: External insulation and duct liner.
- E. Section 23 3300 - Air Duct Accessories.
- F. Section 23 3700 - Air Outlets and Inlets.
- G. Section 23 0593 - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASHRAE (FUND) - ASHRAE Handbook - Fundamentals; 2005.
- B. ASTM A 653/A 653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2009a.
- C. ASTM E 84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2010.
- D. NFPA 90A - Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems; National Fire Protection Association; 2009.
- E. NFPA 90B - Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems; National Fire Protection Association; 2009.
- F. SMACNA (LEAK) - HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual; Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association; 1985, First Edition.
- G. SMACNA (DCS) - HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible; Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association; 2005.
- H. UL 181 - Standard for Factory-Made Air Ducts and Air Connectors; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate duct fittings, particulars such as gages, sizes, welds, and configuration prior to start of work for 1" pressure class and higher systems.
- C. Project Record Documents: Record locations of ducts and duct fittings. Record changes in fitting location and type. Show additional fittings used.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the type of products specified in this section, with a minimum of three years of documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the type of work specified in this section, with a minimum of 3 years of documented experience.

1.6 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Construct ductwork to NFPA 90A standards.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install duct sealants when temperatures are less than those recommended by sealant manufacturers.
- B. Maintain temperatures within acceptable range during and after installation of duct sealants.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 DUCT ASSEMBLIES

- A. All Ducts: Galvanized steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Low Pressure Supply: 2-inch w.g. pressure class, galvanized steel, seal class "B".
- D. Double-Wall Duct and Fitting Fabrication:
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Eastern Sheet Metal, Inc.
 - b. Lindab Inc.
 - c. McGill AirFlow Corporation.
 - d. SEMCO Incorporated.
 - 2. Outer Shell: Base metal thickness on outer-shell dimensions. Fabricate outer-shell lengths 2 inches longer than inner duct and insulation and in metal thickness specified for single-wall duct. Provide paint grip outer finish for field painting.
 - 3. Insulation: 1-inch- thick fibrous glass, unless otherwise indicated. Terminate insulation where double-wall duct connects to single-wall duct or uninsulated components and reduce outer shell diameter to inner duct diameter.
 - 4. Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.26 at 75 deg F mean temperature.
 - 5. Perforated Inner Ducts: Fabricate with 0.028-inch-thick sheet metal having 3/32-inch- diameter perforations, with overall open area of 23 percent.
 - 6. Maintain concentricity of inner duct to outer shell by mechanical means. Prevent dislocation of insulation by mechanical means.
 - 7. Fittings: Fabricate double-wall (insulated) fittings with an outer shell and an inner duct. Provide paint grip outer finish for field painting.
 - 8. Perforated Inner Ducts: Fabricate with 0.028-inch- thick sheet metal having 3/32-inch- diameter perforations, with overall open area of 23 percent.
 - 9. DO NOT apply duct sealer to exposed duct joints.
- E. Return and Relief: 2-inch w.g. pressure class, galvanized steel.
- F. General Exhaust: 1-inch w.g. pressure class, galvanized steel.
- G. Transfer Air: 1-inch w.g. pressure class, galvanized steel.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Steel for Ducts: Hot-dipped galvanized steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M FS Type B, with G90/Z275 coating.

- B. Joint Sealers and Sealants: Non-hardening, water resistant, mildew and mold resistant.
 - 1. Type: Heavy water-based mastic or liquid used alone or with tape, suitable for joint configuration and compatible with substrates, and recommended by manufacturer for pressure class of ducts.
 - 2. VOC Content: Not more than 0 g/L, excluding water.
 - 3. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread of zero, smoke developed of zero, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84.
- C. Hanger Rod: ASTM A 36/A 36M; steel, galvanized; threaded both ends, threaded one end, or continuously threaded.

2.3 DUCTWORK FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate and support in accordance with SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible, and as indicated.
- B. No variation of duct configuration or size permitted except by written permission. Size round duct installed in place of rectangular ducts in accordance with ASHRAE Handbook - Fundamentals.
- C. Provide duct material, gages, reinforcing, and sealing for operating pressures indicated.
- D. Construct T's, bends, and elbows with radius of not less than 1-1/2 times width of duct on centerline. Where not possible and where rectangular elbows must be used, provide air foil turning vanes of perforated metal with glass fiber insulation.
- E. Increase duct sizes gradually, not exceeding 15 degrees divergence wherever possible; maximum 30 degrees divergence upstream of equipment and 45 degrees convergence downstream.
- F. Fabricate continuously welded round and oval duct fittings in accordance with SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible.
- G. Where ducts are connected to exterior wall louvers and duct outlet is smaller than louver frame, provide blank-out panels sealing louver area around duct. Use same material as duct, painted black on exterior side; seal to louver frame and duct.

2.4 MANUFACTURED DUCTWORK AND FITTINGS

- A. Flexible Ducts (Low Pressure Systems): UL 181, Class 1, aluminum laminate and polyester film with latex adhesive supported by helically wound spring steel wire.
 - 1. Insulation: Fiberglass insulation with polyethylene vapor barrier film.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 6 inches WG positive and 4 inches WG negative.
 - 3. Maximum Velocity: 4000 fpm.
 - 4. Temperature Range: -20 degrees F to 210 degrees F.
 - 5. Manufacturers:
 - a. Flexmaster Type 5.
 - b. Technaflex WK.
 - c. Thermoflex M-KE.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install, support, and seal ducts in accordance with SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible.
- B. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. During construction provide temporary closures of metal or taped polyethylene on open ductwork to prevent construction dust from entering ductwork system.

- D. Flexible Ducts: Connect to metal ducts with draw bands.
- E. Duct sizes indicated are inside (air size) dimensions. Increase size for duct liner.
- F. Provide openings in ductwork where required to accommodate thermometers and controllers. Provide pilot tube openings where required for testing of systems, complete with metal cap with spring device or screw to ensure against air leakage. Where openings are provided in insulated ductwork, install insulation material inside a metal ring.
- G. Locate ducts with sufficient space around equipment to allow normal operating and maintenance activities.
- H. Use crimp joints with or without bead for joining round duct sizes 8 inch and smaller with crimp in direction of air flow.
- I. Use double nuts and lock washers on threaded rod supports.
- J. Do not use flexible duct to change direction.
- K. Connect diffusers to low pressure ducts directly or with 5 feet maximum length of flexible duct held in place with strap or clamp.
- L. At exterior wall louvers, seal duct to louver frame and install blank-out panels.

3.2 CLEANING

- A. Clean duct system and force air at high velocity through duct to remove accumulated dust. To obtain sufficient air, clean half the system at a time. Protect equipment that could be harmed by excessive dirt with temporary filters, or bypass during cleaning.

END OF SECTION 233100

SECTION 233300 - DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Volume dampers.
 - 2. Fire dampers.
 - 3. Turning vanes.
 - 4. Duct-mounting access doors.
 - 5. Flexible connectors.
 - 6. Flexible ducts.
 - 7. Duct accessory hardware.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 23 Section "HVAC Instrumentation and Controls" for damper actuators.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Volume dampers.
 - 2. Fire dampers.
 - 3. Turning vanes.
 - 4. Duct-mounting access doors.
 - 5. Flexible connectors.
 - 6. Flexible ducts.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 1. Special fittings.
 - 2. Manual-volume damper installations.
 - 3. Fire-damper installations, including sleeves and duct-mounting access doors.
 - 4. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale and coordinating penetrations and ceiling-mounting items. Show ceiling-mounting access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

1.5 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Lock-forming quality; complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M and having G90 coating designation; ducts shall have mill-phosphatized finish for surfaces exposed to view.
- C. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 480/A 480M.
- D. Aluminum Sheets: ASTM B 209, alloy 3003, temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- E. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B 221, alloy 6063, temper T6.
- F. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- G. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.3 VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Air Balance, Inc.
 - 2. American Warming and Ventilating.
 - 3. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
 - 4. McGill AirFlow Corporation.
 - 5. METALAIRE, Inc.
 - 6. Nailor Industries Inc.

7. Penn Ventilation Company, Inc.
 8. Ruskin Company.
 9. Vent Products Company, Inc.
- B. General Description: Factory fabricated, with required hardware and accessories. Stiffen damper blades for stability. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration. Close duct penetrations for damper components to seal duct consistent with pressure class.
1. Pressure Classes of 3-Inch wg or Higher: End bearings or other seals for ducts with axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
- C. Standard Volume Dampers: Multiple- or single-blade, parallel- or opposed-blade design as indicated, standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
1. Steel Frames: Hat-shaped, galvanized sheet steel channels, minimum of 0.064 inch thick, with mitered and welded corners; frames with flanges where indicated for attaching to walls and flangeless frames where indicated for installing in ducts.
 2. Roll-Formed Steel Blades: 0.064-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
 3. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
 4. Bearings: Molded synthetic.
 5. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- D. Spin Ins:
1. Branch duct connections for connecting round low pressure duct to rectangular low-pressure ducts.
 2. Galvanized steel, straight spin-in with beaded collar, integral damper and quadrant stand-off. Minimum 26 gage.
 3. Manufacturer: Flexmaster FL with stand-off or equivalent.
- E. Jackshaft: 1-inch- diameter, galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
1. Length and Number of Mountings: Appropriate to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.
- F. Damper Hardware: Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch-thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

2.4 FIRE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Air Balance, Inc.
 2. Greenheck.
 3. METALAIRE, Inc.
 4. Ruskin Company.
- B. Fire dampers shall be labeled according to UL 555.

- C. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 hours.
- D. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch- thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.
- E. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.
 - 1. Minimum Thickness: 0.052 or 0.138 inch thick as indicated and of length to suit application.
 - 2. Exceptions: Omit sleeve where damper frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor, and thickness of damper frame complies with sleeve requirements.
- F. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- G. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch- thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.
- H. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.
- I. Fusible Links: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated.

2.5 TURNING VANES

- A. Fabricate to comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for vanes and vane runners. Vane runners shall automatically align vanes.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes: Fabricate 1-1/2-inch- wide, single-vane, curved blades of galvanized sheet steel set 3/4 inch o.c.; support with bars perpendicular to blades set 2 inches o.c.; and set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 - b. Duro Dyne Corp.
 - c. METALAIRE, Inc.
 - d. Ward Industries, Inc.
- C. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.

2.6 DUCT-MOUNTING ACCESS DOORS

- A. General Description: Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
- B. Door for Low Pressure Ducts: Double wall, duct mounting, and rectangular; fabricated of galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class. Include vision panel where indicated. Include 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. American Warming and Ventilating.

- b. CESCO Products.
 - c. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 - d. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
 - e. Greenheck.
 - f. McGill AirFlow Corporation.
 - 2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
 - 3. Provide number of hinges and locks as follows:
 - a. Less Than 12 Inches Square: Secure with two sash locks.
 - b. Up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.
 - c. Up to 24 by 48 Inches: Three hinges and two compression latches.
 - d. Sizes 24 by 48 Inches and Larger: One additional hinge.
- C. Door: Double wall, duct mounting, and round; fabricated of galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and 1-inch thickness. Include cam latches.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 - b. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
 - 2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with spin-in notched frame.
- D. Pressure Relief Access Door for Use in Medium Pressure Ducts: Double wall and duct mounting; fabricated of galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class. Include vision panel, latches, and retaining chain.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. American Warming and Ventilating.
 - b. CESCO Products.
 - c. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 - d. Greenheck.
 - e. KEES, Inc.
 - f. McGill AirFlow Corporation.
 - 2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
- E. Seal around frame attachment to duct and door to frame with neoprene or foam rubber.
- F. Insulation: 1-inch- thick, fibrous-glass or polystyrene-foam board.

2.7 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Duro Dyne Corp.
 - 3. Ventfabrics, Inc.
 - 4. Ward Industries, Inc.
- B. General Description: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics, coatings, and adhesives complying with UL 181, Class 1.

- C. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 5-3/4 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch- wide, 0.028-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel sheets. Select metal compatible with ducts.
- D. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

2.8 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. General: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- B. Insulated Flexible Ducts Located Downstream of AC Units (Low Pressure):
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Flex Master Type 5.
 - b. Technaflex WK.
 - c. Thermoflex M-KE.
 - 2. UL 181, Class 1, aluminum laminate and polyester film with latex adhesive supported by helically wound spring coated or galvanized steel wire; fiberglass insulation; polyethylene vapor barrier film.
 - 3. Pressure Rating: 6 inches WG positive and 4.0 WG negative (4-16 inch ID).
 - 4. Maximum Velocity: 4000 fpm.
 - 5. Temperature Range: 20 degrees F to 210 degrees F.
- C. Flexible Duct Clamps Downstream of AC Units: Nylon strap, in sizes 3 through 18 inches to suit duct size.

2.9 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION AND INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts.
- B. Provide duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install backdraft dampers on exhaust fans or exhaust ducts nearest to outside and where indicated.

- D. Install volume dampers in ducts with liner; avoid damage to and erosion of duct liner.
- E. Provide balancing dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches lead from larger ducts as required for air balancing. Install at a minimum of two duct widths from branch takeoff.
- F. Provide test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install fire dampers, with fusible links, according to manufacturer's UL-approved written instructions.
- H. Install duct access doors to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and terminal units as follows:
 - 1. On both sides of duct coils.
 - 2. Downstream from volume dampers and equipment.
 - 3. Adjacent to fire dampers, providing access to reset or reinstall fusible links.
 - 4. To interior of ducts for cleaning; before and after each change in direction, at maximum 50-foot spacing.
 - 5. On sides of ducts where adequate clearance is available.
- I. Install the following sizes for duct-mounting, rectangular access doors:
 - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
 - 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
 - 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
 - 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
 - 5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
 - 6. Body Plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
- J. Install the following sizes for duct-mounting, round access doors:
 - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 inches in diameter.
 - 2. Two-Hand Access: 10 inches in diameter.
 - 3. Head and Hand Access: 12 inches in diameter.
 - 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 18 inches in diameter.
 - 5. Body Access: 24 inches in diameter.
- K. Install the following sizes for duct-mounting, pressure relief access doors:
 - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 7 inches in diameter.
 - 2. Two-Hand Access: 10 inches in diameter.
 - 3. Head and Hand Access: 13 inches in diameter.
 - 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 19 inches in diameter.
- L. Install flexible connectors immediately adjacent to equipment in ducts associated with fans and motorized equipment supported by vibration isolators.
- M. For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch w.g. and higher, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.

- N. Connect diffusers to low pressure ducts with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- O. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands. Nylon for low pressure.
- P. Install duct test holes where indicated and required for testing and balancing purposes.

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust duct accessories for proper settings.
- B. Adjust fire dampers for proper action.
- C. Final positioning of manual-volume dampers is specified in Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing."

END OF SECTION 233300

SECTION 233423 - HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Ceiling-mounted ventilators.
 - 2. Centrifugal ventilators - roof downblast.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fans.
 - 2. Rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 - 3. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
 - 4. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
 - 5. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
 - 6. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
 - 7. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
 - 8. Prefabricated roof curbs.
 - 9. Fan speed controllers.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 - 4. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: Submit certificates that specified equipment will withstand required wind forces, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculations.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of wind force and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.

3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For HVAC power ventilators to include in normal and emergency operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Belts: One set(s) for each belt-driven unit.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of unit components.
- C. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
- E. Wind Performance: Air-handling units shall withstand the effects of wind determined in accordance with to ASCE/SEI 7 .

2.2 CEILING-MOUNTED VENTILATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Acme Engineering & Manufacturing Corp.
 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 3. Loren Cook Company.
 4. PennBarry.
- B. Housing: Steel, lined with acoustical insulation.
- C. Fan Wheel: Centrifugal wheels directly mounted on motor shaft. Fan shrouds, motor, and fan wheel removable for service.
- D. Back-draft damper: Integral.

- E. Grille: Aluminum , louvered grille with flange on intake and thumbscrew or spring retainer attachment to fan housing.
- F. Electrical Requirements: Junction box for electrical connection on housing and receptacle for motor plug-in.
- G. Accessories:
 - 1. Variable-Frequency Motor Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
 - 2. Manual Starter Switch: Single-pole rocker switch assembly with cover and pilot light.

2.3 CENTRIFUGAL VENTILATORS - ROOF DOWNBLAST

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Acme Engineering & Manufacturing Corp.
 - 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 3. Loren Cook Company.
 - 4. PennBarry.
- B. Housing: Downblast; removable spun-aluminum dome top and outlet baffle; square, one-piece aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.
- C. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.
- D. Belt Drives:
 - 1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
 - 2. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
 - 3. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
 - 4. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
 - 5. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions. Provide fixed pitch for use with motors larger than 5 hp.
 - 6. Fan and motor isolated from exhaust airstream.
- E. Accessories:
 - 7. Variable-Frequency Motor Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
 - 8. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
 - 9. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
 - 10. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.

- F. Prefabricated Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch-thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
 - 1. Configuration: Built-in cant and mounting flange.
 - 2. Overall Height: 12 inches.
 - 3. Hinged sub-base to provide access to damper or as cleanout for grease applications.

2.4 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.
- B. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Secure roof-mounted fans to roof curbs with zinc-plated hardware. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs.
- C. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- D. Label units according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.2 DUCTWORK CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

3.3 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

3.4 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE:

- A. Perform startup service.
 1. Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
 3. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
 4. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
 5. For direct-drive fans, verify proper motor rotation direction and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation.
 6. For belt-drive fans, disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
 7. Adjust belt tension.
 8. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
 9. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
 10. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
 11. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation, adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
 12. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
 13. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Adjust belt tension.
- C. Lubricate bearings.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.7 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing and after completing startup service, clean fans internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Fan Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
 - 3. Fans and components will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
 - 4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain centrifugal fans.

END OF SECTION 233423

SECTION 233700 - AIR OUTLETS AND INLETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Grilles, Registers and Diffusers

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 230510.
- B. Product Data: Provide data for equipment required for this project. Review outlets and inlets as to size, finish, and type of mounting prior to submission. Submit schedule of outlets and inlets showing type, size, location, application, and noise level.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Test and rate air outlet and inlet performance in accordance with ADC Equipment Test Code 062 and ASHRAE 70.
- B. Test and rate louver performance in accordance with AMCA 500.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WEATHER LOUVERS

- A. Weather Louvers specified under Division 10.

2.2 GRILLES, REGISTERS AND DIFFUSERS - GENERAL

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer's:
 - 1. Titus.
 - 2. Metal Air.
 - 3. Kreuger.
 - 4. Price.
 - 5. Tuttle & Bailey.
- B. Coordinate / verify border and frame types for ceiling air devices are shown on Architectural Reflective Ceiling Plan.
- C. Equip all ceiling mounted air devices with thermal blankets.
- D. Air Device types and accessories shall be as specified on the drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturers instructions.

- B. Check location of outlet and inlets and make necessary adjustments in position to conform with architectural features, and lighting arrangements.
- C. Weather Louvers and Brick Vents: Blank unused portion of louvers with sandwich of 1 inch duct liner with 26 gage galvanized steel inner and outer panels. Fasten blanks to indoor side of louvers with sheet metal screws and seal with duct sealer.

END OF SECTION 233700

SECTION 237413 - ROOFTOP AIR CONDITIONERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Division 23 – Section 230513 “Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment”

1.3 SUMMARY

- A. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 23 Section “Basic Mechanical Requirements” for temporary use or Mechanical Equipment.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's technical data for each model indicated, including rated capacities, dimensions, required clearances, characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For rooftop air conditioners to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- C. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of rooftop air conditioners and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 1 Section "Product Requirements."
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Mechanical Refrigeration."
- D. Energy-Efficiency Ratio: Equal to or greater than prescribed by ASHRAE 90.1-2015, "Energy Efficient Design of New Buildings except Low-Rise Residential Buildings."
- E. ARI Certification: Units shall be ARI certified and listed.
- F. ARI Compliance for Units with Capacities Less Than 135,000 Btuh: Rate rooftop air-conditioner capacity according to ARI 210/240, "Unitary Air-Conditioning and Air-Source Heat Pump Equipment."

1. Sound Power Level Ratings: Comply with ARI 270, "Sound Rating of Outdoor Unitary Equipment."
- G. ARI Compliance for Units with Capacities 135,000 Btuh and More: Rate rooftop air-conditioner capacity according to ARI 340/360, "Commercial and Industrial Unitary Air-Conditioning and Heat Pump Equipment."
 1. Sound Power Level Ratings: Comply with ARI 270, "Sound Rating of Outdoor Unitary Equipment."

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size, location, and installation of rooftop air-conditioner manufacturer's roof curbs and equipment supports with roof installer.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace components of rooftop air conditioners that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period for Compressors (Parts Only): Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years from date of Substantial Completion.
 2. Extended Warranty: One-year labor and material on all components.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ROOFTOP AIR CONDITIONERS

General:

- Precedent unit cooling capacities, heating capacities, and efficiencies are certified to the following standards: – 3 to 5ton units: AHRI Standard 210/240.– 6to25tonunits: AHRI Standard 340/360.
- Gas Heating Units: ANSI Z21.47 and 10 CFR Part 431 for Commercial Warm Air.
- Convertible airflow.
- Factory assembled, internally wired, fully charged, and 100 percent run tested to verify cooling operation, fan and blower rotation, and control sequence.
- cULus listed and classified in accordance with Central Cooling Air Conditioners.

Casing:

- Zinc coated, heavy gauge, galvanized steel.
- Weather resistant pre-painted metal with galvanized substrate.
- MeetsASTMB117,672 hour salt spray test.
- Removable single side maintenance access panels.
- Exposed vertical panels and top covers in the indoor air section insulated with a cleanable foil-faced, fire-retardant permanent, odorless glass fiber material.
- Base pan with no penetrations within the perimeter of the curb other than the raised 1-inch downflow supply/return openings to provide an added water integrity precaution, if the condensate drain backs up.
- Base of the unit insulated with 1/8-inch, foil-faced, closed-cell insulation.

Microchannel Coils:

- Optimal heat transfer performance with small ports, and metallurgical tube-to-fin bond.
- Compact all-aluminum microchannel coils.
- Aluminum brazed structure.
- Coils leak tested at the factory to verify the pressure integrity.

Compressors:

- All units have direct-drive, hermetic, scroll type compressors with centrifugal type oil pumps.
- Suction gas-cooled motor with voltage utilization range of plus or minus 10 percent of unit nameplate voltage.
- Internal overloads standard with scroll compressors.
- Crank case heaters are standard on all compressors.
- Dual compressors (6 to 25 ton units only).
- Cooling stages available: 6 to 17.5 ton units – three. 20 and 25 ton units – four.

Filters:

- 2 inch MERV 13 filters.

Gas Heating Section:

- Compact cabinet features a tubular heat exchanger in low, medium and high heat capacities.
- Corrosion-resistant aluminized steel tubes and burners are standard on all models.
- Induced draft combustion blower is used to pull the combustion products through the firing tubes.
- Heater uses a direct spark ignition (DSI) system and a flame sensor as a safety device to validate the flame.
- Units are suitable for use with natural gas or propane (field-installed kit).

Indoor Fan:

- Direct drive forward curve fan design– A.0 cabinet.
- Direct drive plenum fan design– B.0, C.0, D.0, and D.1 cabinets.
- Plenum fan design– backward-curved fan wheel along with an external rotor direct drive variable speed indoor motor.
- Motors are electronically protected.
- Variable speed direct drive motors are high efficiency.

Through-the-Base Electrical with Disconnect Switch:

- 3-pole, molded case, disconnect switch with provisions for through-the-base electrical connections.
- Disconnect switch installed within unit in a watertight enclosure.
- Wiring provided from the switch to the unit high voltage terminal block.
- Switch cULus agency recognized.

Note: Disconnect switch sized per NEC and cULus guidelines but does not replace unit overcurrent Protection.

Standard Economizer:

- Available with or without barometric relief.
- Fully modulating 0 to 100 percent motor and dampers, minimum position setting, preset linkage, wiring harness with plug, spring return actuator and fixed dry bulb control.
- Barometric relief provides a pressure-operated, gravity-closing damper.
- Barometric relief prevents entrance of outside air during the equipment off cycle.

Motorized Outside Air Damper:

- Once set, when indoor fan starts, outdoor air dampers open to set position.

- When indoor fan shuts down, damper fully closes.

Roof Curb:

- Designed to connect with the unit's downflow supply and return.
- Provides support and a watertight installation when installed properly.
- Allows field-fabricated rectangular supply/return ductwork to be connected directly to the curb.
- Curb shipped knocked down for field assembly.
- Includes wood nailer strips.

Leak Detection Sensors:

Unit shall be furnished with a leak detection system from the factory when a circuit refrigerant charge exceeds 3.91 lbs. The leak detection system shall consist of one or more refrigerant detection sensors. When the system detects a leak, the unit controller shall initiate mitigation actions.

Approved Manufacturers:

1. Trane
2. Carrier
3. Johnson Controls
4. Daikin

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units level and plumb, maintaining manufacturer's recommended clearances. Any slope must be toward side where condensate drain is connected.
- B. Curb Support: Install roof curb on roof structure, level and secure, according to NRCA's "Low-Slope Membrane Roofing Construction Details Manual," Illustration "Raised Curb Detail for Rooftop Air Handling Units and Ducts." Install and secure rooftop air conditioners on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction. Secure units to curb support with anchor bolts.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Duct installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:
 1. Do not cut out decking under roof curb.
 2. Connect supply ducts to rooftop unit with flexible duct connectors specified in Division 23 Section "Duct Accessories."
- B. Electrical System Connections: Comply with applicable requirements in Division 26 for power wiring, switches, and motor controls.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. A manufacturer trained service technician shall perform the following field quality-control tests and inspections to verify proper operation.

1. After installing rooftop air conditioners and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
 2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Remove malfunctioning units, replace them with new units, and retest as specified above.

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and do the following:
1. Inspect for visible damage to unit casing.
 2. Inspect for visible damage to compressor, air-cooled outside coil, and fans.
 3. Inspect internal insulation.
 4. Verify that labels are clearly visible.
 5. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
 6. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
 7. Verify that clean filters are installed.
 8. Clean outside coil and inspect for construction debris.
 9. Adjust vibration isolators.
 10. Lubricate bearings on fan.
 11. Inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
 12. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
 13. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 14. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
 15. Operate unit for an initial period as recommended or required by manufacturer.
 16. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
 17. Inspect controls for correct sequencing of heating, mixing dampers, refrigeration, and normal and emergency shutdown.
 18. After startup and performance testing, change filters, lubricate bearings and adjust belt tension.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Factory-trained service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain rooftop air conditioners. Refer to Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures or Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 237413

SECTION 238101 - TERMINAL HEAT TRANSFER UNITS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Electric heaters.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 23 0513 - Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment.
- B. Section 26 2717 - Equipment Wiring: Electrical characteristics and wiring connections. Installation of room thermostats. Electrical supply to units.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide typical catalog of information including arrangements.
- C. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Indicate cross sections of cabinets, grilles, bracing and reinforcing, and typical elevations.
 - 2. Submit schedules of equipment and enclosures typically indicating length and number of pieces of element and enclosure, corner pieces, end caps, cap strips, access doors, pilaster covers, and comparison of specified heat required to actual heat output provided.
 - 3. Indicate mechanical and electrical service locations and requirements.
- D. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate installation instructions and recommendations.
- E. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of components and locations of access doors in radiation cabinets required for access or valving.
- F. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include manufacturer's descriptive literature, operating instructions, installation instructions, maintenance and repair data, and parts listings.
- G. Warranty: Submit manufacturer's warranty.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- B. Products Requiring Electrical Connection: Listed and classified by Underwriters Laboratories Inc. as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Provide five year manufacturer's warranty for fan-coil unit.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 ELECTRIC UNIT HEATERS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. INDEECO

2. Marley Engineered Products
 3. Trane
- B. Assembly: UL listed and labelled assembly with terminal box and cover, and built-in controls.
 - C. Heating Elements: Enclosed copper tube, aluminum finned element of coiled nickel-chrome resistance wire centered in tubes and embedded in refractory material.
 - D. Cabinet: 0.0478 inch steel with easily removed front panel with integral air outlet and inlet grilles.
 - E. Element Hangers: Quiet operating, ball bearing cradle type providing unrestricted longitudinal movement, on enclosure brackets.
 - F. Fan: Direct drive propeller type, statically and dynamically balanced, with fan guard.
 - G. Motor: Permanently lubricated, sleeve bearings for horizontal models, ball bearings for vertical models.
 - H. Control: Separate fan speed switch and thermostat heat selector switch, factory wired, with switches built-in behind cover. Provide thermal overload.
 - I. Electrical Characteristics:
 1. Disconnect Switch: Factory mount disconnect switch.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install equipment exposed to finished areas after walls and ceiling are finished and painted. Do not damage equipment or finishes.
- C. Install electric heating equipment including devices furnished by manufacturer but not factory mounted. Furnish copy of manufacturer's wiring diagram submittal. Install electrical wiring in accordance with manufacturer's submittals and Section 26 2717.

3.2 CLEANING

- A. After construction is completed, including painting, clean exposed surfaces of units. Vacuum clean coils and inside of cabinets.
- B. Touch-up scratched surfaces of factory-finished cabinets, using finish materials furnished by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 238101

SECTION 238127 - DUCTLESS SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes split-system air-conditioning and heat pump units consisting of separate evaporator-fan and compressor-condenser components. Units are designed for exposed or concealed mounting and may be connected to ducts.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories for each type of product indicated. Include performance data in terms of capacities, outlet velocities, static pressures, sound power characteristics, motor requirements, and electrical characteristics.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For split-system air-conditioning units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- F. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of split-system units and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- D. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases for units. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of split-system air-conditioning units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Filters: One set of filters for each unit.
 - 2. Fan Belts: One set of belts for each unit.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Daikin
 - 2. Mitsubishi (Trane)
 - 3. LG
 - 4. Samsung

2.2 WALL-MOUNTING, EVAPORATOR-FAN COMPONENTS

- A. Cabinet: Enameled steel with removable panels on front and ends in color selected by Architect, and discharge drain pans with drain connection.
- B. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins, complying with ARI 210/240, and with thermal-expansion valve.
- C. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements with refractory ceramic support brushings; automatic-reset thermal cutout; built-in magnetic contactors; manual-reset thermal cutout; airflow proving device; and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
- D. Fan: Direct drive, centrifugal fan.
- E. Fan Motors: Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Motors."

1. Special Motor Features: Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.

F. Filters: Permeable, cleanable.

2.3 CEILING-MOUNTING, EVAPORATOR-FAN COMPONENTS

- A. Cabinet: Enameled steel with removable panels on front and ends in color selected by Architect, and discharge drain pans with drain connection.
 1. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004.
 2. Drain Pan and Drain Connection: Comply with ASHRAE 62.1-2004.
- B. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins, complying with ARI 210/240, and with thermal-expansion valve.
- C. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements with refractory ceramic support bushings; automatic-reset thermal cutout; built-in magnetic contactors; manual-reset thermal cutout; airflow proving device; and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
- D. Fan: Direct drive, centrifugal fan and integral condensate pump.
- E. Fan Motors: Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 1. Special Motor Features: Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
- F. Filters: Permanent, cleanable.

2.4 AIR-COOLED, COMPRESSOR-CONDENSER COMPONENTS

- A. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel in color selected by Architect, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
- B. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
 1. Compressor Type: Scroll.
 2. Two-speed compressor motor with manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
 3. Refrigerant: R-410a.
- C. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins, complying with ARI 210/240, and with liquid sub-cooler.
- D. Heat Pump Components: Reversing valve and low-temperature air cut-off thermostat.
- E. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.

- F. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
- G. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 45 deg F.
- H. Mounting Base: Polyethylene.
- I. Minimum Energy Efficiency: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007, "Energy Standard for Buildings except Low-Rise Residential Buildings."
- J. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2007, "Energy Standard for Buildings except Low-Rise Residential Buildings."

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Division 23 Sections "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls."
- B. Thermostat: Low voltage with sub-base to control compressor and evaporator fan.
- C. Thermostat: Wireless infrared functioning to remotely control compressor and evaporator fan, with the following features:
 - 1. Compressor time delay.
 - 2. 24-hour time control of system stop and start.
 - 3. Liquid-crystal display indicating temperature, set-point temperature, time setting, operating mode, and fan speed.
 - 4. Fan-speed selection, including auto setting.
- D. Automatic-reset timer to prevent rapid cycling of compressor.
- E. Refrigerant Line Kits: Soft-annealed copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized, and sealed; factory-insulated suction line with flared fittings at both ends.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install unit's level and plumb.
- B. Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.
- C. Install ground-mounting, compressor-condenser components on 4-inch- thick, reinforced concrete base; 4 inches larger on each side than unit.
- D. Install ground-mounting, compressor-condenser components on polyethylene mounting base.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to the unit to allow service and maintenance.

- C. Duct Connections: Duct installation requirements are specified in Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts." Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. Connect supply and return ducts to split-system air-conditioning units with flexible duct connectors. Flexible duct connectors are specified in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."
- D. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- E. Electrical Connections: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Sections for power wiring, switches, and motor controls.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 238127

SECTION 260500 – BASIC ELECTRICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

A. General Conditions:

1. The accompanying General Conditions (front-end specifications) shall apply to and form a part of this section.

B. General Requirements:

1. Carefully examine General Conditions, other specification sections, and other drawings (in addition to Electrical) in order to be fully acquainted with their effect on electrical work.
2. Do all work in compliance with all applicable codes, laws, and ordinances, the National Electrical Safety Code, the National Electrical Code (hereinafter referred to as "Code"), applicable energy codes, and the regulations of the local utility companies. Obtain and pay for any and all required permits, inspections, certificates of inspections and approval, and the like.
3. Cooperate with other trades and contractors at job. Perform work in such manner and at such times as not to delay work of other trades. Complete all work as soon as the structure and installations of equipment will permit. Patch, in a satisfactory manner and by the proper craft, any work damaged by electrical workmen.

C. Electrical Contractor Experience Requirements:

1. Electrical contracting firm shall be licensed as an electrical contractor in the state where work will be performed.

1.2 GENERAL SCOPE OF ELECTRICAL WORK (REFER TO DRAWINGS FOR OTHER SPECIFIC SCOPE ITEMS)

- A. Furnish all labor and materials to complete electrical work as shown on drawings and/or herein specified.
- B. Remove all existing electrical equipment and wiring made obsolete by this project and remove or relocate all electrical services located on or crossing through the project property, either above or below grade, which would obstruct the construction of the project or conflict in any manner with the completed project or any code pertaining thereto. Dispose of salvageable materials as directed by the Architect. Contractor shall schedule meeting to review scope of electrical demolition and to confirm scope and phasing of proposed demolition with the owner in the presence of the prime consultant prior to start of any electrical demolition.
- C. Furnish and install complete power, telephone and other electrical services as shown on drawings and/or specified herein.
- D. Pay all electrical utility company service charges (if any) in connection therewith, including permanent meter deposit. Meter deposits will be refunded to Contractor at time of Owner's acceptance.
- E. Furnish and install complete power distribution system as shown on drawings and/or specified herein.

- F. Furnish and install disconnect switches for motors as shown on drawings and/or specified herein.
- G. Furnish and install complete electrical grounding systems as shown on drawings and/or specified herein.
- H. Install and connect electrical equipment mentioned in Division 26/27/28 Specifications or noted in drawings, whether furnished by electrical contractor or by others.
 - 1. Where shown or specified, equipment furnished by others shall be installed and connected under this Contract.
 - 2. Where shown or specified, Contractor shall receive, unpack, check and assume custody of equipment furnished by Others. Contractor shall assume responsibility for care and safekeeping of this equipment, when delivered into his custody. He shall protect it from moisture, dust and damage during construction and until Owner acceptance of project.
- I. Furnish and install complete electrical lighting systems as shown on drawings and/or specified herein.
- J. Furnish and install all electrical items shown on drawings and/or herein specified, unless shown or specified otherwise.
- K. Furnish and install complete controls & auxiliary systems as shown on drawings and/or specified herein.
- L. Furnish and install complete telephone/data raceway (including all outlet boxes, face plates, conduit raceways, telephone backboards, terminal cabinets, etc.), wiring and devices system as shown on drawings and/or specified herein.
- M. Furnish and install a complete Fire Alarm System as shown on drawings and/or specified herein.
- N. Furnish and install a complete Surge Protection System as shown on drawings and/or specified herein.
- O. Procure and pay for permits and certificates as required by local and state ordinances and fire underwriter's certificate of inspection.
- P. Balance loads as equally as practicable on services, distribution feeders, circuits and buses. Provide typewritten directory for each panel.
- Q. Unless specifically indicated or required otherwise, terminate all circuitry/cabling provided within this contract at associated equipment/devices/etc. in accordance with all applicable codes, standards and supplier requirements, whether associated equipment/device/etc. is furnished within this contract or by others.
- R. Complete field testing, adjustment & startup of all systems listed above as shown on drawings and/or specified herein.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 APPROVED MATERIALS AND DEVICES

- A. Where not otherwise specified, provide only new, standard, first-grade materials/systems throughout, conforming to standards established by Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc., and so marked or labeled, together with manufacturer's brand or trademark. All equipment/systems

subject to approval of Architect before installation. All like items and associated equipment/systems shall be of one manufacturer.

- B. To ensure proper coordination, it is intended that all electrical equipment and materials specified in Division 26/27/28 of these specifications and shown on the electrical drawings be furnished and installed by the electrical sub-contractor. It will not be permissible for any of these items to be furnished directly by the general contractor without the electrical contractor's coordination.
- C. To ensure commonality of spare parts, it is required that the electrical contractor provide the same brand for all circuit breakers, starters, power equipment, etc. provided under the following divisions of these specifications:
 - 1. SECTION 26 05 73: POWER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM ELECTRICAL STUDIES
 - 2. SECTION 26 22 00: DRY TYPE TRANSFORMERS
 - 3. SECTION 26 24 13: SWITCHBOARDS
 - 4. SECTION 26 24 16: POWER PANELBOARDS - CIRCUIT BREAKER TYPE
 - 5. SECTION 26 24 17: LIGHTING PANELBOARDS
 - 6. SECTION 26 28 16: SAFETY SWITCHES AND FUSES

2.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. All submittals to the design team shall be accompanied by a letter summarizing all proposed deviations from specified products or pre-approved substitutions. The absence of such a letter shall be understood to indicate that the contractor intends to meet all contract requirements, regardless of cut-sheets/data-sheets provided within the submittal.
- B. Submit to Architect ten (10) days prior to bid date three (3) copies of any items and/or manufacturers which are proposed as substitutes for those specified.
- C. Submit to Architect promptly after award of Contract and prior to purchasing, the number of copies required by the contract. All drawings of a specific item or system shall be made in one submittal, and within thirty (30) days after award of Contract. Shop drawings of all power equipment shall contain exact details of device placement, phasing and numbering, in form of elevations, for each major piece of equipment. Shop drawings shall be submitted on the following:
 - 1. SECTION 26 05 73: POWER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM ELECTRICAL STUDIES
 - 2. SECTION 26 09 43: LIGHTING CONTROL SYSTEM
 - 3. SECTION 26 09 44: DISTRIBUTED DIGITAL LIGHTING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM
 - 4. SECTION 26 22 00: DRY TYPE TRANSFORMERS
 - 5. SECTION 26 24 13: SWITCHBOARDS
 - 6. SECTION 26 24 16: POWER PANELBOARDS - CIRCUIT BREAKER TYPE
 - 7. SECTION 26 24 17: LIGHTING PANELBOARDS
 - 8. SECTION 26 28 16: SAFETY SWITCHES AND FUSES
 - 9. SECTION 26 43 00: SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES
 - 10. SECTION 26 50 00: LIGHTING MATERIALS AND METHODS
 - 11. SECTION 27 10 00: STRUCTURED CABLING SYSTEM
 - 12. SECTION 28 31 00: FIRE ALARM AND MASS NOTIFICATION SYSTEM
 - 13. SECTION 28 78 00: EMERGENCY RESPONDER RADIO COVERAGE SYSTEM
 - 14. ALL POWER DISTRIBUTION EQUIPMENT (i.e. SWITCHBOARDS, PANELBOARDS, DRY TYPE TRANSFORMER, ETC.)
 - 15. ALL ELECTRICAL AND TELECOMMUNICATION EQUIPMENT LAYOUTS - Submittals shall include 1/4" = 1'-0" CAD drawings (hand drawn sketches will not be accepted) of each electrical room, IT room, electrical equipment stand, generator area, or

any other similar area with electrical equipment. Drawings shall indicate all panelboards, transformers, switchboards, generators, equipment racks, control panels, HVAC equipment, etc. that are located in each electrical/IT area. Layouts shall show that each piece of electrical equipment has the clearances, working space and dedicated equipment space required by applicable codes. No conduits to equipment within these areas shall be installed until submittals have been provided and returned without exception by the design team.

- D. The contractor shall fully review, comment upon and correct all shop drawings as required to assure compliance with contract documents prior to submittal to Architect. The failure of the contractor to properly review and correct shop drawings prior to submittal will result in rejection of shop drawings by the engineer. Review by the Architect will be for general conformance with contract documents. The contractor shall be fully responsible for correctness of all submitted dimensions, details, quantities and locations.
- E. None of the above items shall be installed until shop drawings or catalog data have been reviewed by Architect without rejection or required resubmittal. Any listed item not submitted, even if specified, shall be considered not acceptable and shall be removed if directed.
- F. Any required resubmittal will be reviewed by the Architect for conformance with previously issued comments only. The contractor shall be responsible for verifying that all items not specifically requiring resubmittal have not been altered from the previously reviewed submittal.
- G. Material proposed for substitution shall be of the same quality, perform the same functions, conform to such physical dimensions and appearance as are required by the Architect. All material proposed for substitution is subject to the approval of the Architect and his authority for approval is final. No material proposed for substitution will be considered unless all submittal data complies with the drawings and specifications of Section 16 as to time of submission, number of copies of submittal, and detail requirements.
- H. Samples of material shall be furnished where required by drawings or Division 26/27/28 Specification, or as requested by the Architect on items proposed as substitutes.
- I. Submit to Architect a certificate of final inspection from local inspection department.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SITE VISIT

- A. The Contractor shall visit the site to determine existing dimensions and conditions affecting electrical work. Failure to do so in no way relieves Contractor of his responsibility under Contract.

3.2 CLEARANCE WITH UTILITIES

- A. It shall be the responsibility of this Contractor, prior to bid, to reaffirm with the utility companies involved, that the locations, arrangement (and with power company voltage, phase, and metering required) and connections to utility service are in accordance with their regulations and requirements. If their requirements are at variance with these drawings and specifications, the Contract price shall include any additional cost necessary to meet those requirements without extra cost to Owner after a contract is entered into.
- B. On many projects the utility company may levy charges due to locations, size or type service involved. The Contractor shall be responsible for these charges (including permanent meter deposit), unless such charges are not available prior to bid and Contractor so documents as

described below. The meter deposit will be refunded to the contractor at time of Owner's acceptance.

- C. Should above cost not be available, prior to bid, Contractor must submit a letter signed by a responsible utility company person so stating with his bid and in turn must be submitted by Prime Contractor with his bid to Owner. The cost will then be deleted from the Contract and become responsibility of the Owner.
- D. Arrange with utility companies for such services as shown or herein specified and installation of meter where shown. Furnish with shop drawings a signed document from utility companies describing the location and type of services to be furnished and any requirements they may have. This document shall be signed for each utility company by a person responsible for granting such service.

3.3 WORKMANSHIP

- A. All work shall be in accordance with the latest editions of NFPA 70 (National Electrical Code), NFPA 101 (Life Safety Code), National Electric Safety Code, International Building Code, applicable NECA standards and the rules and regulations of State and Local Authorities Having Jurisdiction.
- B. All work shall be executed in a workmanlike manner and shall present a neat and mechanical appearance upon completion.
- C. All equipment, devices, etc. shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- D. All items shall be installed straight and plumb in a workmanlike manner and care shall be exercised so that like items are mounted the same position, heights and general location.
- E. Keep site clean of accumulation of cartons, trash and debris.

3.4 SAFETY

- A. The contractor is solely responsible for all job safety. Architect assumes no responsibility for job safety. Maximum consideration shall be given to job safety and only such methods as will reasonably ensure the safety of all persons shall be employed. The codes and regulations of OSHA shall be given strict compliance as well as such other codes, laws, and regulations as may be applicable.

3.5 CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. Contract documents indicate diagrammatically, extent, general character and approximate location of work. Where work is indicated but minor details omitted, furnish and install it complete so as to perform its intended functions. For details and mechanical equipment, follow drawings provided by other disciplines (Architectural, Mechanical, Structural, Civil, etc.) and fit electrical work thereto.
- B. Contract documents consist only of the hardcopy documents issued by the Prime Architect. Electronic documents issued directly by the electrical engineer to the contractor and/or its sub-contractors/vendors are issued for convenience only (electronic documents are not formal contract documents).
- C. If the contractor and/or one of its suppliers require a one-time transfer of electronic files of the current electrical construction documents to prepare shop drawings (or for another similar purpose), it shall:

1. Sign a waiver prepared by the electrical engineer prior to the transmittal of these files.
2. Agree to pay the electrical engineer a fee of \$50.00 per drawing, up to a maximum of \$400 per transfer, payable upon receipt of the files.
3. To the fullest extent permitted by law, indemnify, hold harmless, and defend JRA from all claims, damages, losses and expenses, including attorneys' fees arising out of or resulting from the use of the CAD files.

D. Take finish dimensions at job in preference to scaled dimensions.

E. Except as above noted, make no changes in or deviations from work as shown or specified except on written order of Architect.

3.6 UNDERGROUND UTILITY/EQUIPMENT COORDINATION

- A. Prior to commencement of work, verify exact locations of all existing or proposed underground utilities and/or underground equipment and verify that proposed electrical installation does not conflict with these items. Notify Architect immediately if any conflict is found.

3.7 EQUIPMENT STORAGE

- A. Store all electrical equipment in dry, covered locations as directed by equipment manufacturers. Contractor shall be responsible for replacing or repairing improperly-stored equipment as directed by Architect.

3.8 EXCAVATION, CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Perform all cutting and excavating as necessary for installation of electrical systems, unless specifically covered under another section. After Architect's observation, complete all excavation, filling and backfilling as directed under specifications for preparation of site and earthwork. Foundations for equipment shall be as specified under concrete section. Concrete pads shall be minimum of 6" thick; unless greater thickness required by equipment manufacturer. Obtain specific approval of Architect before cutting into any structural members.
- B. For all such work employ competent workmen, and finish up in neat and workmanlike manner, equal to quality and appearance to adjacent work.

3.9 PENETRATIONS

- A. All penetrations in water tight barriers shall be made so that barrier rating is not compromised. Furnish roof flashing for all equipment installed under Division 26/27/28 that penetrates through the roof. Appropriate flashing is specified under roofing and sheet metal section. Supply these flashings for installation under roofing and sheet metal section.
- B. All fire/smoke barrier penetrations shall be made in accordance with a U.L. listed assembly to maintain the fire/smoke rating of the associated membrane.
- C. Where penetrations are required through structural elements, verify penetration locations and sizes with structural engineer. In no case shall the structural integrity be compromised without written approval from structural engineer.

3.10 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT - GENERAL

- A. Care shall be exercised in exact routing and location of all items so as not to obstruct access to equipment, personnel walkways, or expose it to potential mechanical damage.
- B. Items shall be securely anchored and/or fastened. Provide proper support for all equipment, devices, conduits, boxes, panels, etc. as required by code and for a workmanlike installation.

Provide guy wiring for wood poles where required to prevent leaning. All construction shall meet the seismic design requirements of the building code. Items (especially transformers, light fixtures, equipment racks, freestanding gear, etc.) installed in seismic zones C, D, E or F shall be supported and braced per applicable codes and standards.

- C. All wall, pole or frame-mounted electrical equipment shall be mounted to metal unistrut (or similar) frames of same material as electrical equipment. For example, pole-mounted painted or galvanized steel disconnect switches shall be mounted to galvanized steel unistrut frames.
- D. All electrical equipment, furnished by Contractor or by others shall be covered and protected during construction.
- E. All control cabinets, panels, motor control centers and other electrical cabinets and enclosures shall have all trash removed and be vacuumed clean. All foreign paint, etc., shall be removed from exterior and all scratches in finish touched up with same color and material as original. Any rusted areas shall be sanded, primed and repainted.
- F. All relays, starters, push-button and other control devices shall be cleaned and if necessary, lubricated with CRC 2-26 to assure free operation.

3.11 MOTORS, STARTERS AND CONTROLS

- A. Unless otherwise specified or shown, all motors will be furnished and installed under other sections of this specification.
- B. Electrical Contractor shall install all starters and all electrical power wiring and connections to motors and starters.
- C. Unless otherwise specified or shown, all control items for motors shall be furnished, installed and wired in conduit under other divisions of this specification.

3.12 CIRCUITS AND BRANCH CIRCUITS

- A. Outlets shall be connected to branch circuits as indicated on drawings by circuit numbers. No more outlets than are indicated shall be connected to a circuit.
- B. Branch circuit homeruns shall be installed as shown on drawings. Multiple homerun conduits shall not be combined by contractor into larger, single homerun conduits unless specific permission is granted by the Engineer.

3.13 LUG/TERMINAL RATINGS

- A. All lug/terminal ratings, sizes, locations, types, etc. shall be coordinated with the associated conductor sizes, types, routings, etc. by the contractor.
- B. All lugs/terminals/etc. shall be rated for 75 degree C terminations (minimum, unless specified otherwise).

3.14 EQUIPMENT FAULT CURRENT RATINGS

- A. All equipment and breakers shall meet the minimum RMS symmetrical interrupting capacity ratings shown on plans for the associated distribution equipment. All interrupting ratings shall be full ratings. Where new devices or breakers are added to existing distribution equipment, the new devices/breakers shall have interrupting ratings matching or exceeding that of the existing distribution equipment.

3.15 OUTLET LOCATION

- A. Symbols shown on drawings and mounting heights indicated on drawings and in specifications are approximate only. The exact locations and mounting height must be determined on the job and it shall be the Contractor's responsibility to coordinate with other trades to ensure correct installation.

3.16 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Each panel shall have each circuit identified. Panels without branch circuit nameplates shall have typewritten directories.
- B. Each individually mounted switch, circuit breaker, starter and/or any other control or protective device shall identify equipment fed and fuse size, if any, by engraved plastic nameplate, white with black letters, screw attached.
- C. See Specification Section 260553 for additional requirements.

3.17 GROUNDING

- A. All equipment shall be grounded and bonded in accordance with all state/local regulations, The National Electrical Code and as specified herein.

3.18 TELEPHONE WORK

- A. Provide telephone raceways, outlets and backboards, as shown. Provide additional work as described in Specification Section 271000 and/or shown on drawings. Bond all raceways together at backboards and provide No. 6 ground wire extending from raceway bonds to cold water pipe, in 1/2 inch raceway. Carefully ream ends of all raceways.

3.19 PAINTING

- A. Refer to Painting/Finishing specifications for requirements regarding field painting of exposed conduit. Any scratches, dents or rust spots in conduit electrical enclosures, panels, motor control or any other electrical items shall have the dents removed, and they, along with any rust spots or scratches, sanded and touched up with the same exact color paint as original finish.

3.20 ACCEPTANCE TESTING

- A. Upon completion of work, the entire electrical system installed within this project shall be tested and shall be shown to be in perfect working condition, in accordance with the intent of the specifications and drawings. It shall be the responsibility of the Electrical Contractor to have all systems ready for operation and to have an electrician available to operate same in accordance with and under the supervision of the observation representative(s) of the Architect. The Electrician shall be available to assist in removal of panel fronts, etc., to permit inspection as required.
- B. The electrical sub-contractor shall include in bid price start-up assistance and training from a certified representative of the manufacturer for the following systems:
 - 1. SECTION 26 09 43: LIGHTING CONTROL SYSTEM
 - 2. SECTION 26 09 44: DISTRIBUTED DIGITAL LIGHTING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM
 - 3. SECTION 27 10 00: STRUCTURED CABLING SYSTEM
 - 4. SECTION 28 31 00: FIRE ALARM AND MASS NOTIFICATION SYSTEM
 - 5. SECTION 28 78 00: EMERGENCY RESPONDER RADIO COVERAGE SYSTEM

3.21 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

- A. One set of marked "AS BUILT" drawings, three (3) sets of all equipment catalog and maintenance data and three (3) sets of all final shop drawings, on all equipment requiring same shall be turned over to owner. These items shall be bound in hard back book. Contractor shall explain and demonstrate all systems to Owner's representative.

3.22 GUARANTY-WARRANTY

- A. Furnish a written Guarantee-Warranty, countersigned and guaranteed by General Contractor, stating:
 - 1. That all work executed under this section will be free from defects of workmanship and materials for a period of one (1) year from date of final acceptance of this work.
 - 2. Above parties further agree that they will, at their own expense, repair and replace all such defective work, and all other work damaged thereby, which becomes defective during the term of the Guaranty-Warranty.

END OF SECTION 260500

SECTION 260519 – POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES 51V-600V

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. Power Wires and Cables
- B. Low Voltage Wires and Cables

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 POWER WIRES AND CABLES - 600 VOLT

- A. General: Conductors shall have current carrying capacities as per N.E.C. and with 600 volt insulation, #12 minimum except for controls and fixture wire. Conductors shall be copper.
- B. General Application (see below for exceptions):
 - 1. At or Below Grade (including within slab-on-grade):
 - a. #8 or larger conductors:
 - 1) XHHW or RHH/RHW/USE stranded (in conduit).
 - b. #10 or smaller conductors for circuits terminating at motors:
 - 1) THHN/THWN or XHHW stranded (in conduit).
 - c. #10 or smaller conductors (excluding circuits terminating at motors):
 - 1) THHN/THWN or XHHW solid (in conduit).
 - 2. Above Grade:
 - a. #8 or larger conductors:
 - 1) THHN/THWN, XHHW or RHH/RHW/USE stranded (in conduit).
 - b. #10 or smaller conductors for circuits terminating at motors:
 - 1) THHN/THWN, XHHW or RHH/RHW/USE stranded (in conduit).
 - c. #10 or smaller conductors (excluding circuits terminating at motors):
 - 1) THHN/THWN, XHHW or RHH/RHW/USE solid (in conduit).
 - 3. Power Wire and cable shall be as manufactured by Southwire, Rome, Encore Wire, American Insulated Wire, Okonite, Phelps-Dodge, Americable, Aetna or approved equal.
- C. Emergency Feeder Wiring
 - 1. Where specifically required by NEC articles 700, 701, or other similar sections, feeder-circuit wiring for emergency systems and legally-required standby systems shall be a listed electrical circuit protective system consisting of 2-hour fire-rated, mineral insulated, copper-sheathed wiring cable (Pyrotenax System 1850 or equal).
- D. Class 1 Control Cabling (120VAC Control Circuits, Etc.)
 - 1. Unless specified otherwise, Class 1 control cabling shall:

- a. Be rated for exposed cable tray installation.
 - b. Be plenum rated.
 - c. Be UL-rated for the proposed application.
 - d. Be multi-conductor with overall outer sheath as required by the application. The insulation of each conductor within the overall multi-conductor cable shall be uniquely color-coded. Ground conductors (when provided) within the multi-conductor cable shall have green insulation. Conductors with green insulation shall not be used for conductors other than ground.
 - e. Utilize copper conductors.
 - f. Have wire gauge as required to limit voltage drop to acceptable limits determined by the system supplier and to meet all applicable code requirements.
 - g. Where installed underground, within slab-on-grade or in exterior locations, be rated for wet locations.
 - h. Where required for specific systems, meet the specific requirements (conductor quantity, wire gauge, insulation type, shielding, etc.) of the system supplier.
 - i. Be rated for 600V.
 - j. Be industrial grade.
 - k. Have stranded conductors.
 - l. Have sunlight/oil-resistant PVC/Nylon insulation and jacket with ripcord.
 2. Control cabling shall be as manufactured by Belden, AlphaWire or General Cable.
- E. Fixture Wiring
1. Conductor Types:
 - a. Type TFFN or XFF.
 2. Minimum Sizes:
 - a. For fixtures up to 300 watts: #16.
 - b. For fixtures over 300 watts up to 1500 watts: #14.
 - c. For fixtures over 1500 watts: as required.
 - d. Conductors to concrete pour fixtures: #12.
 3. Fixture wire shall extend only from fixture to first junction, and not over 6 feet, except for concrete pour units.
- 2.2 WIRE CONNECTIONS:
- A. All connector types:
1. Shall be properly rated for the proposed application by UL and per the manufacturer.
- B. At Motor Connections (within motor terminal boxes):
1. On Unshielded Wire:
 - a. Single conductor per phase: shall be made with insulated set screw connectors or 3M 5300 Series 1kV Motor Lead Connections kits with mechanical lugs as required.
 - b. Multiple conductors per phase: shall be made with insulated mechanical lugs, rated for the associated motor cable types, by Polaris or IlSCO.
 2. On Shielded Power Wire:

- a. The braided shields and internal grounding conductors of shielded power (not instrumentation) cables shall be grounded at BOTH ends (at VFD/starter and at motor) with a termination kit provided by the cable supplier. This termination kit shall include a connection ring that makes contact around the full circumference of the braided shield, and connects all internal grounds to a common external ground point.
 3. Cabling within motor terminal boxes shall be trained such as to prevent any splice/termination/connection kits from contacting inside edge(s) of the motor terminal boxes (to prevent chaffing of the insulation/splice/wiring which could lead to faults). Contractor shall carefully coordinate all required motor terminal box sizes to ensure proper capacity for all required conductors/splices.
- C. Other Dry locations:
 1. On Wire larger than #10: shall be made with solderless, non-insulated compression-type connectors meeting requirements of Federal Specification WS-610e for Type II, Class 2 and shall be covered with Scotch #33 electrical tape so that insulation is equal to 150% of conductor insulation.
 2. On Wire #10 and smaller: shall be made with one of the following:
 - a. Ideal Wing Nuts or equal by 3M .
 - b. Ideal Push-In Wire Connectors (for #12 and smaller only).
- D. Other Wet/Damp locations:
 1. On Wire larger than #10: shall be made with underground/direct-burial, waterproof rated EPDM or TPE-insulated connectors by Ilsco, Burndy or T&B.
 2. On Wire #10 and smaller: shall be made with one of the following:
 - a. Ideal Weatherproof or Underground Wire Connectors pre-filled with 100% silicone sealant as required by the application.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL INSTALLATION

- A. All wires and cables shall be installed in conduit unless specifically noted otherwise.
- B. All joints and splices on wire shall be made with solderless connectors, and covered so that insulation is equal to conductor insulation.
- C. No splices shall be pulled into conduit.
- D. No conductor shall be pulled until conduit is cleaned of all foreign matter.
- E. Wire and cable shall be neatly formed, bundled and tied in all panelboards, wireways, disconnect switches, pullboxes, junction boxes, cabinets and other similar electrical enclosures.
- F. All wires and cables installed in underground or other wet locations shall be rated by the manufacturer for wet locations.
- G. Network cabling shall be continuous from endpoint to endpoint and shall not be spliced unless specifically noted otherwise.
- H. All conductors/cabling (including spare conductors) shall be properly terminated unless specifically directed otherwise. See above for general termination hardware requirements.

3.2 POWER WIRE AND CABLE INSTALLATION:

- A. No power conductor shall be smaller than #12 except where so designated on the drawings or hereinafter specified.
- B. Multi-wire lighting branches shall be used as indicated.
- C. Where more than three current-carrying conductors are installed in a single raceway or cable, conductors shall be derated as indicated in NEC Table 310.15(B)(3)(a).
- D. Raceways/cables shall generally not be installed exposed to sunlight on roofs unless specifically required. Where raceways or cables are installed exposed to sunlight on roofs, conductors shall be derated with ampacities adjusted per NEC Table 310.15(B)(3)(c).
- E. In installing parallel power conductors, it is mandatory that all conductors making up the feeder be exactly the same length, the same size, the same type of conductor with the same insulation. Each group of conductors making up a phase or neutral must be bonded at both ends in an approved manner.
- F. In installing overhead main power services, a minimum of 5'-0" of cable per run shall be extended beyond the weatherhead(s) for connection to service drop. Confirm exact requirements with local utility company.

3.3 WIRE CONNECTIONS

- A. See Part 2 above for material types.
- B. Aluminum Wire Connections:
 - 1. Where aluminum wiring is allowed, connections shall utilize compression fittings, no exceptions (Anderson Versa Crimp or equal).
- C. Any stranded wire connection to wiring devices shall be made with crimp type terminals.
- D. All electrical connections and terminals shall be tightened according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values with calibrated torque wrenches as required to clearly indicate final torque value to the contractor. Where manufacturer's torque values are not provided, those specified in UL 486A & 486B shall be used.
- E. All connections and connector types shall be installed in strict compliance with all requirements of the connector manufacturer.
- F. Under no condition shall the specified conductors be connected to terminals rated less than 75°C. Where conductors sized #1 or smaller are shown to be terminated at equipment and the terminals of that equipment are rated for less than 75°C, contractor shall install junction box near equipment to capture the specified conductors, splice with compression connections (rated for a least 75°C) and extend conductors with ampacity rating as required by NEC (based on terminal temperature rating) to equipment terminals. The length of the conductors to be terminated shall be as directed by the AHJ but not less than 48 inches.

3.4 LOW VOLTAGE (LESS THAN 50V) CONTROL AND NETWORK CABLE INSTALLATION:

- A. All wires and cables shall be installed in conduit unless specifically noted otherwise. Low voltage control and/or network cabling located within concealed, accessible ceiling spaces (such as above lay-in ceilings) may be run without conduit if the following requirements are met:

1. Cabling shall be plenum-rated, multi-conductor.
2. Cabling shall be supported by cable tray or with J-hook supports on intervals not to exceed 5'-0" on center. Cabling shall be supported solely from the cable tray or j-hooks supported from the building structure, without using piping, ductwork, conduit or other items as supports.
3. Cabling shall be properly bundled with plenum-rated Velcro straps on intervals not to exceed 30" on center.
4. Properly-sized conduit(s) shall be provided wherever cabling enters an inaccessible or exposed area (such as above gyp board ceilings or through walls). End bushings shall be provided on both ends of all raceway terminations. All fire/smoke barrier penetrations shall be made in accordance with a U.L. listed assembly.

3.5 CIRCUITS AND BRANCH CIRCUITS

- A. Outlets shall be connected to branch circuits as indicated on drawings by circuit number adjacent to outlet symbols, and no more outlets than are indicated shall be connected to a circuit.

3.6 LABELING AND COLOR CODING OF WIRE AND CABLE

- A. Refer to Specification Section 260553 for all labeling requirements.
- B. A color coding system as listed below shall be followed throughout the network of branch power circuits as follows:

PHASE	120/208/240/ COLOR	120/240 HIGH LEG DELTA COLOR	277/480 VOLT COLOR
A	BLACK	BLACK	BROWN
B	RED	ORANGE (FOR HI- LEG)	ORANGE
C	BLUE	BLUE	YELLOW
NEUTRAL	WHITE	WHITE	GRAY
GROUND	GREEN	GREEN	GREEN

- C. Where dedicated neutrals are installed for multi-wire branch circuits, the neutral conductors shall be color coded as follows:

PHASE	120/208/240/ COLOR	120/240 HIGH LEG DELTA COLOR	277/480 VOLT COLOR
NEUTRAL A	WHITE W/ BLACK TRACER	WHITE W/ BLACK TRACER	GRAY W/ BROWN TRACER
NEUTRAL B	WHITE W/ RED TRACER	WHITE W/ ORANGE TRACER (FOR HI-LEG NEUTRAL)	GRAY W/ ORANGE TRACER
NEUTRAL C	WHITE W/ BLUE TRACER	WHITE W/ BLUE TRACER	GRAY W/ YELLOW TRACER

- D. Control Conductors: Shall be color coded by use of colored "tracers". No control circuit shall contain two identical conductors. For example, a set of five (5) control conductors for a pushbutton station represents one (1) control circuit which would require five (5) uniquely-colored control conductors.

3.7 TESTING

- A. The insulation resistance of all feeder conductors (feeding electrical distribution equipment such as switchboards, panelboards, transfer switches, transformers, etc.) shall be tested at the load side of the feeder breaker with a 1000-volt DC Megger Tester prior to energization or final termination. Any feeder conductor with an insulation resistance less than the recommended minimums in the latest version of NETA Acceptance Testing Specification (“ATS”) standard shall be replaced by the contractor at the contractor’s expense. All final test results shall be clearly documented (with date, time, feeder, results, test equipment, etc.), and the final test results shall be submitted to the design team for review.

END OF SECTION 260519

SECTION 260526 – GROUNDING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL

- A. THE WORK UNDER THIS SECTION INCLUDES BUT IS NOT LIMITED TO GROUNDING OF THE FOLLOWING:

1. Service Equipment.
2. Transformers.
3. Non-current carrying conductive surfaces of equipment.
4. Metal Buildings.
5. Structures.
6. Other Equipment.

1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. All equipment, building steel, and main service shall be effectively and permanently grounded with a conductor cross section as required by the National Electrical Code and of capacity sufficient to ensure continued effectiveness of the ground connections for fault current. Ground conductors shall be as short and straight as possible, protected from mechanical injury and, if practicable, without splice or joint.
- B. All grounding connections shall be installed in accordance with the National Electrical Code and all local codes and requirements. Such codes shall be considered minimum requirements and the installation of the grounding system shall ensure freedom from dangerous shock voltage exposure and provide a low impedance ground fault path to permit proper operation of overcurrent and ground fault protective devices.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUCTORS

- A. All grounding conductors shall be insulated with green colored, 600 volt insulation unless noted otherwise.
- B. Motors having power supplied by single conductor wire in conduit shall be grounded through the conduit system. Flexible conduit shall be “jumpered” by an appropriate bonding conductor.

2.2 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

- A. Grounding electrodes shall be copper-clad steel rods 3/4 inch in diameter and ten feet long. Where longer electrodes are necessary to reduce the ground resistance, Contractor shall provide sectional rods, connectors, drive heads, etc.

2.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. All conductor-to-conductor, conductor-to-ground rod, conductor-to-structure, conductor-to-fence connections of #6 and larger sized conductors and underground ground connections shall be permanent exothermic welded connections (Cadweld or equal) unless otherwise noted on applicable drawings.

- B. Connections to equipment shall be by bolted compression type lugs (except for motors). When the conductor is #6 and larger, the lug shall be joined to the conductor by an exothermic weld (Cadweld or equal).
- C. Motors to be grounded by the grounding conductors run with the power conductors shall have a split-post grounding stud installed in the connection box.
- D. Each cast pull box or junction box shall have a ground lug, connected to largest ground conductor to enter box.
- E. Ground connections at conduit terminations shall be made by approved grounding bushings (see Raceways Specification Section for additional requirements).

2.4 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Conduit clamps and connectors shall be manufactured by Raco, OZ., or Ercon.
- B. Lugs shall be as manufactured by Square "D", Burndy, or T and B.
- C. Exothermic weld connections shall be as manufactured by Cadweld, or approved equal.
- D. Ground rods shall be as manufactured by Joslyn or McGraw Edison.
- E. Split post grounding shall be as manufactured by Burndy or T and B.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 MAIN SERVICE GROUND

- A. The main service grounding electrode system shall consist of the following items bonded together by the grounding electrode conductor:
 - 1. The main underground cold water pipe (metal).
 - 2. The metal frame of the building.
 - 3. Driven ground rods. Ground rods shall be embedded at the lowest point in the building and below the permanent moisture level. Ground rods shall be spaced a minimum of ten (10) feet apart and connected in parallel until resistance to ground does not exceed five (5) ohms.
- B. The grounding electrode system shall be connected to the grounded conductor (neutral) on the supply side of the service disconnecting means by a grounding electrode conductor not smaller than that shown in Table 250.66 of the N.E.C. The main service equipment grounding conductor shall be connected to the grounding conductor on the supply side of the service disconnecting means in accordance with Table 250.122 of the N.E.C. for the ampere rating of the service entrance equipment. Where in a service entrance switchboard, the equipment grounding conductor shall not be less than 25% of the main bus rating. These connections shall be made inside the service entrance equipment enclosure.

3.2 TRANSFORMER GROUNDS

- A. Dry type insulation transformers with a grounded conductor in the secondary shall be grounded in accordance with N.E.C. Section 250-30.

3.3 EXPOSED NON-CURRENT-CARRYING METAL PARTS

- A. General: Ground connections to equipment or devices shall be made as close to the current carrying parts as possible, that is, to the main frame rather than supporting structures, bases or

shields. Grounding connections shall be made only to dry surfaces that are clean and dry. Steel surfaces shall be ground or filed to remove all scales, rust, grease, and dirt. Copper and galvanized steel shall be cleaned to remove oxide before making welds or connections. Code size ground conductors shall be run in all power conduits and properly terminated at each end.

- B. Ground conductors shall be routed as straight as possible. Where possible, ground conductors shall be routed such as to avoid bends exceeding 90 degrees or with a radius of less than 8".
- C. Motors: Exposed non-current-carrying metal parts, shall be grounded by a grounding conductor either run with power conductors, and/or separate grounding conductors. Drawings will show method(s) to be used. The ground conductors with all motor conductors shall be connected to the ground buss in the motor connection box. Jumper connections shall be installed between frames and rigid conduit for equipment having flexible conduit connections (sealtight). All AC motor grounds shall provide a low impedance path to ground.
- D. Raceways & boxes: All raceways, conduits, armored or shielded cable and all exposed non-current carrying metal parts shall be grounded. Such items shall be bonded together and permanently grounded to the equipment ground buss. Metallic conduits shall be connected by grounding or clamps to ground buss. Flexible "jumpers" shall be provided around all raceway expansion joints. Bonding straps for steel conduit shall be copper. Jumper connections shall be provided to effectively ground all sections of rigid conduit connected into plastic pipe. No metallic conduit shall be left ungrounded. In conduit systems interrupted by junction or switch boxes where locknuts and bushings are used to secure the conduit in the box, the sections of conduit and box must be bonded together. If conduit, couplings or fittings have a protective coating or non-conductive material, such as enamel, such coating must be thoroughly removed from threads of both couplings and conduit and the surface of conduit or fitting where the ground clamp is secured.
- E. Enclosures: Metal conduits entering free standing motor control centers, switchboards or other free standing equipment shall be grounded by bare conductors and approved clamp. Any conduits entering low voltage (480 volts or below) equipment through sheet metal enclosure and effectively grounded to enclosure by double locknut or hub need not be otherwise bonded.
- F. Equipment: In addition to equipment grounding provisions mandated by code requirements, additional equipment grounding provisions (including local ground rods, connections, etc.) shall be provided by the contractor as directed by equipment suppliers.
- G. Both ends of ground busses in motor control centers, switchboards, etc., shall be separately connected to the main ground buss to form two separate paths to ground.
- H. Fences and Grills: Fences and metal grills around equipment carrying voltage above 500 volts between phases shall be bonded together and to ground. Fences and grill work shall be grounded at every post, column, or support, and on each side of every gate.

3.4 ACCEPTANCE DOCUMENTATION AND TESTING

- A. Contractor shall take and store photographs of all underground grounding system connections prior to burial of connections, for review by Engineer.
- B. Upon completion of work, the entire ground system shall be shown to be in perfect working condition, in accordance with the intent of the Specifications.
- C. Contractor shall measure the resistance between the main ground bonding jumper to true earth ground using the Fall of Potential method as described by ANSI/IEEE Standard 81 ("Guide for Measuring Earth Resistivity, Ground Impedance, and Earth Surface Potentials of an Earth System"). If the measured value is greater than five ohms, additional grounding electrodes shall

be installed as described in Part 3.1 above. The final ground resistance value shall be submitted in writing, and documented via picture of the meter reading from the Fall of Potential test, to the Architect prior to the final observation, and shall be included in final O&M documentation.

END OF SECTION 260526

SECTION 260533 – RACEWAYS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

A. THE WORK UNDER THIS SECTION INCLUDES BUT IS NOT LIMITED TO THE FOLLOWING:

1. Conduits
2. Conduit Fittings
3. Couplings & Connectors
4. Bushings
5. Raceway Hardware, Conduit Clamps & Supports
6. Watertight Entrance Seal Devices

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUITS

A. Rigid Galvanized Steel and I.M.C.:

1. Shall be galvanized outside and inside by hot dipping.
2. Shall be as manufactured by Republic, Wheatland, Pittsburg Standard, Youngstown, Allied or equal.

B. E.M.T.:

1. Shall be Electro-Galvanized.
2. Shall be as manufactured by Republic, Wheatland, Pittsburg Standard, Youngstown, Allied or equal.

C. Rigid Aluminum:

1. Shall be manufactured of 6063 Alloy, T-1 temper.
2. Shall be manufactured by Republic (Nucor), Wheatland, Allied (Atkore), Penn or equal.

D. Schedule 40 and 80 PVC:

1. Shall be composed of polyvinyl chloride and shall be U.L. rated type 40 or 80 for use with 90 degree rated conductors. Conduit shall conform to NEMA Standards and applicable sections of N.E.C.
2. The conduit manufacturer shall have had a minimum of 5 years experience in the manufacture of the products. Non-metallic raceways shall be as manufactured by Carlon, Triangle, Can-Tex, Allied or equal.

E. HDPE Innerduct

1. Shall be composed high density polyethylene and shall be orange in color, unless noted otherwise.
2. Shall be corrugated unless noted otherwise.
3. Shall be manufactured by Carlon, Ipex or equal.

F. Flexible Metallic Conduit:

1. Shall be continuous spiral wound and interlocked galvanized material, code approved for grounding.

G. Liquidtight Flexible Metallic Conduit:

1. Shall be galvanized steel-core sealtite, code approved for grounding.
2. Shall have an outer liquidtight, nonmetallic, sunlight-resistant jacket over an inner flexible metal core.
3. Shall be as manufactured by Electric-Flex, Anaconda or equal.

2.2 FITTINGS, COUPLINGS & CONNECTORS

- A. Rigid Galvanized Steel and I.M.C. couplings and connectors shall be standard threaded type, galvanized outside and inside by hot dipping. Threadless and clamp type are not acceptable. Couplings/connectors shall be as manufactured by Racor, Efcor, or Appleton or equal.
- B. All rain tight connectors shall be threaded Myers or approved equal, rated for outdoor application.
- C. E.M.T. couplings and connectors shall be set screw, or steel compression type. All couplings and connectors shall be 720B, 730, 750B, or 760 series of Efcor or equal series of Racor. Pressure indented type connectors or cast metal will not be approved for any location. E.M.T. couplings and connectors shall be as manufactured by O-Z/Gedney, T&B, Efcor, Racor, Midwest or equal. E.M.T. fittings, couplings and connectors located within concrete (where allowed) shall be compression type and shall be adequately sealed with tape to ensure a concrete-tight seal.
- D. Rigid Aluminum couplings and connectors shall be standard threaded type, of the same alloy as the associated conduit. Threadless and clamp type are not acceptable. Fittings shall be as manufactured by Thomas & Betts, Crouse-Hinds, Appleton, Pyle-National or equal.
- E. All PVC couplings, adapters, end bells, reducers, etc., shall be of same material as conduit.
- F. Liquidtight Flexible Metallic Conduit connectors shall be liquidtight with insulating throat or end bushing, designed for application with Liquidtight Flexible Metallic Conduit. Fittings shall be as manufactured by Efcor, Racor, Midwest or equal.
- G. All LB unilets sizes 1 1/4" or larger shall have rollers.
- H. Miscellaneous conduit fittings shall be as manufactured by Appleton, Crouse-Hinds, Pyle-National, Russell & Stoll or equal.

2.3 BUSHINGS

- A. All non-grounding rigid bushings 1-1/4" and larger shall be the insulating type (O-Z/Gedney type "BB" or equal by T&B, Midwest Electric or Penn Union).
- B. All non-grounding rigid bushings 1" and smaller shall be threaded malleable iron with integral noncombustible insulator rated for 150°C. Non-grounding rigid conduit bushings shall be O-Z/Gedney type "B" or equal by T&B, Midwest Electric or Penn Union.
- C. All grounding rigid bushings shall be threaded malleable iron with integral noncombustible insulator rated for 150°C. All grounding rigid conduit bushings shall be O-Z/Gedney type "BLG" or equal by T&B, Midwest Electric or Penn Union.

2.4 HARDWARE, CONDUIT CLAMPS AND SUPPORTS

- A. All hardware such as expansion shields, machine screws, toggle bolts, “U” or “J” bolts, machine bolts, conduit clamps and supports shall be of corrosion resistant materials (stainless steel, aluminum, galvanized or plated steel, or other approved materials).
- B. Hardware in contact with aluminum handrails, plates or structural members and all hardware in exterior, wet or corrosive areas shall be type 316 stainless steel or aluminum (with bitumastic paint coating to isolate aluminum from contact with concrete where necessary) unless specifically noted otherwise.
- C. Supports in exterior, wet or corrosive locations shall be type 316 stainless steel or aluminum (with bitumastic paint coating to isolate aluminum from contact with concrete where necessary) unless specifically noted otherwise.
- D. Supports in extremely corrosive environments (such as chlorine or fluoride storage rooms) shall be PVC-Coated steel unless specifically noted otherwise.
- E. Hardware and conduit clamps shall be as manufactured by Efcor, Steel City, G.A., Tinnerman or equal.

2.5 WATERTIGHT ENTRANCE SEAL DEVICES

- A. For new construction, seal devices shall consist of oversized sleeve and malleable iron body with sealing rings, pressure rings, sealing grommets and pressure clamps as required (O-Z/Gedney type FSK/WSK or equal).
- B. For cored-hole applications, seal devices shall consist of assembled dual pressure disks with neoprene sealing rings and membrane clamps as required (O-Z/Gedney type CSM or equal).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Minimum Diameter: 1/2-inch.
- B. Raceway Type: Raceway types shall be as specified below, unless indicated otherwise on drawings:
 - 1. Exterior, Exposed: Rigid Galvanized Steel or I.M.C. unless otherwise noted.
 - 2. Other Exterior (Concrete-Encased or Direct Earth Buried): Schedule 40 PVC. PVC conduit shall convert to metallic conduit prior to exiting concrete-encasement or direct earth burial. See “transition” items below for additional requirements. Conduits shall be left exposed until after Architect’s observation.
 - 3. Interior, Exposed:
 - a. Hazardous Locations: Rigid Galvanized Steel .
 - b. Wet Locations (including, but not limited to, Pump Rooms, Wet Wells, Underground Vaults, and other similar locations): Rigid Galvanized Steel or I.M.C. .
 - c. Dry Locations Where Subject to Mechanical Damage (including, but not limited to, below 10’-0” A.F.F. in shop, storage, warehouse and other similar areas): Rigid Galvanized Steel or I.M.C..
 - d. Extremely Corrosive Locations (Chlorine Storage Rooms, Fluoride Storage Rooms and other similar areas): Schedule 80 PVC.
 - e. Other Dry Locations: E.M.T.
 - 4. Interior, Concealed:

- a. Embedded inside Poured Concrete Walls, Ceilings or Floors, with a minimum of 2" of concrete between finished surface and outer wall of conduit on all sides, where no anchor bolts, screws or other similar items will be installed: Schedule 40 PVC. PVC conduit shall convert to metallic conduit (exact type as specified elsewhere within this section) prior to exiting poured concrete-encasement of wall, ceiling, floor or ductbank. See "transition" items below for additional requirements.
 - b. Other Raceways Embedded inside Poured Concrete Walls, Ceilings or Floors (not meeting requirements above): Rigid Galvanized Steel or I.M.C. (coated with two (2) spiral-wrapped layers of 3M Scotchrap 50 PVC tape or two coats of asphaltum paint where below grade or within concrete).
 - c. Other Raceways: E.M.T.
5. Terminations at motors, transformers and other equipment which has moving or vibrating parts:
 - a. Exterior or Wet Locations (including, but not limited to, Pump Rooms, Wet Wells, Underground Vaults, and other similar locations): Liquidtight Flexible Metallic Conduit (shall generally not exceed 24 inches in length) with watertight fittings.
 - b. Dry, Interior Locations: Flexible Metallic Conduit (shall generally not exceed 24 inches in length).
6. Terminations at fixtures mounted in grid-type ceilings:
 - a. Flexible Metallic Conduit or MC cabling (shall generally not exceed 72 inches in length and shall run from junction box to fixture, not from fixture to fixture).
7. Transition from underground or concrete-encased to exposed:
 - a. Convert PVC to Rigid Galvanized Steel (coated with two (2) spiral-wrapped layers of 3M Scotchrap 50 PVC tape or two coats of asphaltum paint where below grade or within concrete) utilizing Rigid Galvanized Steel 90 degree bends (and vertical conduits as required by application) prior to exiting concrete/grade (except at outdoor pull boxes and under freestanding electrical equipment, where terminations shall be by PVC end bells installed flush with top of slab). Exposed portions of these coated conduits shall extend a minimum of 6" above floor level, and shall be installed at uniform heights.

3.2 RACEWAY INSTALLATION

A. General:

1. Follow methods which are appropriate and approved for the location and conditions involved. Where not otherwise shown, specified, or approved in a particular case, run all wiring concealed.
2. Where conduit crosses a structural expansion joint an approved conduit expansion fitting shall be installed.
3. A non-conductive polypropylene pull string, properly tied/secured at either end, shall be installed in all empty conduits.
4. Metal conduit field-cuts shall be cut square with a hacksaw and the ends reamed after threading.
5. PVC conduit field-cuts shall be made with hacksaw, and ends shall be deburred.
6. All PVC joints shall be made as follows:
 - a. Clean the outside of the conduit to depth of the socket, and the inside of socket with an approved cleaner.

- b. Apply solvent cement as recommended by the conduit manufacturer to the interior of the socket and exterior of conduit, making sure to coat all surfaces to be joined.
 - c. Insert conduit into the socket and rotate 1/4 to 1/2 turn and allow to dry.
- 7. All metallic conduit installed below grade or within concrete shall be coated with two (2) spiral-wrapped layers of 3M Scotchrap 50 PVC tape or two coats of asphaltum paint prior to installation.
 - 8. Install ground wire sized per N.E.C. Table 250.122 in all conduits.
 - 9. Use of running threads is absolutely prohibited. Conduit shall be jointed with approved threaded conduit couplings. Threadless and clamp type not acceptable.
 - 10. Conduits shall be sized in accordance with latest National Electrical Code except when size shown on drawings. 1/2-inch conduit shall not contain conductors larger than No. 12 or more than four (4) No. 12 conductors.
 - 11. Exposed, field-cut threads on all metal conduits shall be painted with zinc primer (for Galvanized Rigid or I.M.C.).

B. Routing/Locating:

- 1. Exposed conduit runs shall be run level and plumb and shall, on interior of buildings, be run parallel and/or at right angles to building walls and/or partitions.
- 2. Conduit with an external diameter larger than 1/3 the thickness of a concrete slab shall not be placed in the slab. Conduits in slab shall not be spaced closer than 3 diameters on center.
- 3. Conduit run in ceiling spaces shall be run as high as possible, all at same level, and shall be supported from building structure. Do not support conduit from any other installation.
- 4. Conduit run within exterior CMU, concrete or other similar walls shall be run within the CMU cells / concrete structure / etc. Conduits shall not be run on the outside surface of CMU cells / concrete structure / etc. underneath exterior veneers / etc., which could cause a thermal break in the wall insulation or a future water intrusion problem.
- 5. Install conduit runs to avoid proximity to steam or hot water pipes. In no place shall a conduit be run within 6" of such pipes except where crossing is unavoidable, then conduit shall be kept at least 3" from the covering of the pipe crossed.
- 6. Before installing raceways for motors, HVAC equipment and other fixed equipment, check location of all equipment connections/terminal boxes with equipment supplier and locate and arrange raceways appropriately.
- 7. A minimum of 12" of clearance (or more as required by associated utility companies) shall be provided between the finished lines of exterior, underground conduit runs and exterior, underground utilities (gas, water, sewer, etc.).
- 8. Where any portion of raceway is installed in a wet environment (such as below grade) and located at a higher elevation than the raceway termination point in a dry environment, install watertight compound inside raceway at termination around cabling to prevent transfer of water through conduit system. Watertight compound shall be rated for the potential water head pressure, based on the assumption that ground water level would be at grade level.

C. Bends:

- 1. Do not make bends (in any raceway, including flexible conduits) that exceed allowable conductor bending radius of cable to be installed or that significantly restrict conductor flexibility.
- 2. All bends within concrete-encased ductbanks installed in exterior locations shall be long radius bends (24" minimum bending radius – varies with conduit diameter).
- 3. Where numerous exposed bends or grouped together, all bends shall be parallel, with same center and shall be similar in appearance
- 4. All PVC elbows, bends, etc., shall be either factory bends or made with an approved heat bender.

D. Support:

1. Anchor conduit securely in place by means of approved conduit clamps, hangers, supports and fastenings. Arrangement and methods of fastening all conduits shall be subject to Engineer's direction and approval. All conduits shall be rigidly supported (wire supports may not be used in any location). Use only approved clamps on exposed conduit.
2. Conduit in riser shafts shall be supported at each floor level by approved clamp hangers.
3. Right angle beam clamps and U bolts shall be specially formed and sized to snugly fit the outside diameters of conduits.
4. Where installed in seismic zones, suspended raceways shall be braced in two (2) directions as required to prevent swaying and excessive movement.
5. Raceways installed on top of flat roofing shall be supported a minimum of 3 ½" above roof with rubber block supports (Cooper B-Line Dura-Blok or equal). Installation shall be in strict accordance with support manufacturer's instructions and recommendations.

E. Terminations:

1. All conduit connections to sheet metal cabinets or enclosures located in exterior or wet locations shall terminate by use of rain tight (Meyers) hubs.
2. Where rigid or I.M.C. conduits enter sheet metal boxes, they shall be secured by approved lock nuts and bushings.
3. Where metal conduits enter outdoor pull boxes, manholes, under freestanding electrical equipment or other locations where direct metal-to-metal contact does not exist between enclosure and conduit, grounding bushings shall be installed. Each grounding bushing shall be connected to the enclosure ground and all other grounding bushings with properly sized grounding conductors.
4. Where E.M.T. enters sheet metal boxes they shall be secured in place with approved insulating fittings.
5. Where PVC enters outdoor pull boxes, manholes or under freestanding electrical equipment, PVC end bells shall be installed.
6. Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating required conduit sizes with equipment hubs/conduit entry provisions (such as at motor tap boxes) prior to installation of conduit systems. Contractor shall field adjust final conduit sizes at terminations where so required (only as allowed by code) from those indicated on plans to coordinate with equipment hubs/conduit entry provisions.
7. Where conduit terminates in free air such that associated cabling/circuitry becomes exposed (such as at cable trays, etc.), conduit shall generally terminate in a horizontal orientation (to prevent dust/debris/etc. from entering conduit system). Where vertical conduit termination is necessary, the termination shall be provided with cord-grip conduit terminations to seal the conduit system.
8. Conduit ends shall be carefully plugged during construction.
9. Permanent, removable caps or plugs shall be installed on each end of all empty raceways with fittings listed to prevent water and other foreign matter from entering the conduit system.

F. Penetrations:

1. All fire/smoke barrier penetrations shall be made in accordance with a U.L. listed assembly. Refer to drawings and other specifications for additional requirements.
2. All penetrations shall be at right angles unless shown otherwise.
3. Structural members (including footings and beams) shall not be notched or penetrated for the installation of electrical raceways unless noted otherwise without specific approval of the structural engineer.
4. Dry-packed non-shrink grout or watertight seal devices shall be used to seal openings around conduits at all penetrations through concrete walls, ceilings or aboveground floors.

5. All raceways entering structures, or where water is otherwise capable of entering equipment/devices through the raceway system, shall be sealed (at the first box or outlet) with foam duct sealant to prevent the entrance of gases or liquids from one area to another or into equipment/devices.
 - a. Where the elevation of the raceway penetration (into the structure) is no more than 15' below the other (higher) end of the same raceway, Polywater FST sealant (rated to hold back up to 22' of continuous water head pressure), or pre-approved equal, shall be used.
 - b. Where the elevation of the raceway penetration (into the structure) is between 15' and 75' below the other (higher) end of the same raceway, Polywater PHRD Custom Mechanical Seals (rated to hold back up to 36psi or 83' of continuous water head pressure), or pre-approved equal, shall be used.
 - c. Where the elevation of the raceway penetration (into the structure) is more than 75' below the other (higher) end of the same raceway, the contractor shall propose a custom solution designed to hold back or to drain the possible water within the associated raceway. Submittals shall be provided to the engineer for review/approval, including a summary of the anticipated elevations/PSIs, details of the proposed installation, cut-sheets of devices/materials, etc.
6. Additionally, where necessary to ensure that water does not enter equipment/devices through the raceway system (where raceways extend to equipment/devices from wet areas), junction boxes with drain assemblies in bottom shall be located at low point of raceway system near equipment/devices (to drain water out of raceway system before it enters equipment/devices). Contractors shall provide drains in raceway systems where so necessary to prevent water entry into equipment/devices.
7. All raceways passing through concrete roofs or membrane-waterproofed walls or floors shall be provided with watertight seals as follows:
 - a. Where ducts are concrete encased on one side: Install watertight entrance seal device on the accessible side of roof/wall/floor as directed by equipment manufacturer.
 - b. Where ducts are accessible on both sides: Install watertight entrance seal device on each side of roof/wall/floor as directed by equipment manufacturer.
8. All raceways passing through walls of rooms containing/storing noxious chemicals (chlorine, ammonia, etc.) or through hazardous locations shall be sealed with conduit seals (Crouse-Hinds type EYS or equal).
9. All raceways terminating into electrical enclosures/devices/panels/etc. located in hazardous locations shall be sealed with conduit seals (Crouse-Hinds type EYS, EZS or equal) within 18" of the termination.

G. Exterior Electrical Ductbanks:

1. Where exterior electrical concrete-encased ductbanks are indicated on drawings, conduit runs between buildings or structures shall be grouped in concrete-encased ductbanks as follows:
 - a. A minimum of 3" of concrete shall encase each side of all ductbanks.
 - b. A minimum of 1 ½" of separation shall be provided between each conduit within ductbanks. PVC spacers shall be installed at the necessary intervals prior to placement of concrete to maintain the required spacing and to prevent bending or displacement of the conduits.
 - c. Top of concrete shall be a minimum of 30" below grade. A continuous magnetic marking tape shall be buried directly above each ductbank, 12" below grade.
 - d. Exact routing of ductbanks shall be field verified and shall be modified as necessary to avoid obstruction or conflicts.

- e. Underground electrical raceways shall be installed to meet the minimum cover requirements listed in NEC Table 300.5. Refer to drawings for more stringent requirements.

END OF SECTION 260533

SECTION 260534 – OUTLET BOXES, JUNCTION BOXES, WIREWAYS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. Outlet and Junction Boxes
- B. Pull Boxes
- C. Wireways

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 OUTLET BOXES & JUNCTION BOXES (THROUGH 4-11/16")

- A. Sheet Metal: Shall be standard type with knockouts made of hot dipped galvanized steel as manufactured by Steel City, Racor, Appleton, Bowers or equal.
- B. Cast: Shall be type FS, FD, JB, GS, or SEH as required for application as manufactured by O-Z/Gedney, Appleton, or equal.
- C. Nonmetallic: Shall be type Polycarbonate/ABS construction as required for application with non-metallic quick-release latches as manufactured by Hoffman, O-Z/Gedney, Appleton, or equal.

2.2 JUNCTION AND PULL BOXES (LARGER THAN 4-11/16")

- A. Oil-Tight JIC: Shall be Hoffman Type CH box or approved equal.
- B. Galvanized Cast Iron or Cast Aluminum: Shall be O-Z/Gedney or approved equal.
- C. Stainless Steel: Shall be as manufactured by O-Z/Gedney, Hoffman or approved equal. Boxes shall have continuous hinges, seamless foam-in-place gaskets and screw-down clamps.
- D. Nonmetallic: Shall be type Polycarbonate/ABS construction as required for application with non-metallic quick-release latches as manufactured by Hoffman, O-Z/Gedney, Appleton, or equal. Boxes shall have hinged covers and screw-down clamps.
- E. Wireways: Shall be standard manufacturer's item as manufactured by Hoffman, Square "D", Burns, B & C or equal. Wireways shall have hinged covers and screw-down clamps.
- F. Pre-cast Polymer Concrete Below-Grade Hand Holes & Pull Boxes:
 - 1. Enclosures, boxes and cover are required to be UL Listed and conform to all test provisions of ANSI/SCTE 77 "Specifications For Underground Enclosure Integrity" for Tier 15 applications (15,000lb design load and 22,500lb test load) unless noted otherwise.
 - 2. All covers shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.05 in accordance with ASTM C1028 and the corresponding Tier level shall be embossed on the top surface.
 - 3. Cover shall be bolt-down include factory-labeling to read "Electric", "Communications" or other as directed.
 - 4. Hardware shall be stainless steel.
 - 5. Shall be Quazite PG/LG Style or approved equal.
- G. Galvanized Cast Iron Below-Grade Pull Boxes:

1. Enclosures, boxes and cover are required to conform to AASHTO H-20 requirements for deliberate vehicular traffic applications unless noted otherwise.
 2. Cover shall be checkered, bolt-down include factory-labeling to read "Electric", "Communications" or other as directed.
 3. Hardware shall be stainless steel.
 4. Shall be furnished with grounding kit.
 5. Shall be O-Z/Gedney Type YR or approved equal.
- a.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

A. General

1. All boxes and wireways shall be of sufficient size to provide free space for all enclosed conductors per NEC requirements. Fill calculations shall be performed by contractor per NEC requirements.

B. Outlet Boxes & Junction Boxes (through 4-11/16")

1. Sheet metal boxes shall be used on concealed work in ceiling or walls and exposed work in dry, interior locations
 - a. Exception: Where exposed and installed within finished/public spaces such as offices, corridors, lobbies, etc., cast boxes shall be used for wiring device outlets. Cast boxes are not required in back-of-house areas such as electrical rooms, mechanical rooms, etc. .
2. Cast boxes shall be used wherever Rigid or I.M.C. conduits are installed.
3. All boxes installed in extremely corrosive areas (such as chlorine and fluoride storage rooms) where non-metallic raceways are used shall be non-metallic.
4. Except when located in exposed concrete block, switch and receptacle boxes shall be 4" square for single gang installation. Appropriate gang boxes shall be used for mounting ganged switches.
5. When installed in exposed concrete block, switch and receptacle boxes shall be square type designed for exposed block installation.
6. Ceiling outlet boxes shall be 4" octagon 1-1/2" deep or larger required due to number of wires.
7. Boxes installed in hazardous locations shall be explosion-proof rated for the associated application, constructed of copper-free cast aluminum.

C. Junction & Pull Boxes (larger than 4-11/16")

1. For all below grade exterior use and elsewhere as shown:
 - a. In areas subject to future vehicular traffic: shall be galvanized cast iron (rated AASHTO H-20 Loading unless noted otherwise).
 - b. In areas not subject to vehicular traffic: shall be galvanized cast iron or pre-cast polymer concrete (rated for Tier 15 Loading unless noted otherwise).
2. All boxes installed exposed in exterior or wet areas shall be powder-coated galvanized steel (NEMA 3R).
3. All boxes installed exposed in corrosive areas shall be stainless steel (NEMA 4X).

4. All boxes installed in extremely corrosive areas (such as chlorine and fluoride storage rooms) where non-metallic raceways are used shall be non-metallic.
5. Boxes installed in hazardous locations shall be explosion-proof rated for the associated application, constructed of copper-free cast aluminum.
6. All others shall be oil tight JIC box not less than 16 gauge.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General

1. All boxes and wireways shall be securely anchored.
2. All boxes shall be properly sealed and protected during construction and shall be cleaned of all foreign matter before conductors are installed.
3. All boxes and wireways shall be readily accessible. Contractor shall be responsible for furnishing and installing access panels per architect's specifications. Locations shall be as directed by the architect as required to make boxes, wireways, electrical connections, etc. accessible where above gypsum board ceilings or in other similar locations.
4. All metallic boxes and wireways shall be properly grounded.
5. Refer to Specification Section 260553 for identification requirements.

B. Outlet Boxes & Junction Boxes (through 4-11/16")

1. Boxes shall be provided with approved 3/8" fixture studs were required.
2. Recessed boxes for wiring devices, surface fixtures, or connections, shall be set so that the edge of cover comes flush with finished surface.
3. There shall be no more knockouts opened in any sheet metal box than actually used.
4. Any unused opening in cast boxes shall be plugged.
5. Back to back boxes to be staggered at least 3 inches.
6. Under no circumstances shall through-the-wall boxes be used.

C. Junction & Pull Boxes (larger than 4-11/16")

1. Pull boxes shall be installed as indicated on plans and/or as required due to number of bends, distance or pulling conditions.
2. Boxes to be imbedded in concrete shall be properly leveled and anchored in place before the concrete is poured.
3. All pull boxes and/or junction boxes installed exterior below grade, shall have their tops a minimum of 1-1/2 inches above surrounding grade and sloped so that water will not stand on lid. A positive drain shall be installed, to prevent water accumulation inside.
4. Above grade pull boxes shall be installed on concrete anchor bases as shown on Plans.

D. Wireways and/or wall-mounted equipment

1. Mount each wireway to channels of the same metal type as the wireway.
2. Conductors serving a wireway shall be extended without reduction in size, for the entire length of the wireway. Tap-offs to switches and other items served by the wireway shall be made with ILSCO type GTA with GTC cap.

END OF SECTION 260534

SECTION 260553 – ELECTRICAL IDENTIFICATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. Wire and cable identification.
- B. Pullbox & Junction Box Identification
- C. Electrical distribution & utilization equipment identification.
- D. Emergency and Standby Power receptacle identification.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WIRE AND CABLE IDENTIFICATION

- A. Intermediate Locations:
 - 1. Wires and cable labels shall be white, thermal transfer, halogen-free, flame-retardant marker plates (sized to accommodate three lines of text) permanently affixed to the associated cable with UV-resistant plastic wire ties. Labels shall be Panduit #M200X/300X series or equal.
- B. Circuit/Cable Termination Locations:
 - 1. Wires and cable labels shall be non-ferrous identifying tags or pressure sensitive labels unless noted otherwise.

2.2 ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION & UTILIZATION EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION

- A. Labels on electrical distribution & utilization equipment shall be black-on-white engraved Bakelite nameplates permanently affixed to the equipment with rivets or silicone adhesive unless noted otherwise.
- B. Labels on electrical distribution equipment fed from emergency or legally-required standby sources (such as emergency generators) shall be white-on-red engraved Bakelite nameplates permanently affixed to the equipment with rivets or silicone adhesive.

2.3 EMERGENCY AND STANDBY POWER RECEPTACLE IDENTIFICATION

- A. Receptacles fed from emergency or standby power sources (such as emergency generators) shall be provided with factory-marked engraved coverplates as follows:
 - 1. Emergency System source: Red engraved lettering to read “EMERGENCY”.
 - 2. Legally-Required or Optional Standby Generator source:
 - a. If only part of facility is fed with generator backup: Black engraved lettering to read “FED FROM GENERATOR”.
 - b. If entire facility is fed with generator backup: No “...GENERATOR...” label required.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

- A. Any proposed deviation in identification methods and materials from those described herein shall be submitted to Architect for review and comment prior to installation.
- B. Contractor shall provide all labeling or identification required by applicable local, state and national codes. These specifications do not intend to itemize all code-required labeling or identification requirements.
- C. All labels/identification shall be positioned such as to be readable from the normal perspective without adjusting wiring/cables/labels. For example, labels/identification of wires/cables within cable trays shall be positioned to point towards the viewer (typically downward for overhead cable trays, or upward for cable trays within trenches).
- D. All labels/identification (except for handwritten labels on concealed pullbox/junction box covers as noted below) shall be typewritten/printed/engraved in a neat, workmanlike, permanent, legible, consistent and meaningful manner. Labels shall not be handwritten unless specific approval is granted by engineer.

3.2 WIRE AND CABLE IDENTIFICATION

- A. General:
 - 1. Where cabling is exposed (such as within cable trays), provide two wire ties per cable (one on either end of marker plate to provide a flush installation). Where cabling is concealed (such as within pullboxes/wireways), one wire tie per cable will be acceptable.
- B. Intermediate Locations:
 - 1. Thermal transfer labels shall be securely fastened to all wiring and cabling in the following locations:
 - a. Wireways
 - b. Pullboxes/Junction boxes larger than 4-11/16"
 - c. Pullboxes/Junction boxes through 4-11/16" where wires and cables are not easily identifiable via the color coding and box labeling
 - d. Vaults & Manholes
 - e. Approximately every 50 feet within cable trays (especially at locations where cables exit or diverge). Labels within cable trays shall be grouped (rather than being pre-labeled on cables and pulled into cable trays).
 - f. Other similar intermediate locations.
 - 2. Labels shall be stamped or printed with the following data so that the feeder or cable can be readily identified and traced:
 - a. From where the circuit originates (including panel designation and circuit number):
 - 1) Ex: "FROM: PP-A CIR. 3 (IN MAIN ELEC ROOM)"
 - b. To where the circuit extends (using the common name of the equipment):
 - 1) Ex: "TO: RTU-6 (ON ROOF)"
 - c. The purpose of the circuit:
 - 1) Ex: "POWER"
 - d. The set number (If parallel power feeds are used).
 - 1) Ex: "SET NO. 3 OF 4"

C. Circuit/Cable Termination Locations:

1. Where multiple termination points exist within a circuit origination point (panelboard, switchboard, MCC, starter, etc.) or other similar circuit endpoint (control panel, etc.), labels shall be securely fastened to all ungrounded and neutral conductors to clearly identify the terminal and/or circuit number associated with each conductor. For example, within lighting panels, each phase and neutral conductor shall be labeled near the terminals at a clearly visible location with the associated circuit number(s), so that if all conductors were unterminated, the labels would clearly indicate which conductor was associated with each circuit.

D. Refer to Specification Section 260519 for all color-coding requirements of wires and cables.

3.3 PULLBOX & JUNCTION BOX IDENTIFICATION

A. Concealed pullboxes/junction boxes:

1. Front surface of all pullbox/junction box covers in concealed areas (such as above lay-in ceilings) or within mechanical/electrical rooms (and other similar areas where appearance of boxes is not an issue) shall be neatly marked with the ID of circuits/cables contained with permanent black marker on cover of box (Ex: "RP-1A Cir. 1, 2 & 3"). Additionally, front surface of box shall be painted red where box contains fire alarm system cabling.

B. Exposed pullboxes/junction boxes:

1. Interior surface of all pullbox/junction box covers in exposed areas shall be labeled "Power", "Telecommunications", "Fire Alarm" or with other similar general text neatly with permanent black marker to indicate function of box. Circuit/cable labeling within box (see above) shall identify specific cables contained. Additionally, interior surface of cover shall be painted red where box contains fire alarm system cabling.

C. Where pullboxes/junction boxes are named on contract documents (Ex: "PULLBOX #3"), an engraved nameplate shall be installed on the front surface of the box to identify the name.

3.4 ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION & UTILIZATION EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION

A. General:

1. All new and existing equipment modified by this project shall include arc-flash warning labels in accordance with NEC article 110.16.

B. All Panels, Motor Control Centers, Switchboards, Switchgear, Transformers, Etc.:

1. Engraved nameplates identifying name of equipment, nominal voltage and phase of the equipment and where the equipment is fed from shall be installed on front surface of all panels, motor control centers, switchboards, switchgear, transformers, etc.:
 - a. Ex: First Line: "NAME: RP-A", Second Line: "120/208V-3Ø-4W", Third Line: "FED FROM: PP-A CIR. 4 (IN MAIN ELEC ROOM)"
2. Refer to Panelboard Specification Sections for additional labeling requirements (circuit directory cards, permanent circuit labels, permanent circuit numbers, etc.) required inside panelboards.

C. Safety/Disconnect Switches and Utilization Equipment (HVAC Equipment, Pumps, Powered Valves, Control Panels, Starters, Etc.):

1. Engraved nameplates identifying equipment being fed and where the equipment is fed from shall be installed on front surface of all disconnect switches (including both visible blade type switches and toggle-type switches) and on utilization equipment (where not clearly identified by immediately adjacent local disconnect switch):
 - a. Ex: First Line: "RTU-6", Second Line: "FED FROM: PP-A CIR. 5"
2. Where safety/disconnect switches are installed on the load side of variable frequency drives, the safety/disconnect switch shall be furnished with an additional engraved nameplate to read: "WARNING: TURN OFF VFD PRIOR TO OPENING THIS SWITCH".
3. Safety/Disconnect switches feeding equipment that is fed from multiple sources (such as motors with integral overtemperature contacts that are monitored via a control system) and Utilization Equipment fed from multiple sources shall be furnished with an additional BLACK-ON-YELLOW engraved nameplate to read: "WARNING: ASSOCIATED EQUIPMENT FED FROM MULTIPLE SOURCES – DISCONNECT ALL SOURCES PRIOR TO OPENING COVER".

D. Emergency Systems:

1. A sign shall be placed at the service entrance equipment (and at any remote shunt trip operators, or similar, for service equipment) indicating the type and location of on-site emergency power sources (such as generators, central battery systems, etc.) per NEC requirements.
2. All boxes and enclosures (including transfer switches, generators, power panels, junction boxes, pullboxes, etc.) dedicated for emergency circuits shall be permanently marked with white-on-red engraved nameplates so they will be readily identified as a component of an emergency circuit or system.
3. Where an Essential Electrical System (EES) is installed, all enclosures, raceways and equipment that are components of the EES shall be readily identified as such. Raceway shall be identified at intervals not exceeding 25 ft.

E. Services:

1. All Service Equipment:
 - a. Engraved nameplates identifying maximum available fault current, including date the fault current calculation was performed, in accordance with NEC article 110.24.
 - 1) Ex: First Line: "AVAILABLE FAULT CURRENT: 16,154 AMPS", Second Line: "DATE CALCULATED: JULY 8, 2013"
 - b. All service entrance equipment shall be clearly labeled as being service entrance rated.
2. Where a building or structure is supplied by more than one service (or any combination of branch circuits, feeders and services), a permanent plaque or directory shall be installed at each service disconnect location denoting all other services, feeders & branch circuits supplying that building or structure and the area served by each, per NEC requirements.

F. Generators:

1. Generators shall be labeled with engraved nameplates identifying name of equipment.

3.5 EMERGENCY AND STANDBY POWER RECEPTACLE IDENTIFICATION

- A. Receptacles fed from emergency or standby power sources (such as emergency generators) shall be provided with factory-marked engraved coverplates as described above.

3.6 OTHER IDENTIFICATION

- A. Factory-engraved coverplates identifying functions of light switches and other similar devices shall be installed where so required by plans/specifications.

END OF SECTION 260553

SECTION 260573 – POWER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM ELECTRICAL STUDIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. THE WORK UNDER THIS SECTION INCLUDES BUT IS NOT LIMITED TO THE FOLLOWING:
 - 1. Power Distribution System Electrical Studies.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Short Circuit Studies, Protective Devices Evaluation Studies, Protective Device Coordination Studies and Arc Flash Hazard Studies shall be performed by the same entity, which shall be a Professional Engineer registered in the state where the equipment will be installed. The studies shall be per the requirements set forth in the latest edition of NFPA 70E-Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace. The arc flash hazard analysis shall be performed according to the IEEE 1584 equations that are presented in NFPA 70E, Annex D.
- B. The studies shall be submitted to the Architect prior to shipment of any electrical distribution equipment.
- C. The studies shall include all portions of all electrical systems affected by the project (including any existing systems/equipment) from the utility service to any existing equipment at the facility (including all existing equipment fed from the same service point as any new equipment) and to all new equipment installed under this contract. All induction motors 50 HP or below and fed from the same bus may be grouped together. All induction motors greater than 50 HP shall be included individually with associated starters and feeder impedance. See individual study sections below for additional scope requirements.
- D. The studies shall be performed using the latest revision of the SKM Systems Analysis Power*Tools for Windows (PTW) or EasyPower software program.
- E. Normal system connections and those which result in maximum fault conditions shall be adequately covered in the study.
- F. The contractor shall be responsible for collecting data on any existing or proposed electrical equipment, devices, conductors, etc. as required to prepare the study, and shall supply pertinent electrical system conductor, circuit breaker, generator, and other component and system information in a timely manner to allow the studies to be completed prior to shipment of equipment.
- G. The Power Distribution System Electrical Studies shall be performed by Square 'D', G.E., Siemens or Cutler Hammer; or a third-party vendor if specifically approved by the engineer prior to preparation of the studies.
- H. The proposed vendor shall have completed a minimum of five (5) equivalent Arc-Flash Hazard Studies in the past three (3) years.

2.2 SHORT CIRCUIT STUDY

- A. The Short Circuit Study shall be performed with aid of a computer program. The study input data shall include the power company's short circuit contribution, resistance and reactive components of the branch impedances, X/R ratios, base quantities selected, and other source impedances.
- B. Short circuit momentary duty values and interrupting duty shall be calculated on each individual basis with the assumption that there is a three-phase bolted short circuit at the respective switchgear bus, switchboard, low voltage motor control center, distribution panelboard, and other significant locations throughout the system.
- C. The short circuit tabulation shall include symmetrical and asymmetrical fault currents, and X/R ratios. For each fault location, the total duty on the bus, as well as the individual contributions from each connected branch, including motor back EMF current contributions shall be listed with its respective X/R ratio.

2.3 PROTECTIVE DEVICE EVALUATION STUDY

- A. The Protective Device Evaluation Study shall be performed to determine the adequacy of circuit breakers, switches, transfer switches, and fuses by tabulating and comparing the short circuit rating of these devices with the calculated fault currents. Appropriate multiplying factors based on system X/R ratios and protective device rating standards shall be applied.
- B. Any problem areas or inadequacies in the equipment due to short circuit currents shall be promptly brought to the Architect's attention.

2.4 PROTECTIVE DEVICE COORDINATION STUDY

- A. The Protective Device Coordination Study shall be performed to provide the necessary calculation and logic decisions required to select or to check the selection of power fuse ratings, protective relay characteristics and settings, ratios and characteristics of associated current transformers, and low voltage breaker trip characteristics and settings. The objective of the study is to obtain optimum protective and coordination performance from these devices.
- B. The coordination study shall show the best coordination attainable for all breakers down through the largest breaker at each piece of distribution equipment. Coordination study shall demonstrate selective coordination where required by applicable codes or contract documents.
- C. Phase and ground overcurrent protection shall be included as well as settings of all other adjustable protective devices. Where ground fault protection is used, coordination of the ground fault protection with the first downstream overcurrent phase protection device shall be demonstrated.
- D. All restrictions of the National Electrical Code shall be adhered to and proper coordination intervals and separation of characteristic curves be maintained.

2.5 ARC-FLASH HAZARD STUDY

- A. The Arc-Flash Hazard Study shall be performed with the aid of computer software intended for this purpose in order to calculate Arc-Flash Incident Energy (AFIE) levels and flash protection boundary distances.
- B. The Arc-Flash Hazard Study shall be performed in conjunction with a short-circuit Study and a time-current coordination Study.
- C. The Arc-Flash Hazard Study shall be performed for the following equipment:

1. All Distribution Equipment – This includes but is not limited to the following:
 - a. Switchgear
 - b. Switchboards
 - c. Motor Control Center
 - d. All Lighting and Power Panelboards
 - e. Fused Disconnect Switches rated greater than 100A
2. Separately enclosed devices fed from protection device rated greater than 100A - This includes but is not limited to the following:
 - a. Control Panels
 - b. VFD's
 - c. RVSS
- D. A generic Arc-Flash label shall be applied to other electrical equipment that has not been included in the study. This includes but is not limited to the following equipment:
 1. Non-fused Disconnect Switches
 2. Fused Disconnect Switches rated 100A or less
 3. Transformers
 4. Control Panels, VFD's, RVSS, etc. rated 100A or less
- E. Where a main protective device is provided, the study shall be performed on the line side and load side of the main. The worst-case result shall be used for the study result and label.
- F. The Study shall be performed under worst-case Arc-Flash conditions, and the final report shall describe, when applicable, how these conditions differ from worst-case bolted fault conditions.
- G. Where incident energies are calculated to fall within the high marginal region of a given Hazard/Risk Category Level, the Hazard/Risk Category Level shall be increased one level.
- H. The Arc-Flash Hazard Study shall be performed in compliance with the latest IEEE Standard 1584, the IEEE Guide for Performing Arc-Flash Calculations. Where IEEE 1584 does not have a method for performing the required arc-flash calculations (such as for single phase equipment), calculations shall be performed and system shall be modeled using modules/methods as recommended by the arc flash software supplier (for example, using SKM Unbalanced/Single Phase Studies module for modeling single phase systems).
- I. Equipment labels to identify AFIE and appropriate Hazard/Risk Category in compliance with NFPA 70E and ANSI Z535.4 (latest version of these requirements) shall be provided to the Electrical Contractor. The Electrical Contractor shall affix the labels to the distribution equipment devices as directed by the equipment manufacturer. These labels shall, at a minimum, include the following:
 1. WARNING label.
 2. Hazard/Risk Category.
 3. Arc Flash Boundary Distance.
 4. Incident Energy (in cal/cm²) at Working Distance.
 5. Shock Hazard Voltage.
 6. Limited Approach Boundary Distance.
 7. Restricted Approach Boundary Distance.
 8. Prohibited Approach Boundary Distance.
 9. Equipment Name.
 10. Name of Firm who prepared the Study.
 11. Project Number of the Firm who prepared the Study.
 12. Date that the Study was prepared.

13. Method for calculating analysis data.
14. Statement to read: "Any system modification, adjustment of protective device settings, or failure to properly maintain equipment will invalidate this label" (or equivalent).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. The results of the studies shall be summarized in a final report. The report shall include the following sections:
 1. General:
 - a. Description, purpose, basis and scope of the studies
 - b. Single line diagram of the portion of the power system which is included within the scope of the work. The single line diagram shall fit on one sheet of paper (size as required) unless approved otherwise by engineer. The following information shall be shown on the single line diagram:
 - 1) Device Name
 - 2) Branch Fault Currents with directional indicators
 - 3) General Location (for busses only)
 - 4) Other basic component information such as cable type, cable length, breaker rating, buss short circuit rating, transformer voltages, transformer size, fuse size, etc..
 2. Short Circuit Study:
 - a. Tabulation of circuit breaker, fuse and other protective device ratings versus calculated short circuit duties, and commentary regarding same.
 3. Protective Device Evaluation/Coordination Study:
 - a. Protective devices time versus current coordination curves, tabulations of relay and circuit breaker trip settings, fuse selection, and commentary regarding same.
 - b. Fault current calculations including definitions of terms and a guide for interpretation of computer printout.
 - c. Documentation from utility company on their letterhead showing their anticipated values of available short circuit currents X/R ratios and protective devices with which the power distribution system will coordinate.
 - d. Time-current characteristics of the respective protective devices shall be plotted on log-log paper. Plots shall be printed in color with a dedicated color and pattern for each curve for clear identification.
 - e. Plots shall include complete titles, respective single line diagrams and legends, and associated power company's relay or fuse characteristics, significant motor starting characteristics, complete parameters of transformers, complete operating bands of low voltage circuit breakers trip curves and fuses.
 - f. The coordination plots shall indicate the type of protective devices selected, proposed relay taps, time dial and instantaneous trip settings, transformer magnetizing inrush and ANSI transformer withstand parameters, cable thermal overcurrent withstand limits and significant symmetrical and asymmetrical fault currents.
 - g. The coordination plots for phase and ground protective devices shall be provided on a system basis.
 - h. A sufficient number of separate curves shall be used to clearly indicate the coordination achieved.

4. Arc-Flash Hazard Study:

- a. Tabulation of device or bus name, bolted fault and arcing fault current levels, flash protection boundary distances, personal-protective equipment classes and AFIE levels.
 - b. Recommendations for reducing AFIE levels and enhancing worker safety.
- B. Furnish all labor, materials, calculations, electrical equipment, technical data and incidentals required to provide a complete short circuit study, coordination study and arc flash hazard study of protective devices, busses, etc. from the utility service to any existing equipment at the facility and all new equipment installed under this contract.
- C. The study shall comply with the following applicable provisions and recommendations of the latest revisions of the following: ANSI C37.5, IEEE Standard No. 399, and IEEE Standard No. 141.
- D. Submit calculations and results of the short circuit, protective device evaluation and coordination and arc flash hazard studies prior to submitting shop drawings for new equipment. Contractor shall verify that all proposed equipment is properly rated per the short circuit and protective device evaluation portions of the study prior to releasing equipment for manufacturing.
- E. Submit a copy of a sample typical arc flash label layout (meeting requirements outlined above) that will be used for the project.
- F. Submit final electronic copies of all SKM program files/models/input data/etc. used to perform the study to the owner with final close-out documents. These files shall be complete as required to allow future users to recreate the study.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Contractor shall adjust all breaker settings as recommended by the coordination study prior to energizing equipment.
- B. Contractor shall affix arc flash hazard notification labels (as determined by the results of this study) to each piece of distribution equipment prior to energization of equipment. A generic arc-flash warning label shall be affixed to any electrical equipment not included in the analysis as outlined above.
- C. Where short circuit rating of equipment is dependent on setting of upstream overcurrent device, provide and install label for equipment indicating the required settings of the associated device.

END OF SECTION 260573

SECTION 260943 – LIGHTING CONTROL SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 INTRODUCTION

- A. The work covered in this section is subject to the requirements in the General Conditions of the Specifications. Contractor shall coordinate the work in this section with the trades covered in other sections of the specification to provide a complete and operable system.

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Extent of lighting control system work is indicated by drawings and by the requirements of this section. Contractor shall furnish and install a complete, integrated, stand alone automatic lighting control system including programmable Lighting Control Panels with internal astronomic timeclock(s), Networking between panels, Dataline low voltage control switch inputs for zone control, Photocell input for outdoor lighting control, Occupancy Sensors, and Daylighting Controls from a single supplier. Contractor is responsible for confirming that the panels and sensors interoperate as a single system.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturers: Firms regularly engaged in the manufacture of lighting control equipment and ancillary equipment, of types and capacities required, whose products have been in satisfactory use in similar service for not less than 5 years.
- B. Comply with NEC, NEMA, and FCC Emission requirements for Class A applications.
- C. UL Approvals: Relay panels and accessory devices are to be UL listed under UL 916 Energy Management Equipment. Configured to order or custom relay panels shall be UL Listed under UL 508, Industrial Control Panels.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals Package: Submit the shop drawings, and the product data specified below at the same time as a package.
 - 1. Shop Drawings: Building floorplans showing all proposed devices and composite wiring and/or schematic diagram of each control circuit as proposed to be installed (standard diagrams will not be accepted).
 - 2. Product Data: Catalog sheets, specifications and installation instructions.

1.5 APPROVED MANUFACTURERS

- A. Watt Stopper/Legrand – Lighting Integrator series
- B. Equal by Acuity Lighting
- C. Any other system wishing to be considered must submit descriptive information 10 days prior to bid. Prior approval does not guarantee final approval by the electrical engineer. The contractor shall be completely responsible for providing a system meeting this specification in its entirety. All deviations from this specification must be listed and individually signed off by the consultant.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LIGHTING CONTROL PANELS

- A. Provide lighting control panels in the locations and capacities as indicated on the plans and schedules. Each panel shall be of modular construction and consist of the following components:
1. Enclosure/Tub shall be NEMA 1, NEMA 3R, or NEMA 4 as indicated on the plans, sized to accept an interior with 1-8 relays, 1-24 relays and six (6) four pole contactors, or 1-48 relays with six (6) four pole contactors, per enclosure. Multiple enclosures shall be provided where required for the specified quantities of relays/contactors.
 2. Cover shall be configured for surface or flush wall mounting of the panel as indicated on the plans. The panel cover shall have a hinged and lockable door with restricted access to line voltage section of the panel.
 3. Interior assembly shall be supplied as a factory assembled component specifically designed and listed for field installation. The interior construction shall provide total isolation of high voltage (class 1) wiring from low voltage (class 2) wiring within the assembled panel. The interior assembly shall include intelligence boards, power supply, DIN rails for mounting optional Class 2 control devices, and individually replaceable latching type relays. The panel interiors shall include the following features:
 - a. Provision for one or two optional control and automation cards.
 - b. Removable, plug-in terminal blocks with screw less connections for all low voltage terminations.
 - c. Individual terminal block, override push button, and LED status light for each relay
 - d. Switch inputs associated with each relay and group channel shall support two or three wire, momentary or maintained contact switches or 24VDC input from occupancy sensors.
 - e. Automatic support for occupancy sensor sequence of operation. Low voltage inputs automatically reconfigure when connected to a Watt Stopper occupancy sensor head. Occupancy sensor shall switch lighting on and off during unoccupied periods but shall not turn lighting off during scheduled occupancy periods.
 - f. Isolated contacts within each relay shall provide true relay state to the electronics. True relay state shall be indicated by the on-board LED and shall be available to external control devices and systems.
 - g. Automatic sequenced operation of relays reduces impact on the electrical distribution system when large loads are controlled simultaneously.
 - h. Group, channel, and pattern control of relays shall be provided through a simple button-press interface within the panel. Any group of relays can be associated with a channel for direct on/off control or pattern (scene) control via a simple programming sequence using the relay and channel override push buttons and LED displays.
 - i. Relay group status for each channel shall be provided through bi-color operation of the LED indicators. Solid red indicates that all relays in the group are on, solid green indicates that the group is in a mixed state, and blinking green indicates that the relays have blink warned and are currently timing out.
 - j. Each relay and channel terminal block shall provide a 24V pilot light signal. It shall be possible to configure the system for support for any Class 2 pilot light voltage with the use of an auxiliary power supply.
 - k. Single pole latching relays with modular plug-in design. Relays shall provide the following ratings and features:
 - 1) Electrical:
 - a) 30 amp ballast at 277V
 - b) 20 amp ballast at 347V
 - c) 20 amp tungsten at 120V
 - d) 30 amp resistive at 347V

- e) 1.5 HP motor at 120V
- f) Short circuit current capacity equal to (or greater than) that of the associated circuits (see associated panelboard schedules on drawings)
- 2) Mechanical:
 - a) Individually replaceable, ½" KO mounting with removable Class 2 wire harness
 - b) Actuator on relay housing provides manual override and visual status indication, accessible from Class 2 section of panel
 - c) Dual line and load terminals each support two #14 – #12 solid or stranded conductors
 - d) Tested to 300,000 mechanical on/off cycles
- 3) Isolated low voltage contacts provide for true relay status feedback and pilot light indication.
- 1. Power supply shall be a multi-voltage transformer assembly with rated power to supply all electronics, occupancy sensors, switches, pilot lights, and photocells as necessary to meet the project requirements. Power supply to have internal over-current protection with automatic reset and metal oxide varistor protection.

2.2 LONWORKS® BASED DIGITAL COMMUNICATIONS

- A. The lighting control panel shall support digital communications to facilitate the extension of control to include multiple panels and other intelligent field devices. Digital communications shall be LonWorks® based and use the LonTalk® protocol in an open topology architecture.
 - 1. Dataline communications wire shall be 18 AWG, 4 unshielded copper conductors (two independent twisted pairs) meeting Class 2P NEC code requirements. The dataline shall be topology free and can be run in a serial, "T" or star configuration.
 - 2. The Dataline wire will be supplied by the equipment manufacturer and will include the manufacturers name, catalog number printed on the wire jacket. The contractor, at their own expense will, replace an improper dataline wire.
 - 3. Panels shall be digitally addressed and support bi-directional communication between each other and other intelligent field devices specified elsewhere.
 - 4. Intelligent field devices supported shall include digital dataline switches, network clock/programmer, telephone interface module, BMS interface module, photocell control module, programmable thermostat, and universal switch module.

2.3 BROWSER BASED PROGRAMMING AND CONTROL

- A. The lighting control system shall include a web browser based user interface that shall allow programming and override of the system from any PC browser with network connectivity to the lighting controls. The Automation Appliance shall include as a minimum the following features:
 - 1. The interface shall be a TCP/IP based server device that is connected to the lighting control system global dataline and shall not require that software be installed on the client PC(s) for operation.
 - 2. Provide support for connection of one or more personal computers directly via Ethernet or enterprise connectivity via a local area network, wide area network or internet connection.
 - 3. Provide the option for a plug-in 56K baud modem to enable dial in connection via standard telephone line. All functionality of the browser interface shall be available through the dial-up connection.

4. Log in to the lighting control system through the browser interfaced shall provide multi-level security. Users shall be assigned log in access levels to restrict program modification to authorized users.
5. User programming shall include eight independent schedules for each lighting control panel, as well as, eight global schedules that affect channels in all panels on the network. Schedules shall overlap such that a panel specific schedule for any channel will override a global schedule for that channel.
6. Schedules shall be capable of seven day repeating and calendar date event based formats.
7. User programming shall be scenario based and shall include the following options:
 - a. Scheduled ON / OFF
 - b. Manual ON / Scheduled OFF
 - c. Manual ON / Auto Sweep OFF (for AS-100 Switches)
 - d. Astro ON / OFF (or Photo ON / OFF)
 - e. Astro and Schedule ON / OFF (or Photo and Schedule ON / OFF)
8. It shall be possible to view the status of and override any relay or channel group via the browser interface screens.
9. Provide support and user interface screens for integration of the photocontrol module, dataline switches, touch-tone telephone module, and universal switch module.
10. Provision for integration with the building automation system shall be via the industry standard BACnet protocol. Any of the eight global schedule channels shall individually be set to follow the BAS schedules rather than the internal Automation Appliance schedules. Relays in all panels shall be exposed to the BAS as binary output objects. It shall be possible for the BAS to read the status of each relay and to override each relay via BACnet.
11. The interface shall monitor all networked components and automatically generate alarms if any component fails to properly respond to control. Alarms shall be annunciated via the browser screens and via email to selected recipients where a proper SMTP server connection has been set up.
12. The user programming in the lighting control panels and dataline switches shall be available for viewing or download to the client PC as a standard PDF file.
13. A backup function shall permit the complete system program to be saved to the hard drive of any client PC connected to the lighting control system through the browser interface. A restore function shall allow a saved program to be reloaded to the interface.

2.4 EIGHT CHANNEL DIGITAL PHOTOCONTROL MODULE

- A. Provide a weatherproof Class 2 photocell for measuring exterior light levels. The photocell shall be mounted facing north as indicated on the plans. The photocell shall be connected to a photocontrol module mounted on the DIN rail inside the low voltage section of a lighting control panel and connected to the dataline communications wire.
 1. The photocontrol Module shall integrate seamlessly with either the Network Clock, Automation Appliance, or the BMS Interface Module. The control module shall measure the actual exterior light and display this level in foot candles (fc) on the unit LCD display.
 2. The controller shall have eight individual set point adjustments that are available to the lighting control network over the dataline communications wire.
 3. Features
 - a. Real time, 2 line LCD display of actual exterior light level up to 200 fc.
 - b. Channel set points and parameters programmed via the Network Clock or BMS Interface Module.
 - c. Choice of OPERATE or TEST modes, with simulated light level for testing.
 - d. Automatic dead band and 5 minute time delay to avoid cycling.

2.5 DIGITAL DATALINE SWITCHES

- A. Intelligent digital switching shall be provided operating on the dual twisted pair communication wire. Switches shall be available in single, dual, quad, or octal (1-button, 2-button, 4-button, or 8-button) designs. The single, dual, and quad devices shall mount in a standard single-gang box, the octal version in a two-gang box.
 - 1. Each button shall be individually programmable. Programming of buttons shall not require the use of a computer or other programming device. It shall be possible to assign relays or channels to buttons using a simple button press interface. Each button can control any one of the following options:
 - a. Any individual relay in any single panel.
 - b. Any group of relays in any single panel.
 - c. Any group of relays in the system (via network clock, Automation Appliance, or WinControl software package).
 - 2. For applications that require pattern switching, buttons shall function as a scene control using an ON/OFF/Not Controlled pattern of relays instead of the normal All ON/OFF.
 - 3. Switches shall be constructed of non-breakable grey Lexan on all exposed parts and shall include a stainless steel wall plate, unless noted otherwise on plans.
 - 4. Individual buttons shall have a removable clear cover to allow standard 9 mm (3/8 inch) labeling tape to be used to identify the controlled loads.
 - 5. Each switch shall use a bi-color LED pilot light for the individual buttons to indicate status of the controlled relay or group of relays. LED indications are Red for All ON, Green for Mixed State (some relays in the group ON and others OFF), and No LED for All OFF.
 - 6. Switch LED pilot lights shall flash green to indicate impending off sweep during the five-minute grace period following blink warning of the lights. Once the button is pressed, the LED will change to Red to acknowledge the occupant's override command to keep lights ON.
 - 7. Multiple dataline switches programmed to control the same relay or relay group shall indicate the same status automatically.
 - 8. Each switch shall also include a locator light illuminating the switch for easy location in the dark.
 - 9. The dual, quad, and octal switches shall all include a single master button that will override all relays controlled by the individual buttons OFF, or Restore them to their original state. Each switch's master button configuration can be altered to perform a Master ON/OFF, OFF Only, or Disabled function if desired.
 - 10. Switches can be configured to follow a "Cleaning" scenario. This specific scenario shall prevent the cleaners from overriding OFF any relays previously turned ON by an occupant.
 - 11. Each switch is available in a Key lock override version. Once a key is inserted, the individual buttons will function for five minutes.

2.6 AUTOMATIC LIGHTING CONTROLS

- A. System shall provide automatic lighting shutoff for all interior lighting circuits controlled by the system (excluding night lights and other similar circuits) per latest ASHRAE 90.1 & IECC standards, unless specifically shown otherwise on plans.
- B. System shall provide blink-warnings for interior lighting circuits (excluding circuits with HID light fixtures) controlled by the control panel 5 minutes prior to automatic shutoff.
- C. System shall include provisions for holiday scheduling, to allow automatic "ON" programming to be skipped on holidays and other scheduled off days per applicable energy code requirements.

- D. Low voltage remote override switches shall be provided as shown on drawings.
- E. Exact preset times for lighting control zone controls (where applicable) and lighting control system operation shall be per owner's direction. Contractor shall submit a proposed lighting control schedule indicating type of "ON" control (occupancy, time-of-day, manual, etc.), type of "OFF" control (occupancy, time-of-day, manual, etc.) and proposed preset times for all zones to owner for review prior to implementation. The following general control schemes shall generally be used where the owner has no preferences unless shown otherwise on plans:
 - 1. Exterior Security Lighting (at doorways, etc.):
 - a. On: Photocell or Astronomic – dusk.
 - b. Off: Photocell or Astronomic – dawn.
 - 2. Other Exterior Lighting:
 - a. On: Photocell or Astronomic – dusk.
 - b. Off: Preset Time (as directed by the facility operator).
 - 3. Interior Lighting with Occupancy Sensor Controls:
 - a. Corridors, restrooms, lobbies and other similar public spaces
 - 1) On: Occupancy Sensor.
 - 2) Off: Occupancy Sensor.
 - b. Storage rooms, janitor's closets, telecommunications rooms, and other similar unoccupied spaces:
 - 1) On: Manual Local Switch.
 - 2) Off: Occupancy Sensor.
 - c. Offices, classrooms, breakrooms, conference rooms, work areas, kitchens, gymnasiums, and other similar occupied spaces:
 - 1) On:
 - a) Manual Local Switch (if digital controls are provided) or
 - b) Occupancy Sensor (if hardwired controls are provided). Partial on only where required by code.
 - 2) Off: Occupancy Sensor (A "grace period" shall be provided, in which the occupancy sensor can turn lights back "on" for a short period of time (approximately 15 seconds) after lights are turned off automatically).
 - 4. Interior Lighting with Time-of-Day Controls:
 - a. Corridors, restrooms, lobbies and other similar public spaces
 - 1) On: Preset Time (as directed by the facility operator).
 - 2) Off: Preset Time (as directed by the facility operator).
 - b. Storage rooms, janitor's closets, telecommunications rooms, and other similar unoccupied spaces:
 - 1) On: Manual Local Switch
 - 2) Off: Preset Time (as directed by the facility operator).
 - c. Offices, classrooms, breakrooms, conference rooms, work areas, kitchens, gymnasiums, and other similar occupied spaces:

- 1) On: Manual Local Switch
- 2) Off: Preset Time (as directed by the facility operator).

2.7 WIRING

- A. See Specification Section 270500 for additional requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Specification Section 270500 for additional cable installation requirements.
- B. Master/centralized lighting control switches (particularly switches located in areas where not all associated lighting fixtures are visible from the switch) and individual buttons of other lighting control stations with more than two (2) buttons shall be labeled (on switch coverplate or directly on buttons) with factory-engraved labeling. Exact wording of labeling shall be per owner's direction unless shown otherwise on plans.

3.2 SUPPORT SERVICES

- A. Pre-installation Coordination
 1. Exact occupancy sensor and daylight sensor types and locations shall be determined by the lighting control system supplier for a fully-functional system with adequate coverage throughout areas controlled by occupancy sensors. Exact locations shall be coordinated with actual HVAC register locations, furniture/casework/etc. locations, sensor coverage patterns, etc. for proper coverage in all areas. In no case may fewer devices or lower-quality devices be used in each area than indicated on contract documents.
- B. System Start Up and Commissioning
 1. The electrical contractor shall provide the manufacturer, the facility owner and the electrical engineer with ten working days written notice of the system startup and adjustment date.
 2. Manufacturer shall provide a factory authorized technician to confirm proper installation and operation of all lighting control system components. The startup requirement is intended to verify:
 - a. That all occupancy and daylighting sensors are located, installed, and adjusted as intended by the factory and the contract documents.
 - b. The occupancy sensors and daylighting sensors are operating within the manufacturers specifications.
 - c. The sensors and relay panels interact as a complete and operational system to meet the design intent.
 3. Manufacturer to provide a written statement verifying that the system meets the above requirements.
- C. Re-commissioning – After 30 days from occupancy re-calibrate all preset times, sensor time delays and sensitivities and relocate occupancy sensors if so required to meet the Owner's Project Requirements. Provide a detailed report to the Design Team and Owner of re-commissioning activity.
- D. System Training

1. Manufacturer shall provide factory authorized technician to train owner personnel in the operation, programming and maintenance of the lighting control system including all occupancy sensors and daylighting controls.

E. System Programming

1. Manufacturer shall provide system programming including:
 - a. Wiring documentation.
 - b. Switch operation.
 - c. Telephone overrides.
 - d. Operating schedules.

3.3 WARRANTY

- A. The contractor shall warrant the completed lighting control system to be free from inherent mechanical and electrical defects for a period of one (1) year from the date of the completed and certified test or from the date of first beneficial use.

END OF SECTION 260943

SECTION 260944 – DISTRIBUTED DIGITAL LIGHTING MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Digital Occupancy and Daylighting Sensor Control
2. Emergency Lighting Control (if applicable)

B. Related Section

1. Section 260943 – Lighting Control System
2. Section 262726 - Wiring Devices
3. Section 270500 – Auxiliary System Cables, 0-50V
4. Section 265000 – Lighting Materials and Methods
5. Drawings and general provision of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections apply to this Section
6. Electrical Sections, including wiring devices, apply to the work of this Section.

C. Control Intent – Control Intent includes, but is not limited to:

1. Defaults and initial calibration settings for such items as time delay, sensitivity, fade rates, etc.
2. Initial sensor and switching zones
3. Initial time switch settings
4. Task lighting and receptacle controls
5. Emergency Lighting control (if applicable)

1.2 REFERENCES

- A.** American National Standards Institute/Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (ANSI/IEEE)
- B.** Underwriter Laboratories of Canada (ULC)
- C.** International Electrotechnical Commission
- D.** International Organization for Standardization (ISO)
- E.** National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA)
- F.** WD1 (R2005) - General Color Requirements for Wiring Devices.
- G.** Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):
1. 916 – Energy Management Equipment.
 2. 924 – Emergency Lighting
 3. 2043 – Plenum Rating

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION & OPERATION

- A.** The Lighting Control and Automation system as defined under this section covers the following equipment:

1. Digital Room Controllers – Self configuring, digitally addressable one, two or three relays controllers with 0-10v control for ballasts (if applicable) and single relay application specific plug load controllers.
2. Digital Occupancy Sensors connected to Digital Room Controllers – Self configuring, digitally addressable and calibrated occupancy sensors with LCD screens and two way active Infra-Red (IR) communications.
3. Digital Switches connected to Digital Room Controllers – Self configuring, digitally addressable push button switches, dimmers, and scene switches with two way active Infra-Red (IR) communications.
4. Analog and digital closed loop daylighting sensors connected to Digital Room Controllers - self-calibrating daylighting sensors that provide closed loop control to Room Controllers. Sensors and Room Controllers can provide single or multi-zone, on/off or dimming control for daylight harvesting.
5. Hand held remotes for room configuration – provides two way infrared communications to digital devices and allows complete configuration and reconfiguration of the device / room from 30 feet away. Unit to have Organic LED display, simple pushbutton interface, and allow send / receive / store of room variables.
6. Hand held remotes for personal control – One, two, or four (scene) button remotes provide Infrared communications to a room. Remote controls will support ON/OFF, dimming, scene control and may be configured in the field to provide specific occupant requirements without special tools.
7. Digital Lighting Management (DLM) local network – Free topology, plug in wiring system (Cat 5e) for power and data to room devices.
8. Network Bridge - provides BACnet MS/TP compliant digital networked communication between rooms, panels and the Segment Manager or BAS.
9. Segment Manager - provides web browser based user interface for system control, scheduling, power monitoring, room device parameter administration and reporting.
10. Emergency Lighting Control Unit (ELCU)- allows any standard lighting control device to control emergency lighting in conjunction with normal lighting in any area within a building

1.4 LIGHTING CONTROL APPLICATIONS

- A. Unless relevant provisions of the applicable local Energy Codes are more stringent, provide a minimum application of lighting controls as follows:
1. Space Control Requirements – Provide occupancy/vacancy sensors with manual-on functionality in all spaces except toilet rooms, storerooms, library stacks, or other applications where hands-free operation is desirable and automatic-on occupancy sensors are more appropriate. Provide manual ON occupancy/vacancy sensors for any enclosed office, conference room, meeting room, open plan system and training room. For spaces with multiple occupants or where line-of-sight may be obscured, provide ceiling- or corner-mounted sensors with manual-on switches.
 2. Bi-Level Lighting – Provide multi –level switched dimming controls where indicated on plans.
 3. Task Lighting / Plug Loads – Provide automatic shut off of non essential plug loads and task lighting where indicated on plans. Provide automatic ON of plug loads whenever spaces are occupied. For spaces with multiple occupants a single shut off consistent with the overhead lighting may be used for the area.
 4. Daylighted Areas. Provide daylighting controls where indicated on plans. Daytime set points for total illumination (combined daylight and electric light) level that initiate dimming shall be programmed to be not less than 125% of the nighttime maintained designed illumination levels.
 5. Multiple-leveled switched daylight harvesting controls may be utilized for areas marked on drawings.
 6. Provide smooth and continuous daylight dimming for areas marked on drawings. Daylight system may be designed to turn off ambient lighting when daylight is at or

above required lighting levels, only if system functions to turn lamps back on at dimmed level, rather than turning full-on prior to dimming.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals Package: Submit the shop drawings, and the product data specified below at the same time as a package.
 - 1. Shop Drawings: Building floorplans showing all proposed devices and composite wiring and/or schematic diagram of each control circuit as proposed to be installed (standard diagrams will not be accepted).
 - 2. Product Data: Catalog sheets, specifications and installation instructions.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer: Minimum [10] years experience in manufacture of lighting controls.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install equipment until following conditions can be maintained in spaces to receive equipment:
 - 1. Ambient temperature: 0° to 40° C (32° to 104° F).
 - 2. Relative humidity: Maximum 90 percent, non-condensing.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Provide a five year complete manufacturer's warranty on all products to be free of manufacturers' defects.

1.9 MAINTENANCE

- A. Spare Parts:
 - 1. Provide two (2) of each product to be used for maintenance.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer:
 - 1. Watt Stopper Digital Lighting Management (DLM)
 - 2. Equal by Acuity Lighting
- B. Basis of design product: Watt Stopper Digital Lighting Management (DLM) or subject to compliance and prior approval with specified requirements of this section, one of the following:
 - 1. Watt Stopper Digital Lighting Management (DLM)
 - 2. Acuity
 - 3. Substitutions:
 - a. All proposed substitutions (clearly delineated as such) must be submitted in writing for approval by the design professional a minimum of 10 working days prior to the bid date and must be made available to all bidders. Proposed

- substitutes must be accompanied by a review of the specification noting compliance on a line-by-line basis.
- b. By using pre-approved substitutions, the contractor accepts responsibility and associated costs for all required modifications to circuitry, devices, and wiring. The contractor shall provide complete engineered shop drawings (including power wiring) with deviations for the original design highlighted in an alternate color to the engineer for review and approval prior to rough-in.

2.2 SINGLE / DUAL RELAY WALL SWITCH VACANCY SENSORS

- A. Type PW: Manual ON, Automatic OFF Wall switch type passive infrared occupancy sensor with built-in override control (off-auto). Furnish the Company's model which suits the electrical system parameters, and accommodates the square footage coverage and wattage requirement for each area (and type of lighting) controlled; Watt Stopper PW-100, PW-200 .
- B. Type UW: Manual ON, Automatic OFF Wall switch type ultrasonic occupancy sensor with built-in override control (off-auto). Furnish the Company's model which suits the electrical system parameters, and accommodates the square footage coverage and wattage requirement for each area (and type of lighting) controlled; Watt Stopper UW-100, UW-200.
- C. Type DW: Manual ON, Automatic OFF Wall switch type dual technology, passive Infrared and ultrasonic occupancy sensor with built-in override control (off-auto). Furnish the Company's model which suits the electrical system parameters, and accommodates the square footage coverage and wattage requirement for each area (and type of lighting) controlled; Watt Stopper DW-100, DW-200.

2.3 DIGITAL WALL OR CEILING MOUNTED OCCUPANCY SENSOR SYSTEM

- A. Wall or ceiling mounted (to suit installation) passive infrared, ultrasonic or dual technology digital (passive infrared and ultrasonic) occupancy sensor. Furnish the Company's system which accommodates the square footage coverage requirements for each area controlled, utilizing Room Controller modules and accessories which suits the lighting and electrical system parameters.
- B. Digital Occupancy Sensors shall provide graphic LCD display for digital calibration and electronic documentation . Features include the following:
 - 1. Digital calibration and LCD entry for the following variables:
 - a. Sensitivity 0-100% in 10% increments
 - b. Time Delay – Fixed (1-30 minutes in 1 minute increments), and automatic
 - c. Test mode – Five second time delay
 - d. PIR, Ultrasonic or Dual Technology activation and/or re-activation.
 - e. Walk-through mode
 - f. Load parameters including auto/manual ON, blink warning, and daylight enable/disable.
 - 2. RJ-45 digital connections for DLM local network.
 - 3. Two-way infrared communications port to allow remote programming through hand held commissioning tool.
 - 4. Self contained push buttons for programming and control of room devices.
 - 5. Device Status LED's including:
 - a. PIR Detection
 - b. Ultrasonic detection
 - c. Configuration mode

- d. Load binding
 - 6. Assignment of occupancy sensor to a specific load within the room without wiring or special tools.
 - C. Units will provide for digital calibration and commissioning and will not have any dip switches or potentiometers for field settings
 - D. Multiple occupancy sensors may be installed in a room by simply connecting them to the free topology DLM local network. No additional configuration will be required
 - E. Watt Stopper product numbers: LMPX, LMDX, LMPC, LMUC, LMDC
- 2.4 DIGITAL WALL SWITCHES
- A. Low voltage (RJ-45) momentary push button switches in 1,2,3,4 and 8 button configuration, decorator opening. Wall switches will include the following features:
 - 1. Two way infrared communications port for use with personal and configuration remote controls.
 - 2. Engraveable buttons
 - 3. Dimming switches shall include seven LED's to indicate load levels.
 - 4. Scene switches shall include pilot indication of scene selection.
 - 5. Device Status LED's including:
 - a. One pilot LED for each button.
 - b. Power Indication
 - c. One locator LED per switch
 - d. Network status LED to indicate data transmission
 - e. Power LED to indicate the device has power
 - f. Configuration mode
 - B. Switches shall have two RJ-45 ports to allow connection to any other digital room device.
 - C. Multiple digital wall switches may be installed in a room by simply connecting them to the free topology DLM local network. No additional configuration will be required to achieve multi-way switching
 - D. Watt Stopper product numbers: LMSW-101 / LMSW-102 / LMSW-103 / LMSW-104 / LMSW-108.

2.5 ROOM CONTROLLERS

- A. Room Controllers automatically bind the room loads to the connected devices in the space without any tools or configuration requirements. Room Controllers shall be provided to match the room lighting load and control requirements and sequences. The controllers will be simple to install and will not have screw type connections, dip switches, potentiometers or require special mounting or configuration. The control units will include the following features:
 - 1. Automatic room configuration to the most energy efficient sequence of operation based upon the devices in the room.
 - 2. One or two relay configuration
 - 3. Simple replacement – Using the default automatic configuration capabilities, a room controller may be replaced with an Off-the-Shelf unit without requiring any configuration or setup.
 - 4. Device Status LED's to indicate:

- a. Data transmission
 - b. Device has power
 - c. Status for each load
 - d. Configuration status
 5. Quick installation features including:
 - a. Standard junction box mounting (inside or outside)
 - b. Quick low voltage connections using standard RJ-45 patch cable
 6. Plenum rated
 7. Manual override and LED indication for each load
 8. Universal voltage (120/230/277 VAC, 50-60 Hz)
 9. Zero cross circuitry for each load.
 10. Efficient 150 ma switching power supply
 11. Three RJ-45 DLM local network ports
 12. Watt Stopper product numbers: LMRC-101 / LMRC-102
- B. 0-10 Volt enhanced Room Controllers shall include all the features of the Room Controller plus the following enhancements:
1. One, two or three relay configuration
 2. Efficient 250 ma switching power supply
 3. Four RJ-45 DLM local network ports.
 4. One zero to 10 volt analog output per relay for control of dimmable ballasts.
 5. Optional BACnet MS/TP communications port.
 6. Current monitoring
 7. Watt Stopper product numbers: LMRC-301 / LMRC302 / LMRC303.
- C. Plug Load Room Controllers provide dedicated control of plug loads within the space. The controllers plug into the DLM local network using the RJ-45 free topology network. The room controllers include the following features
1. One relay configuration only
 2. Automatic ON/OFF configuration
 3. Default 30 minute (adjustable) time delay from lighting shut off to allow for electronic component use after an area is vacant
 4. Watt Stopper product number: LMPL-101.

2.6 DIGITAL PHOTOSENSORS

- A. Provide automatic daylight harvesting capabilities to the Room Controllers. The photo sensor / room controller configuration automatically configures the daylighting set points for ON/OFF or Dimming control. Using the automatic configuration replacing a photo sensor or room controller can be done without any special tools, programming or configuration. Photosensors include the following features:
1. The digital photosensor shall utilize an internal photodiode that measures light in a 100 degree angle cutting the unwanted light from bright sources outside of this cone
 2. The digital photosensor shall be capable of turning lighting on and off or Raise / Lower depending on the type of Room Controller (on/off or dimming). Sensor range shall be from 1 - 1400fc.
 3. For ON/OFF daylight harvesting the controller provides a "hold on while occupied" feature that prohibits high levels from turning OFF the controlled lights as long as the space remains occupied.

4. The sensor has a threaded nipple that mounts on a ceiling tile and for more challenging applications such as a side wall or hard rock ceiling the nipple pops off and the unit can be screwed down

- B. Watt Stopper Product Numbers: LMLS-400 or equivalent.

2.7 ROOM NETWORK

- A. The DLM local network is a free topology lighting control network and protocol designed to control a small area of a building. Digital room devices connect to the network using RJ-45 patch cords which provide both data and power to room devices. Features of the DLM local network include
 1. Automatic configuration and binding of sensors, switches and lighting loads to the most energy efficient sequence of operation based upon the device attached.
 2. Simple replacement of any device in the network with a standard off the shelf unit without requiring commissioning, configuration or setup.
 3. Push and Learn configuration that can change the automatic binding process and load parameters by using only the digital devices in the room.
 4. Two way infrared communications that allow load parameters, sensor configuration and binding operations to be configured through a hand held configuration tool up to 30 feet from any device

2.8 NETWORK BRIDGE

- A. Each local network shall include a network bridge component to provide a connection between the room devices and the segment network. The network bridge shall use industry standard BACnet MS/TP network communication and allow direct connection to the Segment Manager or BAS where required.
- B. The network bridge may be incorporated directly into the room controller hardware or be provided as a separate module connected on the local network through an available RJ local network port
- C. Provide Plug and Go operation to automatically discover all room devices connected to the local network and make all device parameters visible to the segment manager via the segment network. No commissioning shall be required for set up of the network bridge on the local network.
- D. The network bridge shall automatically create standard BACnet objects for selected room device parameters to allow any BACnet compliant BAS to include lighting control and power monitoring features as provided by the DLM room devices on each local network. Standard BACnet objects shall be provided .

2.9 SEGMENT MANAGER

- A. The Digital Lighting Management system shall include at least one segment manager to manage network communication. It shall be capable of serving up a graphical user interface via a standard web browser. Each segment manager shall have support for one, two or three segment networks as required and allow for control of a maximum of 127 local networks (rooms) and or lighting control panels per segment network.
- B. Operational features of the Segment Manager shall include the following:
 1. Connection to PC or LAN via standard Ethernet TCP/IP

2. Easy to learn and use Adobe Flex based GUI compatible with Internet Explorer 8 or equal browser
3. Log in security capable of restricting some users to view-only or other limited operations
4. Automatic discovery of all DLM devices on the segment network(s). Commissioning beyond activation of the discovery function shall not be required.
5. After discovery all rooms and panels shall be presented in a standard navigation tree format
6. View and modify room device operational parameters. It shall be possible to set device parameters independently for normal hours and after hours operation.
7. Set up schedules for rooms and panels. Schedules shall automatically set controlled zones or areas to either a normal hours or after hours mode of operation.
8. Group rooms and loads for common control by schedules, switches or network commands. Monitor connected load current for rooms or zones equipped with room controllers incorporating the current monitoring feature
9. Provide seamless integration with the BAS via BACnet IP

2.10 EMERGENCY LIGHTING

- A. Emergency Lighting Control Unit – A UL 924 listed device that monitors a switched circuit providing normal lighting to an area. The unit provides normal ON/OFF control of emergency lighting along with the normal lighting. Upon normal power failure the emergency lighting circuit will close, forcing the emergency lighting ON until normal power is restored. Features include
 1. 120 - 277 volts, 50/60 Hz., 20 amp ballast rating
 2. Push to test button
 3. Auxiliary contact for test / Fire Alarm system

2.11 WIRING

- A. Refer to Specification Section 270500 for additional requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PRE-INSTALLATION COORDINATION

- A. Exact occupancy sensor and daylight sensor types and locations shall be determined by the lighting control system supplier for a fully-functional system with adequate coverage throughout areas controlled by occupancy sensors. Exact locations shall be coordinated with actual HVAC register locations, furniture/casework/etc. locations, sensor coverage patterns, etc. for proper coverage in all areas. In no case may fewer devices or lower-quality devices be used in each area than indicated on contract documents.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. When using wire other than RJ-45 connections provide detailed point to point wiring diagrams for every termination. Provide wire specifications and wire colors to simplify contactor termination requirements
- B. Install the work of this Section in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide all connections between system components and network connections to building LAN (via Ethernet cabling) as directed by system supplier for a fully functional networked system.

- D. Calibrate all sensor time delays and sensitivity to guarantee proper coverage of occupants and energy savings.
- E. Provide written or computer generated documentation on the commissioning of the system including room by room description including:
 - 1. Sensor parameters, time delays, sensitivities, daylighting set points.
 - 2. Sequence of operation, manual ON, Auto OFF. Etc.
 - 3. Load Parameters - blink warning, etc.
- F. Refer to Specification Section 270500 for additional installation requirements.

3.3 SUPPORT SERVICES

- A. System Start Up and Commissioning
 - 1. The electrical contractor shall provide both the manufacturer and the electrical engineer with ten working days written notice of the system startup and adjustment date.
 - 2. Manufacturer shall provide a factory authorized technician to confirm proper installation and operation of all lighting control system components. The startup requirement is intended to verify:
 - a. That all occupancy and daylighting sensors are located, installed, and adjusted as intended by the factory and the contract documents.
 - b. The occupancy sensors and daylighting sensors are operating within the manufacturers specifications.
 - c. The sensors and relay panels interact as a complete and operational system to meet the design intent.
 - 3. Manufacturer to provide a written statement verifying that the system meets the above requirements.
- B. Re-commissioning – After 30 days from occupancy re-calibrate all preset times, sensor time delays and sensitivities to meet the Owner's Project Requirements. Provide a detailed report to the Design Team and Owner of re-commissioning activity.
- C. System Training
 - 1. Manufacturer shall provide factory authorized technician to train owner personnel in the operation, programming and maintenance of the lighting control system including all occupancy sensors and daylighting controls.
- D. System Programming
 - 1. Manufacturer shall provide system programming including:
 - a. Wiring documentation.
 - b. Switch operation.
 - c. Telephone overrides.
 - d. Operating schedules.

END OF SECTION 260944

SECTION 262200 – DRY TYPE TRANSFORMERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL

- A. THE WORK UNDER THIS SECTION INCLUDES BUT IS NOT LIMITED TO THE FOLLOWING:

1. Dry Type Transformers

1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Voltage for 3 phase units shall be 480V to 120/208V, three phase, four wire unless shown otherwise. Voltage of single phase units shall be 480V to 120/240V single phase, three wire unless shown otherwise.
- B. Where isolation transformer is indicated on drawings, furnish K-13 rated transformer with dual-faraday electrostatic shield.
- C.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION

- A. Transformers shall be ventilated with insulation to withstand a minimum of 150 degree Celsius temperature rise (Class 220 insulation) unless specifically shown otherwise on the drawings.

2.2 ENERGY EFFICIENCY

- A. Transformers shall comply with the latest applicable DOE energy efficiency requirements and latest edition of NEMA standard TP-1 and shall be labeled for the EPA Energy Star Program.

2.3 SOUND RATING

- A. Sound level shall not exceed a 5db reduction from ST-20 maximum requirements. Sound level in decibels may not exceed the following:

1.	KVA	DESIGN SOUND LEVEL
2.	0-45	40 db
3.	46-150	45 db
4.	151-300	50 db
5.	301-700	57 db

- B. Sound levels shall be determined in accordance with NEMA and ASA Standards. Core and coils shall be mounted on vibration isolator pads.

2.4 ENCLOSURES

- A. Transformers mounted in dry, interior locations shall be furnished with NEMA 1 enclosures unless shown otherwise.
- B. Transformers mounted outdoors or in wet locations shall be furnished with NEMA 3R enclosures with drip shields unless shown otherwise.

- C. Transformers installed inside motor control centers or other similarly enclosed equipment may be “open” units not requiring additional enclosures.

2.5 CLEARANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Transformer construction/efficiency/ventilation shall allow 3” (or less) clearance from rear and sides.

2.6 TAPS

- A. All units shall be equipped with a minimum of two (2) 2 ½% taps above nominal (FCAN) and a minimum of four (4) 2 ½% taps below nominal (FCBN) as required to allow adjustment of the turns ratio of the transformer to account for site voltage adjustments.

2.7 MANUFACTURER

- A. Transformers shall be Square 'D', G.E., Siemens or Cutler Hammer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

- A. Minimum clearances shall be provided on all sides of transformers per manufacturer's and code requirements.
- B. Where site voltages so require, transformer taps shall be adjusted to maintain nominal voltage on secondary side of transformer. Adjustment of dry-type transformer taps shall not be made until all upstream voltage adjustments (such as voltage tap adjustments at service transformers) are finalized.
- C. Refer to Specification Section 260526 for transformer grounding requirements.
- D. Refer to Specification Section 260553 for transformer identification requirements.

3.2 MOUNTING

- A. Transformers shall be mounted as indicated on plans. No units shall be wall mounted unless shown or directed otherwise.
- B. Floor mounted transformers:
 - 1. Shall be installed on a minimum of four (4) double-deflection neoprene vibration isolators (by Amber/Booth, Korfund Dynamics or Mason Industries - size as required – with seismic restraint capability ratings as required by the associated seismic zone).
 - 2. Shall be installed on four-inch thick concrete pads unless specifically shown otherwise. Pad shall have beveled edges.
- C. Suspended transformers:
 - 1. Shall be trapeze-mounted on unistrut frame supported by a minimum of four steel rods and shall be mounted as high as possible or at height directed (transformers shall not be mounted above lay-in ceilings or in areas with restricted ventilation). Shall be installed using a minimum of four (4) double-deflection neoprene vibration isolators (by Amber/Booth, Korfund Dynamics or Mason Industries - size as required – with seismic restraint capability ratings as required by the associated seismic zone).
 - 2. Contractor shall supply extra supports as may be required due to size and weight.

3. Additional seismic bracing shall be provided for suspended transformers in seismic zones as required to provide a fully code-compliant installation.

END OF SECTION 262200

SECTION 262413 – SWITCHBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE

- A. This section deals with requirements for circuit breaker type switchboards.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SWITCHBOARDS

A. General:

1. Switchboard shall be totally enclosed, self supporting metal structure, contain industrial type main and distribution molded case circuit breakers and other associated equipment as indicated. The switchboard shall be completely front accessible.
2. Each switchboard, as a complete unit, shall be given a single integrated equipment rating by the manufacturer. The integrated equipment short circuit rating shall certify that all equipment is capable of withstanding the stresses of a fault equal to that of the least over current protective device contained therein. Such rating shall be established by the actual tests by the manufacturer on a similar equipment construction as the subject switchboard. This test data shall be available and shall be furnished to the engineer, if requested, with or before the submittal or approved drawing. Entire switchboard assembly, including all bussing, shall have SCCR ratings meeting or exceeding the minimum AIC ratings listed on the plans for the switchboard. When a power distribution system electrical study (including short circuit stud, etc.) is a part of the project, contractor shall further verify that all proposed equipment is properly rated (per the results of the study) prior to submitting shop drawings. All ratings shall be full ratings. Series ratings will not be allowed unless shown otherwise on drawings.
3. Future Provisions: All unused spaces provided, unless otherwise specified, shall be fully equipped for future devices, including all appropriate connectors and mounting hardware.
4. Top/bottom feed arrangement and lug sizes/quantities shall be coordinated by the contractor.

B. Bussing:

1. The switchboard bussing shall be silver plated copper and of sufficient cross-sectional area to continuously conduct rated full load current as shown on plans with a maximum temperature rise of 50 degrees C., above an ambient temperature of 25 degrees C. Switchboard shall have a 25% full length ground bus. Neutral bus shall be full capacity. Connections for all current carrying parts shall be bolted. Aluminum bussing is not acceptable. Tapered bussing is not acceptable.
2. The main horizontal bus shall be located at the back of the switchboard to permit a maximum of available conduit area. The end section shall have bus provisions for future addition. The provisions shall include the bus installed to the extreme side of the switchboard and pre-punched to facilitate future bolted splice plates. The horizontal main bus supports, connections, and joints shall be bolted with grade 5 carriage bolts and Belleville washers. The main horizontal bus shall be same size, continuous through the board.

2.2 CIRCUIT BREAKERS

- A. Where the highest continuous current trip setting for which the actual overcurrent device installed in a circuit breaker is rated (or can be adjusted to is 1200A or higher, breakers shall be

electronic trip and shall be provided with arc energy-reducing maintenance switching (with local status indicator) to reduce arc flash energy per NEC 240.87 requirements.

- B. Circuit breakers shall be quick-break, quick-make thermal-magnetic type for alternating current unless noted otherwise. Breakers shall trip free of the handle and tripping shall be indicated by the handle assuming a position between OFF and ON. Multipole breakers shall be internal common trip with single operating handle; external handle ties are not acceptable.
- C. All breakers shall meet the minimum RMS symmetrical interrupting capacity ratings shown on plans for the associated panel. All interrupting ratings shall be full ratings. Series ratings will not be allowed unless shown otherwise on drawings.
- D. Main circuit breakers, 1000 amps and larger, on 277/480 volt, 3 phase, 4 wire systems shall be electronic trip molded case 80% rated equipped with ground fault sensing and automatic trip unless noted otherwise. The following requirements shall be met:
 - 1. These main breakers shall be equipped with an electric trip device having the following fully-adjustable, time/current response adjustments:
 - a. Long Time Pickup.
 - b. Long Time Delay.
 - c. Short Time Pickup.
 - d. Short Time Delay
 - e. Ground Fault Pickup.
 - f. Ground Fault Delay.
 - g. Instantaneous settings.
- E. All circuit breakers shall be installed so that the center of the grip of the operating handle, when in its highest position, is not more than 6'-7" above the floor or working platform (the height of the concrete housekeeping pad shall be included in the breaker height calculations).
- F. All branch circuit breakers shall be listed to UL489 or shall be specially-tested to be HACR listed.

2.3 SWITCHBOARD FRAMING & CONSTRUCTION

- A. The switchboard shall be fabricated on a die-form steel base assembly consisting of formed steel and commercial channel welded or bolted together to rigidly support the entire shipping unit for moving on rollers and floor mounting. The framework is to be formed code gauge steel, rigidly welded and bolted together to support all cover plates, bussing, and component devices during service and installation. The dimensions shall be shown on plans. These dimensions shall not be exceeded without specific approval.
- B. Each switchboard section shall have one open bottom and individual removable top plate for installation and termination of conduit. Top and bottom conduit area is to be clearly shown and dimensioned on the shop drawings. The wireway front covers are to be hinged to permit access to the branch circuit breaker load side terminals without removing the covers. All front plates used for mounting meters, selector switches or other front mounted devices shall be hinged with all wiring installed and laced with flexibility at the hinged side. All course plates shall be screw removable and small enough for easy handling by one man. The paint finish shall be gray enamel over a rust-inhibiting phosphate primer, ASA #48.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Each circuit breaker shall have engraved black on white engraved nameplate, providing circuit identification.

- B. Provide power meter (with door-mounted display) to monitor, display and alarm relevant current, voltage, power and energy variables. Shall be Square 'D' #PM850 or equal.

2.5 MANUFACTURER

- A. Switchboard to be manufactured by Square 'D', G.E., Siemens or Cutler Hammer or approved equal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Switchboards shall be installed on four inch thick concrete pads unless specifically shown otherwise. Pad shall extend a minimum of 4 inches to all sides of the switchboard and shall have beveled edges.
- B. All switchboard dimensions and clearances shall be carefully checked and coordinated with the proper trades to ensure proper mounting space and support prior to roughing in equipment.
- C. Wiring in panelboard gutters shall be done in a neat and workmanlike manner. Wiring shall be grouped into neat bundles and secured with approved tie wraps.

3.2 SWITCHBOARD IDENTIFICATION

- A. Refer to Specification Section 260553.

END OF SECTION 262413

SECTION 262416 – POWER PANELBOARDS - CIRCUIT BREAKER TYPE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL

- A. The work under this section includes but is not limited to the following:
 - 1. Power Panelboards
 - 2. Power Circuit Breakers

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PANELBOARDS - GENERAL

- A. Panelboards shall be dead front type, having lugs only or circuit breaker in mains as shown in panelboard schedule with circuit breaker branches.
- B. Panelboard bus structure and main lugs or main breaker shall have current ratings as shown on plans. Such rating shall be established by heat rise test with Maximum hot spot temperature on any connector or bus bar not to exceed 50 degrees C rise above ambient at full rated load. Heat rise test shall be conducted in accordance with UL Standard UL67. Bus structure shall be tin-plated aluminum or tin-plated copper. All neutral busses shall be full size. All panelboards shall contain ground buss.
- C. Entire panelboard assembly, including all bussing, shall have SCCR ratings meeting or exceeding the minimum AIC ratings listed on the plans for the panel. All ratings shall be full ratings. Series ratings will not be allowed unless shown otherwise on drawings.
- D. Panelboards shall be listed by Underwriters Laboratories and shall bear the UL label. Panelboards shall be suitable for use as service equipment when required.
- E. Top/bottom feed arrangement and lug sizes/quantities shall be coordinated by the contractor.
- F. Service entrance panelboards shall be provided with barrier such that no uninsulated, ungrounded service busbar or service terminal is exposed to inadvertent contact by persons or maintenance equipment while servicing load terminations.

2.2 CIRCUIT BREAKERS

- A. Where the highest continuous current trip setting for which the actual overcurrent device installed in a circuit breaker is rated (or can be adjusted to is 1200A or higher, breakers shall be electronic trip and shall be provided with arc energy-reducing maintenance switching (with local status indicator) to reduce arc flash energy per NEC 240.87 requirements.
- B. Circuit breakers shall be quick-make and quick-break, whether actuated automatically or manually. Circuit breakers shall have inverse time tripping characteristics with automatic release which shall trip free of the handle. Circuit breaker handles shall be three distinct positions—"OFF", "ON", and "TRIPPED". When a circuit breaker opens on overload or short circuit, the operating handle shall automatically assume the "TRIPPED" position.
- C. Multipole breakers shall be internal common trip with single operating handle. External handle ties are not acceptable, unless specifically noted otherwise (such as for multi-wire branch circuits described below).

- D. Circuit breakers feeding multiwire branch circuits (as defined by NEC) consisting of separate single phase loads sharing a common neutral shall be provided with handle ties to simultaneously disconnect all ungrounded conductors per NEC Article 210.4(B). The necessary locations of these handle ties shall be coordinated by the contractor. Where necessary, the contractor may rearrange circuit breakers (as minimally as possible) as required to meet this requirement.
- E. Circuit breakers shall be of the bolt-on type.
- F. Circuit breakers shall be "FA" frame and larger.
- G. All breakers shall meet the minimum RMS symmetrical interrupting capacity ratings shown on plans for the associated panel. All interrupting ratings shall be full ratings. Series ratings will not be allowed unless shown otherwise on drawings.
- H. The front face of all circuit breakers shall be flush with each other. Breaker numbers shall be permanently attached to trim.
- I. All branch circuit breakers shall be listed to UL489 or shall be specially-tested to be HACR listed.

2.3 CABINETS, TRIM AND WIREWAY SPACE

- A. Clear space from bottom of lugs to bottom of wireway shall be not less than 6 inches for 400 amps and below, 10 inches for 600 amps, 12 inches for 800 amps and above.
- B. Panelboard interiors shall be fastened to cabinets by adjustable aligning supports.
- C. Panelboard assembly shall be enclosed in a steel cabinet. The rigidity and gauge of steel to be as specified in UL Standard 50 for cabinets.
- D. Fronts of cabinets shall be made from a single sheet of full finished steel having the door cut out. Doors shall have flush hinges, and lock utilizing all metal construction (with all locks keyed alike). Front shall be attached to cabinets with hinged trim with piano-hinge down full length of one side to allow access to wiring without complete removal of outer trim. Front shall be provided with a metal directory and holder with clear plastic covering welded to the inside of the door. Fronts shall be code gauge full-finished steel with rust inhibiting primer and baked enamel finished in ASA #49 gray. Panelboards installed in exterior or wet locations shall have NEMA 3R enclosures.
- E. Each section of multi-section panelboards shall be of matching heights and depths.
- F. Panelboard enclosures shall be furnished as shown on panel schedule on plans for surface, flush or motor control center mounting.

2.4 MANUFACTURER

- A. Panelboards shall be as manufactured by Square 'D', G.E., Siemens or Cutler Hammer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. All panelboard dimensions and clearances shall be carefully checked and coordinated with the proper trades to ensure proper mounting space and support prior to roughing in equipment. In no case shall any circuit breaker be located above 6'-7" A.F.F..

- B. Wiring in panelboard gutters shall be done in a neat and workmanlike manner. Wiring shall be grouped into neat bundles and secured with approved tie wraps.

3.2 PERFORMANCE TESTING

- A. The ground-fault protection system when provided shall be performance tested after installation by a qualified person(s) using primary current injection in accordance with the instructions provided with the equipment and NEC requirements. A written record of the testing shall be provided.
- B. The arc energy reduction protection system when provided shall be performance tested after installation by a qualified person(s) using primary current injection in accordance with the instructions provided with the equipment and NEC requirements. A written record of the testing shall be provided.

3.3 PANEL IDENTIFICATION

- A. Refer to Specification Section 260553.

END OF SECTION 262416

SECTION 262417 – LIGHTING PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL

A. The work under this section includes but is not limited to the following:

1. Lighting Panelboards
2. Circuit Breakers

PART 2 - PRODUCT

2.1 PANELBOARDS

A. Enclosure:

1. Panelboards shall be dead front type and shall be in accordance with Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc., standard of panelboards and enclosing cabinets and so labeled.
2. Panelboards installed in dry locations shall have enclosures fabricated from sheet steel and shall be finished in ASA #49. Panelboards installed in exterior or wet locations shall have NEMA 3R enclosures.
3. The door shall have a cylinder type lock. Lock shall be held in place by concealed screw to a captive nut, welded to inside of door. All locks shall be keyed alike.
4. A metal framed circuit directory card holder with clear plastic covering shall be factory-mounted on the inside of door.
5. Panels for 20 or more circuits, including spares and spaces, shall be 20 inches wide.
6. Panelboards enclosures shall be as shown on panel schedule on plans for surface, flush or motor control center mounting.
7. Provide hinged trim with piano-hinge down full length of one side to allow access to wiring without complete removal of outer trim.
8. Each section of multi-section panelboards shall be of matching heights and depths.

B. Bussing/Lugs:

1. Ampacity and service voltage of main buss, lugs or main breakers and branch circuit breakers shall be as shown on drawings.
2. All bussing and associated connectors shall be tin-plated aluminum or tin-plated copper.
3. All panelboards shall contain ground buss.
4. Entire panelboard shall be capable of withstanding a short circuit not less than the interrupting capacity of any breaker in the panel. When a power distribution system electrical study (including short circuit stud, etc.) is a part of the project, contractor shall further verify that all proposed equipment is properly rated (per the results of the study) prior to submitting shop drawings. Interrupting ratings shall be full ratings. Series ratings will not be allowed unless shown otherwise on drawings.
5. Buss connectors shall be for distributed phase arrangement.
6. Top/bottom feed arrangement and lug sizes/quantities shall be coordinated by the contractor.
7. Entire panelboard assembly, including all bussing, shall have SCCR ratings meeting or exceeding the minimum AIC ratings listed on the plans for the panel. When a power distribution system electrical study (including short circuit stud, etc.) is a part of the project, contractor shall further verify that all proposed equipment is properly rated (per the results of the study) prior to submitting shop drawings. All ratings shall be full ratings. Series ratings will not be allowed unless shown otherwise on drawings.

8. Service entrance panelboards shall be provided with barrier such that no uninsulated, ungrounded service busbar or service terminal is exposed to inadvertent contact by persons or maintenance equipment while servicing load terminations

C. Breaker arrangement and numbering:

1. Panelboards shall be factory assembled with branch breakers arranged exactly as indicated on plans.
2. Breakers shall be numbered vertically beginning top left. Multi-section panelboards shall be numbered consecutively through all sections.
3. Breaker numbers shall be permanently attached to trim.
4. Main breakers shall be vertically-mounted (branch-mounted or back-fed main breakers will not be acceptable unless specifically so shown on plans).

2.2 CIRCUIT BREAKERS

- A. Circuit breakers shall be quick break, quick make, thermal magnetic type, for alternating current. Breakers shall trip free for the handle and tripping shall be indicated by the handle assuming a position between OFF and ON.
- B. Circuit breakers shall be of the bolt-on type.
- C. Multi-pole breakers shall be internal common trip with single operating handle; external handle ties are not acceptable, unless specifically noted otherwise (such as for multi-wire branch circuits described below).
- D. Circuit breakers feeding multiwire branch circuits (as defined by NEC) consisting of separate single phase loads sharing a common neutral shall be provided with multi-pole breakers or handle ties to simultaneously disconnect all ungrounded conductors per NEC Article 210.4(B). The necessary locations of these multi-pole breakers or handle ties shall be coordinated by the contractor. Where necessary, the contractor may rearrange circuit breakers (as minimally as possible) as required to meet this requirement.
- E. All breakers shall meet the minimum RMS symmetrical interrupting capacity ratings shown on plans for the associated panel. All interrupting ratings shall be full ratings. Series ratings will not be allowed unless shown otherwise on drawings.
- F. All branch circuit breakers shall be listed to UL489 or shall be specially-tested to be HACR listed.

2.3 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Any special requirements on the drawings, such as for increased interrupting rating, ground fault protection, etc., shall supersede these specifications, but only insofar as that particular requirement is concerned.
- B. Lighting panels larger than 400A shall conform to the requirements for power panels.

2.4 MANUFACTURER

- A. Panelboards shall be as manufactured by Square 'D', G.E., Siemens or Cutler Hammer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. All panelboard dimensions and clearances shall be carefully checked and coordinated with the proper trades to ensure proper mounting space and support prior to roughing in equipment. In no case shall any circuit breaker be located above 6'-7" A.F.F..
- B. Wiring in panelboard wireways shall be done in a neat and workmanlike manner. Wiring shall be grouped into neat bundles and secured with approved tie wraps.
- C. For all flush-mounted panelboards, a minimum of three (3) one-inch empty conduits shall be stubbed out above the nearest accessible ceiling space for future use.

3.2 PANEL IDENTIFICATION

- A. Refer to Specification Section 260553.

END OF SECTION 262417

SECTION 262726 – WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. Wiring Devices
- B. Plates
- C. Finishes

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WIRING DEVICES AND PLATES

- A. Switches shall be AC type, extra-heavy duty industrial grade (unless otherwise shown) of ratings shown on drawings. Switches shall be as manufactured by Hubbell, P & S, Sierra, Bryant, GE, Arrow Hart or equal.
- B. Receptacles shall have blade configuration and shall be heavy duty industrial grade (unless otherwise shown) of current and voltage rating as shown on drawings. Receptacles shall be as manufactured by Hubbell, P & S, Sierra, Bryant, GE, Arrow Hart or equal.
- C. All GFCI-type receptacles shall continuously self-test and shall trip/deny power if the receptacle does not provide proper GFCI protection or if the line/load terminations are miswired and shall provide visual indication of power status, trip conditions, ground fault conditions and end-of-life status.
- D. Each wiring device shall have a plate (see “Finishes” section below for specific requirements).

2.2 FINISHES

- A. All wiring devices (switches, receptacles, etc.) shall be colored to match the coverplates described below. For instance, all items covered by stainless steel, aluminum or malleable iron plates shall be gray in color.
 - 1. Exceptions:
 - a. Emergency wiring devices shall be red.
 - b. Isolated ground wiring devices shall be orange.
- B. Coverplates for recessed, wall-mounted electrical items (switches, receptacles, telephone outlets, etc.) shall be stainless steel unless shown otherwise.
- C. Coverplates, trim rings, etc. for recessed, floor-mounted electrical items (floor outlets, underfloor duct junctions, etc.) shall match finish of building hardware (302/304 stainless steel, brass, etc.) in area installed.
- D. Coverplates for exposed electrical items (switches, receptacles, telephone outlets, etc.) shall be of same material as exposed boxes (see Outlet Box Specification for required material type) and shall have beveled edges.
- E. Coverplates for receptacles in wet locations shall be metallic, in-use type, rated for wet locations per NEC requirements unless noted otherwise.

- F. See "Electrical Identification" specification section for coverplate labeling requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL MOUNTING

- A. Symbols on drawings and mounting heights are approximate. The exact locations and mounting heights shall be determined on the job, and it shall be the Contractor's responsibility to coordinate with all trades to secure correct installation. For example, Contractor shall coordinate exact mounting heights over counters, in or above backsplashes, in block walls, and at other specific construction features.
- B. Verify all door swings with Architectural. Locate boxes for light switches within four inches of door trim on swing side (not hinge side) of door.
- C. Devices and associated plates shall not be used as support; outlet boxes shall be rigidly supported from structural members.
- D. Mount all straight-blade receptacles vertically with ground pole up, unless specifically noted otherwise.
- E. Unless otherwise shown or required by local handicap codes, outlet boxes shall be the following distances above the finished floor unless otherwise noted.
1. Receptacles and telephone outlets in offices and other finished areas: 1'-6" to the center of the box.
 2. Receptacles and telephone outlets in equipment rooms and other unfinished areas: 4'-0" to the center of the box.
 3. Receptacles over counters: As Noted
 4. Switches, general: 4'-0" to the top of the box.
 5. Fire Alarm Pull Stations: 4'-0" to the top of the box.
 6. Fire Alarm Audio/Visual Devices: As shown on fire alarm shop drawings (Entire lens shall be above 80" and below 96" per NFPA 72).
 7. Push-button, etc., general: 4'-0" to the top of the box.
 8. Other device types: verify with engineer prior to rough-in.

END OF SECTION 262726

SECTION 262813 – FUSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL

- A. THE WORK UNDER THIS SECTION INCLUDES BUT IS NOT LIMITED TO THE FOLLOWING:

1. Fuses

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FUSES

- A. Fuses - 600 volts and less - shall be furnished and installed by electrical contractor who will maintain fuses in original new condition until installed. Fuses shall not be installed until equipment is ready to be energized.
- B. Fuses 601 to 6000 amperes shall be time-delay, Class L type with an "O" ring to provide seal between the end bells and the glass melemine fuse barrel. Terminals shall be panned. Fuses must hold 500% rating for a minimum of 4 seconds and clear 20 times rated current in .01 seconds or less. Fuses shall be current-limiting and be listed by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. with an interrupting rating of 200,000 amperes r.m.s. symmetrical. Bussmann Hi-Cap, time-delay, Class L fuses.
- C. All other fuses for power, light and motor circuits shall be dual-element, Class RK5 type with separate overload and short-circuit elements. The overload element shall incorporate a spring activated thermal unit having a 284 Degree Fahrenheit melting point alloy and with a heat sink that will provide time-delay of a minimum of 10 seconds at 500% rating. Fuses shall be current-limiting and be listed by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. with an interrupting rating of 200,000 amperes r.m.s. symmetrical. Bussmann Low-Peak, dual-element, Class RK5 fuses.
- D. Fuses shall be installed in fluorescent fixtures on the line side of the ballast by the fixture manufacturer who will size the fuses for each application. Bussmann GLR fuses installed in HLR fuseholder.
- E. Fuses for all other ballast-controlled lighting fixtures shall have fuses installed on the line side of the ballast either in the housing or handhole of lighting standards for easy access. Bussmann FNQ fuse with HPF holder for all applications. Bussmann FNQ fuse with HPF holder for all applications except lighting Standards where Bussmann HEB-JJ holder with FNQ fuse will be used.

2.2 MANUFACTURER

- A. Fuses shall be as manufactured by Bussmann Manufacturing or approved equal. Approved substitutions will be allowed that provide required electrical safety overload and short-circuit performance. Electrical contractor shall submit one copy each of fuse and fuse holder manufacturers bulletins that fully describe performance for substitution approval consideration. The bulletins shall be submitted to the Electrical Design Engineer at time of bid submittal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SPARE FUSES

- A. Spare fuses shall be provided by the electrical contractor. 10% (minimum of 3) of each size and type will be placed in a Spare Fuse Cabinet mounted on the wall of the electrical room.

END OF SECTION 262813

SECTION 262816 – SAFETY SWITCHES AND FUSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. Safety Switches
- B. Fuses
- C. Branch Feeders
- D. Feeders

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SAFETY SWITCHES

- A. Safety switches shall be quick-make, quick-break, NEMA heavy duty type HD, fused or nonfused as shown. Switch blades shall be fully visible in the off position.
- B. Safety switches shall be furnished with transparent internal barrier kits to prevent accidental contact with live parts. Barriers shall provide finger-safe protection when the switch door is open and shall allow use of test probes and removal of fuses without removing barrier.
- C. Fused switches shall have provisions for class R, rejection type fuses.

2.2 FUSES (600V)

- A. Fuses for all branch switches shall be Bussman Mfg. Co., Dual Element, Class “R” Fusetron.
- B. Fuses for main switch/switches shall be Bussman Mfg. Co. Hi-Cap.

2.3 MANUFACTURER

- A. Safety switches shall be as manufactured by Square 'D', G.E., Siemens or Cutler Hammer.
- B. Fuses shall be as manufactured by Bussman Mfg. Co. or equal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SAFETY SWITCHES

- A. Safety switches shall be installed as shown on the plans and in accordance with N.E.C.
- B. Locations shown for safety switches on plans are diagrammatical only. Exact locations shall be field coordinated by contractor as required to provide code-required clearances.
- C. Switch enclosures shall be rated NEMA I indoors in dry locations and NEMA3R outdoors and in wet areas.
- D. Adequate support shall be provided for mounting safety switches. Safety switches shall not be mounted to the associated equipment (unless the safety switch is furnished with the equipment).

3.2 FUSES

- A. Fuses shall be sized as shown on drawings, unless a smaller size is required by the associated equipment supplier, in which case the contractor shall provide fuses sized as directed by the associated equipment supplier at no additional cost.
- B. Provide not less than one spare set of fuses for each size used. Provide an additional spare set for each five sets of same size fuses used.

END OF SECTION 262816

SECTION 264300 – SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes field-mounted SPDs for low-voltage (<1000 V) power distribution and control equipment.
- B. The specified unit(s) shall provide effective high energy transient voltage surge suppression, surge current diversion and high frequency noise attenuation in all electrical modes for equipment connected downstream from the facility's meter or load side of the main overcurrent device. The unit(s) shall be connected in parallel with the facility's wiring system.
- C. The unit(s) shall be designed and manufactured in North America by a qualified manufacturer of suppression filter system equipment. The qualified manufacturer shall have been engaged in the commercial design and manufacture of such products for minimum of ten (10) years.
- D. All products that are submitted according to these specification will be required to meet this specification in its entirety for both service and distribution TVSS systems. Any product that is submitted and does not comply with all parts of this specification will be subject to rejection.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. VPR: Voltage Protection Rating.
- B. SPD: Surge Protective Device(s)
- C. $I_{(n)}$: Nominal Discharge Current

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See specification section 260500.
- B. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include:
 - 1. Maximum Single Impulse Surge Current Rating.
 - 2. Surge Life (Repetitive Surge) Rating.
 - 3. UL1449 (Latest Edition) Voltage Protection Ratings (VPR).
 - 4. UL1449 (Latest Edition) Nominal Discharge Current (In).
 - 5. Product dimensions and weights.
 - 6. Furnished specialties and accessories.
- C. Qualification Data:
- D. Safety Agency File Number.
- E. ISO 9001-2008 Certification.
- F. ISO 1401-2001 Certification.
- G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For SPDs to include all submittal data and any applicable operation and maintenance manuals.

- H. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. The unit shall be UL 1449 Listed and CUL Approved as a Surge Protective Device and UL 1283 Listed as an Electromagnetic Interference Filter
- C. Provide 2nd party certified data demonstrating SPD response to ANSI/IEEE C62.41.2-2002 standard waveforms when tested according to IEEE C62.45.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. All SPDs provided within this project at the service entrance, distribution panels, and sub-panels shall be from the same manufacturer.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Service Conditions: Rate SPDs for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage: Not less than 115 percent of nominal system operating voltage.
 - 2. Operating Temperature: 30 to 150 deg F.
 - 3. Humidity: 0 to 95 percent, non-condensing.
 - 4. Altitude: Less than 13,000 feet above sea level.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Where field-mounted SPD's are specifically shown on plans, coordinate locations of field-mounted SPDs to allow adequate clearances for maintenance.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of surge suppressors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Replaceable Protection Modules: 1 of each size and type installed, where field-replaceable modular SPDs are provided.
 - 2. Fuses: 1 of each size and type installed, where field-replaceable fuses are provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Manufacturer:

1. Integral Devices: Surge Protective Devices shall be as manufactured by the distribution equipment manufacturer (Square D, etc.), or by Surge Suppression Inc. if all of the performance of this specification are met and all UL listing of the equipment manufacturer are met.
2. External Devices (where specifically specified on plans): Surge Protective Devices shall be as manufactured by the distribution equipment manufacturer (Square D, etc.) or Surge Suppression Inc.

B. Each Surge Protective Device shall:

1. Be internal to the associated distribution equipment (without violating any applicable UL listings) unless specifically shown otherwise on plans.
2. Be UL 1449 (Latest Edition) listed.
3. Have short-circuit current rating complying with UL 1449 (Latest Edition), that matches or exceeds the short-circuit rating of the associated distribution equipment.
4. Be designed to withstand a maximum continuous operating voltage (MCOV) of not less than 115% of nominal RMS voltage.
5. Have fuses, rated at 200-kA interrupting capacity.
6. Have a minimum UL 1449 Nominal Discharge Current (I_n) Rating of 20kA.
7. Be fabricated using bolted compression lugs.
8. Provide suppression for seven (7) modes of protection.
9. Have LED indicator lights for power and protection status of each phase.
10. Have audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
11. Have form-C contacts rated at 2 A and 24-V ac minimum, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of protection status. Contacts shall reverse on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with facility monitoring and control system if monitoring by that system is required by plans or other specifications.
12. Have six-digit transient-event counter, mounted to front of equipment door, set to totalize transient surges (externally mounted SPD's may have the transient –event counter mounted on the visible face of the SPD).
13. Meet all UL 96A requirements (for Lightning Protection Systems) where the device is installed at a service entrance of the facility. At a minimum, these devices shall:
 - a. Be marked as Type 1 or Type 2 SPDs with product Identity consisting of “Surge Protective Device” or “SPD”, and identifying all ratings so required by UL96A and the 4 digit alpha numeric Control Number.
 - b. Have a minimum UL 1449 Nominal Discharge Current (I_n) Rating of 20kA.
 - c. Be UL listed and labeled with holographic label.

C. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating shall be meet the following minimums unless specifically shown otherwise on plans:

Application	Per Phase	Per Mode
Service Entrance Devices	240 kA	120 kA
Downstream Devices	160 kA	80 kA

D. The ANSI/UL 1449 voltage protection rating (VPR) in grounded wye circuits, the SPDs shall not exceed the following:

Modes	208Y/120V	480Y/277V	600Y/347V
L-N,L-G, N-G	800	1200	1500

L-L	1200	2000	2500

- E. The ANSI /UL 1449 VPR for 240/120 V, 3-wire or 4-wire circuits with high leg shall not exceed the following:

Modes	240/120V
L-N,L-G, N-G	1200/800

2.2 ENCLOSURES

- A. Where external units are specifically specified on plans, units not mounted within electrical distribution equipment (such as switchboards, MCC's, etc.) shall be provided in enclosures with NEMA enclosure ratings that match or exceed the NEMA enclosure ratings of the equipment from which the units are fed. For example, a unit fed from a NEMA 4X stainless steel panelboard shall also be mounted within a NEMA 4X stainless steel enclosure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. All SPD's shall be integrally-mounted within the associated distribution equipment unless specifically shown otherwise on plans.
- B. Install SPDs at service entrance on load side, with ground lead bonded to service entrance ground.
- C. Install SPDs downstream of the service entrance with conductors or buses between suppressor and points of attachment as short and straight as possible. The lead lengths between the TVSS unit and the equipment being protected shall not exceed fourteen (14) inches without approval from the engineer. Do not bond neutral and ground. Leads shall be as straight as possible with no sharp bends.
- D. Where externally-mounted SPD's are specifically shown on plans, provide circuit breaker as directed by the SPD supplier as a dedicated disconnecting means for SPD unless otherwise indicated.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Ensure that interiors are free of foreign materials and dirt.
- B. Check and test switches, pushbuttons, meters for proper operation.
- C. Check and test indicating lights for proper operation and color.
- D. Perform manufacturer's on site field test procedures.

3.3 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Do not perform insulation resistance (MEGGER) tests of the distribution wiring equipment with the SPDs installed. Disconnect all wires, including neutral, before conducting insulation resistance tests, and reconnect immediately after the testing is over.

3.4 SYSTEM WARRANTY

- A. The SPD system manufacturer shall warranty the entire SPD system against defective materials and workmanship for a period of ten (10) years from the date of substantial completion. This warranty is in effect as long as the unit is installed in compliance with the manufacturer's installation, operation, and maintenance manual, UL Listing requirements, and any applicable national or local electrical codes.
- B. Any SPD device which shows evidence of failure or incorrect operation, including damage as the result of lightning strikes, during the warranty period shall be replaced by the manufacturer at no charge to the owner. Warranty will provide for multiple exchanges of any inoperable devices at any time during the warranty period which starts at the date of substantial completion of the system to which the surge suppressor is installed.
- C. The manufacturer is required to have a nationwide network of factory-authorized local service representatives for repair and service of this product. The manufacturer shall have a dedicated 1-800 telephone number for service problems and questions. This number shall be manned by a knowledgeable factory employee to ensure prompt response to any emergency situation that may arise.

END OF SECTION 264300

SECTION 265000 – LIGHTING MATERIALS AND METHODS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. Lighting Fixtures
- B. Drivers

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Complete submittals shall be provided identifying all lighting fixture types and options, all lamp types (where applicable) and compliance with all contract requirements. The absence of clear submittal information specifically listing exceptions/deviations from detailed contract requirements will be understood to indicate that the contractor/supplier intends to meet all contract requirements. Refer to specification section 260500 for additional requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

- A. Lighting fixtures shall be furnished as shown on plans and specified herein. It shall specifically be the responsibility of Contractor to verify exact types ceilings, walls, etc. and recessing depth of all recessed fixtures and furnish the specific mounting trims and accessories of the specified and/or accepted fixture specifically for the ceiling, wall etc. in which each fixture is to be installed.
- B. Base bid manufacturers are listed on the lighting fixture schedule. Manufacturers listed without accompanying catalog numbers are responsible for meeting the quality standards, efficiency, maximum wattages and photometric distributions set by the specified product.
- C. All lighting fixtures shall be so designed and shall have drivers and other similar items so installed as to function without interruptions or failures when operating in the environment in which they are proposed to be installed. Special attention shall be given to environments with potentially high ambient temperatures such as attic spaces, exterior soffits, confined interior soffits, coves, unconditioned spaces, etc. and shall be addressed by providing fixtures with suitable high ambient temperature ratings, remote mounting of drivers/ballasts, providing approved ventilation, etc. as directed by fixture manufacturer and approved by engineer, at contractor's expense.
- D. All fixtures installed such as to create penetrations through fire rated ceiling or wall assemblies shall be labeled as suitable for that purpose or installed with covers, tenting or other means as required to maintain the fire rating of the assembly.

2.2 LED LUMINAIRES

- A. For the purpose of these specifications, LED Luminaires shall be defined as the entire LED fixture assembly including LED array, drivers, housing, electronics, etc. that compose the lighting fixture.
- B. Furnish and install LED Luminaire of proper size, type, efficacy, delivered lumen output, color temperature, distribution pattern, operational life, and CRI as shown on drawings.
- C. LED Luminaires shall be tested in accordance with LM-79 and LM-80 standards.

- D. LED drivers shall comply with NEMA 410 standards for inrush current, etc.
- E. Exterior, pole mounted LED Luminaires shall be provided with an easily-serviceable, UL recognized surge protection device that meets a minimum 10kA Category C Low operation (IECC C62.41.2-2002). Device shall be wired in front of light engine(s) and driver(s) and shall fail "open" such as to prevent fixture operation after a surge protection failure.
- F. LED Luminaires shall have a guarantee-warranty of at least five years unless specifically noted otherwise on contract documents.
- G. LED Luminaire assembly shall comply with ambient temperature requirements specified in General section above.

2.3 STEMS/PENDANTS

- A. Hangers shall be approved ball aligner type swivel, 30 degrees from vertical with swivel below canopy.
- B. Stems/Pendants shall be rigid or IMC conduit unless specified otherwise on plans. Proposed stem/pendant types shall be submitted for review prior to shipment of light fixtures from factory.
- C. Stems/Pendants shall be provided as required to prevent swaying of fixtures due to HVAC system airflow or other similar occurrences.
- D. Shall be painted the same color as the fixture trim unless noted otherwise.

2.4 MANUFACTURER

- A. Fixtures and stems shall be manufactured as shown in fixture schedule or approved equals.
- B. Drivers shall be as manufactured by Philips/Advance, GE, Lutron, Magnatec, Motorola, EldoLED or approved equal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF LIGHTING FIXTURES

- A. Support:
 - 1. Support of all lighting fixtures shall be responsibility of electrical contractor. All lighting fixture supports shall be installed in accordance with lighting fixture supplier's recommendations.
 - 2. Contractor shall coordinate installation requirements for all wall-mounted fixtures (especially for wall-mounted fixtures on uneven wall surfaces, etc.) as required to assure a level/flat mounting surface and level/plumb/secure finished installation. Contractor shall provide flat mounting plates or other mounting provisions where necessary. Any proposed mounting plates, etc. shall be submitted to and approved by project architect prior to ordering materials.
 - 3. Fixtures shall be supported independent of ceiling from structural members of building.
 - 4. Lay-in fixtures shall be supported by four (4) taut 12 gauge hanger wires connected from each corner of the fixture to the structure above so that fixture is supported independent of the ceiling.
 - 5. Other recessed light fixtures (including recessed downlights) shall be supported with two (2) taut 12 gauge hanger wires connected from opposing corners of the light fixture to the structure above so that fixture is supported independent of the ceiling.

6. Pendant mounted fixtures shall be directly supported from the structure above using a 9 gauge hanger wire or an approved alternate support without using the ceiling suspension system for direct support.
 7. Tandem fixtures may utilize common hanger wires.
 8. All lay-in fixtures shall be attached to ceiling grid by means of approved clips and in accordance with the N.E.C.
 9. Contractor shall submit typical hanging detail to Engineer before installing any fixtures.
- B. Connections:
1. All grid fixtures shall be wired by flex individually to junction and not wired fixture to fixture.
 2. All flex shall contain 3 conductors (3rd wire ground). Ground wire shall be securely grounded at each end. Other conductors shall be connected by approved connectors.
- C. Row-Mounted fixtures:
1. All stems on row-mounted fluorescent fixtures shall be installed as follows (except fixtures with slide grip hangers):
 - a. One stem shall be installed in the first fixture knockout from end of row (on the first and last fixture of the row).
 - b. One stem shall be installed between each two fixtures. Stem shall center joint where fixtures join and shall attach by use of "joining plates".
 2. All fixtures in continuous rows other than recessed grid type shall be connected by nipples with locknuts bushings.
- D. Coordination:
1. Contractor shall coordinate all dimensions & locations of light fixtures prior to rough-in to ensure proper fit and coordination with other trades.
 2. Contractor shall verify exact location of light fixture with Reflected Ceiling Plan. If there are any discrepancies, verify exact location with architect.
 3. Contractor shall verify exact ceiling types being installed and shall adjust fixture trim types accordingly (prior to submitting light fixture shop drawings).

END OF SECTION 265000

SECTION 270500 – AUXILIARY SYSTEM CABLES, 0-50V

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. Cables rated for 0V-50V application

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

- A. Unless specified otherwise, all cables within the scope of this specification section shall:

1. Be rated for exposed cable tray installation.
2. Be plenum rated.
3. Be UL-rated for the proposed application.
4. Be multi-conductor with overall outer sheath as required by the application. The insulation of each conductor within the overall multi-conductor cable shall be uniquely color-coded. Ground conductors (when provided) within the multi-conductor cable shall have green insulation. Conductors with green insulation shall not be used for conductors other than ground.
5. Utilize copper conductors.
6. Have wire gauge as required to limit voltage drop to acceptable limits determined by the system supplier and to meet all applicable code requirements.
7. Where installed underground, within slab-on-grade or in exterior locations, be rated for wet locations.
8. Where required for specific systems, meet the specific requirements (conductor quantity, wire gauge, insulation type, shielding, etc.) of the system supplier.

2.2 CLASS 1 CONTROL CABLING (120VAC CONTROL CIRCUITS, ETC.)

- A. In addition to above requirements, and unless specified otherwise, Class 1 control cabling shall:

1. Be rated for 600V.
2. Be industrial grade.
3. Have stranded conductors.
4. Have sunlight/oil-resistant PVC/Nylon insulation and jacket with ripcord.
5. Be manufactured by Belden, AlphaWire or General Cable.

2.3 CLASS 2 & 3 CONTROL CABLING (FED FROM CLASS 2 OR 3 POWER SUPPLIES)

- A. In addition to above requirements, and unless specified otherwise, Class 2 & 3 control cabling shall:

1. Be rated for 300V.
2. Be shielded if so recommended by the system supplier/integrator.
3. Have twisted conductors.
4. Have plenum-rated insulation/jacket with ripcord.
5. Be manufactured by AlphaWire, Belden, General Cable, Superior Essex or West Penn.

2.4 NETWORK CABLING

- A. Furnish and install all Ethernet, Fiber Optic and Backbone Copper Telephone cabling in accordance with all BICSI requirements and in accordance with other applicable specification sections.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL INSTALLATION

A. Routing:

1. All wires and cables shall be installed in conduit unless specifically noted otherwise. Where conduit is not otherwise required by contract documents, 0-50V Cabling located within concealed, accessible ceiling spaces (such as above lay-in ceilings) may be run without conduit if the following requirements are met:
 - a. Cabling is plenum-rated, multi-conductor.
 - b. Cabling is supported by cable tray or with J-hook supports on intervals not to exceed 5'-0" on center. Cabling shall be supported solely from the cable tray or j-hooks supported from the building structure, without using piping, ductwork, conduit or other items as supports.
 - c. Cabling is neatly formed, bundled and tied with plenum-rated Velcro straps on intervals not to exceed 30" on center.
 - d. Properly-sized conduit(s) are provided wherever cabling enters an inaccessible or exposed area (such as above gyp board ceilings, within walls or through walls).
 - e. Cabling is not a part of a Fire Alarm System, Smoke Control System, Emergency Generator Control System or other life-safety related system.
2. End bushings shall be provided on both ends of all raceway terminations.
3. No splices shall be pulled into conduit.
4. No cabling shall be pulled until conduit is cleaned of all foreign matter.

B. Penetrations:

1. All fire/smoke barrier penetrations shall be made in accordance with a U.L. listed assembly.
2. For cabling not installed in conduit:
 - a. Fire/smoke barrier penetrations shall be sealed utilizing an enclosed fire-rated pathway device (STI EZ Path or equal) containing a built-in fire sealing system sufficient to maintain the hourly fire rating of the barrier being penetrated. The self-contained sealing system shall automatically adjust to the installed cable loading and shall permit cables to be installed, removed or retrofitted without the need to remove or reinstall firestop materials. The pathway shall be UL Classified and tested to the requirements of applicable ASTM/UL1479 standards.
3. For cabling installed within conduit from endpoint to endpoint:
 - a. Fire/smoke barrier penetrations shall be sealed utilizing fire caulk or other equivalent firestop systems around perimeters of conduits per UL requirements.
4. For cabling installed within cable trays:
 - a. Fire/smoke barrier penetrations shall be sealed with one of the following methods:
 - 1) Continuous cable tray through the penetration, with a combination of large firestop pillows and small firestop pillows contained, supported and secured

(to prevent unauthorized removal) on both sides by aluminum wire mesh and firestop putty. Firestop pillows shall be STI Series SSB or equal and Firestop putty shall be STI Spec Seal or equal.

- 2) Cable tray broken at the penetration, with fire/smoke barrier penetrations sealed utilizing an enclosed fire-rated pathway device (STI EZ Path or equal) containing a built-in fire sealing system sufficient to maintain the hourly fire rating of the barrier being penetrated. The self-contained sealing system shall automatically adjust to the installed cable loading and shall permit cables to be installed, removed or retrofitted without the need to remove or reinstall firestop materials. The pathway shall be UL Classified and tested to the requirements of applicable ASTM/UL1479 standards.

C. Excess Cabling:

1. Excess cabling shall be neatly coiled within all junction boxes, pullboxes, wireways, etc. and at all terminations as required to allow future re-termination of cabling.

D. Terminations:

1. All conductors/cabling (including spare conductors) shall be properly terminated unless specifically directed otherwise. See below for general termination hardware requirements.
2. Cabling shall be neatly formed, bundled and tied at all terminations.

3.2 SPLICES/CONNECTIONS/TERMINATIONS:

A. Network Cabling:

1. Network and fiber optic cabling shall be continuous from endpoint to endpoint and shall not be spliced unless specifically noted otherwise.

B. Control Cabling:

1. Connections shall be made with T & B Sta-Kon wire joints EPT66M, complete with insulating caps. To be installed with WT161 Tool or C nest of WT11M Tool, Ideal Super - Nuts (not wire nuts), Ideal Wing Nuts, or Buchanan Elec. Products B Cap or Series 2000 Pressure connectors complete with nylon snap on insulators to be installed with C24 pressure tool.

C. Shielded cabling:

1. Unless directed otherwise by the system supplier, 0-50V cable shielding shall be grounded at the PLC/control panel end only (not at the field device end) with a termination kit as directed by the PLC/control panel supplier.
2. Shielded cabling shall be continuous from endpoint to endpoint and shall not be spliced without prior written approval from the Engineer.

3.3 LABELING

- A. Refer to Specification Section 260553 for all labeling requirements.

END OF SECTION 270500

SECTION 271000 – STRUCTURED CABLING SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE:

- A. This document describes the products and execution requirements relating to furnishing and installing Telecommunications Cabling. Backbone and Horizontal cabling comprised of copper and fiber cabling, and support systems are covered under this document.
- B. All cables and related terminations, support and grounding hardware shall be furnished, installed, wired, tested, labeled, and documented by the structured cabling contractor as detailed in this document.
- C. Product specifications, general design considerations, and installation guidelines are provided in this document. Quantities of telecommunications outlets, typical installation details, cable routing and outlet types are indicated on the plans. If the bid documents are in conflict, this specification shall take precedence.
- D. Refer to Specification Section 260553 (Electrical Identification) for additional identification requirements.
- E. Refer to Specification Section 270500 (Auxiliary System Cables, 0-50V) for additional material and installation requirements.

1.2 REGULATORY REFERENCES:

- A. All work and materials shall conform in every detail to the rules and requirements of the National Fire Protection Association, the National Electrical Code, local ordinances and present manufacturing standards.
- B. All materials shall be UL Listed and shall be marked as such. If UL has no published standards for a particular item, then other national independent testing standards shall apply and such items shall bear those labels. Where UL has an applicable system listing and label, the entire system shall be so labeled.
- C. All modular jacks, patch cords, consolidation point, and patch cords shall be ETL Verified (not just tested) to be category 6a component and channel compliant.
- D. The cabling system described in this specification is derived from the recommendations made in recognized telecommunications industry standards. The following documents are incorporated by reference:
 - 1. ANSI/TIA/EIA - 568-B.1, Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard Part 1: General Requirements, April, 2001
 - 2. ANSI/TIA/EIA - 568-B.2, Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard Part 2: Balanced Twisted-Pair Cabling Components, April, 2001
 - 3. ANSI/TIA/EIA - 568-B.2-1, Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard Part 2: Balanced Twisted Pair Cabling Components, Addendum 1 – Transmission Performance Specifications for 4-pair 100 Ω Category 6 Cabling
 - 4. ANSI/TIA/EIA - 568-B.3, Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard Part 3: Optical Fiber Cabling Components, March, 2000
 - 5. ANSI/TIA/EIA – 569-E, Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces, 2019
 - 6. ANSI/TIA/EIA – 606-A, Administration Standard for Telecommunications Infrastructure of Commercial Buildings, February, 2002

7. ANSI/TIA/EIA – 607-AJ, Commercial Building Grounding and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications, August 1994
8. ANSI/ TIA/EIA – 758, Customer-Owned Outside Plant Telecommunications Cabling Standard, April 1999
9. BICSI - TDMM, Building Industries Consulting Services International, Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual (TDMM) 10TH edition.
10. National Fire Protection Agency (NFPA – 70), National Electrical Code (NEC) –2002
11. ANSI/TIA/EIA – 45-B, Test Procedures for Fiber Optic Connections.
12. ANSI/TIA/EIA – 526-14, Power Test for Fiber Runs.
13. FCC 47 CFR 68
14. NEMA 250
15. NEC Articles 770 and 800
16. ADA, Americans with Disabilities Act

- E. If this document and any of the documents listed above are in conflict, then the more stringent requirement shall apply. All documents listed are believed to be the most current releases of the documents. The Contractor has the responsibility to determine and adhere to the most recent release.
- F. This document does not replace any code, either partially or wholly. The contractor must be aware of local codes that may impact this project. All local State and federal codes are to be followed.

1.3 APPROVED CONTRACTOR:

- A. The Structured Cabling Contractor must meet the following requirements:
1. Contractor must have a certified RCDD on staff. The project manager for this project shall have an RCDD certification, and RCDD shall be responsible for reviewing all aspects of the design, submittals and installation of all products.
 2. All required submittal information shall be stamped by the RCDD.
 3. Contractor must have a minimum of 3 years experience with projects of similar size and scope to this project.
 4. The company performing the work must have been in business for a minimum of 3 years.
 5. The company must have an office within 75 miles of the job site.
- B. The Structured cabling contractor is responsible for workmanship and installation practices in accordance with the requirements of the standards described in these specifications and manufacturer's requirements.

1.4 WORK INCLUDED:

- A. The work included under this specification consists of furnishing all labor, equipment, materials, and supplies and performing all operations necessary to complete the installation of this structured cabling system in compliance with the specifications and drawings. The structured cabling contractor will provide and install all of the required material to form a complete system whether specifically addressed in the technical specifications or not.
- B. The work shall include, but not be limited to the following:
1. Furnish and install a complete telecommunications wiring infrastructure.
 2. Furnish, install, and terminate all UTP and Optical Fiber cable
 3. Furnish and install all wall plates, jacks, patch panels, and patch cords at equipment racks and at work outlets (unless shown otherwise on plans).
 4. Furnish and install all required cabinets and/or racks as required and as indicated.
 5. Furnish any other material required to form a complete system.

6. Perform channel testing (100% of horizontal and/or backbone links/channels) and certification of all components.
7. Furnish test results of all cabling to the owner on disk and paper format, listed by each closet, then by workstation ID.
8. Provide owner test results and documentation. (Testing documentation and As-built drawings)

1.5 SUBMITTALS:

- A. Within thirty (30) days of notice to proceed the structured cabling contractor shall submit the following items:
 1. Submit copies of the certification of the company and names of staff that will be performing the installation and termination of the installation to provide proof of compliance of this spec.
 2. Submit proof from manufacturer of contractor's good standing in manufacturer's certification program.
 3. Submit copy of contractor's RCDD certification.
 4. Submit listing of five (5) projects of similar size and scope to this project that have been completed within the last five years. Include in this submittal owner's contact information for each project.
 5. Submit letter from the manufacturer stating that the manufacturer will provide a twenty-five year (25) warranty in accordance with the requirements paragraph 1.03 (B) of these specifications.
 6. Submit appropriate cut sheets and samples for all products, hardware and cabling.
 7. Submit 1/8" = 1'-0" drawings of floor plans indicating all work outlets and the labeling designation for each jack.
 8. Submit 1/2" = 1'-0" drawings of each MDF and each IDF showing all racks, patch panels, 110 blocks, etc.
- B. Work shall not proceed without the engineer's approval of the submitted items.
- C. The structured cabling contractor shall receive approval from the engineer on all substitutions of material. No substituted materials shall be installed except by written approval from the engineer.

1.6 DRAWINGS:

- A. It shall be understood that the electrical details and drawings provided with the specification package are diagrammatic. They are included to show the intent of the specifications and to aid the structured cabling contractor in bidding the job. The structured cabling contractor shall make allowance in the bid proposal to cover whatever work is required to comply with the intent of the plans and specifications.
- B. The structured cabling contractor shall verify all dimensions at the site and be responsible for their accuracy.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIVALENT PRODUCTS:

- A. Due to the nature and type of communications all products, including but not limited to faceplates, jacks, patch panels, racks, 110 blocks, and patch cords, for the purpose of this document, shall be manufactured by Hubbell, Ortronix, Panduit, Amp or Systimax. See below for acceptable cable manufacturers.

2.2 WORK AREA OUTLETS:

- A. Work area cables shall each be terminated at their designated work area location in the connector types described in the subsections below. Included are modular telecommunication jacks. These connector assemblies shall snap into a faceplate.
- B. The Telecommunications Outlet Assembly shall accommodate:
 - 1. A minimum of two (2) modular jacks
 - 2. Additional accommodations for specific locations as noted in the plans for optical fiber and/or additional copper cables as necessary
 - 3. A blank filler will be installed when extra ports are not used.
 - 4. A dust cap shall be provided on all modular jacks with the circuit number on the identifier strip.
 - 5. Multiple jacks will be placed as documented on the plans.
 - 6. The same orientation and positioning of jacks and connectors shall be utilized throughout the installation. Prior to installation, the structured cabling contractor shall submit the proposed configuration for each outlet assembly for review by the architect.
 - 7. The modular jack shall incorporate printed label strip on the dust cap module for identifying the outlet. Printed labels shall be permanent and compliant with ANSI/TIA/EIA-606-A standard specifications. Labels shall be printed using a printer such as a Brady hand held printer. Hand printed labels shall not be accepted.
- C. Faceplates: The faceplates shall:
 - 1. be UL listed and CSA certified.
 - 2. be constructed of stainless steel (except where noted otherwise). All faceplate colors/materials in public areas shall be approved by the architect. In all cases the material and color of the faceplate shall match the adjacent electrical faceplate.
 - 3. (where plastic faceplates are specifically allowed by the architect/engineer) shall match the faceplate color used for other utilities in the building or match the color of the raceway if installed in surface raceway.
 - 4. be compliant with the above requirements along with the following when incorporating optical fiber:
 - a. be a low profile assembly,
 - b. incorporate a mechanism for storage of cable and fiber slack needed for termination,
 - c. position the fiber optic couplings to face downward or at a downward angle to prevent contamination and,
 - d. incorporate a shroud that protects the optical couplings from impact damage.
 - 5. be available as single-gang or dual-gang.
 - 6. possess recessed designation windows to facilitate labeling and identification.
 - 7. shall include a clear plastic cover to protect labels in the designation window.
 - 8. have mounting screws located under recessed designation windows.
 - 9. comply with ANSI/TIA/EIA-606-A work area labeling standard.
 - 10. allow for the UTP modules to be inverted in place for termination purposes.
 - 11. be manufactured by an ISO 9001 registered company.
- D. Voice / Data Jacks
 - 1. Voice/Data jacks shall be 8-position modular jacks and shall be Category 6 performance as defined by the references in this document including ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B.2-1. All pair combinations must be considered, with the worst-case measurement being the basis for compliance. Modular jack performance shall be third-party verified by a nationally recognized independent testing laboratory including, but not limited to, ETL.

2. The wiring scheme shall be T568A or T568B as directed by the owner.
3. The modular jack shall use dual reactance modular contact array.
4. The modular jack shall have low emission IDC contacts.
5. The modular jack shall use standard termination practice using 110 impact tool
6. The modular jack shall be backwards compatible to Category 3 and 5.
7. The modular jack shall be center tuned to category 6a test specifications.
8. Dust cover shall be used on each termination.

2.3 110 COPPER TERMINATION BLOCK:

- A. The voice cross connect shall be a passive connection between the horizontal termination blocks and the backbone termination blocks. The wall mount frames shall be field terminated kits including all blocks, connecting blocks, and designation strips. Management rings shall be mounted between vertical columns of blocks to provide management of cross-connect wire. Backbone and horizontal blocks shall use 4-pair connecting blocks. Blocks shall be oriented so that backbone terminations are located on the left and horizontal frames are located on the right of the termination field when facing the frame assembly.
- B. 110 Block Kits shall
 1. include both the wiring block and connecting block in a 50, 100 and 300 pair footprint as required
 2. be manufactured using fire retardant molded plastic.
 3. include 4-pair 110C connecting blocks for field termination.
 4. support termination of 22-24 AWG solid conductor
 5. wiring blocks shall contain back openings for the feed through of cable
 6. meet category 6a component compliance and be verified by a third-party nationally recognized independent testing laboratory
 7. have color-coded tips on the wiring block and color coding on the connector blocks for installation identification.
 8. shall use standard termination practice requiring a single conductor 110 impact tool
 9. Termination hardware shall maintain the paired construction of the cable to facilitate minimum untwisting of the wires.
 10. be backwards compatible to category 3 and 5.
 11. be labeled in compliance with ANSI/TIA/EIA-606-A labeling specifications using permanent labels and label printer.
 12. be manufactured by an ISO 9001 registered company.

2.4 MODULAR PATCH PANELS:

- A. The Modular Patch Panels shall
 1. be modular design.
 2. meet category 6a component compliance and be verified by a third-party nationally recognized independent testing laboratory
 3. use low emission IDC contacts
 4. use dual reactance technology to enhance the signal-to-noise ratio
 5. require standard termination practices using a 110 impact tool
 6. use a single piece IDC housing designed to accept larger Category 6 conductors
 7. support both T568B and T568A wiring
 8. include easy to follow wiring labels
 9. include label fields
 10. allow for the use of icons
 11. include full length metal rear cable management
 12. be available in standard or high density
 13. be backward compatible to category 3 and 5.
 14. be center tuned to category 6a test specifications

15. be sized to accommodate number of data or data and phone cables (where phone cables are terminated on patch panels in lieu of 110 blocks) served by each equipment room plus 30% spare capacity.
16. be separated by horizontal cable management sections.

2.5 RACKS:

- A. The equipment rack shall provide vertical cable management and support for the patch cords at the front of the rack and wire management, support, and protection for the horizontal cables inside the legs of the rack.
- B. Waterfall cable management shall be provided at the top of the rack for patch cords and for horizontal cables entering the rack channels for protection and to maintain proper bend radius and cable support. Double-sided wire management shall also be mounted above each patch panel and/or piece of equipment on the rack. The rack shall include mounting brackets for cable tray ladder rack to mount to the top of the rack. Velcro cable ties shall be provided inside the rack channels to support the horizontal cable. Rack shall be black in color to match the patch panels and cable management.
- C. Free-Standing Racks shall:
 1. have a minimum capacity of 45U
 2. have the necessary strain relief, bend radius and cable routing for proper installation of high performance cross connect products, meeting all specifications of ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B.
 3. have top cable trough with waterfall and built in patch/horizontal cable distribution separator.
 4. have horizontal front and rear cable management above, below and between each 48-port patch panel.
 5. have a rack-mounted power strip.
 6. have EIA hole pattern on front and rear.
 7. be available with a 6.0" channel depth.
 8. be available with hook and loop straps for securing bulk cables inside the vertical U-channels.
 9. assemble as 19" (483 mm) or 23" (584 mm) with no additional hardware.
 10. be available with three styles of vertical patch cord management: interbay with latches, cable management rings, or fingerduct with covers.
 11. provide floor and ceiling access for cable management and distribution.
 12. provide pre-drilled base for floor attachment of rack.
 13. be available in standard color of black.
 14. be manufactured by an ISO 9001 registered company.
- D. Wall-Mounted Racks shall:
 1. provide the necessary strain relief, bend radius and cable routing for proper installation of high performance cross connect products, meeting all specifications of ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B.
 2. have top cable trough with waterfall and built in patch/horizontal cable distribution separator.
 3. have horizontal front and rear cable management above, below and between each 48-port patch panel.
 4. have a rack-mounted power strip.
 5. have EIA hole pattern on front and rear.
 6. be available with a 6.0" channel depth.
 7. be available with hook and loop straps for securing bulk cables inside the vertical U-channels.
 8. assemble as 19" (483 mm) or 23" (584 mm) with no additional hardware.

9. provide usable depth as required for standard network ethernet switch and other equipment
10. be available with three styles of vertical patch cord management: interbay with latches, cable management rings, or fingerduct with covers.
11. provide floor and ceiling access for cable management and distribution.
12. provide pre-drilled base for wall attachment of rack.
13. be available in standard color of black.
14. be manufactured by an ISO 9001 registered company.
15. be constructed to swing-out from wall (for rear access) via heavy-duty hinged corner and configurable for either left or right opening.

2.6 HORIZONTAL DISTRIBUTION CABLE:

A. Horizontal Distribution Cabling shall meet the following requirements:

1. Shall be 100 Ohm Enhanced Category 6a Unshielded Twisted Pair (UTP) Cable.
2. Physical Characteristics:
 - a. Unless directed otherwise by owner (contractor shall verify with owner), Cat6a cable coloring shall be based on system type as follows, unless specifically approved otherwise:
 - 1) Data (or IP Voice): Blue
 - 2) Analog Voice: Grey
 - 3) Lighting Control System: White
 - 4) Fire Alarm or other Life-Safety System: Red
 - 5) CCTV Surveillance Cameras: Yellow
 - 6) Other: As directed by owner
 - b. Shall be plenum-rated.
 - c. Shall meet applicable requirements of ANSI/ICEA S-80-576.
 - d. The diameter of the insulated conductor shall be .023 in. maximum.
 - e. Shall consist of (4) 22-26 AWG twisted pairs.
 - f. The overall diameter of the cable shall be no larger than 0.240 inches.
 - g. The ultimate breaking strength measured in accordance with ASTM D 4565 shall be 400 N minimum.
 - h. Cable shall withstand a bend radius of 1 inch at -20 degrees Celsius without jacket or insulation cracking.
 - i. Cable shall be third party verified to meet ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B.2-1.
 - j. Where installed underground, within slab-on-grade or in exterior locations, be gel-filled and rated for wet locations.
3. Transmission Characteristics:
 - a. DC resistance of any conductor shall not exceed 9.38 Ohms per 100m max. at 20° C. Measured in accordance with ASTM D 4566.
 - b. The mutual capacitance of any pair at 1 kHz for 100m of cable shall not exceed 4.4 nF nominal.
 - c. DC resistance unbalance any two conductors of any pair shall not exceed 5% when measured at or corrected to 20° C in accordance with ASTM D 4566.
 - d. Structural return loss swept measurement for 100m or longer shall meet or exceed Category 6 requirements.
4. Shall be manufactured by Amp NetConnect, Berk-Tek, Leviton, General Cable, Mohawk or Superior Essex.

2.7 BACKBONE - FIBER:

A. Backbone Fiber Optic Cabling shall meet the following requirements:

1. All optical fiber shall be Indoor/Outdoor, Tight-Buffered, All-Dielectric, Plenum rated (unless specified otherwise on plans) with Enhanced Multimode OM4-rated 50/125 Optical Fibers.
2. Each Multimode Fiber shall:
 - a. Be graded-index optical fiber wave-guide with nominal 50/125µm-core/cladding diameter.
 - b. Comply with ANSI/EIA/TIA-492AAAC-A
 - c. Have attenuation measured in accordance with ANSI/EIA/TIA-455-46, 53 or 61.
 - d. Have information transmission capacity measured in accordance with ANSI/EIA/TIA-455-51 or 30.
 - e. Have measurements performed at 23 degrees C +/- 5 degrees.
 - f. Have Maximum attenuation dB/Km @ 850/1300 nm: 3.5/1.0
 - g. Have bandwidth $\geq$ 4700 MHz-km @ 850nm. (EMB)
 - h. Have bandwidth $\geq$ 500 MHz-km @ 1300nm.
 - i. Be laser optimized and guarantee a 1 Gb/s distance of 1000 meters @ 850nm and 10 Gb/s at 600 meters @ 850nm.
 - j. Terminate on fiber patch panel using SC Type fiber connectors.
3. Each indoor/outdoor fiber optic cable shall:
 - a. Be suitable for use in both outdoor and indoor applications without the use of a transition at the building entrance.
 - b. Be suitable for use in risers, plenums and horizontal applications.
 - c. Have a dry water blocking system for cable.
 - d. Have a fiber strand count of 12 (unless shown otherwise on plans).
 - e. Have a nominal 2.21 mm sub-unit diameter.
 - f. Have and be marked with an UL-OFNP Flame Rating (unless engineer specified otherwise on plans).
 - g. Comply with Bellcore GR-409 and GR20
 - h. Be independently verified to comply with ICEA S-104-696
 - i. Have strength members of FGE/Aramid yarn.
 - j. Be suitable for underground or above ground conduits.
 - k. (Where applicable) Have Tight Buffered fibers color coded in accordance with EIA / TIA 598 with an overall black jacket.
 - l. Be suitable for operation between -40° to +70° C
 - m. Be UV resistant
 - n. Be of an all dielectric design
4. Shall be manufactured by Berk-Tek, Corning, General Cable or Superior Essex.

2.8 BACKBONE - COPPER:

A. Backbone Copper Cabling shall meet the following requirements:

1. Shall be Cat 3 rated.
2. Shall be RDUP PE-39 rated.
3. Where installed underground or in wet locations, shall include fully-flooded waterblocking compound to provide wet-location rating of cable.
4. Size of the backbone cables shall be determined by multiplying the number of horizontal voice cables to be terminated in each IDF by 200% and rounding up to the nearest 50 pair group. For Example if 94 horizontal voice cables are to be terminated in IDF1, install $94 \times 1 \text{ pr} \times 200\% = 188 \text{ pr}$ rounded up to nearest 50 pr = 200 pr cable to IDF1.
5. Shall be manufactured by Berk-Tek, Corning, General Cable, Mohawk or Superior Essex.

2.9 COPPER CABLE SURGE PROTECTION DEVICES:

- A. All copper circuits routed between or outside of buildings shall be provided with a surge protection device at each end. The surge protection device shall be labeled as meeting the requirements of the latest edition of UL 96A (exact requirements shall be coordinated with the lightning protection system supplier, where applicable).
- B. The surge protection device shall be connected with a #6 AWG copper bonding conductor between the protector ground lug and the TC ground point.

2.10 PATCH CORDS:

- A. The structured cabling contractor shall provide factory terminated and tested UTP and optical fiber patch cords and equipment cords for the complete cabling system. Patch cords shall be provided by the structured cabling contractor to connect patch panels to owner furnished electronics. The UTP patch cables shall meet the requirements of ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B.2 and ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B.2-1 for patch cord testing. Provide one set of optical fiber patch cables per fiber run that terminates on fiber patch panel and provide one category 6a patch cord for each category 6a work outlet that terminates on patch panel.
- B. Copper (UTP) patch cords shall:
 - 1. Be furnished to connect each patch panel jack to owner supplied electronics.
 - 2. Be furnished for each work outlet jack.
 - 3. Be a Category 6 patch cord manufactured by Panduit, Amp or Systimax.
 - 4. Use 8 position connector with impedance matched contacts and designed using dual reactance.
 - 5. Be constructed of 100 ohm, 4 pair, 24 AWG, stranded conductor, unshielded twisted pair copper per the requirements of the ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B.2 and ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B.2-1 standard.
 - 6. Meet TIA category 6a component specifications in ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B.2-1 100% factory tested to meet category 6a performance and ETL or any other nationally recognized 3rd party verification
 - 7. Be capable of universal T568A or T568B wiring schemes.
 - 8. Have modular connector that shall maintain the paired construction of the cable to facilitate minimum untwisting of the wires.
 - 9. Have a performance marking indelibly labeled on the jacket (by the manufacturer).
 - 10. Have the ability to accept color-coded labels and icons to comply with ANSI/TIA/EIA-606-A labeling specifications.
 - 11. Have "snagless" protection for the locking tab to prevent snagging and to protect locking tab in tight locations and provide bend relief
 - 12. Be available in three standard colors
 - 13. Be available in 3 foot, 5 foot, 7 foot, 10 foot, and 14 foot standard lengths
 - 14. Be backwards compatible to Category 3, 5 and 5e
- C. Fiber Optic patch cords shall:
 - 1. Be furnished in the quantity of two (2) per IDF in each IDF and two (2) per IDF in each MDF.
 - 2. Be manufactured by Panduit, Amp or Systimax.
 - 3. Be multimode OM4 type.
 - 4. Have connector type as directed by owner.
 - 5. Have a performance marking indelibly labeled on the jacket (by the manufacturer).
 - 6. Have the ability to accept color-coded labels and icons to comply with ANSI/TIA/EIA-606-A labeling specifications.
 - 7. Be available in three standard colors
 - 8. Be available in 3 foot, 5 foot, 7 foot, 10 foot, and 14 foot standard lengths

2.11 GROUNDING AND BONDING:

- A. The facility shall be equipped with a Telecommunications Bonding Backbone (TBB). This backbone shall be used to ground all telecommunications cable shields, equipment, racks, cabinets, raceways, and other associated hardware that has the potential to act as a current carrying conductor. The TBB shall be installed independent of the building's electrical and building ground and shall be designed in accordance with the recommendations contained in the ANSI/TIA/EIA-607 Telecommunications Bonding and Grounding Standard.
- B. The main entrance facility/equipment room in each building shall be equipped with a telecommunications main grounding bus bar (TMGB). Each telecommunications room shall be provided with a telecommunications ground bus bar (TGB). Each grounding bus shall be 12"W x 4"H x 1/4"THK and be mounted to the backboard with porcelain isolators.
- C. All wires used for telecommunications grounding purposes shall be identified with a green insulation. Non-insulated wires shall be identified at each termination point with a wrap of green tape. All cables and bus bars shall be identified and labeled in accordance with the System Documentation Section of this specification.

2.12 FIRESTOP:

- A. A firestop system is comprised of the item or items penetrating the fire rated structure, the opening in the structure and the materials and assembly of the materials used to seal the penetrated structure. Firestop systems comprise an effective block for fire, smoke, heat, vapor and pressurized water stream.
- B. All penetrations through fire-rated building structures (walls and floors) shall be sealed with an UL listed firestop system. This requirement applies to through penetrations (complete penetration) and membrane penetrations (through one side of a hollow fire rated structure). Any penetrating item i.e., riser slots and sleeves, cables, conduit, cable tray, and raceways, etc. shall be properly firestopped.

2.13 INNERDUCT:

- A. Innerduct, shall be:
 - 1. Non-metallic, corrugated with pre-installed pull tape.
 - 2. Plenum-rated, where installed within buildings.
 - 3. UL listed for the application.
 - 4. Size as required by the application.
 - 5. Orange in color in concealed areas or within telecommunications or electrical rooms. Color shall be custom as selected by owner in exposed areas (such as within cable trays overhead in areas without ceilings outside telecommunications/electrical rooms).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PRE-INSTALLATION SITE SURVEY:

- A. Prior to start of work, meet at the project site with the owner's representative and representatives of trades performing related work to coordinate efforts. Review areas of potential interference and resolve conflicts before proceeding with the work. Facilitation with the General Contractor will be necessary to plan the crucial schedule completions of the equipment rooms and telecommunication closets.

- B. Examine areas and conditions under which the system is to be installed. Do not proceed with work until satisfactory conditions have been achieved.

3.2 WORK AREA OUTLETS:

- A. Cables shall be coiled in the in-wall or surface-mount boxes if adequate space is present to house the cable coil without exceeding the manufacturer's bend radius. In hollow wall installations where box-eliminators are used, excess wire can be stored in the wall. No more than 12" of UTP and 36" of fiber slack shall be stored in an in-wall box, modular furniture raceway, or insulated walls. Excess slack shall be loosely coiled and stored in the ceiling above each drop location when there is not enough space present in the outlet box to store slack cable.
- B. Cables shall be dressed and terminated in accordance with the recommendations made in the ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B.1 document, manufacturer's recommendations and best industry practices.
- C. Pair untwist at the termination shall not exceed 12 mm (one-half inch).
- D. Bend radius of the horizontal cable shall not be less than 4 times the outside diameter of the cable.
- E. The cable jacket shall be maintained to within 25mm (one inch) of the termination point.
- F. Data jacks, unless otherwise noted in drawings, shall be located in the bottom position(s) of each faceplate. Data jacks in horizontally oriented faceplates shall occupy the right-most position(s).
- G. Voice jacks shall occupy the top position(s) on the faceplate. Voice jacks in horizontally oriented faceplates shall occupy the left-most position(s).

3.3 HORIZONTAL DISTRIBUTION CABLE INSTALLATION:

- A. All horizontal voice and data cabling shall be terminated on modular patch panels except for horizontal voice cables serving life safety related functions (fire alarm systems, security systems, elevator communications, etc.). All horizontal voice cabling serving life safety related functions shall be terminated on 110 blocks.
- B. The voice and data cables shall be installed in separate patch panels.
- C. All wiring above ceilings shall be installed in cable tray or open top cable hangers or in provided conduit.
- D. Cable above accessible ceilings shall be supported 60" on center from cable support attached to building structure.
- E. Do not untwist cable pairs more than 0.5 in. when terminating.
- F. The Contractor shall be responsible for replacing all cables that do not pass Category 6 requirements for data and 5e for the voice applications.
- G. Maximum horizontal cable length shall be 90 meters.
- H. Cable shall have no physical defects such as cuts, tears or bulges in the outer jacket. Cables with defects shall be replaced.
- I. Install cable in neat and workmanlike manner. Neatly bundle and tie all cable in closets. Leave sufficient cable for 90° sweeps at all vertical drops.

- J. Do not install Category 6 cable with more than 110N (25 lbs) pull force, as specified in ANSI/TIA/EIA and BICSI TDDM practices. Utilize appropriate cable lubricant in sufficient quantity to reduce pulling friction to acceptable levels on long pulls inside conduit, pulls of multiple cables into a single small bore conduit, on conduit runs greater than 100 lineal feet with bends of opposing directions, and in conduit runs that exceed 180 degrees of accumulated bends. Use of tensile rated cords (i.e. fishing line) should be used for difficult or questionable pulls - to judge to go/no-go condition of the conduit and pulling setup.
- K. Cables jackets that are chaffed or burned exposing internal conductor insulation or have any bare copper ("shiners") shall be replaced.
- L. Test, label and document as called for in contract documents.
- M. Firestop all openings where cable is installed through a fire barrier.

3.4 HORIZONTAL CROSS CONNECT INSTALLATION:

- A. Cables shall be dressed and terminated in accordance with the recommendations made in the ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B standard, manufacturer's recommendations and best industry practices.
- B. Pair untwist at the termination shall not exceed 13 mm (0.5 inch).
- C. Bend radius of the cable in the termination area shall not exceed 4 times the outside diameter of the cable.
- D. Cables shall be neatly bundled and dressed to their respective panels or blocks. Each panel or block shall be fed by an individual bundle separated and dressed back to the point of cable entrance into the rack or frame.
- E. The cable jacket shall be maintained as close as possible to the termination point.
- F. Each cable shall be clearly labeled on the cable jacket behind the patch panel at a location that can be viewed without removing the bundle support ties. Cables labeled within the bundle, where the label is obscured from view shall not be acceptable.

3.5 OPTICAL FIBER TERMINATION HARDWARE:

- A. Fiber slack shall be neatly coiled within the fiber splice tray or enclosure. No slack loops shall be allowed external to the fiber panel.
- B. Each cable shall be individually attached to the respective splice enclosure by mechanical means. The cables strength member shall be securely attached the cable strain relief bracket in the enclosure.
- C. Each fiber bundle shall be stripped upon entering the splice tray and the individual fibers routed in the splice tray.
- D. Each cable shall be clearly labeled at the entrance to the splice enclosure. Cables labeled within the bundle shall not be acceptable.
- E. A maximum of 12 strands of fiber shall be spliced in each tray
- F. All spare strands shall be installed into spare splice trays.

3.6 BACKBONE CABLE INSTALLATION:

- A. Raceways:

1. All backbone cables shall be installed inside innerducts (see specification above) within conduits meeting specification requirements unless specifically noted otherwise.
2. Backbone cables shall be installed separately (in separate innerducts/conduits) from horizontal distribution cables.
3. A pull cord (nylon; 1/8" minimum) shall be co-installed with all cable installed in any conduit.
4. Where backbone cables and distribution cables are specifically specified to be installed in a cable tray or wireway, backbone cables shall be installed first, within innerducts meeting specifications above, bundled separately from the horizontal distribution cables.

B. Support:

1. Within Telecommunications Rooms or at Telecommunications Backboards, all backbone cables shall be securely fastened to the backboards on the walls.
2. Backbone cables spanning more than three floors shall be securely attached at the top of the cable run with a wire mesh grip and on alternating floors or as required by local codes.
3. Vertical runs of cable shall be supported to messenger strand, cable ladder, or other method to provide proper support for the weight of the cable.
4. Large bundles of cables and/or heavy cables shall be attached using metal clamps and/or metal banding to support the cables.

3.7 COPPER TERMINATION HARDWARE:

- A. Cables shall be dressed and terminated in accordance with the recommendations made in the ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-A/B standard, manufacturer's recommendations and best industry practice.
- B. Pair untwist at the termination shall not exceed 12 mm (one-half inch).
- C. Bend radius of the cable in the termination area shall not exceed 4 times the outside diameter of the cable.
- D. Cables shall be neatly bundled and dressed to their respective panels or blocks. Each panel or block shall be fed by an individual bundle separated and dressed back to the point of cable entrance into the rack or frame.
- E. The cable jacket shall be maintained to within 25 mm (one inch) of the termination point.
- F. Each cable shall be clearly labeled on the cable jacket behind the patch panel at a location that can be viewed without removing the bundle support ties. Cables labeled within the bundle, where the label is obscured from view shall not be acceptable.

3.8 RACKS:

- A. Floor-mount racks shall be used unless specifically shown otherwise.
- B. Floor-mount racks shall be securely attached to the concrete floor using a minimum 3/8" hardware or as required by local codes.
- C. Racks shall be placed with a minimum of 36 inches clearance from the walls on all sides of the rack. When mounted in a row, maintain a minimum of 36 inches from the wall behind and in front of the row of racks and from the wall at each end of the row.
- D. All racks shall be grounded to the telecommunications ground bus bar in accordance with Section 3.11 of this document.
- E. Rack mount screws not used for installing patch panels and other hardware shall be bagged and left with the rack upon completion of the installation.

- F. Wall mounted termination block fields shall be mounted on 4' x 8' x .75" void free plywood. The plywood shall be mounted vertically 12" above the finished floor. The plywood shall be painted with two coats of grey fire retardant paint.
- G. Wall mounted termination block fields shall be installed with the lowest edge of the mounting frame 18" from the finished floor.
- H. Rack-mounted patch panels (and the associated horizontal cable management sections) furnished within the contract shall occupy no more than 40% of the available space within the associated racks (also furnished within the contract) unless specifically shown or specified otherwise. A minimum of 60% of available rack space shall be reserved for owner-furnished equipment. Where the number of patch panels and horizontal cable management sections would exceed 40% of the available rack space, an additional rack shall be installed.

3.9 EQUIPMENT TRAY FOR TELECOMMUNICATION ROOMS:

- A. All equipment trays shall be 18" in width.
- B. Furnish and install 18" equipment tray from each floor mount rack/server cabinet to wall. Furnish 18" equipment tray around wall as required to support cables. A minimum of two (2) walls shall be completely covered by equipment tray.
- C. Furnish and install cable retaining posts on each side of tray every 4 feet as required to supports cables.

3.10 FIRESTOP SYSTEM:

- A. All firestop systems shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and shall be completely installed and available for inspection by the local inspection authorities prior to cable system acceptance.

3.11 GROUNDING SYSTEM:

- A. The TMGB in the MDF shall be connected to the building electrical entrance grounding facility with a #6 AWG ground. Each TBB in each IDF shall be connected to a ground bus in the MDF with #4/0 AWG minimum ground. The intent of this system is to provide a grounding system that is equal in potential to the building electrical ground system. Therefore, ground loop current potential is minimized between telecommunications equipment and the electrical system to which it is attached.
- B. All racks, metallic backboards, cable sheaths, metallic strength members, splice cases, cable trays, etc. entering or residing in the TR or ER shall be grounded to the respective TGB or TMGB using a minimum #6 AWG stranded copper bonding conductor and compression connectors.
- C. The TBB shall adhere to the recommendations of the ANSI/TIA/EIA-607 standard, and shall be installed in accordance with best industry practice.
- D. Installation and termination of the main bonding conductor to the building service entrance ground shall be performed by the electrical contractor.

3.12 IDENTIFICATION AND LABELING:

- A. The contractor shall develop and submit for approval a labeling system for the cable installation. The Owner will negotiate an appropriate labeling scheme with the successful structured cabling contractor. At a minimum, the labeling system shall clearly identify all

components of the system: racks, cables, panels and outlets. The labeling system shall designate the cables origin and destination and a unique identifier for the cable within the system. Racks and patch panels shall be labeled to identify the location within the cable system infrastructure. All labeling information shall be recorded on the as-built drawings and all test documents shall reflect the appropriate labeling scheme. Labeling shall follow the guidelines of ANSI/TIA/EIA-606-A.

- B. All label printing will be machine generated by Panduit software (or other) using indelible ink ribbons or cartridges. Self-laminating labels will be used on cable jackets, appropriately sized to the OD of the cable, and placed within view at the termination point on each end. Outlet, patch panel and wiring block labels shall be installed on, or in, the space provided on the device.

3.13 TESTING AND ACCEPTANCE:

A. General

1. All cables and termination hardware shall be 100% tested for defects in installation and to verify cabling system performance under installed conditions according to the requirements of ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B. All pairs of each installed cable shall be verified prior to system acceptance. Any defect in the cabling system installation including but not limited to cable, connectors, feed through couplers, patch panels, and connector blocks shall be repaired or replaced in order to ensure 100% useable conductors in all cables installed.
2. All cables shall be tested in accordance with this document, the ANSI/TIA/EIA standards, the Panduit Certification Program Information Manual and best industry practice. If any of these are in conflict, the Contractor shall bring any discrepancies to the attention of the project team for clarification and resolution.

B. Copper Channel Testing

1. All twisted-pair copper cable links shall be tested for continuity, pair reversals, shorts, opens and performance as indicated below. Additional testing is required to verify Category performance. Horizontal cabling shall be tested using a Level III test unit for category 6a performance compliance, respectively.
2. Continuity - Each pair of each installed cable shall be tested using a test unit that shows opens, shorts, polarity and pair-reversals, crossed pairs and split pairs. Shielded/screened cables shall be tested with a device that verifies shield continuity in addition to the above stated tests. The test shall be recorded as pass/fail as indicated by the test unit in accordance with the manufacturers' recommended procedures, and referenced to the appropriate cable identification number and circuit or pair number. Any faults in the wiring shall be corrected and the cable re-tested prior to final acceptance.
3. Length - Each installed cable link shall be tested for installed length using a TDR type device. The cables shall be tested from patch panel to patch panel, block to block, patch panel to outlet or block to outlet as appropriate. The cable length shall conform to the maximum distances set forth in the ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B.1 Standard. Cable lengths shall be recorded, referencing the cable identification number and circuit or pair number. For multi-pair cables, the shortest pair length shall be recorded as the length for the cable.
4. Category 6 Performance:
 - a. Follow the Standards requirements established in:
 - 1) ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B .1, B.2 and B.2-1
 - b. A Level III test unit is required to verify category 6a performance. The basic tests required are:
 - 1) Wire Map
 - 2) Length

- 3) Attenuation
- 4) NEXT (Near end crosstalk)
- 5) Return Loss
- 6) ELFEXT Loss
- 7) Propagation Delay
- 8) Delay skew
- 9) PSNEXT (Power sum near-end crosstalk loss)
- 10) PSELFEXT (Power sum equal level far-end crosstalk loss)

C. Fiber Testing

1. All fiber testing shall be performed on all fibers in the completed end to end system. There shall be no splices unless clearly defined in an RFP. Testing shall consist of an end to end power meter test performed per EIA/TIA-455-53A. The system loss measurements shall be provided at 850 and/or 1300 nanometers for multimode fibers and 1310 and/or 1550 nanometers for single mode fibers. These tests also include continuity checking of each fiber.
2. Backbone multimode fiber cabling shall be tested at both 850 nm and 1300 nm (or 1310 and 1550 nm for singlemode) in both directions.
3. Test set-up and performance shall be conducted in accordance with ANSI/EIA/TIA-526-14 Standard, Method B.
4. Where links are combined to complete a circuit between devices, the structured cabling contractor shall test each link from end to end to ensure the performance of the system. ONLY LINK TEST IS REQUIRED. The structured cabling contractor can optionally install patch cords to complete the circuit and then test the entire channel. The test method shall be the same used for the test described above. The values for calculating loss shall be those defined in the ANSI/TIA/EIA Standard.
5. Attenuation testing shall be performed with an approved hand held tester from an industry recognized test equipment manufacturer.

3.14 SYSTEM DOCUMENTATION:

- A. Upon completion of the installation, the structured cabling contractor shall provide three (3) full documentation sets to the owners for approval. Documentation shall include the items detailed in the sub-sections below.
- B. Documentation shall be submitted within ten (10) working days of the completion of each testing phase (e.g. subsystem, cable type, area, floor, etc.). This is inclusive of all test result and draft as-built drawings. Draft drawings may include annotations done by hand. Machine generated (final) copies of all drawings shall be submitted within 30 working days of the completion of each testing phase. At the request of the Engineer, the structured cabling contractor shall provide copies of the original test results.
- C. The Engineer may request that a 10% random field re-test be conducted on the cable system, at no additional cost, to verify documented findings. Tests shall be a repeat of those defined above. If findings contradict the documentation submitted by the structured cabling contractor, additional testing can be requested to the extent determined necessary by the Engineer, including a 100% re-test. This re-test shall be at no additional cost to the Owner.

3.15 TEST RESULTS:

- A. Test documentation shall be provided on disk within three weeks after the completion of the project. The disk shall be clearly marked on the outside front cover with the words "Project Test Documentation", the project name, and the date of completion (month and year). The results shall include a record of test frequencies, cable type, conductor pair and cable (or outlet)

I.D., measurement direction, reference setup, and crew member name(s). The test equipment name, manufacturer, model number, serial number, software version and last calibration date will also be provided at the end of the document. Unless the manufacturer specifies a more frequent calibration cycle, an annual calibration cycle is anticipated on all test equipment used for this installation. The test document shall detail the test method used and the specific settings of the equipment during the test as well as the software version being used in the field test equipment.

- B. The field test equipment shall meet the requirements of ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-A/B including applicable TSB's and amendments. The appropriate Level III tester shall be used to verify Category 6 cabling systems.
- C. Test results generated for each cable by the wire (or fiber) test instrument shall be submitted as part of the documentation package. The structured cabling contractor must furnish this information in electronic form (CD-ROM).
- D. When repairs and re-tests are performed, the problem found and corrective action taken shall be noted, and both the failed and passed test data shall be documented.

3.16 AS-BUILT DRAWINGS:

- A. The drawings are to include cable routes and outlet locations. Outlet locations shall be identified by their sequential number as defined elsewhere in this document. Numbering, icons, and drawing conventions used shall be consistent throughout all documentation provided. The Owner will provide floor plans in paper and electronic (DWG, AutoCAD rel. 2002) formats on which as-built construction information can be added. These documents will be modified accordingly by the structured cabling contractor to denote as-built information as defined above and returned to the Owner.
- B. The Contractors shall annotate the base drawings and return a hard copy (same plot size as originals) and electronic (AutoCAD DWG) form.

3.17 WARRANTY:

- A. The manufacturer shall provide a 25 year extended product warranty with a 25 year applications assurance warranty. Manufacturer shall provide the warranty directly to the end user.
- B. An Extended Product Warranty shall be provided which warrants functionality of all components used in the system for 25 years from the date of registration. The Extended Product Warranty shall warrant the installed horizontal copper and the backbone optical fiber portions of the cabling system.
- C. The Application Assurance Warranty shall cover the failure of the wiring system to support current or future applications that are designed for the link/channel specifications of ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B.1. These applications include, but are not limited to, 10BASE-T, 100BASE-T, 1000BASE-T, and 155 Mb/s ATM.
- D. The contractor shall provide a warranty on the physical installation.

3.18 FINAL ACCEPTANCE & SYSTEM CERTIFICATION:

- A. Completion of the installation, in-progress and final inspections, receipt of the test and as-built documentation, and successful performance of the cabling system for a two week period will constitute acceptance of the system. Upon successful completion of the installation and subsequent inspection, the end user shall be provided with a numbered certificate, from the manufacturer, registering the installation.

END OF SECTION 271000

SECTION 283100 – FIRE ALARM AND MASS NOTIFICATION SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE

- A. The Contractor shall furnish and install a complete low voltage, automatic and manual fire alarm system as specified herein and indicated on the drawings.
- B. The system shall include a central control panel, power supply, signal initiating devices, audible and visual alarm devices, a conduit and wiring system and all necessary accessories required to provide a complete operating system.
- C. The system shall be completely addressable.
- D. The system shall be dual listed for Fire Alarm and Mass Notification.
- E. The system shall comply with the applicable provisions of the National Fire Protection Association Standard Number 72 (National Fire Alarm Code) for fire alarm systems; N.E.C. Article 760; and meet all requirements of the local authorities having jurisdiction.
- F. The system shall be provided by a local service organization located within 50 miles of the job site.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM

- A. Conduit, outlet boxes, cabinets, devices and wiring installation for complete fire detection and alarm system.
- B. Each and every item of the Fire Alarm System shall be listed as a product of a SINGLE fire alarm system manufacturer under the appropriate category by Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc. (UL), and shall bear the "UL" label. All control equipment shall be listed under UL category UOBZ as a single control unit. Partial listing shall not be acceptable. System controls shall be UL listed for Power Limited Applications per N.E.C. Article 760. All circuits shall be marked in accordance with N.E.C. 760-23.
- C. Wiring shown is diagrammatic to define system and is not intended to show every wire. Review drawings prior to bidding and inform Contractor of any additional wiring necessary for installation of systems. Wiring shall comply with pathway survivability requirements defined in NFPA 72. Include cost of all wiring in bid.
- D. After completion of work, submit one set of record mylar sepias with items for Owner described above. Typical type drawings will not be accepted.
- E. Manufacturer's trained technical representative shall supervise installation, connections and tests. The authority having jurisdiction shall be notified prior to installation or alteration of equipment or wiring. Before acceptance, manufacturer's representative will test and certify in writing that system is installed and functioning properly as intended by drawings and specifications. Test includes operation of all devices in entire system.
- F. Guarantee entire system in writing for one year from date of acceptance by Owner. Guarantee will cover completely all components, equipment, wiring, etc. Repair any defects found in the system within the guarantee period without cost to owner.

- G. Submit with bid a guaranteed price for complete maintenance and service of system for one year beginning at expiration of guarantee period. Price shall be guaranteed for acceptance by Owner until date of substantial completion of system.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit complete shop drawings of system for review per minimum requirements of NFPA 72 and local AHJ including the following:
 - B. Product data cutsheets for all propose equipment with complete descriptive information on each item of equipment including UL listing for all system components
 - C. Fire alarm NICET designer information and fire alarm contractor permit information
 - D. Legend, notes, sheet index, wiring schedule
 - E. To-scale floor plans showing all devices and room names
 - F. Terminal-to-terminal connection diagrams for system components and associated equipment interfaces. Identify color code and terminal numbers on shop drawings.
 - G. System input/output matrix
 - H. Unique device identification numbers
 - I. Conduit diagrams
 - J. Battery calculations and voltage drop calculations
 - K. Typical device installation details
 - L. Any other information required by Architect to describe system.

1.4 SYSTEM OPERATION

- A. Actuation of any alarm initiating device shall cause all audible alarm signals to sound, all visual indicating appliances to flash, activate an alarm LED and local tone-alert at control panel/annunciator, cause an LCD read-out of point in alarm including type of alarm (smoke detector, manual station, etc.), provide a signal to the mechanical controls to shut down or re-route air handling systems according to established plans. This shall include a suitable addressable relay at each air handling unit to shut down all air handlers in a given zone when system goes into alarm.
- B. The general alarm devices may be silenced by authorized personnel only, by entering a locked cabinet and operating the proper silencing switch. A subsequent zone alarm shall reactivate the signals. Operation of the silencing switch shall be indicated by a trouble light and audible signal.
- C. Operation of any sprinkler monitoring switch, power failure, opens, grounds, or any disarrangement of the system wiring or components shall be indicated by a visual and audible trouble signal. The audible trouble signal may be silenced; however, the trouble LED shall remain lit until the system has been returned to normal operating condition.
- D. Analog Smoke Sensor Operation
 - 1. The smoke sensor shall be a smoke density measuring device having no self contained alarm set-point. The alarm decision for each sensor shall be determined by the control

- panel. The control panel shall determine the condition of each sensor by comparing the sensor value to stored values.
2. The control panel shall maintain a moving average of the sensors smoke chamber value. Systems that do not automatically maintain a constant smoke obscuration sensitivity for each sensor by compensating for environmental factors and are deemed unacceptable.
 3. The system shall automatically indicate when an individual sensor needs cleaning. When a sensor's average value reaches a predetermined value, a "Dirty Sensor" trouble condition shall be audibly and visually indicated at the control panel for the individual sensor. Additionally, the LED on the sensor base shall glow steady giving a visible indication at the sensor location.
 4. If a "Dirty Sensor" is left unattended, and its average value increases to a second predetermined value, an "Excessively Dirty Sensor" trouble condition shall be indicated at the control panel for the individual sensor.
 5. The control panel shall automatically perform a daily self-test on each sensor. Checking the electronics in the sensor's base ensures the accuracy of the values being transmitted to the control panel. A sensor which fails the self-test will cause a "Self Test Abnormal" trouble condition at the control panel. A sensor self-test which must be manually initiated by the operator shall not be acceptable.

1.5 SYSTEM FEATURES

A. The fire alarm system shall include the following features as a minimum:

1. Supervision of all field wiring.
2. Microprocessor based solid state modular construction.
3. Ground fault detection and ground fault isolating & supervising circuitry.
4. 80 character LCD display to indicate alarms, supervisory service conditions and troubles.
5. Simultaneous test of all LED's and LCD's from a central point.
6. "Dead Front" design control panel/annunciator with field programmable LED alarm, status and trouble indicators, and all control switches located behind a locked tempered glass door.
7. Fully automatic battery charger and lead alkaline batteries. Batteries shall have capacity to maintain system operation for 24 hours in normal supervisory mode and shall have sufficient capacity remaining to operate in alarm mode for 15 minutes at conclusion of supervisory period. Batteries shall be supervised for connection to the system and for low voltage threshold. Ammeter and voltmeter shall be provided to indicate battery voltage and charging current.
8. Two (2) sets of 2 amp form C auxiliary alarm contacts fused with feedback.
9. One (1) set of 2 amp form C auxiliary trouble contacts.
10. Standard with 127 addressable points (expandable to 508 points) and four input/output (I/O) circuits (expandable to 20 circuits).
11. Basic four (4) amp power supply (expandable as required).
12. 600 event historical logging.
13. System shall be field programmable for offsite monitoring by remote station reverse polarity, local energy master box or shunt master box types.
14. System shall be field programmable for signal circuit type of operation; march time code, temporal code, selective code, zone code, general alarm, time limit cutout and alarm silence inhibit.
15. System shall be field programmable for waterflow/sprinkler supervisory operation on distinct zones as required.
16. Transient suppression protection shall be provided on the system power supply and on the municipal protection circuit to comply with UL 864 requirements. Additionally, surge suppression shall be provided within the control panel on all circuits that extend outside the building (including to roof-mounted HVAC units).
17. Supervised remote annunciator connection circuit.
18. System shall incorporate an alarm/trouble walk test.

19. Resident non-volatile programmable operating system memory for all operating requirements.
- B. Control panel shall be furnished with one-way voice communication and tone generating capabilities.
 1. A central audio control shall be provided for the necessary alarm message/tone generation, main and remote microphone connections and mixer/pre-amplifier circuits. Continuous supervision shall be provided. Audio outputs shall have individual gain control.
 2. A hand held, push-to-talk microphone shall be provided recessed within a protective panel mounted enclosure. The microphone shall be a dynamic communication type with a frequency range of 200HZ to 4000Hz and shall be equipped with a self-winding five foot coiled cable. An LED indicator shall be provided to indicate microphone push-to-talk button has been pressed and speaker circuits are ready for transmission. Microphone shall be supervised from disconnection.
 3. An audio control switch module shall be furnished to provide manual switches to the audio functions. Switches and associated LED indicators shall be supervised for disarrangement or failure.
 4. Audio power amplifiers shall be furnished with self-contained filtered 24VDC power supply, transformer and amplifier monitor circuits. Amplifiers shall provide a 25VRMS output with a frequency response of 120 Hz to 12KHz. Provide a sufficient quantity of amplifiers to operate all system speakers simultaneously plus ten (10) percent space capacity. Amplifiers shall be sized to accommodate all speakers tapped at two watts. Provide one (1) back-up amplifier capable of automatically replacing any failed amplifier.
 5. Speaker circuits shall be supplied which are capable of supplying audio signals at 25VRMS supplied by the system amplifiers. Supervision for open, short or ground fault conditions shall be provided. Individual and distinct trouble indications shall be provided for each fault.
 6. Digitized tones for alarm or auxiliary requirements shall be provided.
 7. A remote microphone/annunciator (LCD type) command location as shown on plans shall be provided to duplicate the manual voice transmission capability of the fire alarm control panel.
 8. The system shall be configured to allow selective voice paging. If any manual control switches are activated, the control panel operator shall be able to make announcements via the paging microphone over the pre-selected speakers. Facility for total building evacuation and paging shall be provided to allow for activation of speakers. This shall be accomplished by an "All Call" switch.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FIRE ALARM CONTROL PANELS/ANNUNCIATORS

- A. Furnish and install Simplex type 4020-9101 fire alarm control panel(s) with options and accessories as required.

2.2 MANUAL ALARM STATIONS

- A. Manual alarm stations shall be Simplex addressable type 4099-9002 break glass (double-action). The station body shall be so constructed that chips and scratches will not expose metal. All stations shall be master keyed with the control equipment. When actuated, the "Pull Lever" shall remain at right angle to the station body until reset.
- B. Boxes:

1. Recessed, two-gang outlet boxes with Simplex type 2099-9813 red, semi-flush trim plates shall be used where possible.
2. Where surface-mount outlet boxes are required, boxes shall be red, cast aluminum Simplex type 2975-9022.

2.3 PHOTOELECTRIC SMOKE SENSOR

- A. The smoke sensors shall be of the photoelectric addressable Simplex type 4098-9714 and shall communicate actual smoke chamber values to the system control panel. The smoke sensors shall operate on the light scatter principle. For maximum maintenance free service and low power requirement, light source for detection chamber and visual alarm indication shall be solid state photodiode.
- B. Each sensor base shall be visually and electrically supervised.
- C. The sensors shall be listed to UL Standard 268 and shall be documented compatible with the control equipment to which they are connected. The sensors shall be listed for both ceiling and wall mount applications.
- D. Each sensor base shall contain integral addressable electronics and an LED that will flash each time it is scanned by the control panel (once every 4 seconds). The control panel shall be responsible for drift compensation. When the control panel determines that a sensor is in an alarm or a trouble condition, the control panel shall command the LED on that sensor's base to turn on steady indicating the abnormal condition. Sensors which do not provide a visible indication of an abnormal condition at the sensor location shall not be acceptable. Sensor bases shall be compatible with detachable photoelectric, ionization and heat sensors so that these various sensor types can be easily interchanged to meet specific location requirements. Sensor base shall be addressable type as required.
- E. Where required, sensor bases shall be provided with a relay driver output and supervised relay, which are to be controlled either automatically or manually from the control panel.
- F. Each sensor base shall be scanned by the control panel for its type identification to prevent inadvertent substitution of the wrong sensor type. The control panel shall operate with the installed device but shall initiate a "Wrong Device" trouble condition until the proper type is installed or the programmed sensor type is changed.
- G. Each sensor shall contain a magnetically actuated test switch to provide for easy alarm testing at the sensor location.
- H. The sensor's electronics shall be immune from false alarms caused by EMI and RFI.
- I. Cover all smoke detection devices with plastic bags immediately after installation to maintain cleanliness, if field conditions so require.
- J. Provide a U.L. listed sensor guard for sensors in areas subject to tampering. The guard shall be suitable for ceiling or sidewall mounting and hinged for easy access. The guard shall be securely mounted with tamper-proof screws.

2.4 PHOTOELECTRIC DUCT DETECTOR

- A. The detector shall be an addressable, non-polarized 24VDC, Simplex type 4098-9755, which is compatible with the Fire Alarm Control Panel and obtains its operating power from the supervisory current in the fire alarm detection loop. It shall be of the same analog type as the ceiling smoke detectors. Detectors shall be of the solid state photoelectric type and shall operate on the light scattering, photodiode principle. To minimize nuisance alarms, detectors

shall have an insect screen and be designed to ignore invisible airborne particles or smoke densities that are below the factory set alarm point. No radioactive material shall be used.

- B. The detector head shall be directly interchangeable with an ionization detector type. The 24VDC detector may be reset by actuating the control panel reset switch.
- C. Detector construction shall have a mounting base with a twist-lock detecting head that is lockable. The locking feature must be field removable when not required. Contract between the base and head shall be of the bifurcated type utilizing spring type, self-wiping contacts. Removal of the detector head shall interrupt the supervisory circuit of the fire alarm detection loop and cause a trouble signal at the control panel.
- D. Sampling tubes sized to match duct size as recommended by equipment manufacturer shall be provided with duct detectors as required.
- E. Detector design shall provide compatibility with other normally open fire alarm detection loop devices (heat detectors, pull stations, etc.). It shall be possible to alarm the duct housing by using a test switch. For maintenance purposes, it shall be possible to clean the duct housing sampling tubes by accessing them through the duct housings front cover.
- F. To minimize false alarms, voltage and RF transient suppression techniques shall be employed as-well-as smoke signal verification circuit and an insect screen.
- G. Separate auxiliary SPDT relays for fan shutdown shall be provided with each duct detector for fan shutdown, smoke evacuation or other purposes as indicated on plans.
- H. Remote key operated test stations with LED alarm indicators shall be installed in an accessible, inconspicuous location for each duct detector.
- I. Duct detectors shall be installed for the equipment as indicated on plans as follows (locations shown on plans are diagrammatical only):
 - 1. A minimum of six duct widths downstream from bends or inlets to avoid air turbulence.
 - 2. On the downstream side of filters to detect fires in the filters.
 - 3. In return ducts, ahead of mixing areas.
 - 4. Upstream of air humidifier and cooling coil.
 - 5. With accessibility for test and service.
- J. The following duct detector locations shall be avoided:
 - 1. Where dampers closed for comfort control would interfere with airflow.
 - 2. Next to outside air inlets (unless the intent is to monitor smoke entry from that area).
 - 3. In return air damper branch ducts and mixing areas where airflow may be restricted.
- K. Where duct detectors are installed in exterior or wet locations, weatherproof duct housing enclosures shall be provided to protect the detectors. Enclosures shall be located to be in shaded areas rather than direct sunlight. Entire installation shall be as directed by the equipment manufacturer.

2.5 HEAT SENSORS

- A. Heat sensors shall be U.L. listed, addressable Simplex type 4098-9733. They shall provide rate-of-rise temperature sensing, fixed temperature sensing (135 degrees F) and utility temperature sensing (32 degrees F to 155 degrees F range).
- B. Each sensor base shall be visually and electrically supervised.

- C. The sensors shall be listed to UL Standard 268 and shall be documented compatible with the control equipment to which they are connected. The sensors shall be listed for both ceiling and wall mount applications.
- D. Each sensor base shall contain integral addressable electronics and an LED that will flash each time it is scanned by the control panel (once every 4 seconds). The control panel shall be responsible for drift compensation. When the control panel determines that a sensor is in an alarm or a trouble condition, the control panel shall command the LED on that sensor's base to turn on steady indicating the abnormal condition. Sensors which do not provide a visible indication of an abnormal condition at the sensor location shall not be acceptable. Sensor bases shall be compatible with detachable photoelectric, ionization and heat sensors so that these various sensor types can be easily interchanged to meet specific location requirements. Sensor base shall be addressable type as required.
- E. Where required, sensor bases shall be provided with a relay driver output and supervised relay, which are to be controlled either automatically or manually from the control panel.
- F. Each sensor base shall be scanned by the control panel for its type identification to prevent inadvertent substitution of the wrong sensor type. The control panel shall operate with the installed device but shall initiate a "Wrong Device" trouble condition until the proper type is installed or the programmed sensor type is changed.
- G. Each sensor shall contain a magnetically actuated test switch to provide for easy alarm testing at the sensor location.
- H. The sensor's electronics shall be immune from false alarms caused by EMI and RFI.
- I. Heat sensor shall be automatically restorable.

2.6 MAGNETIC DOOR HOLDERS

- A. Provide Simplex type 2088 series magnetic door holders as required where shown on plans.

2.7 ALARM SIGNALS (AUDIBLE)

- A. Speakers:
 - 1. Alarm speakers shall be Simplex type 4902-9805. The speakers shall be polarized and shall be operated by 25VRMS. Each speaker assembly shall include separate wire leads for in/out wiring for each leg of the associated signal circuit. T-tapping of signal device conductors to signal circuit conductors shall NOT be accepted. Where speakers are shown as a combination audible-visual assembly, they shall be mounted as a combination unit in a single back box (4906 series) . Speakers shall be capable of producing 88dB and shall be tapped for 2 watt connection.
- B. Devices required to be surface mounted shall be furnished with Simplex type 2975-9145 surface mounting box and 4905-9903 adaptor plate.
- C. Devices installed in areas subject to mechanical damage (ie. gymnasiums) shall be furnished with suitable wire guards as indicated on plans.

2.8 ALARM SIGNALS (VISUALS)

- A. Visual Flashing Lamps (Xenon Strobe):
 - 1. Furnish and install per plans and specs Simplex type 4904 series visible appliance for fire alarm system notification. The appliance shall be 1HZ synchronized (15cd, 30cd, 110cd)

with polar distribution or 75 cd illumination as required by the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA). The appliance shall be U.L. listed to Standard 1971 and have a circumpolar light output allowing mounting in either vertical or horizontal positions or on the ceiling.

2. The light unit shall be of ABS polycarbonate and the lens of high grade, optical quality LEXAN. For optimized light distribution, the xenon flash tube shall be installed perpendicular to the appliance's back plane. A special compound reflector shall be utilized to maximize and best distribute the light pattern in key axis directions.
3. The effect of the illuminated visible appliance shall be observable in a circumpolar pattern. The visible appliance shall be labeled with the word "FIRE" in a contrasting color and the height of each character shall be a minimum of 5/8 inches. In its quiescent state, the word "ALERT" shall be visible.
4. Mounting heights of visual appliances shall in all respects comply with the Americans with Disabilities Act.
5. Visual indicating appliances shall be Simplex type 4904 series and comprised of a Xenon flashtube and be entirely solid state. These devices shall be U.L. listed and be capable of either ceiling or wall mounting. The LEXAN lens shall be pyramidal in shape to allow better visibility. Visual units shall be of the stand alone type.

2.9 REMOTE MICROPHONE/ANNUNCIATOR

- A. Where shown on the plans, provide and install an LCD annunciator. The annunciator(s) shall have a stainless steel finish and shall provide the same functionality as the main control panel front panel display. The annunciator shall communicate to the control panel over one twisted shielded pair of wire and operating power shall be 24VDC and be fused at the control panel. Point-wired annunciators will not be considered as equal.
- B. The serial annunciator shall provide a common alarm and trouble circuit consisting of:
 1. Control push-button switches – for alarm silence, trouble silence, system reset and manual evacuation duplicating the control panel switches. A key "enable" switch shall be provided to activate or deactivate the control switches.
 2. Tone Alert – Duplicates the control panel tone alert during alarm and trouble conditions.
 3. System trouble LED.
 4. Power on LED.
- C. To accommodate and facilitate job site changes the control switches shall have the capability to be programmed on site to provide for manual switch input operation other than their standard purpose.

2.10 SPRINKLER FLOW SWITCHES

- A. Sprinkler flow switches and supervisory switches are provided under another section of these specifications. This contractor shall be responsible for electrical connection of these devices to the fire alarm system.

2.11 SMOKE DAMPERS

- A. Smoke dampers are provided under another section. This contractor shall be responsible for supplying a source of power and connecting them to the fire alarm system to close on alarm.

2.12 SYSTEM RECORD DOCUMENT CABINET

- A. Furnish and install a documentation cabinet at the system control unit or other approved location. All final record documentation shall be stored in the cabinet. Cabinet shall be labeled as "SYSTEM RECORD DOCUMENTS". Cabinet shall include a 4 gigabyte digital flash drive

interface with USB connector loaded with a digital copy of all system documentation including shop drawings and product data.

2.13 OFF SITE MONITORING

- A. Furnish all material and labor to accomplish and coordinate with local company or fire department as necessary for off site monitoring of the Fire Alarm System. Transmission method(s) shall be as required by applicable codes and Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ). Off site monitoring shall be in operation prior to final acceptance. Exact type of off site monitoring (basic reporting or advanced reporting as described below) shall be provided by the contractor per the owner's direction.
- B. Furnish and install serial digital alarm communicating transmitter (DACT), capable of reporting specific alarm points to the central station. DACT shall be universal in that it can be utilized to either provide basic reporting (alarm, trouble, supervisory conditions) or more advanced reporting (point-to-point reporting of specific alarm conditions) DACT shall be mounted integral to or beside fire alarm control panel.

2.14 FIRE ALARM CABLING

- 1. All fire alarm cabling shall:
 - a. Have red outer insulation/jacket with ripcord.
 - b. Be listed and labeled for the intended use in Fire Alarm systems.
 - c. Where Level 2 or Level 3 pathway survivability is required by NFPA 72, cabling shall be 2-hour fire rated circuit integrity (CI) type.
 - d. Be manufactured by West Penn, Allied, Belden or Superior Essex.

2.15 FIRE ALARM SYSTEM MANUFACTURER

- A. All equipment shall be listed by UL. All panels and peripheral devices shall be the standard equipment of a single manufacturer and shall display the manufacturer's name on each component. Manufacturer's numbers specified in this section are those of Simplex Time Recorder Company to denote type, quality, material and desired operating features to be furnished.
- B. Equipment shall be as manufactured by Simplex, Notifier or EST.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Provide and install the system in accordance with the plans and specifications, all applicable codes and the manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. The contractor shall provide 120VAC power to all remote booster power supplies, control panels, transponder cabinets or other similar items as required. Where the project is provided with emergency power from an emergency generator, all power supplies shall be connected to an emergency source. Dedicated branch circuit(s) shall be provided to supply primary power to the fire alarm system. The associated branch circuit breakers shall be furnished with lock-on hardware and shall be identified with red marking as a fire alarm circuit. The location of the circuit disconnecting means shall be permanently identified at the fire alarm control unit.

- C. All wiring shall be installed in strict compliance with all the provisions of NEC - Article 760 Parts I and III, Power-Limited Fire Protective Signaling Circuits or if required may be reclassified as non-power limited and wired in accordance with NEC-Article 760 Parts I and II.
- D. All wiring shall be installed in strict compliance with pathway survivability requirements of applicable codes including NFPA 72.
- E. Upon completion, the contractor shall so certify in writing to the owner and general contractor.
- F. Front surface of all junction box covers in concealed areas (such as above lay-in ceilings) or within mechanical/electrical rooms (and other similar areas where appearance of boxes is not an issue) shall be sprayed red and labeled "Fire Alarm" or "F/A". Covers in exposed areas shall be labeled "F/A" on interior of front cover. Wiring color code shall be maintained throughout the installation.
- G. All fire alarm wiring shall be installed in conduit. Conduit shall be sized per manufacturer's recommendations, but in no case shall conduit be smaller than 3/4".
- H. Installation of equipment and devices that pertain to other work in the contract shall be closely coordinated with the appropriate subcontractors.
- I. All raceways shall be concealed unless specifically shown or approved otherwise.
- J. The contractor shall clean all dirt and debris from the inside and the outside of the fire alarm equipment after completion of the installation.
- K. Install System Record Document cabinet adjacent to control panel unless alternate location is approved.
- L. The manufacturer's authorized representative shall provide on-site supervision of installation and shall provide all system setup and programming services.
- M. The manufacturer's authorized representative shall have as a minimum, a NICET LEVEL III certification. The fire alarm contractor shall have a technician with a minimum Nicet Level III certification working in a position of responsibility. All technicians working for the certified contractor shall have a minimum Nicet Level II certification. Any fire alarm contractor wishing to bid on the fire alarm work shall show evidence of certifications at the pre-bid conference.
- N. The fire alarm contractor shall be licensed as a certified fire alarm contractor by the state in which the work is to be performed in compliance with all requirements of state fire marshal or other AHJ's as applicable.
- O. The drawing/specifications included herein are to indicate contract intent only. The Fire Alarm contractor shall provide final design documents to include plans specifying exact device types/locations, circuitry, battery calculations, circuit/voltage drop calculations, etc. in accordance with all applicable code requirements. These final design documents shall be prepared under the supervision of an engineer licensed in the state where the work is to be performed, engaged/employed by the Fire Alarm contractor, and must bear the engineer's licensure seal with signature and date.

3.2 TESTING

- A. The completed fire alarm system shall be fully tested in accordance with NFPA-72H by the contractor in the presence of the owner's representative and the Local Fire Marshal. Upon completion of a successful test, the contractor shall so certify in writing to the owner and general contractor, and shall submit final testing results with O&M documentation..

- B. The contractor shall test and demonstrate proper operation of all smoke detection equipment and associated HVAC controls to the satisfaction of the authority-having-jurisdiction and fire marshal.

3.3 WARRANTY

- A. The contractor shall warrant the completed fire alarm system wiring and equipment to be free from inherent mechanical and electrical defects for a period of one (1) year from the date of the completed and certified test or from the date of first beneficial use.
- B. The equipment manufacturer shall make available to the owner a maintenance contract proposal to provide a minimum of two (2) inspections and tests per year in compliance with NFPA-72H guidelines.

3.4 CERTIFICATION & ACCEPTANCE

- A. A factory trained representative of the manufacturer shall supervise final testing of the system in accordance with N.F.P.A. Standard 72H-1984 in the presence of a representative of the authority having jurisdiction. Manufacturer's representative shall be NICET trained and shall have a level III NICET certificate. It shall be subject to the approval and acceptance of the responsible engineer. On completion of the acceptance tests, the Owner or his representative shall be instructed in the operation and testing of the system.
- B. The fire alarm system shall be free from defects in workmanship and materials, under normal use and service, for a period of one year from the date of acceptance or beneficial occupancy whichever is earlier. Any equipment shown to be defective in workmanship or material shall be repaired, replaced, or adjusted free of charge.
- C. The equipment manufacturer shall be represented by a local service organization, and the name of this organization shall be furnished to the Architect and Owner. The service organization shall be located within 50 miles of the job site. The service organization shall furnish, gratis to the Owner, a one year maintenance warranty contract, effective from the date of final acceptance.

END OF SECTION 283100

SECTION 287800 – EMERGENCY RESPONDER RADIO COVERAGE SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 INITIAL RADIO SIGNAL SURVEY (INCLUDE IN BASE BID)

- A. Include all costs in base bid for the Fire Alarm Contractor to conduct a radio signal survey immediately after building structure is complete, and prior to ceiling installation to determine signal coverage and strength of the municipality's emergency responder radio (public safety) system inside the project facility.
- B. Conduct a survey using a RF Spectrum Analyzer, a calibrated, system-compatible radio or another suitable instrument with traceable certificate of calibration to analyze the RF signal strength. Both inbound and outbound signal strength shall be determined, measured, calculated and documented as required by code and AHJ. Survey shall be performed by FCC GROL certified technicians. Survey shall include measurements at a minimum of 20 readings per floor or 1,600SF if the floor area exceeds 32,000SF and in all critical areas or as otherwise directed by AHJ.
- C. Survey report and drawing indicating measurements at each frequency band of interest shall be submitted to the AHJ for review. The report shall clearly indicate all areas that do not meet a minimum of -95dBm nominal uplink or downlink signal at 100% or a Delivered Audio Quality (DAQ) of 3.0.
- D. If measured levels determined to be insufficient, a complete Emergency Responder Radio Coverage (ERRC) system shall be provided in accordance with these specifications below. Cost for the system and installation will be paid through allowance.
- E. Contractor shall be responsible for scheduling survey so that all of the following is completed prior to the installation of ceilings:
 - 1. Conduct initial survey
 - 2. Submit survey results and report to the AHJ for review and determination of system requirements
 - 3. Provide system design and submit shop drawings to architect and AHJ for review

1.2 SCOPE (SEE ALLOWANCES)

- A. The contractor shall design, furnish, install, and warranty a complete Emergency Responder Radio Coverage (ERRC) system. The installed system shall include all hardware, bi-directional amplifiers, band-pass filters, surge suppressors, lightning protection, UPS, transmission lines, power cabling, antennas, and other components necessary for a complete operational system as specified and as acceptable to the local authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Equipment manufacturer name and model numbers specified are provided to establish quality of equipment and system operational features. Any proposed substitution of equipment from that specified must be approved by the Architect within ten (10) days prior to bid date.
- C. The entire system shall be guaranteed for a period of one (1) year from the date of final acceptance of the installation and the Contractor shall repair or replace defective equipment, during this period, at no cost to the owner.
- D. Entire system shall be verified and approved by local AHJ to comply with all emergency responder radio network requirements including signal strength and frequency range.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BDA: Bi-Directional Amplifier is a two-way signal booster that is used to amplify band-selective or multi-band RF signals in the uplink, to the base station and in the downlink from the base station to subscriber devices for enhanced signals and improved coverage.
- B. DAS: Distributed Antenna System is a network of separate antenna nodes connected to a common transport medium.
- C. ERRC: Emergency Responder Radio Coverage System is a complete in-building radio communication system that brings wireless signals into a structure from outside, amplifies those signals with a signal booster (BDA), and then evenly distributes the amplified signals throughout a structure via a Distributed Antenna System (DAS). The system also amplifies signals originating inside the building and transmits them outside.
- D. Donor Antenna: Antenna that receives and transmits signal to radio system outside of facility.

1.4 STANDARDS

- A. The system shall comply with all requirements of the latest edition of each of the following codes and standards. The latest edition of these codes and standards form a part of this specification:
 - 1. U.L. Standard 2524.
 - 2. International Fire Code Section 510
 - 3. NFPA 1225
 - 4. NFPA 72
 - 5. All requirements of local Fire Department, Building Department and all other authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ)

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For headend and distribution system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Show fabrication and installation details for equipment.
 - 2. Functional Block Diagram: Show single-line interconnections between components for headend and distribution system. Show cable types and sizes.
 - 3. Dimensioned Plan and Elevations of Headend Equipment: Show access and workspace requirements.
 - 4. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring and transmission cable, include cross connects, taps, and other connections cords.
- C. Design Calculations: Calculate signal attenuation budget and show calculated line and equipment losses for the system based on the functional block diagram, to show that proposed system layout can be expected to perform up to specification. Calculate signal strength from sources to endpoints. Allowable losses between components and user interface shall be used to determine size and type of cable.
- D. Coordination Drawings: Include dimensioned plan and elevation views of components and enclosures. Show access and workspace requirements.
- E. Equipment List: Include each piece of equipment and include model number, manufacturer, serial number, location, and date of original installation. Insert testing record of each piece of

adjustable equipment, listing name of person testing, date of test, and description of as-left set points.

- F. Field quality-control reports.
- G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For headend and distribution system to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- H. Contract shall submit set of all drawings and product data to permitting agencies as required. These final design documents shall be prepared under the supervision of an engineer licensed in the state where the work is to be performed, engaged/employed by the system vendor, and must bear the engineer's licensure seal with signature and date.
- I. Any permits necessary for the installation of the work shall be obtained prior to the commencement of the work. All permit costs and inspection fees shall be included.
- J.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RADIO FREQUENCY (RF) BDA-BASED SIGNAL BOOSTER SYSTEMS

- A. In-building signal booster systems shall receive and re-transmit the entire uplink/downlink frequency band utilized by the regional emergency service provider(s). The contractor shall confirm with the regional emergency service provider(s) as to the specific frequencies used by the various agencies. This system shall be state-of-the-art, operating bi-directionally and in full duplex. The system shall be fully compatible with and function on Locality's Public Safety Radio System.
- B. BDA shall be capable of providing in building coverage for all the cellular networks as identified by the owner.
- C. Signal boosters (BDA)
 - 1. Shall have NEMA Type 4 enclosure
 - 2. Shall be UL2524 listed
 - 3. Shall be FCC certification.
 - 4. Provide standby battery system capable of maintaining the system operational for a minimum of 12 hours or 2 hours if supplied by emergency generator circuit. Batteries system shall be completely enclosed in NEMA Type 4 enclosure.
 - 5. Signal Boosters shall have oscillation suppression circuitry to protect the public safety radio system in case of system malfunction or other causes. The oscillation suppression circuit shall not disable the system operation. Systems that automatically disable the signal booster upon oscillation detection shall not be allowed
 - 6. Signal Boosters shall have uplink noise suppression function to eliminate uplink noise while in standby (i.e. no radio transmission from within a building).
 - 7. Include relays as required for monitoring system with fire alarm system.
- D. DAS Antennas shall be architectural, dome or flush type where located in public areas. Stick type antennas are acceptable where located in back-of-house spaces. Finish shall be white unless directed otherwise by architect in submittal review.
- E. A dedicated annunciator panel shall be provided next to the fire alarm panel / annunciator or other location as designated by AHJ to annunciate the status of all signal booster locations. The annunciator panel shall provide visual and labeled indication of the following for each signal booster:

1. Normal AC power
 2. Loss of normal AC power
 3. Battery charger failure
 4. Low-battery capacity (i.e., to 70 percent depletion)
 5. Signal source malfunction
 6. Active RF-emitting device malfunction
 7. Active system component malfunction
- F. The communications link between the dedicated annunciator and the Emergency Responder Radio Coverage (ERRC) system shall be monitored for integrity.
- G. Completed installations (including cabling) shall comply with all applicable codes and standards, including County Building and Electrical Codes, NFPA, ANSI, NEC, OSHA, EIA, IEEE, R-56, etc., as well as the FCC Rules and Regulations, as applicable. Equipment provided shall be UL listed and FCC type accepted for this specific application. Compliance to codes and standards shall extend to include proper grounding, bonding and surge.
- H. All cabling shall be plenum rated.
- 2.2 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS:
- A. The system shall provide digital signal strength coverage over 95% area on each floor/level of the equipped building, or in specific areas defined by Locality in a Scope of Work document for a particular building or site. Critical areas shall have 99% floor area coverage.
- B. Systems shall provide a minimum digital and analog coverage of Circuit Merit (CM) 3 and Delivered Audio Quality (DAQ) 3.0, with a reliability factor of 95%.
- C. Antenna isolation shall be maintained between the donor antenna and all inside antennas (D.A.S.) to a minimum of 20dB under all operating conditions
- D. A Coverage Acceptance Test shall be executed prior to final acceptance of an installed system. Coverage acceptance testing shall be based on audio quality performance in evenly spaced test grids in the defined service areas. A minimum of 20 tests will be taken per floor/level. Total number of test grids will be determined by the Owner, based on the size of the space per floor/level.
- E. Design and appearance will be of “finished” construction, i.e. shall be concealed and/or unobtrusive in finished areas. DAS antennas shall be located in back-of-house areas where possible. If required to be located in visible public areas, antennas shall be architectural, low-profile type and located in corridors where possible. Unless indicated otherwise, wire mold and surface conduit installations will not be acceptable unless approved in writing by the Architect in advance.
- 2.3 MANUFACTURER
- A. Equipment shall be as manufactured by Simplex, Notifier or EST or approved equal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Wiring shall be in strict accordance with the National Electrical Code and all state and local regulations. Wiring shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer’s wiring diagrams and shall test free from ground, opens and short circuits.

- B. All connections shall be made under the direct supervision of a qualified technician.
- C. Contractor shall provide dedicated power circuits as required for system operation. Where an emergency distribution system is provided, radio coverage system power shall be connected to the emergency branch.
- D. All vertical riser cabling shall be installed in conduit within a 2-hour fire rated enclosure.
- E. All copper circuits routed between or outside of buildings shall be provided with a surge protection device at each end.
- F. Securely mount donor antenna on roof and aim towards direction of public safety city repeater antenna. All mounting and penetrations shall be coordinated with roofing contractor.
- G. Contractor shall provide all devices and cabling as required to monitor system with building Fire Alarm System in accordance with NFPA 1225 and all other applicable code requirements. At a minimum the fire alarm system shall monitor the following:
 - 1. Signal source malfunction.
 - 2. Active RF-emitting device failure.
 - 3. Low-battery capacity indication when 70 percent of the 12-hour operating capacity has been depleted.
 - 4. Active system component failure.
 - 5. Loss of normal AC power.
 - 6. Failure of battery charger.
 - 7. The communications link between the fire alarm system and Emergency Responder Radio Coverage (ERRC) system shall be monitored for integrity.
- H. Refer to Specification Section 270500 for additional installation requirements.
- I. During initial installation, each system shall be optimized to perform in accordance with the specifications set forth in the system design, manufacturer's specifications, and FCC regulations. The contractor shall ensure that uplink and downlink levels are properly set and consistent with design expectations. The contractor shall further ensure that noise and spurious products are held within limits set forth in the system design, manufacturer's specifications, and FCC regulations. Prior to system acceptance, for each active BDA, booster amplifier, etc., the contractor shall submit a Proof of Performance certification, that lists the design expectations, actual measurements, and if applicable, FCC specifications for the following parameters:
 - 1. Worst case BDA uplink input level, in dBm.
 - 2. Worst case BDA uplink output level, in dBm.
 - 3. BDA downlink input level, in dBm.
 - 4. BDA downlink output level, in dBm.
 - 5. Noise and spurious products, BDA uplink output, in dBc.
 - 6. Noise and spurious products, BDA downlink output, in dBc.
- J. The original Proof of Performance report shall be submitted to Owner's project manager, and a copy of the Proof of Performance report shall be affixed to its associated equipment.

3.2 WARRANTY

- A. The contractor shall provide a full one-year warranty to cover installation and all equipment, software, and components; the warranty shall commence upon the Owner's final acceptance of the facility. Under warranty coverage, the successful contractor shall provide same business day response time for system malfunctions.

- B. The contractor shall perform optimization of each system during the initial warranty period, sixty (60) to ninety (90) days prior to warranty expiration. This optimization task is separate from the initial optimization performed during system installation. The contractor shall include pricing for annual system optimization to be included as part of post-warranty maintenance. Actual scope of work for annual optimization and maintenance will vary on a case-by-case basis, but typically will consist of the following:
 - 1. Optimize the system to perform in accordance with the specifications set forth in the system design, manufacturer's specifications, and FCC regulations.
 - 2. Ensure that uplink and downlink levels are properly set and are consistent with design specifications.
 - 3. Ensure that noise and spurious products are held within limits set forth in the system design, manufacturer's specifications, and FCC regulations.
- C. Update the Proof of Performance records for the system, listing the design expectations, actual measurements, and if applicable, FCC specifications for the following parameters:
 - 1. Worst case BDA uplink input level, in dBm.
 - 2. Worst case BDA uplink output level, in dBm.
 - 3. BDA downlink input level, in dBm.
 - 4. BDA downlink output level, in dBm.
 - 5. Noise and spurious products, BDA uplink output, in dBc.
 - 6. Noise and spurious products, BDA downlink output, in dBc.
- D. The updated Proof of Performance report shall be submitted to the Owner, and a copy of the updated Proof of Performance report shall be affixed to its associated equipment.
- E. Visually inspect outside antenna installation. Correct any issues found with the antenna mounting hardware, grounding system, or outside cabling.
- F. Visually inspect inside BDA or booster amplifier equipment installation. Correct any issues found with RF cabling, electrical connection, or equipment mounting.
- G. Clean equipment fans, filters and other ventilation system components.
- H. Inspect and replace any defective indicator lights.
- I. Test battery system performance for proper fallback to battery power and the duration of battery operation.
- J. Test fault reporting system for proper operation and reporting of system faults.
- K. Submit a written Preventive Maintenance Report to the Owner, listing the results of the optimization and preventive maintenance effort. The report shall include the Proof of Performance report for active RF components, and details of any other discrepancies found and corrective actions taken.
- L. All as-built drawings shall be submitted to the Owner at completion, which shall include antenna system layout and all associated hardware, along with specification sheets. Include RF measurements taken.

END OF SECTION 287800

SECTION 313116 - TERMITE CONTROL**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Soil treatment.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood preservative treatment by pressure process.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components, and profiles for termite control products.
 - 2. Include the EPA-Registered Label for termiticide products.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of termite control product.
- C. Soil Treatment Application Report: After application of termiticide is completed, submit report for Owner's records and include the following:
 - 1. Date and time of application.
 - 2. Moisture content of soil before application.
 - 3. Termiticide brand name and manufacturer.
 - 4. Quantity of undiluted termiticide used.
 - 5. Dilutions, methods, volumes used, and rates of application.
 - 6. Areas of application.
 - 7. Water source for application.
- D. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A specialist who is licensed according to regulations of authorities having jurisdiction to apply termite control treatment and products in jurisdiction where Project is located and who employs workers trained and approved by manufacturer to install manufacturer's products.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Soil Treatment:
 - 1. Environmental Limitations: To ensure penetration, do not treat soil that is water saturated or frozen. Do not treat soil while precipitation is occurring. Comply with requirements of the EPA-Registered Label and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Related Work: Coordinate soil treatment application with excavating, filling, grading, and concreting operations. Treat soil under footings, grade beams, and ground-supported slabs before construction.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Soil Treatment Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by Applicator and Contractor, certifying that termite control work consisting of applied soil termiticide treatment will prevent infestation of subterranean termites. If subterranean termite activity or damage is discovered during warranty period, re-treat soil and repair or replace damage caused by termite infestation.
 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain termite control products from single source.

2.2 SOIL TREATMENT

- A. Termiticide: EPA-Registered termiticide acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, in an aqueous solution formulated to prevent termite infestation.
 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
 - a. **BASF Corporation.**
 - b. **Bayer Environmental Science.**
 - c. **Ensystex, Inc.**
 2. Service Life of Treatment: Soil treatment termiticide that is effective for not less than five years against infestation of subterranean termites.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for moisture content of soil per termiticide label, interfaces with earthwork, slab and foundation work, landscaping, utility installation, and other conditions affecting performance of termite control.
- B. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Prepare work areas according to the requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and according to manufacturer's written instructions before beginning application and installation of termite control treatment(s). Remove extraneous sources of wood cellulose and other edible materials, such as wood debris, tree stumps and roots, stakes, formwork, and construction waste wood from soil within and around foundations.
- B. Soil Treatment Preparation: Remove foreign matter and impermeable soil materials that could decrease treatment effectiveness on areas to be treated. Loosen, rake, and level soil to be treated, except previously compacted areas under slabs and footings. Termiticides may be applied before placing compacted fill under slabs if recommended in writing by termiticide manufacturer.
 1. Fit filling hose connected to water source at the site with a backflow preventer, according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

3.3 APPLYING SOIL TREATMENT

- A. Application: Mix soil treatment termiticide solution to a uniform consistency. Distribute treatment uniformly. Apply treatment at the product's EPA-Registered Label volume and rate for maximum specified concentration of termiticide to the following so that a continuous horizontal and vertical termiticidal barrier or treated zone is established around and under building construction.
 - 1. Slabs-on-Grade and Basement Slabs: Under ground-supported slab construction, including footings, building slabs, and attached slabs as an overall treatment. Treat soil materials before concrete footings and slabs are placed.
 - 2. Foundations: Soil adjacent to and along the entire inside perimeter of foundation walls; along both sides of interior partition walls; around plumbing pipes and electric conduit penetrating the slab; around interior column footers, piers, and chimney bases; and along the entire outside perimeter, from grade to bottom of footing.
 - 3. Masonry: Treat voids.
 - 4. Penetrations: At expansion joints, control joints, and areas where slabs and below-grade walls will be penetrated.
- B. Post warning signs in areas of application.
- C. Reapply soil treatment solution to areas disturbed by subsequent excavation, grading, landscaping, or other construction activities following application.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Avoid disturbance of treated soil after application. Keep off treated areas until completely dry.
- B. Protect termiticide solution dispersed in treated soils and fills from being diluted by exposure to water spillage or weather until ground-supported slabs are installed. Use waterproof barrier according to EPA-Registered Label instructions.

END OF SECTION 313116